

BOSCH REXROTH VFC 615 SERIES OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS MANUAL



Table of Contents

[Table of Contents](#)

[Definitions of Terms](#)

[Explanation of Signal Words and the Safety Alert Symbol](#)

[General Information](#)

[Using the Safety Instructions and Passing Them on to Others](#)

[Requirements for Safe Use](#)

[Hazards by Improper Use](#)

[Instructions with Regard to Specific Dangers](#)

Protection Against Contact With Electrical Parts and Housings
Protective Extra-Low Voltage as Protection Against Electric Shock
Protection Against Dangerous Movements
Protection Against Magnetic and Electromagnetic Fields During
Operation and Mounting
Protection Against Contact with Hot Parts
Protection During Handling and Mounting
Appropriate Use
Inappropriate Use
About this Documentation
Relevant Software
Reference
Product Identification
Packing Nameplate
Product Nameplate
Visual Inspection
Scope of Supply
Transport of the Components
Storage of the Components
Product Features
Input
Output
V/f Control Performance
SVC Control Performance
Main Functions
Communication
Operating Panel
Protection
Conditions

Technical Data

Electric Data

Derating of Electric Data

Derating and ambient temperature

Derating and mains voltage

Derating and carrier frequency

Maximum Length of Motor Cables

Minimum Inductance Between Two Motor Terminals

Installation Conditions

Heat Dissipation

Air Flow of Fans

Figures and Dimensions

Standard Models

Wall-Through Models

Wiring Diagram

Cable Specifications

Power Cables

Cable specification for international without USA / Canada

Cable specification for USA / Canada

Dimensioning variables of the table values

Control Cables

Terminals

Power Terminals

Power Terminals Figure

Power Terminals Description

Notes on DC-bus terminals

Control Terminals

Control terminals figure

Control terminals description

Digital input NPN / PNP wiring

Digital output DO1a, DO1b load pull-up / pull-down wiring

Analog input terminals (AI1, AI2, EAI, +10 V, +5 V, Earth and GND)

Relay output terminals

Notes on DC_IN terminal

EMC Requirements

General Information

The electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) or electromagnetic interference (EMI) includes the following requirements

Noise Immunity in the Drive System

Basic structure for noise immunity

Minimum immunity requirements for PDSs intended for use in the second environment

Evaluation criterion

Noise Emission of the Drive System

Ensuring the EMC Requirements

EMC Measures for Design and Installation

Rules for Design of Installations with Drive Controllers in Compliance with EMC

EMC-optimal Installation in Facility and Control Cabinet

Control Cabinet Mounting according to Interference Areas - Exemplary Arrangements

Design and Installation in Area A - Interference-free Area of Control Cabinet

Design and Installation in Area B - Interference-susceptible Area of Control Cabinet

Design and Installation in Area C - Strongly Interference-susceptible Area of Control Cabinet

Ground Connections

Installing Signal Lines and Signal Cables

General Measures of Radio Interference Suppression for Relays,

Contactors, Switches, Chokes and Inductive Loads

LED Panel

LED Display

Dust Cover

LED Indicator

Operating Descriptions

Fast Access to Parameters with Button Combinations

Digit Shifting Function for Modification of Parameter Values

LCD Panel

LCD Panel Introduction

Operating Example

Checklist before Quick Start

Step 1: Check application conditions

Step 2: Check mounting conditions

Step 3: Check the wiring

Quick Start Parameters

Control the Motor

Motor Parameters Auto-Tuning

Possible Errors during Quick Start and Respective Solutions

Restoring Parameters to Factory Defaults

b0: Basic System

Access Authority Setting

Parameter Initialization

Parameter Copy

Parameter Set Switch

Password Protection

High Frequency Mode

C0: Power Control

Control Mode Selection

Normal Duty / Heavy Duty Setting

Carrier Frequency Setting

PWM Mode

Automatic Voltage Stabilization

Brake Chopper Control

Overvoltage suppression

Overvoltage Prevention Mode

Stall Overvoltage Prevention

Stall Overcurrent Prevention

Phase Loss Protection

Converter Overload Pre-Warning

Power Loss Ride-Through

Fan Control and Maintenance

C1: Motor and System

Motor Type Selection

Motor Parameter Tuning

Motor Name Plate Data

Motor Internal Data

Motor Thermal Model

Motor Overload Pre-Warning

Motor Thermal Sensor Selection

C2: V/f Control

V/f Curve Setting

Slip Compensation

Hz Output Mode

Torque Boost Setting

Heavy Load Stabilization

Light Load Oscillation Damping

Current Limitation

C3: Vector Control

Speed Loop Setting

Speed Observer Mode

Current Loop Setting

Torque Limitation

Speed Monitor

Fieldweakening control for PMSM

Torque Control

Initial Angle Detection

SVC switch point

Speed Damping Factor for SVC

d0: Basic Monitoring

d1: Enhanced Monitoring

E0: Set Point and Control

Frequency Setting Source

Run Command Source

Digital Setting Frequency

Frequency Limitations

Direction Control

Acceleration and Deceleration Setting

Start Mode Configuration

Power Loss Restart

Stop Mode Configuration

Stop DC-braking

Overexcitation Braking

Emergency Stop

Jog Function

Skip Frequency

E1: Input Terminal

Digital Input Configuration

2- and 3-Wire Control

Digital Input Frequency Change Function

Pulse Input Configuration

Analog Input Configuration

Motor Temperature Sensor Channel

E2: Output Terminal

Digital Output Configuration

Pulse Output Setting

Relay Output

Analog Output Configuration

Frequency Detection Function

Pulse Counter Function

E3: Multi-Speed and Simple PLC

Simple PLC and Multi-Speed Setting

Parameters

Multi-Speed Setting

Simple PLC setting

Stop and Pause Simple PLC Control

Indication of Simple PLC Status

E4: PID Control

PID Control Setting

Parameters

Selecting the Reference and Feedback

PID feedback polarity

Control Loop Configuration

PID Regulation Mode Setting

PID Feedforward Control

PID Deactivation by Digital Input

PID Status Indication

E5: Extended Application Functions

High Resolution Current Display

Speed Display Scaling

Pump Dry and Leakage Protection

Sleep Function

E8: Standard Communication

Modbus Protocol

Brief Introduction

Protocol Description

Modbus Interface

Modbus Function and Message Format

Communication Mapping Register Address Distribution

Modbus Communication Example

Special Notes

Communication Networking

Communication Selection

Communication Error Reaction

Modbus Settings

Setting the Data Transmission Rate

Setting the Data Format

Setting the Local Address

Setting Command Signal Type

Setting Modbus transmission mode

E9: Error Log and Automatic Error Reset

Automatic Error Reset

Related parameters

Detailed description

List of errors with automatic error reset capability

Error Log

F0: ASF Basic Settings

ASF Status

ASF function description

ASF Parameter

ASF Management

ASF Diagnosis

ASF Command Values

H0: Extension Card General Settings

Status and Control Words

Extension Card Identification

H1: PROFIBUS Settings

PROFIBUS Basic Settings

PROFIBUS Card LED

PROFIBUS Output PZD Setting

Input PZD Setting

PROFIBUS Protocol

Protocol Description

PROFIBUS Function

Requirements for PROFIBUS Link Cable

Relationship between Communication Rate and Cables

EMC Measures

Periodical Data Communication

Communication parameter configuration

H2: CANopen Card Parameters

General Introduction

LED Status Introduction

Converter Configuration

Overview

COB-Identifiers

Object Dictionary

Process Data Objects (PDO)

Process Data Objects (PDO) Configuration

Service Data Objects (SDO)

Network Management Objects (NMT)

Emergency Service (EMCY)

Synchronisation Service (SYNC)

Device Profile

Related Communication Parameters

CANopen Option Card Parameters

H8: IO&IO Plus Card Parameters

IO & IO Plus Card Analog Input Configuration

IO & IO Plus Card Analog output Configuration

IO & IO Plus Card Digital Input Configuration

IO & IO Plus Card Digital Output Configuration

IO Card Relay Output Configuration

I/O & I/O plus card diagnosis

H9: Relay Card Parameters

Relay Card Output Configuration

U0: General Panel Parameters

U1: LED Panel Parameters

U2: LCD Panel Parameters

Display of LED Characters

Status Code

Warning Code

Error Code

Error 1 (OC-1), Error 2 (OC-2), Error 3 (OC-3) : Overcurrent

Error 4 (OE-1), Error 5 (OE-2), Error 6 (OE-3) : Overvoltage

Error 8 (UE-1): Undervoltage during Run

Error 9 (SC): Surge Current or Short Circuit

Error 10 (IPH.L): Input Phase Loss

Error 11 (OPH.L): Output Phase Loss

Error 12 (ESS-): Soft Start Error

Error 20 (OL -1): Converter Overload

Error 21 (OH): Converter over Temperature

Error 23 (FF): Fan Failure

Error 24 (Pdr): Pump Dry

Error 25 (CoL -): Command Value Lost

Error 30 (OL -2): Motor Overload

Error 31 (Ot): Motor over Temperature

Error 32 (t-Er): Motor Parameter Tuning Error

Error 33 (AdE-): Motor Angle Detection Error

Error 35 (SPE-): Speed Control Loop Error

Error 38 (AibE): Analog Input Broken Wire Detection

Error 39 (EPS-): DC_IN Power Supply Error

Error 40 (dir1): Forward Running Lock Error

Error 41 (dir2): Reverse Running Lock Error

Error 42 (E-St): Terminal Error Signal

Error 43 (FFE-): Firmware Version Mismatch

Error 44 (rS-): Modbus Communication Error

Error 45 (E.Par): Parameter Settings Invalid

Error 46 (U.Par): Unknown Parameter Restore Error

Error 48 (idA-): Internal Communication Error

Error 49 (idP-): Internal Parameter Error

Error 50 (idE-): Converter Internal Error

Error 51 (OCd-): Extension Card Internal Error

Error 52 (OCc): Extension Card PDOs Configuration Error

Error 53 (Fdi-): No Valid Process Data

Error 54 (PcE-): Remote Control Communication Error

Error 55 (PbrE): Parameter Backup / Restore Error

Error 56 (PrEF): Parameter Restore Error after Firmware Update

Error 60 (ASF-): Application Firmware Error

Error 61

Error Handling

Restarting after Power Loss

Automatic Error Reset

Error Reset by Digital Input

Brief Introduction

Basic Communication Settings

Selection of the Communication Protocol

Setting the Data Transmission Rate

Setting the Data Format

Setting the Local Address

Setting Command Signal Type

Communication Disruption and Response

Modbus Protocol

Protocol Description

Brief introduction

Transmission

Modbus Interface

Modbus Function and Message Format

Supported functions

Function example

Function 0x06: Write one register word

Function 0x08: Diagnostics

Function 0x10: Write N register words, range: 1

Function 0x17: Read/Write N register words, range: 1

Error code and exception code

Communication Mapping Register Address Distribution

Frequency converter parameter address

Frequency converter register address

Communication control register (0x7F00)

Communication state register (0x7FA0)

Additional status register (0x7FA1)

Fault status register (0x7FB0)

Communication frequency setting register (0x7F01)

Torque setting register (0x7F02)

Torque FWD limitation register (0x7F03)

Torque REV limitation register (0x7F04)

Speed limitation register (0x7F05)

Modbus Communication Example

Special Notes

Communication Networking

Networking

Recommendations on networking

PROFIBUS Protocol

Protocol Description

PROFIBUS Function

Requirements for PROFIBUS Link

Relationship between Communication Rate and Cables

EMC Measures

Periodical Data Communication

PPO telegram type

PKW parameter area

PZD process data area

Communication parameter configuration

Communication related parameter settings

Parameter configuration of master

GSD file

Optional Accessories

Operating Panel

Panel Mounting Plate

Function Description

Recommended Opening Dimensions at Control Cabinet

Mounting the Plate and the Operating Panel

Step 1

Step 2

Step 3

Step 4

Communication Cable for Control Cabinet

Extension Card Module

Dimensions of Extension Card Module

Extension Card Module Mounting

Extension Module Mounting

I/O Module

I/O Card

I/O card terminals label

I/O card terminals descriptions

I/O card terminals wiring

Relay Card

Relay card terminals label

Relay card terminals descriptions

Relay card terminals wiring

I/O Plus Card

Terminals Mapping

Terminals Description

Wiring

Communication Module

PROFIBUS Interface

PROFIBUS Card LED

CANopen Card

Interface Introduction

Cable and Connection

Plug-in Connector for Control Section

External Mains EMC Filter

External Mains EMC Filter Type

Technical Data

Dimensions

Electric data

External Brake Resistor

Braking Ratio

Brake Resistor Type for Braking Ratio of

Brake Resistor Type for Braking Ratio of

Brake Resistor Dimensions

Installation of Brake Resistor

Shielding Connector

Safety Instructions

Daily Inspection

Periodic Inspection

Expired replacement

Removable Components Maintenance

Construction Overview

Disassembly of the Operating Panel

Disassembly of Fans

Service and support

Environmental protection

Disposal

Environmental protection and disposal

Frequency Converter Type Coding

Operating Panel Type Coding

Panel Mounting Plate Type Coding

Communication Cable for Control Cabinet Type Coding

Extension Accessories Type Coding

External EMC Filter Type Coding

External Brake Resistor Type Coding

Shielding Connector Type Coding

Terminology and Abbreviation in Parameter List

Group b: System Parameters

b0: Basic system parameters

Group C: Power Parameters

C0: Power control parameters

C1: Motor and system parameters

C2: V/f control parameters

C3: Vector control parameters

Group E: Function Control Parameters

E0: Set point and control parameters

E1: Input terminal parameters

E2: Output terminal parameters

E3: Multi-speed and simple PLC parameters

E4: PID control parameters

E5: Extended function parameters

E8: Standard communication parameters

E9: Protection and error parameters

Group F0: ASF Parameters

Group H: Extension Card Parameters

H0: Extension card general parameters

H1: PROFIBUS card parameters

H2: CANopen card parameters

H8: I/O card parameters

H9: Relay card parameters

Group U: Panel Parameters

U0: General panel parameters

U1: LED panel parameters

U2: LCD panel parameters

Group d0: Monitoring Parameters

Group d1: Enhanced Monitoring

Index

Other ManualsLib Projects

Frequency Converter

VFC x615 Series
VFC 3615 / VFC 5615

Operating Instructions
R912009377

Edition 01



Record of Revision

Edition	Release Date	Notes
DOK-RCON04-VFC-X615***-IT01-EN-P	2024.04	First release

Version Matching Table

Firmware	Operating Instructions	Quick Start Guide
03V44	Edition 01	Edition 02

Copyright

© Bosch Rexroth (Xi'an) Electric Drives and Controls Co., Ltd. 2024
All rights reserved, also regarding any disposal, exploitation, reproduction, editing, distribution, as well as in the event of applications for industrial property rights.

Liability

The specified data is intended for product description purposes only and shall not be deemed to be a guaranteed characteristic unless expressly stipulated in the contract. All rights are reserved with respect to the content of this documentation and the availability of the product.

D Deutsch	USA English	F Français
⚠️ WARNUNG Lebensgefahr bei Nichtbeachtung der nachstehenden Sicherheitshinweise! Nehmen Sie die Produkte erst dann in Betrieb, nachdem Sie die mit dem Produkt gelieferten Unterlagen und Sicherheitshinweise vollständig durchgelesen, verstanden und beachtet haben. Sollten Ihnen keine Unterlagen in Ihrer Landessprache vorliegen, wenden Sie sich an Ihren zuständigen Rexroth-Vertriebspartner. Nur qualifiziertes Personal darf an Antriebskomponenten arbeiten. Nähere Erläuterungen zu den Sicherheitshinweisen entnehmen Sie Kapitel 1 dieser Dokumentation.	⚠️ WARNING Danger to life in case of non-compliance with the below-mentioned safety instructions! Do not attempt to install or put these products into operation until you have completely read, understood and observed the documents supplied with the product. If no documents in your language were supplied, please consult your Rexroth sales partner. Only qualified persons may work with drive components. For detailed explanations on the safety instructions, see chapter 1 of this documentation.	⚠️ AVERTISSEMENT Danger de mort en cas de non-respect des consignes de sécurité figurant ci-après ! Ne mettez les produits en service qu'après avoir lu complètement et après avoir compris et respecté les documents et les consignes de sécurité fournis avec le produit. Si vous ne disposez pas de la documentation dans votre langue, merci de consulter votre partenaire Rexroth. Seul un personnel qualifié est autorisé à travailler sur les composants d'entraînement. Vous trouverez des explications plus détaillées relatives aux consignes de sécurité au chapitre 1 de la présente documentation.
⚠️ WARNUNG Hohe elektrische Spannung! Lebensgefahr durch elektrischen Schlag! Betreiben Sie Antriebskomponenten nur mit fest installiertem Schutzleiter. Schalten Sie vor Zugriff auf Antriebskomponenten die Spannungsversorgung aus. Beachten Sie die Entladezeiten von Kondensatoren.	⚠️ WARNING High electrical voltage! Danger to life by electric shock! Only operate drive components with a permanently installed equipment grounding conductor. Disconnect the power supply before accessing drive components. Observe the discharge times of the capacitors.	⚠️ AVERTISSEMENT Tensions électriques élevées ! Danger de mort par électrocution ! N'exploitez les composants d'entraînement que si un conducteur de protection est installé de manière permanente. Avant d'intervenir sur les composants d'entraînement, coupez toujours la tension d'alimentation. Tenez compte des délais de décharge de condensateurs.
⚠️ WARNUNG Gefahrbringende Bewegungen! Lebensgefahr! Halten Sie sich nicht im Bewegungsbereich von Maschinen und Maschinenteilen auf. Verhindern Sie den unbeabsichtigten Zutritt für Personen. Bringen Sie vor dem Zugriff oder Zutritt in den Gefahrenbereich die Antriebe sicher zum Stillstand.	⚠️ WARNING Dangerous movements! Danger to life! Keep free and clear of the ranges of motion of machines and moving machine parts. Prevent personnel from accidentally entering the range of motion of machines. Make sure that the drives are brought to safe standstill before accessing or entering the danger zone.	⚠️ AVERTISSEMENT Mouvements entraînant une situation dangereuse ! Danger de mort ! Ne séjournez pas dans la zone de mouvement de machines et de composants de machines. Évitez tout accès accidentel de personnes. Avant toute intervention ou tout accès dans la zone de danger, assurez-vous de l'arrêt préalable de tous les entraînements.

D Deutsch	USA English	F Français
⚠️ WARNUNG Elektromagnetische / magnetische Felder! Gesundheitsgefahr für Personen mit Herzschrittmachern, metallischen Implantaten oder Hörgeräten! Zutritt zu Bereichen, in denen Antriebskomponenten montiert und betrieben werden, ist für oben genannten Personen untersagt bzw. nur nach Rücksprache mit einem Arzt erlaubt.	⚠️ WARNING Electromagnetic / magnetic fields! Health hazard for persons with heart pacemakers, metal implants or hearing aids! The above-mentioned persons are not allowed to enter areas in which drive components are mounted and operated, or rather are only allowed to do this after they consulted a doctor.	⚠️ AVERTISSEMENT Champs électromagnétiques / magnétiques ! Risque pour la santé des porteurs de stimulateurs cardiaques, d'implants métalliques et d'appareils auditifs ! L'accès aux zones où sont montés et exploités les composants d'entraînement est interdit aux personnes susmentionnées ou bien ne leur est autorisé qu'après consultation d'un médecin.
⚠️ VORSICHT Heiße Oberflächen (> 60 °C)! Verbrennungsgefahr! Vermeiden Sie das Berühren von metallischen Oberflächen (z. B. Kühlkörpern). Abkühlzeit der Antriebskomponenten einhalten (mind. 15 Minuten).	⚠️ CAUTION Hot surfaces (> 60 °C [140 °F])! Risk of burns! Do not touch metallic surfaces (e.g. heat sinks). Comply with the time required for the drive components to cool down (at least 15 minutes).	⚠️ ATTENTION Surfaces chaudes (> 60 °C)! Risque de brûlure ! Évitez de toucher des surfaces métalliques (p. ex. dissipateurs thermiques). Respectez le délai de refroidissement des composants d'entraînement (au moins 15 minutes).
⚠️ VORSICHT Unsachgemäße Handhabung bei Transport und Montage! Verletzungsgefahr! Verwenden Sie geeignete Montage- und Transporteinrichtungen. Benutzen Sie geeignetes Werkzeug und persönliche Schutzausrüstung.	⚠️ CAUTION Improper handling during transport and mounting! Risk of injury! Use suitable equipment for mounting and transport. Use suitable tools and personal protective equipment.	⚠️ ATTENTION Manipulation incorrecte lors du transport et du montage ! Risque de blessure ! Utilisez des dispositifs de montage et de transport adéquats. Utilisez des outils appropriés et votre équipement de protection personnel.
⚠️ VORSICHT Unsachgemäße Handhabung von Batterien! Verletzungsgefahr! Versuchen Sie nicht, leere Batterien zu reaktivieren oder aufzuladen (Explosions- und Verätzungsgefahr). Zerlegen oder beschädigen Sie keine Batterien. Werfen Sie Batterien nicht ins Feuer.	⚠️ CAUTION Improper handling of batteries! Risk of injury! Do not attempt to reactivate or recharge low batteries (risk of explosion and chemical burns). Do not dismantle or damage batteries. Do not throw batteries into open flames.	⚠️ ATTENTION Manipulation incorrecte de piles! Risque de blessure! N'essayez pas de réactiver des piles vides ou de les charger (risque d'explosion et de brûlure par acide). Ne désassemblez et n'endommagez pas les piles. Ne jetez pas des piles dans le feu.

E Español	P Português	I Italiano
⚠ ADVERTENCIA ¡Peligro de muerte en caso de no observar las siguientes indicaciones de seguridad! Los productos no se pueden poner en servicio hasta después de haber leído por completo, comprendido y tenido en cuenta la documentación y las advertencias de seguridad que se incluyen en la entrega. Si no dispusiera de documentación en el idioma de su país, dirijase a su distribuidor competente de Rexroth. Solo el personal debidamente cualificado puede trabajar en componentes de accionamiento. Encontrará más detalles sobre las indicaciones de seguridad en el capítulo 1 de esta documentación.	⚠ ATENÇÃO Perigo de vida em caso de inobservância das seguintes instruções de segurança! Utilize apenas os produtos depois de ter lido, compreendido e tomado em consideração a documentação e as instruções de segurança fornecidas juntamente com o produto. Se não tiver disponível a documentação na sua língua, dirija-se ao seu parceiro de venda responsável da Rexroth. Apenas pessoal qualificado pode trabalhar nos componentes de acionamento. Explicações mais detalhadas relativamente às instruções de segurança constam no capítulo 1 desta documentação.	⚠ AVVERTENZA Pericolo di morte in caso di inosservanza delle seguenti indicazioni di sicurezza! Mettere in funzione i prodotti solo dopo aver letto, compreso e osservato per intero la documentazione e le indicazioni di sicurezza fornite con il prodotto. Se non dovesse essere presente la documentazione nella vostra lingua, siete pregati di rivolgervi al rivenditore Rexroth competente. Solo personale qualificato può eseguire lavori sui componenti di comando. Per ulteriori spiegazioni riguardanti le indicazioni di sicurezza consultare il capitolo 1 di questa documentazione.
⚠ ADVERTENCIA ¡Alta tensión eléctrica! ¡Peligro de muerte por descarga eléctrica! Active sólo los componentes de accionamiento con el conductor protector firmemente instalado. Desconecte la alimentación eléctrica antes de manipular los componentes de accionamiento. Tenga en cuenta los tiempos de descarga de los condensadores.	⚠ ATENÇÃO Alta tensão elétrica! Perigo de vida devido a choque elétrico! Opere componentes de acionamento apenas com condutores de proteção instalados. Desligue a alimentação de tensão antes de aceder aos componentes de acionamento. Respeite os períodos de descarga dos condensadores.	⚠ AVVERTENZA Alta tensione elettrica! Pericolo di morte in seguito a scosse elettriche! Mettere in esercizio i componenti di comando solo con conduttore di messa a terra ben installato. Staccare l'alimentazione prima di intervenire sui componenti di comando. Osservare i tempi di scarica del condensatore.
⚠ ADVERTENCIA ¡Movimientos peligrosos! ¡Peligro de muerte! No permanezca en la zona de movimiento de las máquinas ni de sus piezas. Impida el acceso accidental de personas. Antes de acceder o introducir las manos en la zona de peligro, los accionamientos se tienen que haber parado con seguridad.	⚠ ATENÇÃO Movimentos perigosos! Perigo de vida! Não permaneça na área de movimentação das máquinas e das peças das máquinas. Evite o acesso involuntário para pessoas. Antes de entrar ou aceder à área perigosa, imobilize os acionamentos de forma segura.	⚠ AVVERTENZA Movimenti pericolosi! Pericolo di morte! Non sostare nelle zone di manovra delle macchine e delle loro parti. Impedire un accesso non autorizzato per le persone. Prima di accedere alla zona di pericolo, arrestare e bloccare gli azionamenti.

E Español	P Português	I Italiano
⚠ ADVERTENCIA ¡Campos electromagnéticos/magnéticos! ¡Peligro para la salud de las personas con marcapasos, implantes metálicos o audífonos! El acceso de las personas arriba mencionadas a las zonas de montaje o funcionamiento de los componentes de accionamiento está prohibido, salvo que lo autorice previamente un médico.	⚠ ATENÇÃO Campos eletromagnéticos / magnéticos! Perigo de saúde para pessoas com marcapassos, implantes metálicos ou aparelhos auditivos! Acesso às áreas, nas quais os componentes de acionamento são montados e operados, é proibido para as pessoas em cima mencionadas ou apenas após permissão de um médico.	⚠ AVVERTENZA Campi elettromagnetici / magnetici! Pericolo per la salute delle persone portatrici di pacemaker, protesi metalliche o apparecchi acustici! L'accesso alle zone in cui sono installati o in funzione componenti di comando è vietato per le persone sopra citate o consentito solo dopo un colloquio con il medico.
⚠ ATENCIÓN ¡Superficies calientes (> 60 °C)! ¡Peligro de quemaduras! Evite el contacto con las superficies calientes (p. ej., disipadores de calor). Observe el tiempo de enfriamiento de los componentes de accionamiento (mín. 15 minutos).	⚠ CUIDADO Superfícies quentes (> 60 °C)! Perigo de queimaduras! Evite tocar superfícies metálicas (p. ex. radiadores). Respeite o tempo de arrefecimento dos componentes de accionamento (mín. 15 minutos).	⚠ ATTENZIONE Superfici bollenti (> 60 °C)! Pericolo di ustioni! Evitare il contatto con superfici metalliche (ad es. dissipatori di calore). Rispettare i tempi di raffreddamento dei componenti di comando (almeno 15 minuti).
⚠ ATENCIÓN ¡Manipulación inadecuada en el transporte y montaje! ¡Peligro de lesiones! Utilice dispositivos de montaje y de transporte adecuados. Utilice herramientas adecuadas y equipo de protección personal.	⚠ CUIDADO Manejo incorreto no transporte e montagem! Perigo de ferimentos! Utilize dispositivos de montagem e de transporte adequados. Utilize ferramentas e equipamento de proteção individual adequados.	⚠ ATTENZIONE Manipolazione inappropriata durante il trasporto e il montaggio! Pericolo di lesioni! Utilizzare dispositivi di montaggio e trasporto adatti. Utilizzare attrezzi adatti ed equipaggiamento di protezione personale.
⚠ ATENCIÓN ¡Manejo inadecuado de las pilas! ¡Peligro de lesiones! No trate de reactivar o cargar pilas descargadas (peligro de explosión y cauterización). No desarme ni dañe las pilas. No tire las pilas al fuego.	⚠ CUIDADO Manejo incorreto de baterias! Perigo de ferimentos! Não tente reativar nem carregar baterias vazias (perigo de explosão e de queimaduras com ácido). Não desmonte nem danifique as baterias. Não deite as baterias no fogo.	⚠ ATTENZIONE Utilizzo inappropriato delle batterie! Pericolo di lesioni! Non tentare di riattivare o ricaricare batterie scariche (pericolo di esplosione e corrosione). Non scomporre o danneggiare le batterie. Non gettare le batterie nel fuoco.

S Svenska	DK Dansk	NL Nederlands
⚠️ VARNING Livsfara om följande säkerhetsanvisningar inte följs! Använd inte produkterna innan du har läst och förstått den dokumentation och de säkerhetsanvisningar som medföljer produkten, och följ alla anvisningar. Kontakta din Rexroth-återförsäljare om dokumentationen inte medföljer på ditt språk. Endast kvalificerad personal får arbeta med drivkomponenterna. Se kapitel 1 i denna dokumentation för närmare beskrivningar av säkerhetsanvisningarna.	⚠️ ADVARSEL Livsfare ved manglende overholdelse af nedenstående sikkerhedsanvisninger! Tag ikke produktet i brug, før du har læst og forstået den dokumentation og de sikkerhedsanvisninger, som følger med produktet, og overhold de givne anvisninger. Kontakt din Rexroth-forhandler, hvis dokumentationen ikke medfølger på dit sprog. Det er kun kvalificeret personale, der må arbejde på drive components. Nærmere forklaringer til sikkerhedsanvisningerne fremgår af kapitel 1 i denne dokumentation.	⚠️ WAARSCHUWING Levensgevaar bij niet-naleving van onderstaande veiligheidsinstructies! Stel de producten pas in bedrijf nadat u de met het product geleverde documenten en de veiligheidsinformatie volledig gelezen, begrepen en in acht genomen heeft. Mocht u niet beschikken over documenten in uw landstaal, kunt u contact opnemen met uw plaatselijke Rexroth distributiepartner. Uitsluitend gekwalificeerd personeel mag aan de aandrijvingscomponenten werken. Meer informatie over de veiligheidsinstructies vindt u in hoofdstuk 1 van deze documentatie.
⚠️ VARNING Hög elektrisk spänning! Livsfara genom elchock! Använd endast drivkomponenterna med fastmonterad skyddsledare. Koppla bort spänningsförsörjningen före arbete på drivkomponenter. Var medveten om kondensatorernas urladdningstid.	⚠️ ADVARSEL Elektrisk højspænding! Livsfare på grund af elektrisk stød! Drive components må kun benyttes med et fast installeret jordstik. Sørg for at koble spændingsforsyningen fra, inden du rører ved drive components. Overhold kondensatorernes afladningstider.	⚠️ WAARSCHUWING Hoge elektrische spanning! Levensgevaar door elektrische schok! Bedien de aandrijvingscomponenten uitsluitend met vast geïnstalleerde aardleiding. Schakel voor toegang tot aandrijvingscomponenten de spanningsvoorziening uit. Neem de ontlaadtijden van condensatoren in acht.
⚠️ VARNING Farliga rörelser! Livsfara! Uppehåll dig inte inom maskiners och maskindelars rörelseområde. Förhindra att obehöriga personer får tillträde. Innan du börjar arbeta eller vistas inom drivsystemets riskområde måste maskinen vara stillastående.	⚠️ ADVARSEL Farlige bevægelser! Livsfare! Du må ikke opholde dig inden for maskiners og maskindeles bevægelsesradius. Sørg for, at ingen personer kan få utilsigtet adgang. Standts drevene helt, inden du rører ved drevene eller træder ind i deres fareområde.	⚠️ WAARSCHUWING Risicovolle bewegingen! Levensgevaar! Houdt u niet op in het bewegingsbereik van machines en machineonderdelen. Voorkom dat personen onbedoeld toegang verkrijgen. Voor toegang tot de gevaarlijke zone moeten de aandrijvingen veilig tot stilstand gebracht zijn.

S Svenska	DK Dansk	NL Nederlands
⚠️ VARNING Elektromagnetiska/magnetiska fält! Hälsofara för personer med pacemaker, implantat av metall eller hörapparat! Det är förbjudet för ovan nämnda personer (eller kräver överläggning med läkare) att beträda områden där drivkomponenter är monterade och i drift.	⚠️ ADVARSEL Elektromagnetiske/magnetiske felter! Sundhedsfare for personer med pacemakere, metalliske implantater eller høreapparater! For disse personer er der adgang forbudt eller kun adgang med tilladelse fra læge til de områder, hvor drive components monteres og drives.	⚠️ WAARSCHUWING Elektromagnetische / magnetische velden! Gevaar voor de gezondheid van personen met pacemakers, metalen implantaten of hoorapparaten! Toegang tot gebieden, waarin aandrijvingscomponenten worden gemonteerd en bediend, is verboden voor voornoemde personen of uitsluitend toegestaan na overleg met een arts.
⚠️ OBSERVERA Varma ytor (> 60 °C)! Risk för brännskador! Undvik att vidröra metalltytor (t.ex. kylelement). Var medveten om att det tar tid för drivkomponenterna att svalna (minst 15 minuter).	⚠️ FORSIGTIG Varme overflader (> 60 °C)! Risiko for forbrændinger! Undgå at berøre metaloverflader (f.eks. køleelementer). Overhold drive components nedkølingstid (min. 15 min.).	⚠️ VOORZICHTIG Hete oppervlakken (> 60 °C)! Verbrandingsgevaar! Voorkom contact met metalen oppervlakken (bijv. Koellichamen). Afkoeltijd van de aandrijvingscomponenten in acht nemen (min. 15 minuten).
⚠️ OBSERVERA Felaktig hantering vid transport och montering! Skaderisk! Använd passande monterings- och transportanordningar. Använd lämpliga verktyg och personlig skyddsutrustning.	⚠️ FORSIGTIG Fejlhåndtering ved transport og montering! Risiko for kvæstelser! Benyt egnede monterings- og transportanordninger. Benyt egnet værktøj og personligt sikkerhedsudstyr.	⚠️ VOORZICHTIG Onjuist gebruik bij transport en montage! Letselgevaar! Gebruik geschikte montage- en transportinrichtingen. Gebruik geschikt gereedschap en een persoonlijke veiligheidsuitrusting.
⚠️ OBSERVERA Felaktig hantering av batterier! Skaderisk! Försök inte återaktivera eller ladda upp batterier (risk för explosioner och frätskador). Batterierna får inte tas isär eller skadas. Släng inte batterierna i elden.	⚠️ FORSIGTIG Fejlhåndtering af batterier! Risiko for kvæstelser! Forsøg ikke at genaktivere eller oplade tomme batterier (eksplosions- og ætsningsfare). Undlad at skille batterier ad eller at beskadige dem. Smid ikke batterier ind i åben ild.	⚠️ VOORZICHTIG Onjuist gebruik van batterijen! Letselgevaar! Probeer nooit lege batterijen te reactiveren of op te laden (explosiegevaar en gevaar voor beschadiging van weefsel door cauterisatie). Batterijen niet demonteren of beschadigen. Nooit batterijen in het vuur werpen.

 Suomi	 Polski	 Český
VAROITUS Näiden turvaohjeiden noudattamatta jättämisestä on seurauksena hengenvaara! Ota tuote käyttöön vasta sen jälkeen, kun olet lukenut läpi tuotteen mukana toimitetut asiakirjat ja turvallisuusohjeet, ymmärtänyt ne ja ottanut ne huomioon. Jos asiakirjoja ei ole saatavana omalla äidinkielelläsi, ota yhteys asianomaiseen Rexrothin myyntiedustajaan. Käyttölaitteiden komponenttien parissa saa työskennellä ainoastaan valtuutettu henkilöstö. Lisätietoa turvaohjeista löydät tämän dokumentaation luvusta 1.	OSTRZEŻENIE Zagrożenie życia w razie nieprzestrzegania poniższych wskazówek bezpieczeństwa! Nie uruchamiać produktów przed uprzednim przeczytaniem i pełnym zrozumieniem wszystkich dokumentów dostarczonych wraz z produktem oraz wskazówek bezpieczeństwa. Należy przestrzegać wszystkich zawartych tam zaleceń. W przypadku braku dokumentów w Państwa języku, prosimy o skontaktowanie się z lokalnym partnerem handlowym Rexroth. Przy zespołach napędowych może pracować wyłącznie wykwalifikowany personel. Blizsze objaśnienia wskazówek bezpieczeństwa znajdują się w Rozdziale 1 niniejszej dokumentacji.	VAROVÁNÍ Nebezpečí života v případě nedodržení níže uvedených bezpečnostních pokynů! Před uvedením výrobků do provozu si přečtěte kompletní dokumentaci a bezpečnostní pokyny dodávané s výrobkem, pochopte je a dodržujte. Nemáte-li k dispozici podklady ve svém jazyce, obraťte se na příslušného obchodního partnera Rexroth. Na komponentách pohonu smí pracovat pouze kvalifikovaný personál. Podrobnější vysvětlení k bezpečnostním pokynům naleznete v kapitole 1 této dokumentace.
VAROITUS Voimakas sähköjännite! Sähköiskun aiheuttama hengenvaara! Käytä käyttölaitteen komponentteja ainoastaan maadoitusjohtimen ollessa kiinteästi asennettuna. Katkaise jännitteensyöttö ennen käyttölaitteen komponenteille suoritettavien töiden aloittamista. Huomioi kondensaattoreiden purkautajat.	OSTRZEŻENIE Wysokie napięcie elektryczne! Zagrożenie życia w wyniku porażenia prądem! Zespoły napędu mogą być eksploatowane wyłącznie z zainstalowanym na stałe przewodem ochronnym. Przed uzyskaniem dostępu do podzespołów napędu należy odłączyć zasilanie elektryczne. Zwracać uwagę na czas rozładowania kondensatorów.	VAROVÁNÍ Vysoké elektrické napětí! Nebezpečí života při zasažení elektrickým proudem! Komponenty pohonu smí být v provozu pouze s pevně nainstalovaným ochranným vodičem. Než začnete zasahovat do komponent pohonu, odpojte je od elektrického napájení. Dodržujte vybíjecí časy kondenzátorů.
VAROITUS Vaarallisia liikkeitä! Hengenvaara! Älä oleskele koneiden tai koneenosien liikealueella. Pidä huolta siitä, ettei muita henkilöitä pääse alueelle vahingossa. Pysäytä käyttölaitteet varmasti ennen vaara-alueelle koskemista tai menemistä.	OSTRZEŻENIE Niebezpieczne ruchy! Zagrożenie życia! Nie wolno przebywać w obszarze pracy maszyny i jej elementów. Nie dopuszczać osób niepowołanych do obszaru pracy maszyny. Przed dotknięciem urządzenia/maszyny lub zbliżeniem się do obszaru zagrożenia należy zgodnie z zasadami bezpieczeństwa wyłączyć napędy.	VAROVÁNÍ Nebezpečné pohyby! Nebezpečí života! Nezdržujte se v dosahu pohybu strojů a jejich součástí. Zabraňte náhodnému přístupu osob. Před zásahem nebo vstupem do nebezpečného prostoru bezpečně zastavte pohony.

 Suomi	 Polski	 Český
▲VAROITUS Sähkömagneettisia/magneettisia kenttiä! Terveystieteiden haittojen vaara henkilöille, joilla on sydämentahdistin, metallinen implantti tai kuulolaite! Yllä mainituilta henkilöiltä on pääsy kielletty alueille, joilla asennetaan tai käytetään käyttölaitteen komponentteja, tai heidän on ensin saatava tähän suostumus lääkäriltään.	▲OSTRZEŻENIE Poła elektromagnetyczne / magnetyczne! Zagrożenie zdrowia dla osób z rozrusznikiem serca, metalowymi implantami lub aparatami słuchowymi! Wstęp na teren, gdzie odbywa się montaż i eksploatacja napędów jest dla ww. osób zabroniony względnie dozwolony po konsultacji z lekarzem.	▲VAROVÁNÍ Elektromagnetická/magnetická pole! Nebezpečí pro zdraví osob s kardiostimulátory, kovovými implantáty nebo naslouchadly! Výše uvedené osoby mají zakázán přístup do prostorů, kde jsou montovány a používány komponenty pohonu, resp. ho mají povolen pouze po poradě s lékařem.
▲HUOMIO Kuumia pintoja (> 60 °C)! Palovammojen vaara! Vältä metallipintojen koskettamista (esim. jäähdytyslevyt). Noudata käyttölaitteen komponenttien jäähtymisaikoa (väh. 15 minuuttia).	▲PRZESTROGA Gorące powierzchnie (> 60 °C)! Niebezpieczeństwo poparzenia! Unikać kontaktu z powierzchniami metalowymi (np. radiatorami). Przestrzegać czasów schładzania podzespołów napędów (min. 15 minut).	▲UPOZORNĚNÍ Horké povrchy (> 60 °C)! Nebezpečí popálení! Nedotýkejte se kovových povrchů (např. chladičů těles). Dodržujte dobu ochlazení komponent pohonu (min. 15 minut).
▲HUOMIO Epäasianmukainen käsittely kuljetuksen ja asennuksen yhteydessä! Loukkaantumisvaara! Käytä soveltuvia asennus- ja kuljetuslaitteita. Käytä omia työkaluja ja henkilökohtaisia suojavarusteita.	▲PRZESTROGA Niewłaściwe obchodzenie się podczas transportu i montażu! Ryzyko urazu! Stosować odpowiednie urządzenia montażowe i transportowe. Stosować odpowiednie narzędzia i środki ochrony osobistej.	▲UPOZORNĚNÍ Nesprávné zacházení při přepravě a montáži! Nebezpečí zranění! Používejte vhodná montážní a dopravní zařízení. Používejte vhodné nářadí a osobní ochranné vybavení.
▲HUOMIO Paristojen epäasianmukainen käsittely! Loukkaantumisvaara! Älä yritä saada tyhjiä paristoja toimimaan tai ladata niitä uudelleen (räjähdys- ja syöpymisvaara). Älä hajota paristoja osiin tai vaurioita niitä. Älä heitä paristoja tuelleen.	▲PRZESTROGA Niewłaściwe obchodzenie się z bateriami! Ryzyko urazu! Nie próbować reaktywować i nie ładować zużytych baterii (niebezpieczeństwo wybuchu oraz poparzenia żrącą substancją). Nie demontować i nie niszczyć baterii. Nie wrzucać baterii do ognia.	▲UPOZORNĚNÍ Nesprávné zacházení s bateriemi! Nebezpečí zranění! Nepokoušejte se znovu aktivovat nebo dobíjet prázdné baterie (nebezpečí výbuchu a poleptání). Nerozebírejte ani nepoškozujte baterie. Neházejte baterie do ohně.

SLO Slovensko	SK Slovenčina	RO Română
⚠ OPOZORILO Življenjska nevarnost pri neupoštevanju naslednjih napotkov za varnost! Izdelke začnite uporabljati šele, ko v celoti preberete, razumete in upošteвате izdelkom priloženo dokumentacijo in varnostne napotke. Če priložena dokumentacija ni na voljo v vašem maternem jeziku, se obrnite na pristojnega distributerja Rexroth. Samo kvalificirano osebje sme delati na pogonskih komponentah. Podrobnejša pojasnila o varnostnih navodilih najdete v poglavju 1 v tej dokumentaciji.	⚠ VAROVANIE Nebezpečnostv ohrozenia života pri nedodržívaní nasledujúcich bezpečnostných pokynov! Výrobky uvádzajte do prevádzky až potom, čo ste úplne prečítali, pochopili a zobrali do úvahy podklady a bezpečnostné pokyny dodané s výrobkom. Ak by ste nemali k dispozícii žiadne podklady v jazyku svojej krajiny, obráťte sa prosím na svojho príslušného predajcu Rexroth. Na komponentoch pohonu smie pracovať iba kvalifikovaný personál. Bližšie vysvetlenia k bezpečnostným pokynom zistíte z kapitoly 1 tejto dokumentácie.	⚠ AVERTIZARE Pericol de moarte în cazul nerespectării următoarelor instrucțiuni de siguranță! Punerea în funcțiune a produselor trebuie efectuată după citirea, înțelegerea și respectarea documentelor și instrucțiunilor de siguranță, care sunt livrate împreună cu produsele. În cazul în care documentele nu sunt în limba dumneavoastră maternă, vă rugăm să contactați partenerul de vânzări Rexroth. Numai un personal calificat poate lucra cu componentele de acționare. Explicații detaliate privind instrucțiunile de siguranță găsiți în capitolul 1 al acestei documentații.
⚠ OPOZORILO Visoka električna napetost! Življenjska nevarnost zaradi električnega udara! Pogonske komponente uporabljajte samo s fiksno nameščenim zaščitnim vodnikom. Pred dostopom do pogonske komponente odklopite napajanje. Upošteвайте čase praznjenja kondenzatorjev.	⚠ VAROVANIE Vysoké elektrické napätie! Nebezpečnostv ohrozenia života v dôsledku zásahu elektrickým prúdom! Komponenty pohonu prevádzkujte iba s pevne nainštalovaným ochranným vodičom. Pred prístupom na komponenty pohonu odpojte zdroj napätia. Rešpektujte časy vybitia kondenzátorov.	⚠ AVERTIZARE Tensiune electrică înaltă! Pericol de moarte prin electrocutare! Exploatați componentele de acționare numai cu împământarea instalată permanent. Înainte de intervenția asupra componentelor de acționare, deconectați alimentarea cu tensiune electrică. Țineți cont de timpii de descărcare ai condensatorilor.
⚠ OPOZORILO Nevarni premiki! Življenjska nevarnost! Ne zadržujte se v območju delovanja strojev. Preprečite nenadzorovan dostop oseb. Pred prijemom ali dostopom v nevarno območje varno zaustavite vse gnane dele.	⚠ VAROVANIE Pohyby prinášajúce nebezpečnostv! Nebezpečnostv ohrozenia života! Nezdržíavajte sa v oblasti pohybu strojov a častí strojov. Zabráňte nepovolanému prístupu osôb. Pred zásahom alebo prístupom do nebezpečnej oblasti uveďte pohony bezpečne do zastavenia.	⚠ AVERTIZARE Mișcări periculoase! Pericol de moarte! Nu staționați în zona de mișcare a mașinilor și a componentelor în mișcare a mașinilor. Împiedicați accesul neintenționat al persoanelor în zona de lucru a mașinilor. Înainte de intervenția sau accesul în zona periculoasă, opriți în siguranță componentele de acționare.

(SLO) Slovensko	(SK) Slovenčina	(RO) Română
⚠ OPOZORILO Elektromagnetna / magnetna polja! Nevarnost za zdravje za osebe s spodbujevalniki srca, kovinskimi vsadki ali slušnimi aparati! Dostop do območij, v katerih so nameščene delujoče pogonske komponente, je za zgoraj navedene osebe prepovedan oz. dovoljen samo po posvetu z zdravnikom.	⚠ VAROVANIE Elektromagnetické/magnetické polia! Nebezpečenstvo pre zdravie osôb s kardiosťimulátormi, kovovými implantátmi alebo načúvacími prístrojmi! Prístup k oblastiam, v ktorých sú namontované a prevádzkujú sa komponenty pohonu, je pre hore uvedené osoby zakázaný resp. je dovolený iba po konzultácii s lekárom.	⚠ AVERTIZARE Câmpuri electromagnetice / magnetice! Pericol pentru sănătatea persoanelor cu stimulatori cardiace, implanturi metalice sau aparate auditive! Intrarea în zone, în care se montează sau se exploatează componente de acționare, este interzisă pentru persoanele sus numite respectiv este permisă numai cu acordul medicului.
⚠ POZOR Vroče površine (> 60 °C)! Nevarnost opeklin! Izogibajte se stiku s kovinskimi površinami (npr. hladilnimi tesli). Upoštevajte čas hlajenja pogonskih komponent (najm. 15 minut).	⚠ UPOZORNENIE Horúce povrchy (> 60 °C)! Nebezpečenstvo popálenia! Zabráňte kontaktu s kovovými povrchmi (napr. chladiacimi telesami). Dodržiavajte čas vychladenia komponentov pohonu (min. 15 minút).	⚠ ATENȚIE Suprafețe fierbinți (> 60 °C)! Pericol de arsuri! Nu atingeți suprafețele metalice (de ex. radiatoare de răcire). Respectați timpii de răcire ai componentelor de acționare (min. 15 minute).
⚠ POZOR Nestrokovno ravnanje med transportom in namestitvijo! Nevarnost poškodb! Uporabljajte ustrezne pripomočke za nameščanje in transport. Uporabite ustrezno orodje in osebno zaščitno opremo.	⚠ UPOZORNENIE Neodborná manipulácia pri transporte a montáži! Nebezpečenstvo poranenia! Používajte vhodné montážne a transportné zariadenia. Používajte vhodné náradie a osobné ochranné prostriedky.	⚠ ATENȚIE Manipulare necorespunzătoare la transport și montaj! Pericol de vătămare! Utilizați dispozitive adecvate de montaj și transport. Folosii instrumente corespunzătoare și echipament personal de protecție.
⚠ POZOR Nepravilno ravnanje z baterijami! Nevarnost poškodb! Ne poskušajte ponovno aktivirati ali napolniti praznih baterij (Nevarnost zaradi eksplozije ali jedkanja). Ne razstavljajte ali poškodujte nobenih baterij. Baterij ne mečite v ogenj.	⚠ UPOZORNENIE Neodborná manipulácia s batériami! Nebezpečenstvo poranenia! Nepokúšajte sa reaktivovať alebo nabíjať prázdné batérie (nebezpečenstvo výbuchu a poleptania). Batérie nerozoberajte ani nepoškodzuje. Nehádzte batérie do ohňa.	⚠ ATENȚIE Manipulare necorespunzătoare a bateriilor! Pericol de vătămare! Nu încercați să reactivați sau să încărcați bateriile goale (pericol de explozie și pericol de arsuri). Nu dezasaamblați și nu deteriorați bateriile. Nu aruncați bateriile în foc.

H Magyar	BG Български	LV Latviski
▲ FIGYELMEZTETÉS! Az alábbi biztonsági útmutatások figyelmen kívül hagyása életveszélyes helyzethez vezethet! Üzembe helyezés előtt olvassa el, értelmezze, és vegye figyelembe a csomagban található dokumentumban foglaltakat és a biztonsági útmutatásokat. Amennyiben a csomagban nem talál az Ön nyelvén írt dokumentumokat, vegye fel a kapcsolatot az illetékes Rexroth-képviselővel. A hajtás alkatrészein kizárólag képzett személy dolgozhat. A biztonsági útmutatókkal kapcsolatban további magyarázatot ennek a dokumentumnak az első fejezetében találhat.	▲ ПРЕДУПРЕЖДЕНИЕ Опасност за живота при неспазване на посочените по-долу инструкции за безопасност! Използвайте продуктите след като сте се запознали подробно с приложената към продукта документация и указания за безопасност, разбрали сте ги и сте се съобразили с тях. Ако текстът не е написан на Вашия език, моля обърнете се към Вашия компетентен търговски представител на Rexroth. Със задвижващите компоненти трябва да работи само квалифициран персонал. Подробни пояснения към инструкциите за безопасност можете да видите в Глава 1 на тази документация.	▲ BRĪDINĀJUMS Turpinājumā doto drošības norādījumu neievērošana var apdraudēt dzīvību! Sāciet lietot izstrādājumu tikai pēc tam, kad esat pilnībā izlasījuši, sapratuši un nēmuši vērā kopā ar izstrādājumu piegādātos dokumentus. Ja dokumenti nav pieejami Jūsu valsts valodā, vērsieties pie pilnvarotā Rexroth izplatītāja. Darbus pie piedziņas komponentiem drikst veikt tikai kvalificēts personāls. Detalizētus paskaidrojumus attiecībā uz drošības norādījumiem skatiet šī dokumenta 1. nodaļā.
▲ FIGYELMEZTETÉS! Magas elektromos feszültség! Életveszély áramütés miatt! A hajtás alkatrészeit csak véglegesen telepített védővezetővel üzemeltesse! Mielőtt hozzányúl a hajtás alkatrészeihez, kapcsolja ki az áramellátást. Ügyeljen a kondenzátorok kisülési idejére!	▲ ПРЕДУПРЕЖДЕНИЕ Високо електрическо напрежение! Опасност за живота от удар от електрически ток! Работете със задвижващите компоненти само при здраво закрепен заземяващ проводник. Преди работа по задвижващите компоненти, изключете захранващото напрежение. Обърнете внимание на времето за разреждане на кондензаторите.	▲ BRĪDINĀJUMS Augsts elektriskais spriegums! Dzīvības apdraudējums elektriskā trieciena dēļ! Piedziņas komponentus darbiniet tikai ar fiksēti uzstādītu zemējumvadu. Pirms darba pie piedziņas komponentiem atslēdziet elektroapgādi. Nemiet vērā kondensatoru izlādes laikus.
▲ FIGYELMEZTETÉS! Veszélyes mozgás! Életveszély! Ne tartózkodjon a gépek és a gépalkatrészek mozgási területén belül! Illetéktelen személyeket ne engedjen a gép közelébe! Mielőtt beavatkozik, vagy a veszélyes zónába belép a hajtásokat biztonságosan állítsa le.	▲ ПРЕДУПРЕЖДЕНИЕ Опасни движения! Опасност за живота! Не стойте в обсега на движение на машините и частите на машините. Не допускайте непреднамерен достъп на хора. Преди работа или влизане в опасната зона, спрете надеждно приводния механизъм.	▲ BRĪDINĀJUMS Bīstamas kustības! Dzīvības apdraudējums! Neuzturieties mašīnu un mašīnas detaļu kustību zonā. Novērsiet nepiederošu personu piekļūšanu. Pirms darba bīstamajās zonās pilnībā apstādiniet piedziņu.

H Magyar	BG Български	LV Latviski
▲ FIGYELMEZTETÉS! Elektromágneses / mágneses mező! Káros hatással lehet a szívritmus-szabályozó készülékkel, fémbeültetéssel vagy hallókészülékkel rendelkezők egészségére! Azokra a területekre, ahol hajtások alkatrészeit szerelik és üzemeltetik, a fent említett személyeknek tilos a belépés, illetve csak orvosi konzultációt követően szabad az adott területekre lépniük.	▲ ПРЕДУПРЕЖДЕНИЕ Електромагнитни / магнитни полета! Опасност за здравето на хора със сърдечни стимулатори, метали импланти или слухови апарати! Достъпът за гореспоменатите лица до зони, в които ще се монтират и ще работят задвижващи компоненти се забранява, или разрешава само след консултация с лекар.	▲ BRĪDINĀJUMS Elektromagnētiskais / magnētiskais lauks! Veselības apdraudējums personām ar sirds stimulatoriem, metāliskiem implantiem vai dzirdes aparātiem! Tuvošanās zonām, kurās tiek montēti un darbināti piedziņas komponenti, iepriekš minētajām personām ir aizliegta, respektīvi, atļauta tikai pēc konsultēšanās ar ārstu.
▲ VIGYÁZAT! Forró felületek (> 60 °C)! Égésveszély! Ne érnén hozzá fémfelületekhez (pl. hűtőtestekhez)! Vegye figyelembe a hajtás alkatrészeinek kihűlési idejét (min. 15 perc)!	▲ ВНИМАНИЕ Горещи повърхности (> 60 °C)! Опасност от изгаряне! Не докосвайте метали повърхности (например радиатори). Съблюдавайте времето на охлаждане на задвижващите компоненти (мин. 15 минути).	▲ UZMANĪBU Karstas virsmas (> 60 °C)! Apdedzināšanās risks! Neskarīeties pie metāliskām virsmām (piemēram, dzesētāja). Ļaujiet piedziņas komponentiem atdzist (min. 15 minūtes).
▲ VIGYÁZAT! Szakszerűtlen kezelés szállításkor és szereléskor! Sérülésveszély! A megfelelő beszerelési és szállítási eljárásokat alkalmazza! Használjon megfelelő szerszámokat és személyes védőfelszerelést!	▲ ВНИМАНИЕ Неправилно боравене по време на транспорт и монтаж! Опасност от нараняване! Използвайте подходящо монтажно и транспортно оборудване. Използвайте подходящи инструменти и лични предпазни средства.	▲ UZMANĪBU Nepareizi veikta transportēšana un montāža! Traumu gūšanas risks! Izmantojiet piemērotas montāžas un transportēšanas ierīces. Izmantojiet piemērotus instrumentus un individuālos aizsardzības līdzekļus.
▲ VIGYÁZAT! Akkumulátorok szakszerűtlen kezelése! Sérülésveszély! Üres akkumulátorokat ne aktiváljon újra, illetve ne töltsön fel (robbanás- és marásveszély)! Az akkumulátorokat ne szedje szét, és ne rongálja meg! Az akkumulátort ne dobja tűzbe!	▲ ВНИМАНИЕ Неправилно боравене с батерии! Опасност от нараняване! Не се опитвайте да активирате отново или да зареждате разреждени батерии (Опасност от експлозия и напръскване с агресивен агент). Не разлюбявайте и не повреждайте батерии. Не хвърляйте батерии в огън.	▲ UZMANĪBU Nepareiza bateriju lietošana! Traumu gūšanas risks! Nemēģiniet no jauna aktivizēt vai uzlādēt tukšas baterijas (eksplodējumu un ķīmisko apdegumu draudi). Neizjauciet un nesabojājat baterijas. Nemetiet baterijas uguni.

LT Lietuviškai	EST Eesti	GR Ελληνικά
▲ ĮSPĖJIMAS Pavojus gyvybei nesilaikant toliau pateikiamų saugumo nurodymų! Naudokite gaminį tik kruopščiai perskaitę prie jo pridėtus aprašus, saugumo nurodymus. Susipažinkite su jais ir vadovaukitės naudodami gaminį. Jei Jūs negavote aprašo gimtąja kalba, kreipkitės į įgaliotus Rexroth atstovus. Prie pavaros komponentų leidžiama dirbti tik kvalifikuotam personalui. Išsamesnius saugumo nurodymų paaiškinimus rasite šios dokumentacijos 1 skyriuje.	▲ HOIATUS Alljärgnevale ohutusjuhiste eiramine on eluohtlik! Võtke tooted käiku alles siis, kui olete toodetega kaasasolevad materjalid ning ohutusjuhised täielikult läbi lugenud, neist aru saanud ja neid järginud. Kui Teil puuduvad emakeelsed materjalid, siis pöörduge Rexrothi kohaliku müügiesinduse poole. Ajamikomponentidega tohib töötada üksnes kvalifitseeritud personal. Täpsemaid selgitusi ohutusjuhiste kohta leiate käesoleva dokumentatsiooni peatükist 1.	▲ ΠΡΟΕΙΔΟΠΟΙΗΣΗ Κίνδυνος θανάτου σε περίπτωση μη συμμόρφωσης με τις παρακάτω οδηγίες ασφαλείας! Θέστε το προϊόν σε λειτουργία αφού διαβάσετε, κατανοήσετε και λάβετε υπόψη το σύνολο των οδηγιών ασφαλείας που το συνοδεύουν. Εάν δεν υπάρχει τεκμηρίωση στη γλώσσα σας, απευθυνθείτε σε εξουσιοδοτημένο αντιπρόσωπο της Rexroth. Μόνο εξειδικευμένο προσωπικό επιτρέπεται να χειρίζεται στοιχεία μετάδοσης κίνησης. Περαιτέρω επεξηγήσεις των οδηγιών ασφαλείας διατίθενται στο κεφάλαιο 1 της παρούσας τεκμηρίωσης.
▲ ĮSPĖJIMAS Aukšta elektros įtampa! Pavojus gyvybei dėl elektros smūgio! Pavaros komponentus eksploatuokite tik su fiksuotai instaliuotu apsauginiu laidu. Prieš priedami prie pavaros komponentų išjunkite maitinimo įtampą. Atsižvelkite į kondensatorių išsikrovimo trukmę.	▲ HOIATUS Kõrge elektripingel! Eluohtlik elektrilöögi tõttu! Käitage ajamikomponente üksnes püsivalt installeeritud maandusega. Lülitage enne ajamikomponentidega tööde alustamist toitepinge välja. Järgige kondensaatorite mahalaadumisaegu.	▲ ΠΡΟΕΙΔΟΠΟΙΗΣΗ Υψηλή ηλεκτρική τάση! Κίνδυνος θανάτου από ηλεκτροπληξία! Θέτετε σε λειτουργία τα στοιχεία μετάδοσης κίνησης μόνο εφόσον έχει τοποθετηθεί καλά προστατευτικός αγωγός γείωσης. Πριν από οποιαδήποτε παρέμβαση, αποσυνδέστε την τροφοδοσία των στοιχείων μετάδοσης κίνησης. Λάβετε υπόψη τους χρόνους αποφόρτισης των πυκνωτών.
▲ ĮSPĖJIMAS Pavojingi judesiai! Pavojus gyvybei! Nebūkite mašinų ar jų dalių judėjimo zonoje. Neleiskite netyčia patekti asmenims. Prieš patekdami į pavojaus zoną saugiai išjunkite pavaras.	▲ HOIATUS Ohtlikud liikumised! Eluohtlik! Ärge viibige masina ja masinaosade liikumispiirkonnas. Tõkestage inimeste ettekavatsematu sisenemine masina ja masinaosade liikumispiirkonda. Tagage ajamite turvaline seiskamine enne ohupiirkonda juurdepääsu või sisenemist.	▲ ΠΡΟΕΙΔΟΠΟΙΗΣΗ Επικίνδυνες τάσεις! Κίνδυνος θανάτου! Μην στέκεστε στην περιοχή κίνησης μηχανημάτων και εξαρτημάτων. Αποτρέπετε την τυχαία είσοδο ατόμων. Πριν από την παρέμβαση ή πρόσβαση στην περιοχή κινδύνου, μεριμνήστε για την ασφαλή ακινητοποίηση των συστημάτων μετάδοσης κίνησης.

LT Lietuviškai	EST Eesti	GR Ελληνικά
▲ JSPĖJIMAS Elektromagnetiniai / magnetiniai laukai! Pavojus asmenų su širdies stimulatoriais, metaliniais implantais arba klausos aparatais sveikatai! Prieiga prie zonų, kuriose montuojami ir eksploatuojami pavaros komponentai, aukščiau nurodytiems asmenims yra draudžiama arba leistina tik pasitarus su gydytoju.	▲ HOIATUS Elektromagnetilised / magnetilised väljad! Terviseohtlik südamestimulaatorite, metallimplantaatide ja kuulmisseadmetega inimestele! Sisenemine piirkondadesse, kus toimub ajamikomponentide monteerimine ja käitamine, on ülalnimetatud isikutele keelatud või lubatud üksnes pärast arstiga konsulteermist.	▲ ΠΡΟΕΙΔΟΠΟΙΗΣΗ Ηλεκτρομαγνητικά/μαγνητικά πεδία! Κίνδυνος για την υγεία ατόμων με καρδιακούς βηματοδότες, μεταλλικά εμφυτεύματα ή συσκευές ακοής! Η είσοδος σε περιοχές όπου πραγματοποιείται συναρμολόγηση και λειτουργία στοιχείων μετάδοσης κίνησης απαγορεύεται στα προαναφερθέντα άτομα, εκτός αν τους έχει δοθεί σχετική άδεια από τον συνεννόησης με γιατρό.
▲ PERSPĖJIMAS Karšti paviršiai (> 60 °C)! Nudėgimo pavojus! Venkite liesti metalinius paviršius (pvz., radiatorių). Išlaikykite pavaros komponentų atvėsimo trukmę (bent 15 minučių).	▲ ETTEVAATUST Kuumad välispinnad (> 60 °C)! Põletusoht! Vältige metalsete välispindade (nt radiaatorid) puudutamist. Pidage kinni ajamikomponentide mahajahtumisajast (vähemalt 15 minutit).	▲ ΠΡΟΣΟΧΗ Καυτές επιφάνειες (> 60 °C)! Κίνδυνος εγκαύματος! Αποφύγετε την επαφή με μεταλλικές επιφάνειες (π.χ. μονάδες ψύξης). Λάβετε υπόψη το χρόνο ψύξης των στοιχείων μετάδοσης κίνησης (τουλάχιστον 15 λεπτά).
▲ PERSPĖJIMAS Netinkamas darbas transportuojant ir montuojant! Susižalojimo pavojus! Naudokite tinkamus montavimo ir transportavimo įrenginius. Naudokite tinkamus įrankius ir asmens saugos priemonės.	▲ ETTEVAATUST Asjatundmatu käsitsemine transportimisel ja montaažil! Vigastusoht! Kasutage sobivaid montaaži- ja transpordiseadiseid. Kasutage sobivaid tööriistu ja isiklikku kaitsevarustust.	▲ ΠΡΟΣΟΧΗ Ακατάλληλος χειρισμός κατά τη μεταφορά και συναρμολόγηση! Κίνδυνος τραυματισμού! Χρησιμοποιείτε κατάλληλους μηχανισμούς συναρμολόγησης και μεταφοράς. Χρησιμοποιείτε κατάλληλα εργαλεία και ατομικό εξοπλισμό προστασίας.
▲ PERSPĖJIMAS Netinkamas darbas su baterijomis! Susižalojimo pavojus! Nebandykite tuščių baterijų reaktyvuoti arba įkrauti (sprogimo ir išėdinimo pavojus). Neardykite ir nepažeiskite baterijų. Nemeskite baterijų į ugnį.	▲ ETTEVAATUST Patareide asjatundmatu käsitsemine! Vigastusoht! Ärge üritage kunagi tühje patareisid reaktiveerida või täis laadida (plahvatus- ja söövitusoht). Ärge demonteerige ega kahjustage patareisid. Ärge visake patareisid tulle.	▲ ΠΡΟΣΟΧΗ Ακατάλληλος χειρισμός μπαταριών! Κίνδυνος τραυματισμού! Μην επιδιώκετε να ενεργοποιήσετε ξανά ή να φορτίσετε κενές μπαταρίες (κίνδυνος έκρηξης και διάβρωσης). Μην διαλύετε ή καταστρέφετε τις μπαταρίες. Μην απορρίπτετε τις μπαταρίες στη φωτιά.

CN 中文**⚠ 警告** 如果不按照下述指定的安全说明使用，将会导致人身伤害！

在没有阅读，理解随本产品附带的文件并熟知正当使用前，不要安装或使用本产品。

如果没有您所在国家官方语言文件说明，请与 Rexroth 销售伙伴联系。

只允许有资格人员对驱动器部件进行操作。

安全说明的详细解释在本文档的第一章。

⚠ 警告 高压！电击导致生命危险！

只有在安装了永久良好的设备接地导线后才可以对驱动器的部件进行操作。

在接触驱动器部件前先将驱动器部件断电。

确保电容放电时间。

⚠ 警告 危险运动！生命危险！

保证设备的运动区域内和移动部件周围无障碍物。

防止人员意外进入设备运动区域内。

在接近或进入危险区域之前，确保传动设备安全停止。

⚠ 警告 电磁场/磁场！对佩戴心脏起搏器、金属植入物和助听器的人员会造成严重的人身伤害！

上述人员禁止进入安装及运行的驱动器区域，或者必须先咨询医生。

⚠ 小心 热表面（大于 60 度）！灼伤风险！

不要触摸金属表面（例如散热器）。驱动器部件断电后需要时间进行冷却（至少 15 分钟）。

⚠ 小心 安装和运输不当导致受伤危险！当心受伤！

使用适当的运输和安装设备。

使用适合的工具及用适当的防护设备。

⚠ 小心 电池操作不当！受伤风险！

请勿对低电量电池重新激活或重新充电（爆炸和腐蚀的危险）。

请勿拆解或损坏电池。请勿将电池投入明火中。

Table of Contents

	Page
1 Safety Instructions for Electric Drives and Controls.....	1
1.1 Definitions of Terms.....	1
1.2 Explanation of Signal Words and the Safety Alert Symbol.....	3
1.3 General Information.....	4
1.3.1 Using the Safety Instructions and Passing Them on to Others.....	4
1.3.2 Requirements for Safe Use.....	4
1.3.3 Hazards by Improper Use.....	6
1.4 Instructions with Regard to Specific Dangers.....	7
1.4.1 Protection Against Contact With Electrical Parts and Housings.....	7
1.4.2 Protective Extra-Low Voltage as Protection Against Electric Shock	8
1.4.3 Protection Against Dangerous Movements.....	8
1.4.4 Protection Against Magnetic and Electromagnetic Fields During Op- eration and Mounting.....	10
1.4.5 Protection Against Contact with Hot Parts.....	11
1.4.6 Protection During Handling and Mounting.....	11
2 Important Directions for Use.....	12
2.1 Appropriate Use.....	12
2.2 Inappropriate Use.....	12
3 Documentation Information.....	12
3.1 About this Documentation.....	12
3.2 Relevant Software.....	13
3.3 Reference.....	14
4 Delivery and Storage.....	14
4.1 Product Identification.....	14
4.1.1 Packing Nameplate.....	14
4.1.2 Product Nameplate.....	16
4.2 Visual Inspection.....	17
4.3 Scope of Supply.....	17
4.4 Transport of the Components.....	18
4.5 Storage of the Components.....	18
5 Drive System Overview.....	19
6 Frequency Converter Overview.....	20

	Page
6.1 Product Features.....	20
6.1.1 Input.....	20
6.1.2 Output.....	20
6.1.3 V/f Control Performance.....	21
6.1.4 SVC Control Performance.....	21
6.1.5 Main Functions.....	22
6.1.6 Communication.....	22
6.1.7 Operating Panel.....	23
6.1.8 Protection.....	23
6.1.9 Conditions.....	24
6.2 Technical Data.....	25
6.2.1 Electric Data.....	25
6.2.2 Derating of Electric Data.....	28
Derating and ambient temperature.....	28
Derating and mains voltage.....	29
Derating and carrier frequency.....	30
6.2.3 Maximum Length of Motor Cables.....	35
6.2.4 Minimum Inductance Between Two Motor Terminals.....	35
7 Frequency Converter Mounting.....	35
7.1 Installation Conditions.....	35
7.2 Heat Dissipation.....	37
7.3 Air Flow of Fans.....	39
7.4 Figures and Dimensions.....	41
7.4.1 Standard Models.....	41
7.4.2 Wall-Through Models.....	46
8 Frequency Converter Wiring.....	52
8.1 Wiring Diagram.....	52
8.2 Cable Specifications.....	54
8.2.1 Power Cables.....	54
Cable specification for international without USA / Canada.....	54
Cable specification for USA / Canada.....	57
Dimensioning variables of the table values.....	58
8.2.2 Control Cables.....	61
8.3 Terminals.....	62
8.3.1 Power Terminals.....	62
Power Terminals Figure.....	62
Power Terminals Description.....	63

	Page
Notes on DC-bus terminals.....	64
8.3.2 Control Terminals.....	70
Control terminals figure.....	70
Control terminals description.....	71
Digital input NPN / PNP wiring.....	73
Digital output DO1a, DO1b load pull-up / pull-down wiring.....	74
Analog input terminals (AI1, AI2, EAI, +10 V, +5 V, Earth and GND)....	75
Relay output terminals.....	75
Notes on DC_IN terminal.....	77
9 Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC).....	78
9.1 EMC Requirements.....	78
9.1.1 General Information.....	78
The electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) or electromagnetic interference (EMI) includes the following requirements:.....	78
9.1.2 Noise Immunity in the Drive System.....	78
Basic structure for noise immunity.....	78
Minimum immunity requirements for PDSs intended for use in the second environment.....	80
Evaluation criterion.....	80
9.1.3 Noise Emission of the Drive System.....	81
9.2 Ensuring the EMC Requirements.....	85
9.3 EMC Measures for Design and Installation.....	87
9.3.1 Rules for Design of Installations with Drive Controllers in Compliance with EMC.....	87
9.3.2 EMC-optimal Installation in Facility and Control Cabinet.....	89
9.3.3 Control Cabinet Mounting according to Interference Areas – Exemplary Arrangements.....	90
9.3.4 Design and Installation in Area A – Interference-free Area of Control Cabinet.....	91
9.3.5 Design and Installation in Area B – Interference-susceptible Area of Control Cabinet.....	93
9.3.6 Design and Installation in Area C – Strongly Interference-susceptible Area of Control Cabinet.....	94
9.3.7 Ground Connections.....	95
9.3.8 Installing Signal Lines and Signal Cables.....	96
9.3.9 General Measures of Radio Interference Suppression for Relays, Contactors, Switches, Chokes and Inductive Loads.....	97
10 Operating Panel and Dust Cover.....	97

	Page
10.1 LED Panel.....	97
10.2 LED Display.....	98
10.3 Dust Cover.....	99
10.4 LED Indicator.....	100
10.5 Operating Descriptions.....	101
10.6 Fast Access to Parameters with Button Combinations.....	102
10.7 Digit Shifting Function for Modification of Parameter Values.....	103
10.8 LCD Panel.....	104
10.8.1 LCD Panel Introduction.....	104
10.8.2 Operating Example.....	105
11 Quick Start.....	106
11.1 Checklist before Quick Start.....	106
11.1.1 Step 1: Check application conditions.....	106
11.1.2 Step 2: Check mounting conditions.....	106
11.1.3 Step 3: Check the wiring.....	106
11.2 Quick Start Parameters.....	107
11.3 Control the Motor.....	108
11.4 Motor Parameters Auto-Tuning.....	109
11.5 Possible Errors during Quick Start and Respective Solutions.....	110
11.6 Restoring Parameters to Factory Defaults.....	110
12 Functions and Parameters.....	111
12.1 b0: Basic System.....	111
12.1.1 Access Authority Setting.....	111
12.1.2 Parameter Initialization.....	113
12.1.3 Parameter Copy.....	114
12.1.4 Parameter Set Switch.....	116
12.1.5 Password Protection.....	118
12.1.6 High Frequency Mode.....	119
12.2 C0: Power Control.....	120
12.2.1 Control Mode Selection.....	120
12.2.2 Normal Duty / Heavy Duty Setting.....	121
12.2.3 Carrier Frequency Setting.....	122
12.2.4 PWM Mode.....	128
12.2.5 Automatic Voltage Stabilization.....	129
12.2.6 Brake Chopper Control.....	130
12.2.7 Overvoltage suppression.....	131
12.2.8 Overvoltage Prevention Mode.....	134

	Page
12.2.9 Stall Overvoltage Prevention.....	135
12.2.10 Stall Overcurrent Prevention.....	136
12.2.11 Phase Loss Protection.....	138
12.2.12 Converter Overload Pre-Warning.....	139
12.2.13 Power Loss Ride-Through.....	140
12.2.14 Fan Control and Maintenance.....	144
12.3 C1: Motor and System.....	146
12.3.1 Motor Type Selection.....	146
12.3.2 Motor Parameter Tuning.....	146
12.3.3 Motor Name Plate Data.....	150
12.3.4 Motor Internal Data.....	153
12.3.5 Motor Thermal Model.....	155
12.3.6 Motor Overload Pre-Warning.....	157
12.3.7 Motor Thermal Sensor Selection.....	159
12.4 C2: V/f Control.....	162
12.4.1 V/f Curve Setting.....	162
12.4.2 Slip Compensation.....	168
12.4.3 0 Hz Output Mode.....	168
12.4.4 Torque Boost Setting.....	169
12.4.5 Heavy Load Stabilization.....	172
12.4.6 Light Load Oscillation Damping.....	172
12.4.7 Current Limitation.....	173
12.5 C3: Vector Control.....	174
12.5.1 Speed Loop Setting.....	174
12.5.2 Speed Observer Mode.....	175
12.5.3 Current Loop Setting.....	175
12.5.4 Torque Limitation.....	176
12.5.5 Speed Monitor.....	177
12.5.6 Fieldweakening control for PMSM.....	178
12.5.7 Torque Control.....	179
12.5.8 Initial Angle Detection.....	184
12.5.9 SVC switch point.....	184
12.5.10 Speed Damping Factor for SVC.....	185
12.6 d0: Basic Monitoring.....	186
12.7 d1: Enhanced Monitoring.....	188
12.8 E0: Set Point and Control.....	189
12.8.1 Frequency Setting Source.....	189
12.8.2 Run Command Source.....	194

	Page
12.8.3 Digital Setting Frequency.....	195
12.8.4 Frequency Limitations.....	196
12.8.5 Direction Control.....	198
12.8.6 Acceleration and Deceleration Setting.....	200
12.8.7 Start Mode Configuration.....	202
12.8.8 Power Loss Restart.....	207
12.8.9 Stop Mode Configuration.....	208
12.8.10 Stop DC-braking.....	209
12.8.11 Overexcitation Braking.....	213
12.8.12 Emergency Stop.....	214
12.8.13 Jog Function.....	215
12.8.14 Skip Frequency.....	217
12.9 E1: Input Terminal.....	221
12.9.1 Digital Input Configuration.....	221
12.9.2 2- and 3-Wire Control.....	226
12.9.3 Digital Input Frequency Change Function.....	231
12.9.4 Pulse Input Configuration.....	233
12.9.5 Analog Input Configuration.....	234
12.9.6 Motor Temperature Sensor Channel.....	237
12.10 E2: Output Terminal.....	238
12.10.1 Digital Output Configuration.....	238
12.10.2 Pulse Output Setting.....	241
12.10.3 Relay Output.....	244
12.10.4 Analog Output Configuration.....	247
12.10.5 Frequency Detection Function.....	250
12.10.6 Pulse Counter Function.....	252
12.11 E3: Multi-Speed and Simple PLC.....	254
12.11.1 Simple PLC and Multi-Speed Setting.....	254
Parameters.....	254
Multi-Speed Setting.....	257
Simple PLC setting.....	263
Stop and Pause Simple PLC Control.....	265
Indication of Simple PLC Status.....	266
12.12 E4: PID Control.....	268
12.12.1 PID Control Setting.....	268
Parameters.....	268
Selecting the Reference and Feedback.....	270
PID feedback polarity.....	271

	Page
Control Loop Configuration.....	272
PID Regulation Mode Setting.....	273
PID Feedforward Control.....	273
PID Deactivation by Digital Input.....	274
PID Status Indication.....	274
12.13 E5: Extended Application Functions.....	276
12.13.1 High Resolution Current Display.....	276
12.13.2 Speed Display Scaling.....	276
12.13.3 Pump Dry and Leakage Protection.....	277
12.13.4 Sleep Function.....	278
12.14 E8: Standard Communication.....	280
12.14.1 Modbus Protocol.....	280
Brief Introduction.....	280
.....	280
Protocol Description.....	280
Modbus Interface.....	282
Modbus Function and Message Format.....	282
Communication Mapping Register Address Distribution.....	290
Modbus Communication Example.....	299
Special Notes.....	300
Communication Networking.....	301
12.14.2 Communication Selection.....	303
12.14.3 Communication Error Reaction.....	304
12.14.4 Modbus Settings.....	306
Setting the Data Transmission Rate.....	306
Setting the Data Format.....	306
Setting the Local Address.....	306
Setting Command Signal Type.....	307
Setting Modbus transmission mode.....	307
12.15 E9: Error Log and Automatic Error Reset.....	308
12.15.1 Automatic Error Reset.....	308
Related parameters.....	308
Detailed description.....	308
List of errors with automatic error reset capability.....	308
12.15.2 Error Log.....	310
12.16 F0: ASF Basic Settings.....	313
12.16.1 ASF Status.....	313
ASF function description.....	313

	Page
ASF Parameter.....	313
ASF Management.....	314
ASF Diagnosis.....	315
12.16.2 ASF Command Values.....	317
12.17 H0: Extension Card General Settings.....	318
12.17.1 Status and Control Words.....	318
12.17.2 Extension Card Identification.....	323
12.18 H1: PROFIBUS Settings.....	324
12.18.1 PROFIBUS Basic Settings.....	324
12.18.2 PROFIBUS Card LED.....	325
12.18.3 PROFIBUS Output PZD Setting.....	326
12.18.4 Input PZD Setting.....	329
12.18.5 PROFIBUS Protocol.....	330
Protocol Description.....	330
PROFIBUS Function.....	330
Requirements for PROFIBUS Link Cable.....	331
Relationship between Communication Rate and Cables.....	331
EMC Measures.....	332
Periodical Data Communication.....	332
Communication parameter configuration.....	340
12.19 H2: CANopen Card Parameters.....	342
12.19.1 General Introduction.....	342
12.19.2 LED Status Introduction.....	342
12.19.3 Converter Configuration.....	344
Overview.....	344
COB-Identifiers	344
Object Dictionary.....	345
Process Data Objects (PDO).....	349
Process Data Objects (PDO) Configuration.....	351
Service Data Objects (SDO).....	355
Network Management Objects (NMT)	356
Emergency Service (EMCY).....	358
Synchronisation Service (SYNC).....	360
Device Profile.....	362
Related Communication Parameters.....	374
CANopen Option Card Parameters.....	376
12.20 H8: IO&IO Plus Card Parameters.....	377
12.20.1 IO & IO Plus Card Analog Input Configuration.....	377

	Page
12.20.2 IO & IO Plus Card Analog output Configuration.....	384
12.20.3 IO & IO Plus Card Digital Input Configuration.....	387
12.20.4 IO & IO Plus Card Digital Output Configuration.....	392
12.20.5 IO Card Relay Output Configuration.....	395
12.20.6 I/O & I/O plus card diagnosis.....	397
12.21 H9: Relay Card Parameters.....	398
12.21.1 Relay Card Output Configuration.....	398
12.22 U0: General Panel Parameters.....	402
12.23 U1: LED Panel Parameters.....	403
12.24 U2: LCD Panel Parameters.....	404
13 Diagnosis.....	405
13.1 Display of LED Characters.....	405
13.2 Status Code.....	405
13.3 Warning Code.....	407
13.4 Error Code.....	408
13.4.1 Error 1 (OC-1), Error 2 (OC-2), Error 3 (OC-3) : Overcurrent	408
13.4.2 Error 4 (OE-1), Error 5 (OE-2), Error 6 (OE-3) : Overvoltage	409
13.4.3 Error 8 (UE-1): Undervoltage during Run.....	409
13.4.4 Error 9 (SC): Surge Current or Short Circuit.....	409
13.4.5 Error 10 (IPH.L): Input Phase Loss.....	410
13.4.6 Error 11 (OPH.L): Output Phase Loss.....	410
13.4.7 Error 12 (ESS-): Soft Start Error.....	410
13.4.8 Error 20 (OL-1): Converter Overload.....	410
13.4.9 Error 21 (OH): Converter over Temperature.....	411
13.4.10 Error 23 (FF): Fan Failure.....	411
13.4.11 Error 24 (Pdr): Pump Dry	412
13.4.12 Error 25 (CoL-): Command Value Lost	412
13.4.13 Error 30 (OL-2): Motor Overload.....	412
13.4.14 Error 31 (Ot): Motor over Temperature.....	413
13.4.15 Error 32 (t-Er): Motor Parameter Tuning Error.....	413
13.4.16 Error 33 (AdE-): Motor Angle Detection Error.....	413
13.4.17 Error 35 (SPE-): Speed Control Loop Error.....	414
13.4.18 Error 38 (AibE): Analog Input Broken Wire Detection.....	414
13.4.19 Error 39 (EPS-): DC_IN Power Supply Error.....	414
13.4.20 Error 40 (dir1): Forward Running Lock Error.....	414
13.4.21 Error 41 (dir2): Reverse Running Lock Error.....	415
13.4.22 Error 42 (E-St): Terminal Error Signal.....	415

	Page
13.4.23 Error 43 (FFE-): Firmware Version Mismatch.....	415
13.4.24 Error 44 (rS-): Modbus Communication Error.....	415
13.4.25 Error 45 (E.Par): Parameter Settings Invalid.....	416
13.4.26 Error 46 (U.Par): Unknown Parameter Restore Error.....	416
13.4.27 Error 48 (idA-): Internal Communication Error.....	416
13.4.28 Error 49 (idP-): Internal Parameter Error.....	416
13.4.29 Error 50 (idE-): Converter Internal Error.....	417
13.4.30 Error 51 (OCd-): Extension Card Internal Error.....	417
13.4.31 Error 52 (OCc): Extension Card PDOs Configuration Error.....	417
13.4.32 Error 53 (Fdi-): No Valid Process Data.....	418
13.4.33 Error 54 (PcE-): Remote Control Communication Error.....	418
13.4.34 Error 55 (PbrE): Parameter Backup / Restore Error.....	418
13.4.35 Error 56 (PrEF): Parameter Restore Error after Firmware Update.....	418
13.4.36 Error 60 (ASF-): Application Firmware Error.....	419
13.4.37 Error 61...65 (APE1...APE5): Application Error.....	419
13.5 Error Handling.....	420
13.5.1 Restarting after Power Loss.....	420
13.5.2 Automatic Error Reset.....	421
13.5.3 Error Reset by Digital Input.....	422
14 Communication.....	422
14.1 Brief Introduction.....	422
14.2 Basic Communication Settings.....	422
14.2.1 Selection of the Communication Protocol.....	422
14.2.2 Setting the Data Transmission Rate.....	423
14.2.3 Setting the Data Format.....	424
14.2.4 Setting the Local Address.....	424
14.2.5 Setting Command Signal Type.....	424
14.2.6 Communication Disruption and Response.....	425
14.3 Modbus Protocol.....	426
14.3.1 Protocol Description.....	426
Brief introduction.....	426
Transmission.....	427
14.3.2 Modbus Interface.....	428
14.3.3 Modbus Function and Message Format.....	428
Supported functions.....	428
Function example.....	430
Function 0x06: Write one register word.....	431

	Page
Function 0x08: Diagnostics.....	432
Function 0x10: Write N register words, range: 1...16.....	433
Function 0x17: Read/Write N register words, range: 1...16.....	433
Error code and exception code.....	435
14.3.4 Communication Mapping Register Address Distribution.....	436
Frequency converter parameter address.....	436
Frequency converter register address.....	437
Communication control register (0x7F00).....	438
Communication state register (0x7FA0).....	439
Additional status register (0x7FA1).....	440
Fault status register (0x7FB0).....	441
Communication frequency setting register (0x7F01).....	442
Torque setting register (0x7F02).....	442
Torque FWD limitation register (0x7F03).....	442
Torque REV limitation register (0x7F04).....	443
Speed limitation register (0x7F05).....	443
14.3.5 Modbus Communication Example.....	444
14.3.6 Special Notes.....	445
14.3.7 Communication Networking.....	446
Networking.....	446
Recommendations on networking.....	446
14.4 PROFIBUS Protocol.....	447
14.4.1 Protocol Description.....	447
14.4.2 PROFIBUS Function.....	447
14.4.3 Requirements for PROFIBUS Link.....	448
14.4.4 Relationship between Communication Rate and Cables.....	448
14.4.5 EMC Measures.....	449
14.4.6 Periodical Data Communication.....	449
PPO telegram type.....	449
PKW parameter area.....	450
PZD process data area.....	453
14.4.7 Communication parameter configuration.....	457
Communication related parameter settings.....	457
Parameter configuration of master.....	458
GSD file.....	459
15 Accessories.....	459
15.1 Optional Accessories.....	459

	Page
15.2 Operating Panel.....	461
15.3 Panel Mounting Plate.....	461
15.3.1 Function Description.....	461
15.3.2 Recommended Opening Dimensions at Control Cabinet.....	461
15.3.3 Mounting the Plate and the Operating Panel.....	462
Step 1.....	462
Step 2.....	462
Step 3.....	462
Step 4.....	463
15.4 Communication Cable for Control Cabinet.....	464
15.5 Extension Card Module.....	464
15.5.1 Dimensions of Extension Card Module.....	464
15.5.2 Extension Card Module Mounting.....	464
15.5.3 Extension Module Mounting.....	465
15.6 I/O Module.....	468
15.6.1 I/O Card.....	468
I/O card terminals label.....	468
I/O card terminals descriptions.....	468
I/O card terminals wiring.....	469
15.6.2 Relay Card.....	470
Relay card terminals label.....	470
Relay card terminals descriptions.....	470
Relay card terminals wiring.....	470
15.6.3 I/O Plus Card.....	470
Terminals Mapping.....	470
Terminals Description.....	470
Wiring.....	472
15.7 Communication Module.....	473
15.7.1 PROFIBUS Interface.....	473
15.7.2 PROFIBUS Card LED.....	474
15.7.3 CANopen Card.....	475
Interface Introduction.....	475
Cable and Connection.....	476
15.8 Plug-in Connector for Control Section.....	477
15.9 External Mains EMC Filter.....	477
15.9.1 External Mains EMC Filter Type.....	477
15.9.2 Technical Data.....	479
Dimensions.....	479

	Page
Electric data.....	487
15.10 External Brake Resistor.....	490
15.10.1 Braking Ratio.....	490
15.10.2 Brake Resistor Type for Braking Ratio of 10 %.....	491
15.10.3 Brake Resistor Type for Braking Ratio of 20 %.....	495
15.10.4 Brake Resistor Dimensions.....	497
15.10.5 Installation of Brake Resistor.....	500
15.11 Shielding Connector.....	501
16 Maintenance.....	507
16.1 Safety Instructions.....	507
16.2 Daily Inspection.....	508
16.3 Periodic Inspection.....	509
16.4 Expired replacement.....	510
16.5 Removable Components Maintenance.....	511
16.5.1 Construction Overview.....	511
16.5.2 Disassembly of the Operating Panel.....	512
16.5.3 Disassembly of Fans.....	513
17 Service and support.....	514
18 Environmental protection and disposal	515
18.1 Environmental protection.....	515
18.2 Disposal.....	515
19 Appendix.....	516
19.1 Appendix I: Abbreviations.....	516
19.2 Appendix II: Type Coding.....	518
19.2.1 Frequency Converter Type Coding.....	518
19.2.2 Operating Panel Type Coding.....	519
19.2.3 Panel Mounting Plate Type Coding.....	519
19.2.4 Communication Cable for Control Cabinet Type Coding.....	520
19.2.5 Extension Accessories Type Coding.....	520
19.2.6 External EMC Filter Type Coding.....	522
19.2.7 External Brake Resistor Type Coding.....	523
19.2.8 Shielding Connector Type Coding.....	524
19.3 Appendix III: Parameter List.....	525
19.3.1 Terminology and Abbreviation in Parameter List.....	525
19.3.2 Group b: System Parameters.....	526

	Page
b0: Basic system parameters.....	526
19.3.3 Group C: Power Parameters.....	527
C0: Power control parameters.....	527
C1: Motor and system parameters.....	531
C2: V/f control parameters.....	533
C3: Vector control parameters.....	535
19.3.4 Group E: Function Control Parameters.....	539
E0: Set point and control parameters.....	539
E1: Input terminal parameters.....	542
E2: Output terminal parameters.....	545
E3: Multi-speed and simple PLC parameters.....	548
E4: PID control parameters.....	551
E5: Extended function parameters.....	553
E8: Standard communication parameters.....	554
E9: Protection and error parameters.....	555
19.3.5 Group F0: ASF Parameters.....	559
19.3.6 Group H: Extension Card Parameters.....	559
H0: Extension card general parameters.....	559
H1: PROFIBUS card parameters.....	560
H2: CANopen card parameters.....	562
H8: I/O card parameters.....	564
H9: Relay card parameters.....	568
19.3.7 Group U: Panel Parameters.....	571
U0: General panel parameters.....	571
U1: LED panel parameters.....	571
U2: LCD panel parameters.....	572
19.3.8 Group d0: Monitoring Parameters.....	574
19.3.9 Group d1: Enhanced Monitoring.....	575
19.4 Appendix IV: Certification.....	576
19.4.1 CE.....	576
Index.....	577

1 Safety Instructions for Electric Drives and Controls

1.1 Definitions of Terms

Documentation

A documentation comprises the entire documentation used to inform the user of the product about the use and safety-relevant features for configuring, integrating, mounting, installing, commissioning, operating, maintaining, repairing and decommissioning the product. The following terms are also used for this kind of documentation: Operating Instructions, Instruction Manual, Commissioning Manual, Application Description, Assembly Instructions, Project Planning Manual, Safety Notes, Product Insert, etc.

Component

A component is a combination of elements with a specified function, which are part of a piece of equipment, device or system. Components of the electric drive and control system are, for example, supply units, drive controllers, mains choke, mains filter, motors, cables, etc.

Control System

A control system comprises several interconnected control components placed on the market as a single functional unit.

Device

A device is a finished product with a defined function, intended for users and placed on the market as an individual piece of merchandise.

Electrical Equipment

Electrical equipment encompasses all devices used to generate, convert, transmit, distribute or apply electrical energy, such as electric motors, transformers, switching devices, cables, lines, power-consuming devices, circuit board assemblies, plug-in units, control cabinets, etc.

Electric Drive System

An electric drive system comprises all components from mains supply to motor shaft; this includes, for example, electric motor(s), motor encoder(s), supply units and drive controllers, as well as auxiliary and additional components, such as mains filter, mains choke and the corresponding lines and cables.

Installation

An installation consists of several devices or systems interconnected for a defined purpose and on a defined site which, however, are not intended to be placed on the market as a single functional unit.

Machine

A machine is the entirety of interconnected parts or units at least one of which is movable. Thus, a machine consists of the appropriate machine drive elements,

as well as control and power circuits, which have been assembled for a specific application. A machine is, for example, intended for processing, treatment, movement or packaging of a material. The term "machine" also covers a combination of machines which are arranged and controlled in such a way that they function as a unified whole.

Manufacturer

The manufacturer is an individual or legal entity bearing responsibility for the design and manufacture of a product which is placed on the market in the individual's or legal entity's name. The manufacturer can use finished products, finished parts or finished elements, or contract out work to subcontractors. However, the manufacturer must always have overall control and possess the required authority to take responsibility for the product.

Product

Examples of a product: Device, component, part, system, software, firmware, among other things.

Qualified Persons

In terms of this application documentation, qualified persons are those persons who are familiar with the installation, mounting, commissioning and operation of the components of the electric drive and control system, as well as with the hazards this implies, and who possess the qualifications their work requires. To comply with these qualifications, it is necessary, among other things,

- 1) to be trained, instructed or authorized to switch electric circuits and devices safely on and off, to ground them and to mark them
- 2) to be trained or instructed to maintain and use adequate safety equipment
- 3) to attend a course of instruction in first aid

User

A user is a person installing, commissioning or using a product which has been placed on the market.

1.2 Explanation of Signal Words and the Safety Alert Symbol

The Safety Instructions in the available application documentation contain specific signal words (DANGER, WARNING, CAUTION or NOTICE) and, where required, a safety alert symbol (in accordance with ANSI Z535.6-2011).

The signal word is meant to draw the reader's attention to the safety instruction and identifies the hazard severity.

The safety alert symbol (a triangle with an exclamation point), which precedes the signal words DANGER, WARNING and CAUTION, is used to alert the reader to personal injury hazards.

DANGER

In case of non-compliance with this safety instruction, death or serious injury **will** occur.

WARNING

In case of non-compliance with this safety instruction, death or serious injury **could** occur.

CAUTION

In case of non-compliance with this safety instruction, minor or moderate injury could occur.

NOTICE

In case of non-compliance with this safety instruction, property damage could occur.

1.3 General Information

1.3.1 Using the Safety Instructions and Passing Them on to Others

Do not attempt to install and operate the components of the electric drive and control system without first reading all documentation provided with the product. Read and understand these safety instructions and all user documentation prior to working with these components. If you do not have the user documentation for the components, contact your responsible Bosch Rexroth sales partner. Ask for these documents to be sent immediately to the person or persons responsible for the safe operation of the components.

If the component is resold, rented and/or passed on to others in any other form, these safety instructions must be delivered with the component in the official language of the user's country.

Improper use of these components, failure to follow the safety instructions in this document or tampering with the product, including disabling of safety devices, could result in property damage, injury, electric shock or even death.

1.3.2 Requirements for Safe Use

Read the following instructions before initial commissioning of the components of the electric drive and control system in order to eliminate the risk of injury and/or property damage. You must follow these safety instructions.

- Bosch Rexroth is not liable for damages resulting from failure to observe the safety instructions.
- Read the operating, maintenance and safety instructions in your language before commissioning. If you find that you cannot completely understand the application documentation in the available language, please ask your supplier to clarify.
- Proper and correct transport, storage, mounting and installation, as well as care in operation and maintenance, are prerequisites for optimal and safe operation of the component.
- Only qualified persons may work with components of the electric drive and control system or within its proximity.
- Only use accessories and spare parts approved by Bosch Rexroth.
- Follow the safety regulations and requirements of the country in which the components of the electric drive and control system are operated.
- Only use the components of the electric drive and control system in the manner that is defined as appropriate. See chapter "Appropriate Use".
- The ambient and operating conditions given in the available application documentation must be observed.
- Applications for functional safety are only allowed if clearly and explicitly specified in the application documentation "Integrated Safety Technology". If this is not the case, they are excluded. Functional safety is a safety concept in

which measures of risk reduction for personal safety depend on electrical, electronic or programmable control systems.

- The information given in the application documentation with regard to the use of the delivered components contains only examples of applications and suggestions.

The machine and installation manufacturers must

- make sure that the delivered components are suited for their individual application and check the information given in this application documentation with regard to the use of the components,
- make sure that their individual application complies with the applicable safety regulations and standards and carry out the required measures, modifications and complements.
- Commissioning of the delivered components is only allowed once it is sure that the machine or installation in which the components are installed complies with the national regulations, safety specifications and standards of the application.
- Disconnect the internal EMC filter when installing the drive on an IT system (an ungrounded power system or a high-resistance-grounded [over 30 ohms] power system), otherwise the system will be connected to ground potential through the EMC filter capacitors. This may cause danger or damage the drive. Disconnect the internal EMC filter when installing the drive on a corner-grounded TN system, otherwise the drive will be damaged. When the internal EMC filter is disconnected, the drive is not EMC compatible.
- The technical data, connection and installation conditions of the components are specified in the respective application documentations and must be followed at all times.

National regulations which the user must take into account

- European countries: In accordance with European EN standards
- United States of America (USA):
 - National Electrical Code (NEC)
 - National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA), as well as local engineering regulations
 - Regulations of the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)
- Canada: Canadian Standards Association (CSA)
- Other countries:
 - International Organization for Standardization (ISO)
 - International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC)

1.3.3 Hazards by Improper Use

- High electrical voltage and high working current! Danger to life or serious injury by electric shock!
- High electrical voltage by incorrect connection! Danger to life or injury by electric shock!
- Dangerous movements! Danger to life, serious injury or property damage by unintended motor movements!
- Health hazard for persons with heart pacemakers, metal implants and hearing aids in proximity to electric drive systems!
- Risk of burns by hot housing surfaces!
- Risk of injury by improper handling! Injury by crushing, shearing, cutting, hitting!
- Risk of injury by improper handling of batteries!
- Risk of injury by improper handling of pressurized lines!

1.4 Instructions with Regard to Specific Dangers

1.4.1 Protection Against Contact With Electrical Parts and Housings



This section concerns components of the electric drive and control system with voltages **higher than 50 volts**.

Contact with parts conducting voltages above 50 volts can cause personal danger and electric shock. When operating components of the electric drive and control system, it is unavoidable that some parts of these components conduct dangerous voltage.

High electrical voltage! Danger to life, risk of injury by electric shock or serious injury!

- Only qualified persons are allowed to operate, maintain and/or repair the components of the electric drive and control system.
- Follow the general installation and safety regulations when working on power installations.
- Before switching on, the equipment grounding conductor must have been permanently connected to all electric components in accordance with the connection diagram.
- Even for brief measurements or tests, operation is only allowed if the equipment grounding conductor has been permanently connected to the points of the components provided for this purpose.
- Before accessing electrical parts with voltage potentials higher than 50 V, you must disconnect electric components from the mains or from the power supply unit. Secure the electric component from reconnection.
- With electric components, observe the following aspects:

Always wait **10 minutes** after switching off power to allow live capacitors to discharge before accessing an electric component. Measure the electrical voltage of live parts before beginning to work to make sure that the equipment is safe to touch.

- Install the covers and guards provided for this purpose before switching on.
- Never touch electrical connection points of the components while power is turned on.
- Do not remove or plug in connectors when the component has been powered.
- Under specific conditions, electric drive systems can be operated at mains protected by residual-current-operated circuit-breakers sensitive to universal current (RCDs/RCMs).
- Secure built-in devices from penetrating foreign objects and water, as well as from direct contact, by providing an external housing, for example a control cabinet.

High housing voltage and high leakage current! Danger to life, risk of injury by electric shock!

- Before switching on and before commissioning, ground or connect the components of the electric drive and control system to the equipment grounding conductor at the grounding points.
- Connect the equipment grounding conductor of the components of the electric drive and control system permanently to the main power supply at all times. The leakage current is greater than 3.5 mA.

1.4.2 Protective Extra-Low Voltage as Protection Against Electric Shock

Protective extra-low voltage is used to allow connecting devices with basic insulation to extra-low voltage circuits.

On components of an electric drive and control system provided by Bosch Rexroth, all connections and terminals with voltages between 5 and 50 volts are PELV ("Protective Extra-Low Voltage") systems. It is allowed to connect devices equipped with basic insulation (such as programming devices, PCs, notebooks, display units) to these connections.

Danger to life, risk of injury by electric shock! High electrical voltage by incorrect connection!

If extra-low voltage circuits of devices containing voltages and circuits higher than 50 volts (e.g., the mains connection) are connected to Bosch Rexroth products, the connected extra-low voltage circuits must comply with the requirements for PELV ("Protective Extra-Low Voltage").

1.4.3 Protection Against Dangerous Movements

Dangerous movements can be caused by faulty control of connected motors. Some common examples are:

- Improper or wrong wiring or cable connection
- Operator errors
- Wrong input of parameters before commissioning
- Malfunction of sensors and encoders
- Defective components
- Software or firmware errors

These errors can occur immediately after equipment is switched on or even after an unspecified time of trouble-free operation.

The monitoring functions in the components of the electric drive and control system will normally be sufficient to avoid malfunction in the connected drives. Regarding personal safety, especially the danger of injury and/or property damage, this alone cannot be relied upon to ensure complete safety. Until the integrated monitoring functions become effective, it must be assumed in any case

that faulty drive movements will occur. The extent of faulty drive movements depends upon the type of control and the state of operation.

Dangerous movements! Danger to life, risk of injury, serious injury or property damage!

A **risk assessment** must be prepared for the installation or machine, with its specific conditions, in which the components of the electric drive and control system are installed.

As a result of the risk assessment, the user must provide for monitoring functions and higher-level measures on the installation side for personal safety. The safety regulations applicable to the installation or machine must be taken into consideration. Unintended machine movements or other malfunctions are possible if safety devices are disabled, bypassed or not activated.

To avoid accidents, injury and/or property damage:

- Keep free and clear of the machine's range of motion and moving machine parts. Prevent personnel from accidentally entering the machine's range of motion by using, for example:
 - Safety fences
 - Safety guards
 - Protective coverings
 - Light barriers
- Make sure the safety fences and protective coverings are strong enough to resist maximum possible kinetic energy.
- Mount emergency stopping switches in the immediate reach of the operator. Before commissioning, verify that the emergency stopping equipment works. Do not operate the machine if the emergency stopping switch is not working.
- Prevent unintended start-up. Isolate the drive power connection by means of OFF switches/OFF buttons or use a safe starting lockout.
- Make sure that the drives are brought to safe standstill before accessing or entering the danger zone.
- Disconnect electrical power to the components of the electric drive and control system using the master switch and secure them from reconnection ("lock out") for:
 - Maintenance and repair work
 - Cleaning of equipment
 - Long periods of discontinued equipment use
- Prevent the operation of high-frequency, remote control and radio equipment near components of the electric drive and control system and their supply leads. If the use of these devices cannot be avoided, check the machine or installation, at initial commissioning of the electric drive and control system, for possible malfunctions when operating such high-frequency, remote control

and radio equipment in its possible positions of normal use. It might possibly be necessary to perform a special electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) test.

1.4.4 Protection Against Magnetic and Electromagnetic Fields During Operation and Mounting

Magnetic and electromagnetic fields generated by current-carrying conductors or permanent magnets of electric motors represent a serious danger to persons with heart pacemakers, metal implants and hearing aids.

Health hazard for persons with heart pacemakers, metal implants and hearing aids in proximity to electric components!

- Persons with heart pacemakers and metal implants are not allowed to enter the following areas:
 - Areas in which components of the electric drive and control systems are mounted, commissioned and operated.
 - Areas in which parts of motors with permanent magnets are stored, repaired or mounted.
- If it is necessary for somebody with a heart pacemaker to enter such an area, a doctor must be consulted prior to doing so. The noise immunity of implanted heart pacemakers differs so greatly that no general rules can be given.
- Those with metal implants or metal pieces, as well as with hearing aids, must consult a doctor before they enter the areas described above.

1.4.5 Protection Against Contact with Hot Parts

Hot surfaces of components of the electric drive and control system. Risk of burns!

- Do not touch hot surfaces of, for example, braking resistors, heat sinks, supply units and drive controllers, motors, windings and laminated cores!
- According to the operating conditions, temperatures of the surfaces can be **higher than 60 °C (140 °F)** during or after operation.
- Before touching motors after having switched them off, let them cool down for a sufficient period of time. Cooling down can require **up to 140 minutes!** The time required for cooling down is approximately five times the thermal time constant specified in the technical data.
- After switching chokes, supply units and drive controllers off, wait **15 minutes** to allow them to cool down before touching them.
- Wear safety gloves or do not work at hot surfaces.
- For certain applications, and in accordance with the respective safety regulations, the manufacturer of the machine or installation must take measures to avoid injuries caused by burns in the final application. These measures can be, for example: Warnings at the machine or installation, guards (shieldings or barriers) or safety instructions in the application documentation.

1.4.6 Protection During Handling and Mounting

Risk of injury by improper handling! Injury by crushing, shearing, cutting, hitting!

- Observe the relevant statutory regulations of accident prevention.
- Use suitable equipment for mounting and transport.
- Avoid jamming and crushing by appropriate measures.
- Always use suitable tools. Use special tools if specified.
- Use lifting equipment and tools in the correct manner.
- Use suitable protective equipment (hard hat, safety goggles, safety shoes, safety gloves, for example).
- Do not stand under hanging loads.
- Immediately clean up any spilled liquids from the floor due to the risk of falling!

2 Important Directions for Use

2.1 Appropriate Use

Bosch Rexroth products represent state-of-the-art developments and manufacturing. They are tested prior to delivery to ensure operating safety and reliability.

The products can only be used in the appropriate way. Otherwise, situations resulting in property damage and personal injury may occur.



Bosch Rexroth as manufacturer is not liable for any damages resulting from inappropriate use. In such cases, the guarantee and the rights to payment of damages resulting from inappropriate use are forfeited. The user alone carries all responsibility of the risks.

Before using Bosch Rexroth products, make sure that all the pre-requisites for appropriate use of the products are satisfied.

- Personnel that in any way or form use our products must first read and understand the relevant safety instructions and be familiar with appropriate use.
- If the products take the form of hardware, they must remain in their original state, in other words, no structural changes are permitted.
- It is not permitted to decompile software products or alter source codes.
- Do not mount damaged or faulty products or use them in operation.
- Make sure that the products have been installed in the manner described in the relevant documentation.

2.2 Inappropriate Use

Using the frequency converters outside of the operating conditions described in this documentation and outside of the indicated technical data and specifications is defined as "**inappropriate use**".

Frequency converters shall not be used under following conditions:

- They are subject to operating conditions that do not meet the specified ambient conditions. These include, for example, operation under water, extreme temperature fluctuations or extremely high temperatures.
- Furthermore, the frequency converters shall not be used in applications which have not been expressly authorized by Rexroth. Please carefully follow the specifications outlined in the general Safety Instructions!

3 Documentation Information

3.1 About this Documentation

This **Operating Instructions** contains necessary data and information related to the product, which is the basis for any of other types of documentation.

** WARNING**

Personal injury or property damage caused by incorrect operations of applications, machines and installations!

Do not attempt to install or put the product into operation until you have completely read and understood the descriptions in this documentation!

3.2 Relevant Software

- IndraWorks

Click www.boschrexroth.com, choose "Products > Electric Drives and Controls > Engineering > Software tools > IndraWorks Engineering > Downloads", then download the software package.

3.3 Reference

For documentation available in other type or language, please consult your local **Bosch Rexroth** sales partner or check:

www.boschrexroth.com/vfcx615

Documentation type	Short text / Type code	Material number
Operating Instructions	DOK-RCON04-VFC-x615***-ITRS-EN-P	R912009377
Quick Start Guide	DOK-RCON04-VFC-x615***-QRS-EN-P	R912009379
Safety Instructions	DOK-RCON**SAFETY*****SARS-BP-P	R911339218
	DOK-RCON**SAFETY*****SARS-DE-P	R911339363
	DOK-RCON**SAFETY*****SARS-EN-P	R911339362
	DOK-RCON**SAFETY*****SARS-ES-P	R911339216
	DOK-RCON**SAFETY*****SARS-FR-P	R911339213
	DOK-RCON**SAFETY*****SARS-IT-P	R911339215
	DOK-RCON**SAFETY*****SARS-RU-P	R911339217
	DOK-RCON**SAFETY*****SARS-ZH-P	R912004727
Instruction Manual (UL)	DOK-RCON01-REX*F*UL***-INRS-EN-P	R912004711
Mounting Instructions (Extension card module)	DOK-RCON0*-XFC-X610***-ASRS-EN-P	R912006261
Product Insert (I/O module)	DOK-RCON0*-XFC-X610***-ISRS-EN-P	R912006326
Product Insert (PROFIBUS Card)	DOK-RCON0*-XFC-X610COM-ISRS-EN-P	R912006458
Product Insert (CANopen Card)	DOK-RCON0*-XFCX610*CAN-ISRS-EN-P	R912006723
Product Insert (Multi-Ethernet Card)	DOK-RCON0*-XFCX610*MUL-ISRS-EN-P	R912006847
Product Insert (Assembled Extension Module)	DOK-RCON0*-INT*EXT*MOD-ISRS-EN-P	R912006859
Instruction Manual (CANopen Card)	DOK-RCON0*-XFCX610*CAN-ITRS-EN-P	R912006713
Instruction Manual (Multi-Ethernet Card)	DOK-RCON0*-XFCX610*MUL-ITRS-EN-P	R912006860
Operating Instructions (Brake Chopper)	DOK-RCON04-VFC*BRAKE**-ITRS-EN-P	R912007234

Tab. 3-1: Documentation overview

4 Delivery and Storage

4.1 Product Identification

4.1.1 Packing Nameplate

Check if the model information on the packing nameplate is the same as you ordered **immediately** after receipt. If the model is wrong, please contact Bosch Rexroth distributor.

- 1** Rexroth LOGO
- 2** Identification
- 3** TYP
- 4** Volume
- 5** Net Weight
- 6** MNR
- 7** Version
- 8** Total Weight

- 9** FD
- 11** SN CODE
- 12** SN
- 13** Company
- 14** Address
- 15** QR CODE
- 16** TEL

Fig. 4-1: Packing nameplate

4.1.2 Product Nameplate

Check if the model information on product nameplate is the same as you ordered **immediately** after unpacking. If the model is wrong, please contact Bosch Rexroth distributor.

Frequency Converter [2] FD: [18]

TYP: [4]

Motor Power: [12]

Input: [5] [6] [7] [8]

Output: [9] [10] [11] [13]

TA: [14] [16] [24] SN: [20]

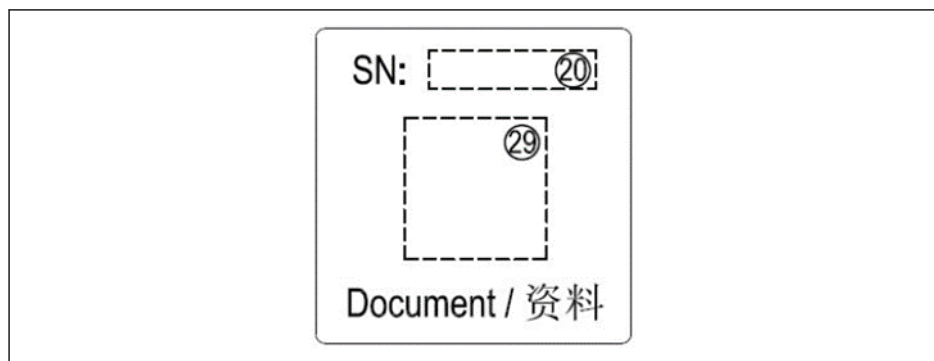
[21] [23]

Address: [25]

[15]

- | | |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 Company Logo | 14 Ambient temperature |
| 2 Product series | 15 Certification logo |
| 4 Type designation | 16 Protection category |
| 5 Input voltage type | 18 Manufacturing date |
| 6 Input voltage range | 19 QR code |
| 7 Input current | 20 Serial number |
| 8 Input frequency | 21 manufacturer |
| 9 Output voltage type | 22 Plant (SAP) |
| 10 Output voltage range | 23 Designation of origin |
| 11 Output current | 24 Efficiency classification |
| 12 Motor power | 25 Company address |
| 13 Output frequency range | |

Fig. 4-2: Product nameplate



20 Serial number

29 Document QR code

Fig. 4-3: Product document QR code

4.2 Visual Inspection

Check the product for transport damages, e.g. deformation or loose parts, immediately after unpacking. In case of damage, contact the forwarder at once and arrange for a thorough review of the situation.



This is also applicable if the packaging is undamaged.

4.3 Scope of Supply

If any of the following standard supply items is missing, please contact Bosch Rexroth distributor.

- Frequency Converter VFC x615 (According to type code)

4.4 Transport of the Components

Description	Symbol	Unit	Value
Temperature range	T_{a_tran}	°C	-25...70
Relative humidity	–	%	5...95
Absolute humidity	–	g/m ³	1...60
Climate category (IEC 721)	–	–	2K3
Moisture condensation	–	–	not allowed
Icing	–	–	not allowed

Tab. 4-1: Transport conditions

4.5 Storage of the Components

 CAUTION

Damage to the components caused by long storage periods!

A frequency converter contains electrolytic capacitors which may deteriorate during storage.

When storing these components for a long period of time, remember to operate them once a year:

- Run Frequency Converter VFC x615 under power U_{LN} for at least 1 hour.
- For more information of electrolytic capacitors, please contact service.

Description	Symbol	Unit	Value
Temperature range	T_{a_store}	°C	-20...60
Relative humidity	–	%	5...95
Absolute humidity	–	g/m ³	1...29
Climate category (IEC 721)	–	–	1K3
Moisture condensation	–	–	not allowed
Icing	–	–	not allowed

Tab. 4-2: Storage conditions

5 Drive System Overview

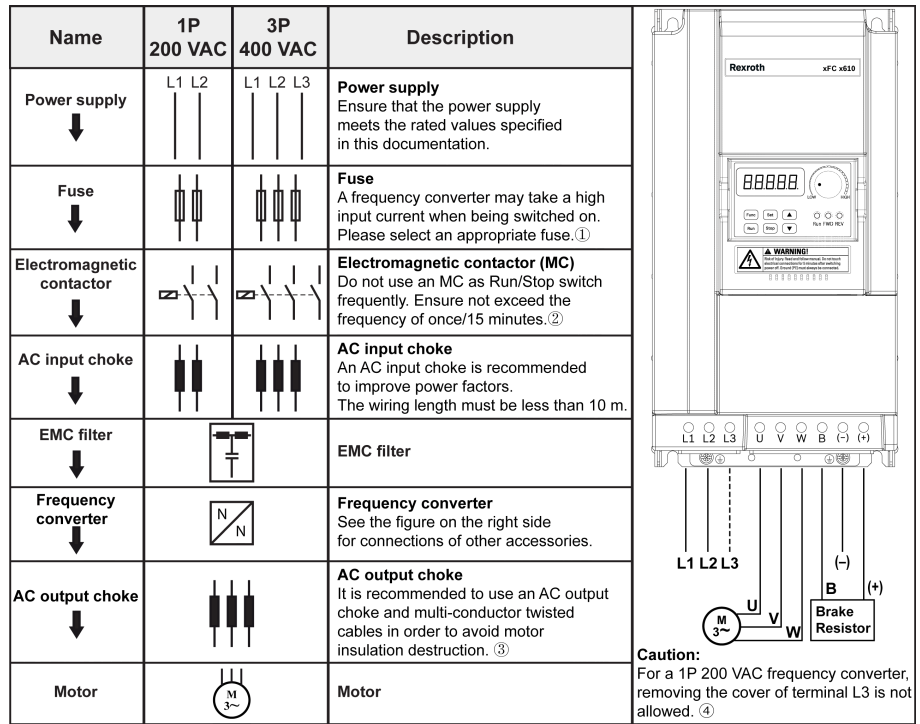


Fig. 5-1: Drive system overview



- ①: To select an appropriate fuse, see [chapter 8.2.1 "Power Cables" on page 54](#).
- ②: Excessively frequent starting and stopping will shorten the life time of relay contacts and DC-bus capacitors, and may destroy the resistor for capacitor charging and current limitation.
- ③: Whether using an AC output choke or not depends on the factors of: the length, shielding and distribution capacitance of the motor cables, as well as the insulation of the motor.
- ④: The covers of terminal (+), (-) and B can be removed as needed.

6 Frequency Converter Overview

6.1 Product Features

6.1.1 Input

Power supply voltage	1P 200...240 VAC (-10 % / +10 %) (IT-Net, TN-Net)
	3P 380...480 VAC (-15 % / +10 %) (IT-Net, TN-Net)
Power supply frequency	50 / 60 Hz (±5 %)

6.1.2 Output

Rated voltage	Corresponding to input voltage
Rated power	0.4...2.2 kW (1P 200 VAC)
	0.4...400 kW (3P 380 VAC)
Rated frequency	0.00...400.00 Hz
Default carrier frequency	0K40...110K0: 4k
	132K...400K: 2k
Carrier frequency range	0.4...30 kW: 1...15 kHz
	37...110 kW: 1...12 kHz
	132...400 kW: 1...6 kHz
Efficiency	> 95 %
Overload capability	Heavy Duty*: 150 % of rated current for 60 s ¹⁾
	Normal Duty*: 120 % of rated current for 60 s ²⁾
dv / dt (Without filter)	< 5kV / us



*: Heavy Duty / Normal Duty modes are applicable for models 5K50 and above.

¹⁾: 150 % of HD rated current for 60 s, and then 540 s with rated current for recovery from the overload influence, after this comes next overload period.

²⁾: 120 % of ND rated current for 60 s, and then 540 s with rated current for recovery from the overload influence, after this comes next overload period.

6.1.3 V/f Control Performance

V/f curve	Linear mode, square curve mode, user-defined multi-point curve mode
Speed regulation range	1:50
Start-up torque	150 % of rated torque at 3.00 Hz 100 % of rated torque at 1.50 Hz

6.1.4 SVC Control Performance

Speed regulation range	1:200
Start-up torque	200 % of rated torque at 0.50 Hz

6.1.5 Main Functions

Frequency setting resolution	Analog setting: 1/1,000 of maximum frequency Digital setting: 0.01 Hz
Frequency setting accuracy	Analog setting: ± 0.1 % of maximum frequency ($25^{\circ}\text{C} \pm 10^{\circ}\text{C}$) Digital setting: ± 0.01 % of maximum frequency ($-10...50^{\circ}\text{C}$)
Acceleration / deceleration curve mode	Linear, S-curve 8 sets of acceleration / deceleration time: 0.1...6,000.0 s
Stop DC-braking	DC-braking initial frequency: 0.00...50.00 Hz DC-braking time: 0.0...20.0 s Stop DC-braking current: 0.0...150.0 %
Jog function	Jog frequency range: 0.00 Hz...maximum output frequency Jog acceleration / deceleration time: 0.1...6,000.0 s
Multi-speed control	16 stages by digital input control
Simple PLC control	16 stages with pause / stop control
PID control	PID control with sleep / wake function
Digital input	5 digital inputs support PNP and NPN wiring, X5 supports 50.0 kHz pulse input
Analog input	2 Analog inputs: 0 / 2...10 V or 0 / 4...20 mA
Digital output	1 Open collector output, supports 32.0 kHz pulse output and pull-up and pull-down wiring 1 Relay output
Analog output	Analog output 0...10 V or 0...20 mA, to output setting frequency, output frequency, output current, output power, output voltage, analog input voltage and analog input current
Other functions	Carrier frequency automatic adjustment, first and second frequency setting source, slip compensation, torque boost, automatic voltage stabilization, power loss restart mode, 2-wire / 3-wire control, quick start parameters, parameter copy, output current limitation, power fault ride-through, etc.

6.1.6 Communication

Standard communication protocol	Modbus
Standard communication interface	RS485
Optional communication protocol and interface	Depending on communication module (Needs to be ordered additionally)

6.1.7 Operating Panel

LED panel	Display: Display parameters, settings, status codes, warning codes and error codes
	Buttons: Set parameters, switch display, reset warnings, execute run and stop command, increase or decrease parameter group / code / value
	Potentiometer: Set frequency
	Indicator: Run, FWD, REV
Dust cover	Indicating Run, FWD, REV and Power*



*: Indicator is displayed only if the option module is not used.

6.1.8 Protection

Over current protection, over- / under- voltage protection, surge current / short circuit protection, input / output phase loss protection, converter over- / under- temperature protection, motor overload protection, motor over temperature protection, direction lock protection, analog input broken wire detection, etc.

6.1.9 Conditions

Rated ambient temperature	-10...40 °C
Derating / ambient temperature	1.5 % / 1 °C (40...50 °C)
Rated storage temperature	-20...60 °C
Rated altitude	≤ 1,000 m
Derating / altitude	1 % / 100 m (1,000...4,000 m)
Relative humidity	≤ 90 % RH (No condensation)
Degrees of protection	IP 20 (Control cabinet mounting)
Degrees of pollution	2 (EN 50178)
Vibration	10 Hz ≤ f ≤ 57 Hz amplitude: 0.075 mm
	57 Hz < f ≤ 150 Hz acceleration: 1 g
Mounting mode	Wall mounting
Cooling type	Natural cooling (≤ 0K75)
	Enforced air cooling (≥ 1K50)
Certification	CE (applicable to 0K40...400K)
	EAC (applicable to 0K40...400K)

6.2 Technical Data

6.2.1 Electric Data

Model	Motor power [kW]	200 V / 240 V Input current [A]	200 V / 240 V Output current [A]	Output capacity [kVA]
OK40	0.4	6.2 / 5.1	2.4 / 2.0	0.8
OK75	0.75	10.1 / 8.4	4.1 / 3.4	1.4
1K50	1.5	16.2 / 13.5	7.3 / 6.1	2.5
2K20	2.2	22.3 / 18.6	10.1 / 8.4	3.5

Tab. 6-1: 1P 200 VAC OK40...2K20 electric data

Model	Motor power [kW]	380 V / 480 V Input current [A]	380 V / 480 V Output current [A]	Output capacity [kVA]
OK40	0.4	1.5 / 1.2	1.3 / 1.1	0.9
OK75	0.75	2.6 / 2.0	2.3 / 1.8	1.5
1K50	1.5	4.8 / 3.8	4.0 / 3.2	2.7
2K20	2.2	6.8 / 5.4	5.6 / 4.4	3.7
3K00	3.0	9.1 / 7.2	7.4 / 5.9	4.9
4K00	4.0	11.9 / 9.4	9.7 / 7.7	6.4

Tab. 6-2: 3P 380 VAC OK40...4K00 electric data

Model	Motor power Heavy Duty [kW]	380 V / 480 V Input current [A]	380 V / 480 V Output current [A]	Output capacity [kVA]
5K50	5.5	15.7 / 12.4	12.7 / 10.0	8.3
7K50	5.5	15.7 / 12.4	12.7 / 10.0	8.3
11K0	7.5	21.0 / 16.7	16.8 / 13.3	11.1
15K0	11.0	28.0 / 22.2	24.3 / 19.2	16.0
18K5	15.0	37.8 / 29.9	32.4 / 25.6	21.3
22K0	18.5	45.8 / 36.3	39.2 / 31.0	25.8
30K0	22.0	52.7 / 41.7	45.0 / 36.0	29.7
37K0	30.0	71.2 / 56.3	60.8 / 48.1	40.0
45K0	37.0	87.2 / 69.0	73.7 / 58.3	48.5
55K0	45.0	105.0 / 84.0	89.0 / 71.0	58.7
75K0	55.0	128.0 / 102.0	108.0 / 86.0	71.3
90K0	75.0	174.0 / 138.0	147.0 / 116.0	96.9
110K	90.0	208.0 / 165.0	176.0 / 139.0	115.6
132K	110.0	205.0 / 162.0	212.0 / 168.0	139.6

Model	Motor power	380 V / 480 V	380 V / 480 V	Output capacity
	Heavy Duty [kW]	Input current [A]	Output current [A]	[kVA]
160K	132.0	252.0 / 200.0	253.0 / 200.0	166.0
185K	160.0	305.0 / 242.0	303.0 / 240.0	199.0
200K	185.0	354.0 / 280.0	351.0 / 278.0	231.0
220K	200.0	383.0 / 303.0	380.0 / 301.0	249.4
250K	220.0	419.0 / 332.0	411.0 / 325.0	270.2
280K	250.0	461.0 / 365.0	467.0 / 370.0	307.4
315K	280.0	516.0 / 409.0	522.0 / 413.0	343.6
355K	315.0	580.0 / 459.0	588.0 / 465.0	387.0
400K	400.0	730.0 / 578.0	738.0 / 584.0	486.0

Tab. 6-3: 3P 380 VAC 5K50...400K, electric data, Heavy Duty



37K0...400K: available with ONLY VFC 5615.

Please select the current rating of frequency converter according to the motor rated current on the nameplate.

Model	Motor power	380 V / 480 V	380 V / 480 V	Output capacity
	Normal Duty [kW]	Input current [A]	Output current [A]	[kVA]
5K50	7.5	21.0 / 16.7	16.8 / 13.3	11.1
7K50	7.5	21.0 / 16.7	16.8 / 13.3	11.1
11K0	11.0	28.0 / 22.2	24.3 / 19.2	16.0
15K0	15.0	37.8 / 29.9	32.4 / 25.6	21.3
18K5	18.5	45.8 / 36.3	39.2 / 31.0	25.8
22K0	22.0	52.7 / 41.7	45.0 / 36.0	29.7
30K0	30.0	71.2 / 56.3	60.8 / 48.0	40.0
37K0	37.0	87.2 / 69.0	73.7 / 58.3	48.5
45K0	45.0	105.5 / 83.5	89.1 / 70.5	58.7
55K0	55.0	128.0 / 102.0	108.0 / 86.0	71.3
75K0	75.0	174.0 / 138.0	147.0 / 116.0	96.9
90K0	90.0	208.0 / 165.0	176.0 / 139.0	115.6
110K	110.0	254.0 / 201.0	212.0 / 168.0	139.6
132K	132.0	252.0 / 200.0	253.0 / 200.0	166.0
160K	160.0	305.0 / 242.0	303.0 / 240.0	199.0
185K	185.0	354.0 / 280.0	351.0 / 278.0	231.0
200K	200.0	383.0 / 303.0	380.0 / 300.0	250.0
220K	220.0	419.0 / 332.0	411.0 / 325.0	270.2
250K	250.0	476.0 / 377.0	467.0 / 370.0	307.0

Model	Motor power	380 V / 480 V	380 V / 480 V	Output capacity
	Normal Duty [kW]	Input current [A]	Output current [A]	[kVA]
280K	280.0	516.0 / 409.0	522.0 / 413.0	343.6
315K	315.0	580.0 / 459.0	588.0 / 465.0	387.0
355K	355.0	651.0 / 515.0	659.0 / 474.0	433.7

Tab. 6-4: 3P 380 VAC 5K50...355K, electric data, Normal Duty



37K0...355K: available with ONLY VFC 5615.

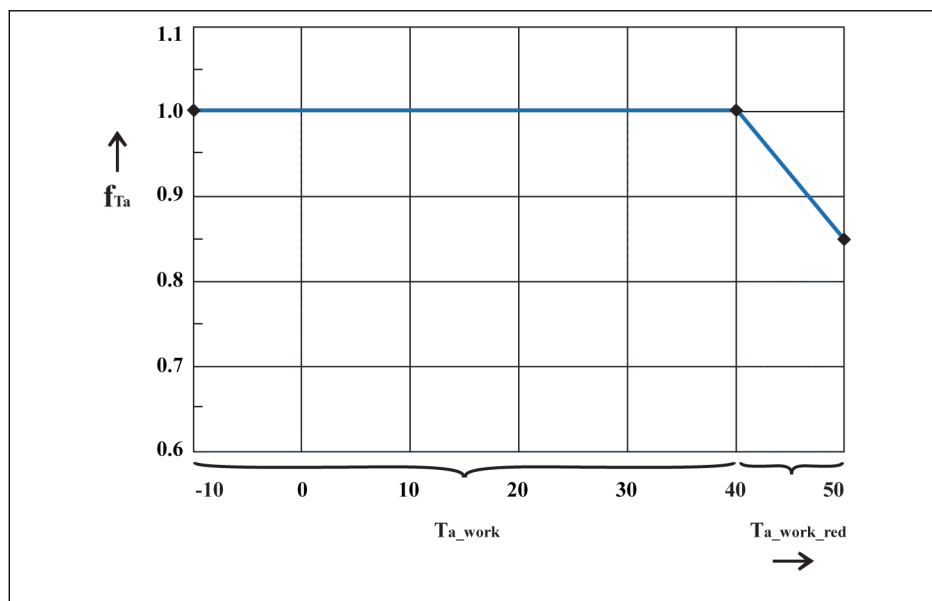
Please select the current rating of frequency converter according to the motor rated current on the nameplate.

6.2.2 Derating of Electric Data

Derating and ambient temperature

The ambient temperature for Frequency Converter VFC x615 is -10...50 °C. Out of this range, there will be no possibility to install and run the frequency converter, even the performance data have been additionally reduced.

- If the ambient temperature is -10...40 °C, there will be no need for derating.
- If the ambient temperature is 40...50 °C, derating must be performed as indicated in the figure below.



f_{Ta}
 T_{a_work}

Load factor
Ambient temperature range for
operation with rated data

$T_{a_work_red}$ Ambient temperature range for
operation with reduced rated
data

Fig. 6-1: Derating and ambient temperature (°C)

Derating and mains voltage

Reduce overcurrent based on mains voltage.

Frequency Converter VFC x615 is thermally dimensioned for the rated current. This rated current is available with the specified rated voltage. With deviating voltages in the permissible range, please pay attention to the following:

- $U_{\text{mains}} < U_{\text{rated}}$:

With mains voltage below the rated voltage, no higher current may be withdrawn to ensure that the dissipated power remains.

- $U_{\text{mains}} > U_{\text{rated}}$:

With mains voltage above the rated voltage, a reduction of the permissible output permanent current takes place to compensate for the increased switching losses.

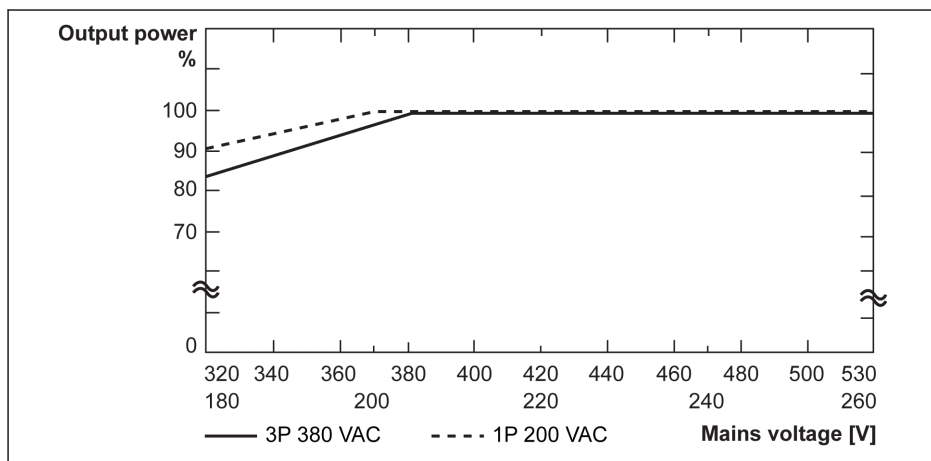


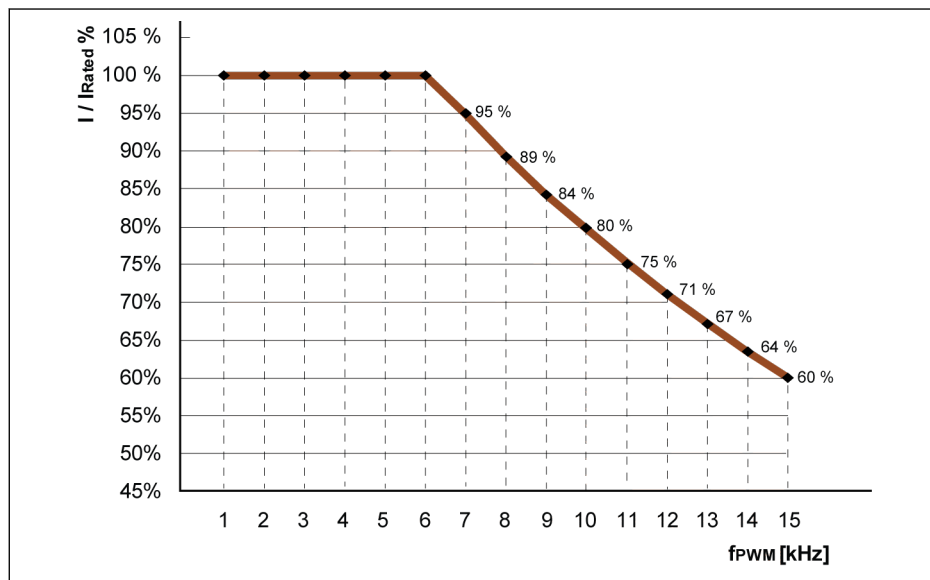
Fig. 6-2: Derating and mains voltage



- 3P 380 VAC: 1 % power derating every 4 V lower than 380 V.
- 1P 200 VAC: 1 % power derating every 2 V lower than 200 V.

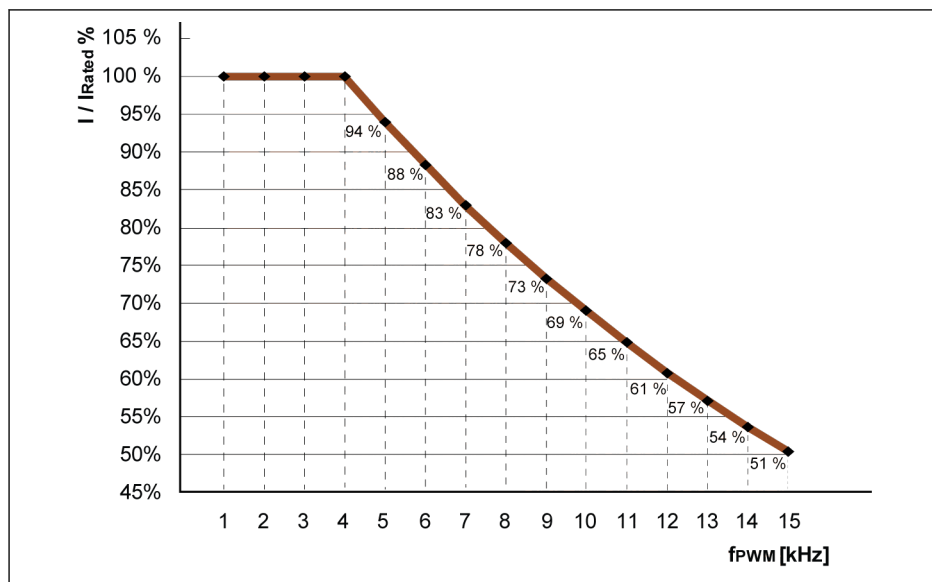
Derating and carrier frequency

In case of higher carrier frequency, the output current is reduced so that the power dissipation in power section remains more or less constant. The figure below shows the current reduction based on the carrier frequency for the frequency converters:



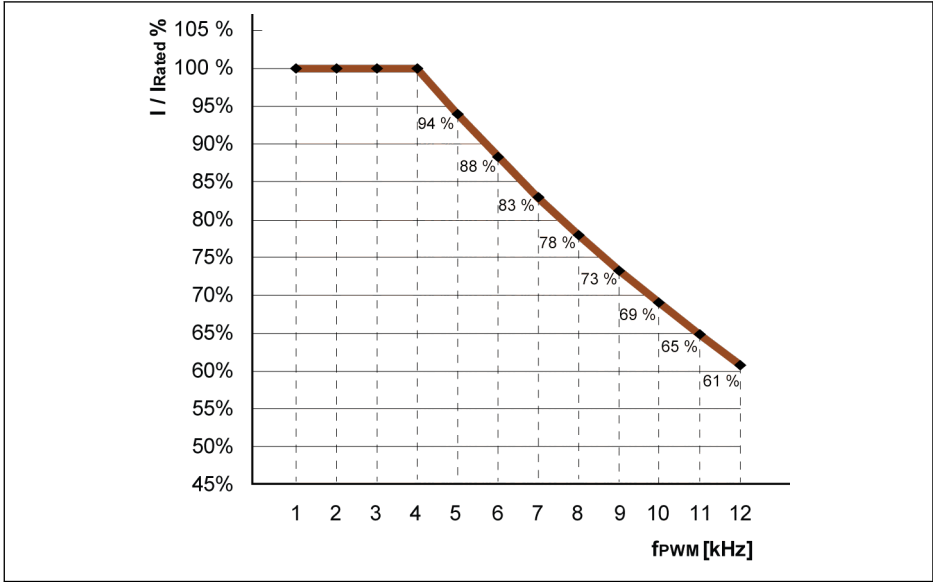
$I / I_{rated} \%$ Percentage of rated output current
 f_{PWM} PWM or carrier frequency

Fig. 6-3: Derating and carrier frequency for 0K40...4K00 models (Normal Duty)



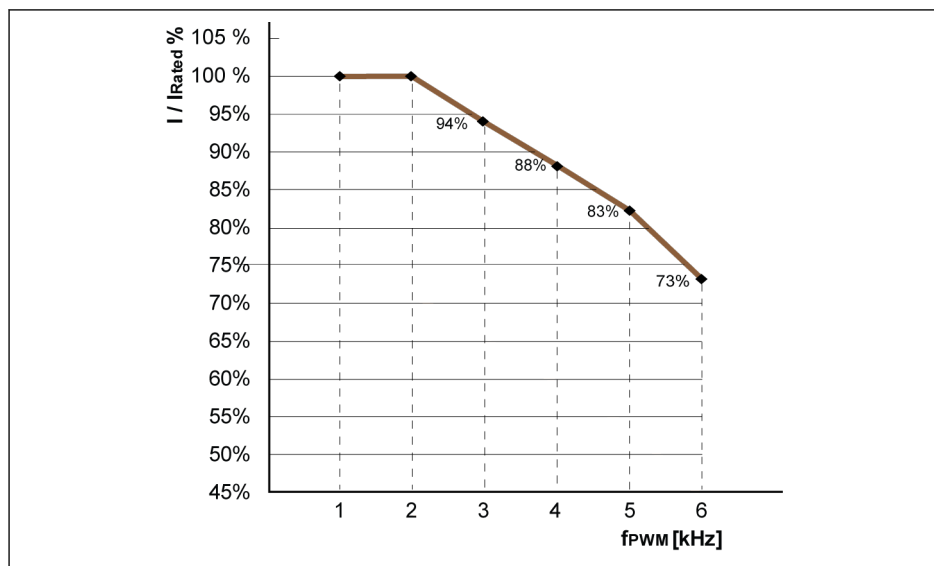
$I / I_{rated} \%$ Percentage of rated output current
 f_{PWM} PWM or carrier frequency

Fig. 6-4: Derating and carrier frequency for 5K50...30K0 models (Normal Duty and Heavy Duty)



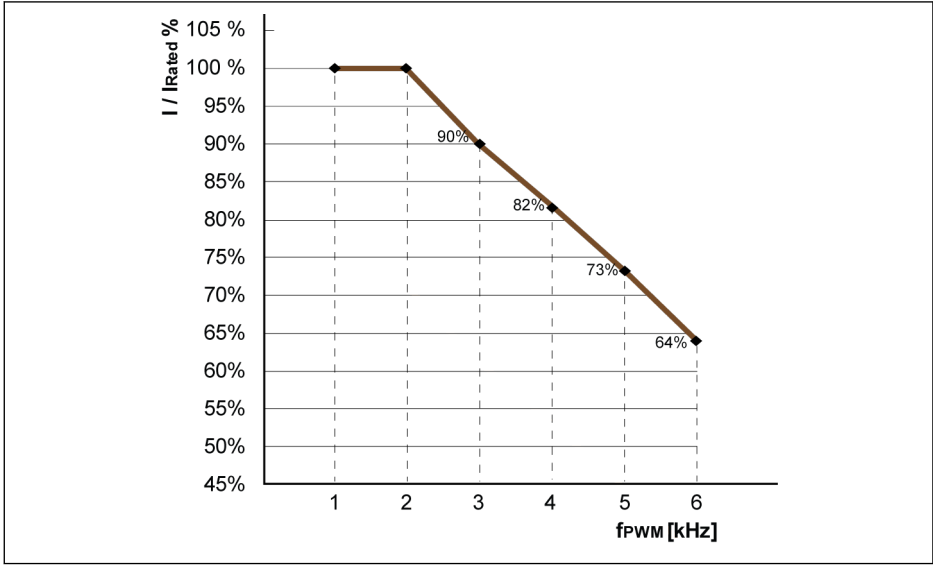
$I / I_{rated} \%$ Percentage of rated output current
 f_{PWM} PWM or carrier frequency

Fig. 6-5: Derating and carrier frequency for 37K0...110K models (Normal Duty and Heavy Duty)



$I / I_{rated} \%$ Percentage of rated output current
 f_{PWM} PWM or carrier frequency

Fig. 6-6: Derating and carrier frequency for 132K..200K models (Normal Duty and Heavy Duty)



$I / I_{rated} \%$ Percentage of rated output current
 f_{PWM} PWM or carrier frequency

Fig. 6-7: Derating and carrier frequency for 220K...400K models (Normal Duty and Heavy Duty)

6.2.3 Maximum Length of Motor Cables

Model	Configuration	Maximum length of motor cables for C3 [m]
0K40...30K0	VFC x615	-
	VFC x615 + External mains EMC filter	50
37K0...200K	VFC x615	-
	VFC x615 + External mains EMC filter	100
220K...400K	VFC x615	-
	VFC x615 + External mains EMC filter	150

Tab. 6-5: Maximum length of motor cables



SHIELDED MOTOR CABLES are used in test.

6.2.4 Minimum Inductance Between Two Motor Terminals

The following formula is used to calculate the minimum inductance between two motor terminals:

$$L_{\min} = U_{\text{DC}} / (8 \times f_{\text{PWM}} \times \sqrt{2} \times I_{\text{nom}} \times 0.2) \text{ (in mH)}$$

U_{DC} : DC-link voltage

f_{PWM} : Desired switching frequency in kHz

I_{nom} : Output current according to the type code (rms value)

7 Frequency Converter Mounting

7.1 Installation Conditions

The frequency converter must be vertically installed.

If one frequency converter is arranged above another, make sure the upper limit of air temperature into the inlet is not exceeded (see [\[External link could not be resolved.\]](#)). An air guide is recommended between the frequency converters to prevent the rising hot air being drawn into the upper frequency converter if the upper limit of air temperature is exceeded.

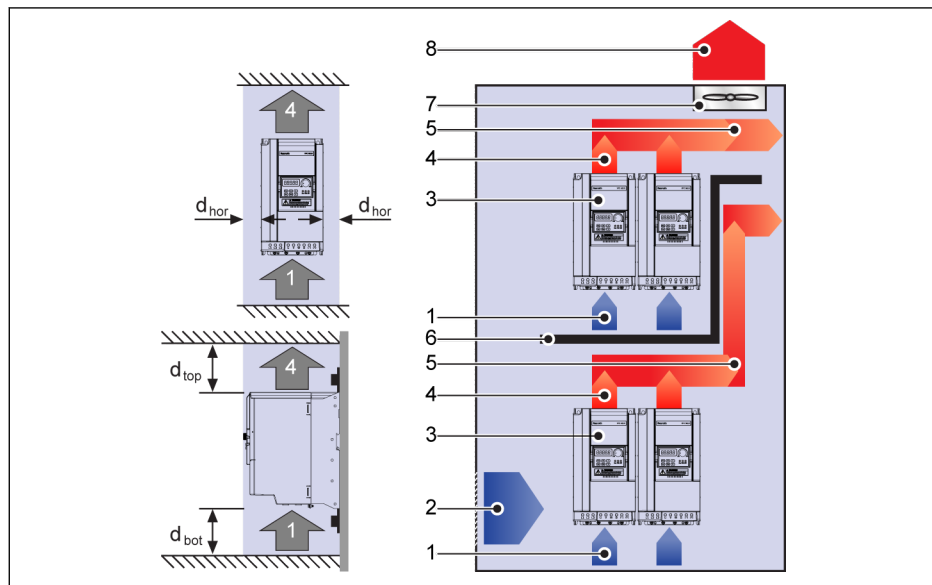


Fig. 7-1: Mounting distance and arrangement

d_{hor} (Distance horizontal):

$d_{hor} = 0 \text{ mm}$ (0K40...30K0); $d_{hor} = 100 \text{ mm}$ (37K0...280K); $d_{hor} = 200 \text{ mm}$ (315K...400K)



Do not place any equipment and components near the fan outlet on the side of the converter.

d_{top} (Minimum top distance):

$d_{top} = 125 \text{ mm}$ (0K40...110K); $d_{top} = 350 \text{ mm}$ (132K...400K)

d_{bot} (Minimum bottom distance):

$d_{bot} = 125 \text{ mm}$ (0K40...110K); $d_{bot} = 350 \text{ mm}$ (132K...400K)

1: Air inlet at frequency converter; 2: Air inlet at control cabinet

3: Frequency converter; 4: Air outlet at frequency converter

5: Heated air conveying direction; 6: Air guide in control cabinet

7: Fan in control cabinet; 8: Discharge of heated air

7.2 Heat Dissipation

1P 200 VAC

Frame	Model	Heat dissipation	
		[W]	[BTU/h]
B	0K40	40	136
B	0K75	70	256
C	1K50	120	409
D	2K20	165	563

Tab. 7-1: 1P 200 VAC heat dissipation

3P 380 VAC

Frame	Model	Heat dissipation	
		[W]	[BTU/h]
B	0K40	20	68
B	0K75	37	126
C	1K50	75	256
C	2K20	99	338
D	3K00	135	461
D	4K00	180	614
E	5K50	210	714
E	7K50	210	714
E	11K0	255	867
F	15K0	320	1,088
F	18K5	435	1,479
G	22K0	530	1,802
G	30K0	640	2,176
H	37K0	745	2,533
H	45K0	874	2,972
I	55K0	1,388	4,737
I	75K0	1,927	6,574
J	90K0	2,082	7,103
J	110K	2,613	8,916
K	132K	2,530	8,602
K	160K	2,772	9,425
L	185K	3,650	12,446

Frame	Model	Heat dissipation	
		[W]	[BTU/h]
L	200K	3,813	13,002
M	220K	4,366	14,888
M	250K	5,121	17,462
M	280K	6,500	22,165
N	315K	5,600	19,096
N	355K	6,350	21,653
N	400K	7,100	24,226

Tab. 7-2: 3P 380 VAC heat dissipation

7.3 Air Flow of Fans

1P 200 VAC

Frame	Model	Fan for heat sink			Fan for internal components			Total air flow	
		Quantity	[CFM]	[m³/min]	Quantity	[CFM]	[m³/min]	[CFM]	[m³/min]
B	OK40	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
B	OK75	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
C	1K50	1	19.20	0.54	–	–	–	19.20	0.54
D	2K20	1	19.20	0.54	–	–	–	19.20	0.54

Tab. 7-3: 1P 200 VAC air flow of fans

3P 380 VAC

Frame	Model	Fan for heat sink			Fan for internal components			Total air flow	
		Quantity	[CFM]	[m³/min]	Quantity	[CFM]	[m³/min]	[CFM]	[m³/min]
B	OK40	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
B	OK75	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
C	1K50	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
C	2K20	1	19.20	0.54	–	–	–	19.2	0.54
D	3K00	1	19.20	0.54	–	–	–	19.2	0.54
D	4K00	1	19.20	0.54	–	–	–	19.2	0.54
E	5K50	1	40.00	1.13	–	–	–	40	1.13
E	7K50	1	40.00	1.13	–	–	–	40	1.13
E	11K0	1	40.00	1.13	–	–	–	40	1.13
F	15K0	2	40.00	1.13	–	–	–	80	2.26
F	18K5	2	40.00	1.13	–	–	–	80	2.26
G	22K0	2	40.00	1.13	–	–	–	80	2.26
G	30K0	2	49.20	1.39	–	–	–	98.4	2.78
H	37K0	2	120.20	3.40	–	–	–	240.4	6.8
H	45K0	2	120.20	3.40	–	–	–	240.4	6.8
I	55K0	2	215.74	6.11	–	–	–	431.48	12.22
I	75K0	2	215.74	6.11	–	–	–	431.48	12.22
J	90K0	2	215.74	6.11	–	–	–	431.48	12.22
J	110K	2	215.74	6.11	–	–	–	431.48	12.22
K	132K	3	243.64	6.90	–	–	–	730.92	20.7
K	160K	3	243.64	6.90	–	–	–	730.92	20.7
L	185K	3	243.64	6.90	–	–	–	730.92	20.7

Frame	Model	Fan for heat sink			Fan for internal components			Total air flow	
		Quantity	[CFM]	[m³/min]	Quantity	[CFM]	[m³/min]	[CFM]	[m³/min]
L	200K	3	243.64	6.90	–	–	–	730.92	20.7
M	220K	4	243.64	6.90	–	–	–	974.56	27.6
M	250K	4	243.64	6.90	–	–	–	974.56	27.6
M	285K	4	243.64	6.90	–	–	–	974.56	27.6
N	315K	5	243.64	6.90	1	243.64	6.9	1461.8 4	41.4
N	355K	5	243.64	6.90	1	243.64	6.9	1461.8 4	41.4
N	400K	5	243.64	6.90	1	243.64	6.9	1461.8 4	41.4

Tab. 7-4: 3P 380 VAC air flow of fans

7.4 Figures and Dimensions

7.4.1 Standard Models

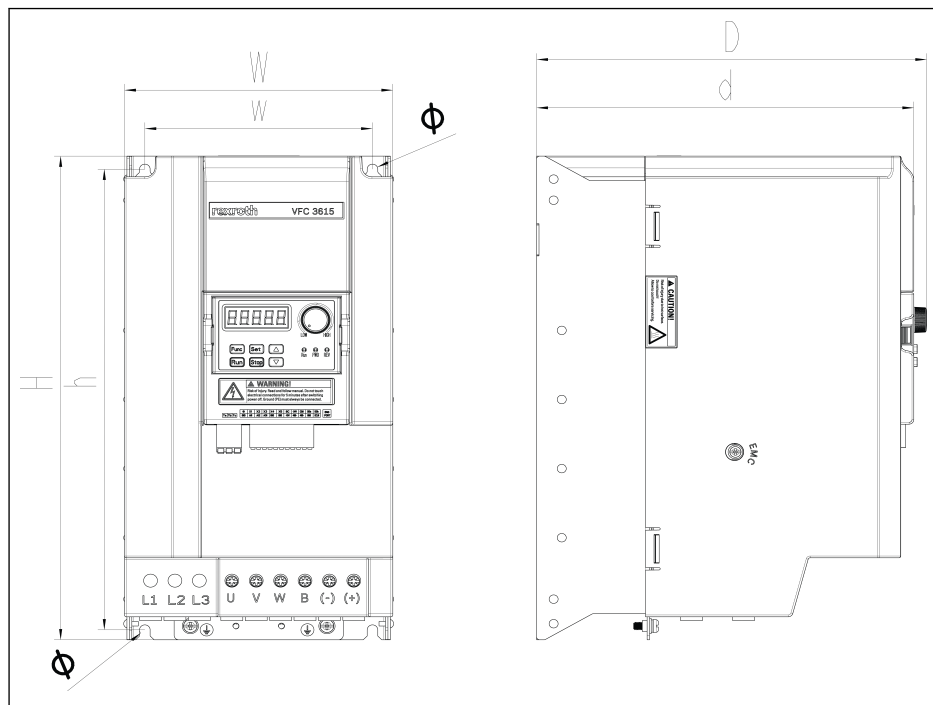


Fig. 7-2: VFC x615 OK40...22K0 dimensions figure

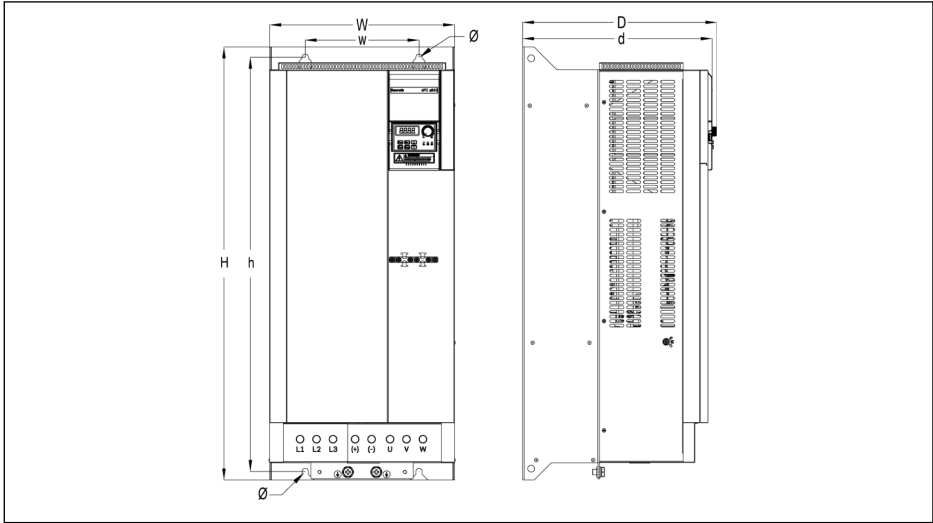


Fig. 7-3: VFC 5615 30K0...90K0 dimensions figure

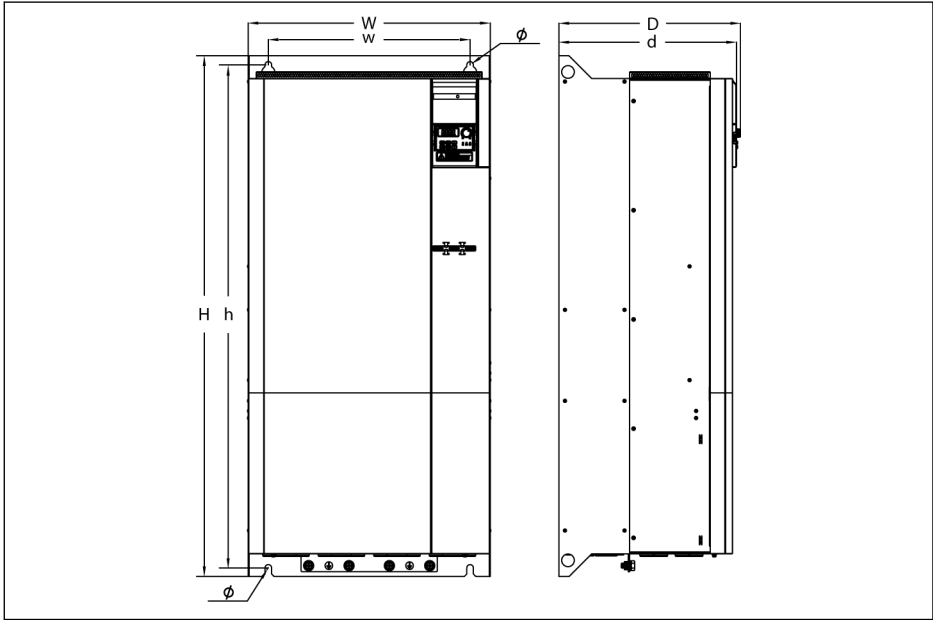


Fig. 7-4: VFC 5615 110K...250K dimensions figure

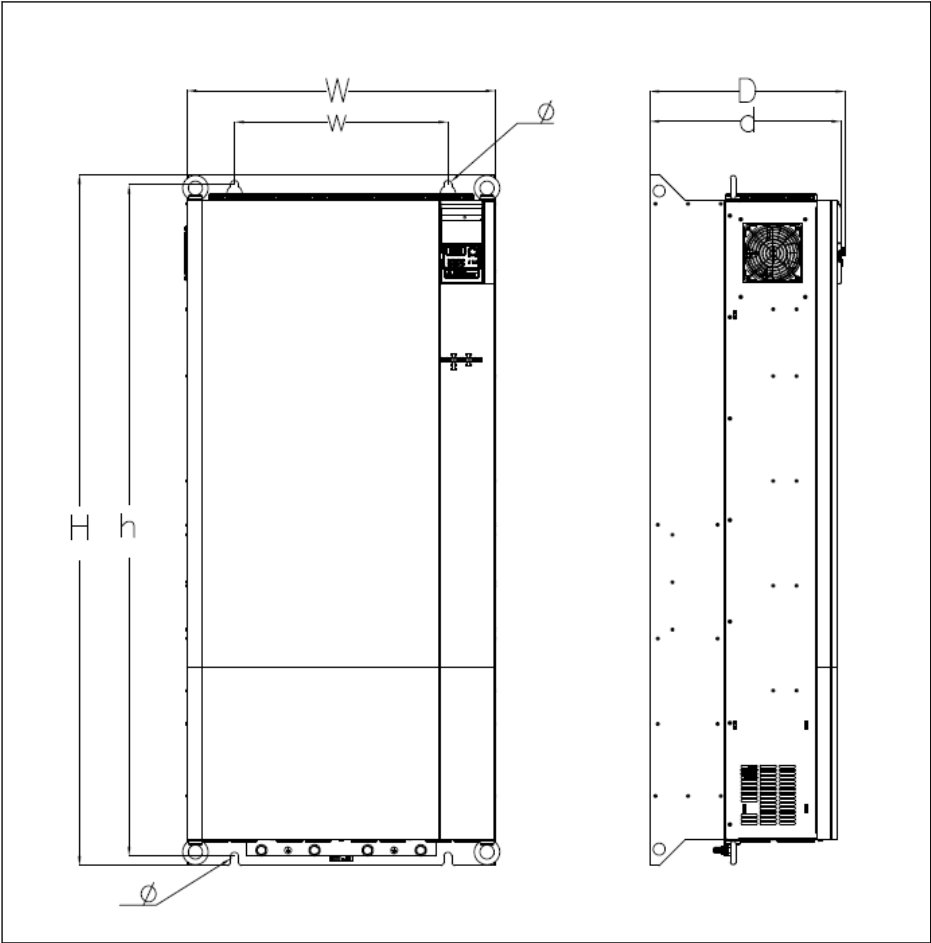


Fig. 7-5: VFC 5615 280K...400K dimensions figure

Frame	Model ^①	Dimensions [mm]							Screw size ^②	Net weight [kg]
		W	H	D ^④	w	h	d ^④	Ø		
B	OK40	95	166	167	66	156	159	4.5	M4	1.5
B	OK75	95	166	167	66	156	159	4.5	M4	1.5
C	1K50	95	206	170	66	196	162	4.5	M4	1.8
D	2K20	120	231	175	80	221	167	4.5	M4	2.6

Tab. 7-5: VFC x610 1P 200 VAC dimensions

Frame	Model ^①	Dimensions [mm]							Screw size ^②	Net weight [kg]
		W	H	D ^④	w	h	d ^④	Ø		
B	0K40	95	166	167	66	156	159	4.5	M4	1.5
B	0K75	95	166	167	66	156	159	4.5	M4	1.5
C	1K50	95	206	170	66	196	162	4.5	M4	1.8
C	2K20	95	206	170	66	196	162	4.5	M4	1.8
D	3K00	120	231	175	80	221	167	4.5	M4	2.6
D	4K00	120	231	175	80	221	167	4.5	M4	2.6
E	5K50	130	243	233	106	228	225	6.5	M6	3.6
E	7K50	130	243	233	106	228	225	6.5	M6	3.6
E	11K0	130	243	233	106	228	225	6.5	M6	3.9
F	15K0	150	283	233	125	265	225	6.5	M6	5.0
F	18K0	150	283	233	125	265	225	6.5	M6	5.7
G	22K5	165	315	241	140	300	233	6.5	M6	7.3
G	30K0	165	315	241	140	300	233	6.5	M6	8.0
H ^③	37K0	250	510	272	200	492	264	7.0	M6	20.2
H ^③	45K0	250	510	272	200	492	264	7.0	M6	20.2
I ^③	55K0	265	585	325	200	555	317	11.0	M10	33.0
I ^③	75K0	265	585	325	200	555	317	11.0	M10	35.0
J ^③	90K0	325	760	342	200	727	334	11.0	M10	45.0
J ^③	110K0	325	760	342	200	727	334	11.0	M10	52.5
K ^③	132K	385	923	350	250	893	342	11.0	M10	71.7
K ^③	160K	385	923	350	250	893	342	11.0	M10	76.6
L ^③	185K	480	1030	360	400	995	352	13.0	M12	108.0
L ^③	200K	480	1030	360	400	995	352	13.0	M12	108.0
M ^③	220K	595	1337	386	425	1300	378	13.0	M12	170.0
M ^③	250K	595	1337	386	425	1300	378	13.0	M12	170.0
M ^③	280K	595	1337	386	425	1300	378	13.0	M12	170.0
N ^③	315K	650	1458	412	450	1417	404	17.0	M16	208.0
N ^③	355K	650	1458	412	450	1417	404	17.0	M16	210.0
N ^③	400K	650	1458	412	450	1417	404	17.0	M16	210.0

Tab. 7-6: VFC x610 3P 380 VAC dimensions



- ①: The complete type code for frequency converter is:
VFCX615-xKxx-xPx-MNA-xx-NNNNN-NNNN, see [chapter 19.2 "Appendix II: Type Coding" on page 518](#).
E.g., type code for VFC 5615 5K50 (3P 380 VAC model) is:
VFC5615-5K50-3P4-MNA-7P-NNNNN-NNNN.
 - ②: 4 screws are needed for wall mounting of VFC x615.
 - ③: **ONLY** available with VFC 5615.
 - ④: Add **35 mm** to dimension **D** and **d** when option module is used and installed.
-

7.4.2 Wall-Through Models

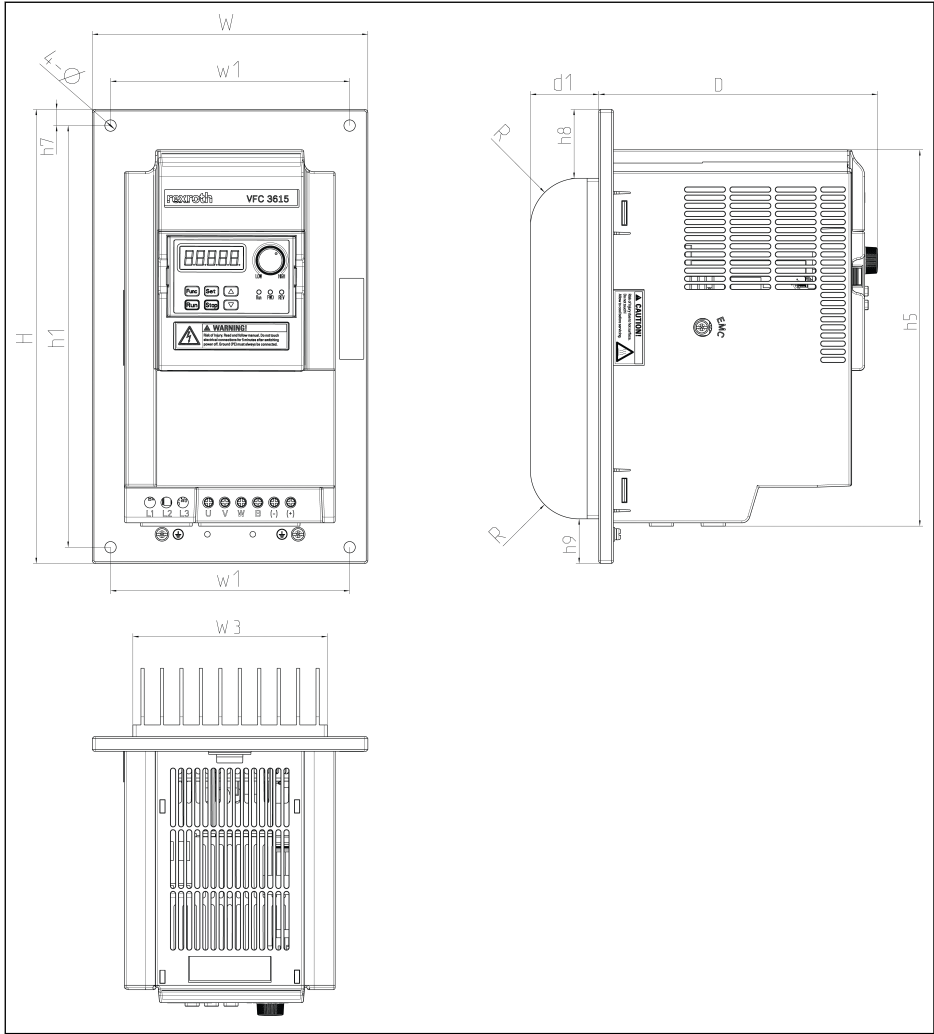


Fig. 7-6: VFC 5615 5K5...7K5 dimensions figure (wall-through models)

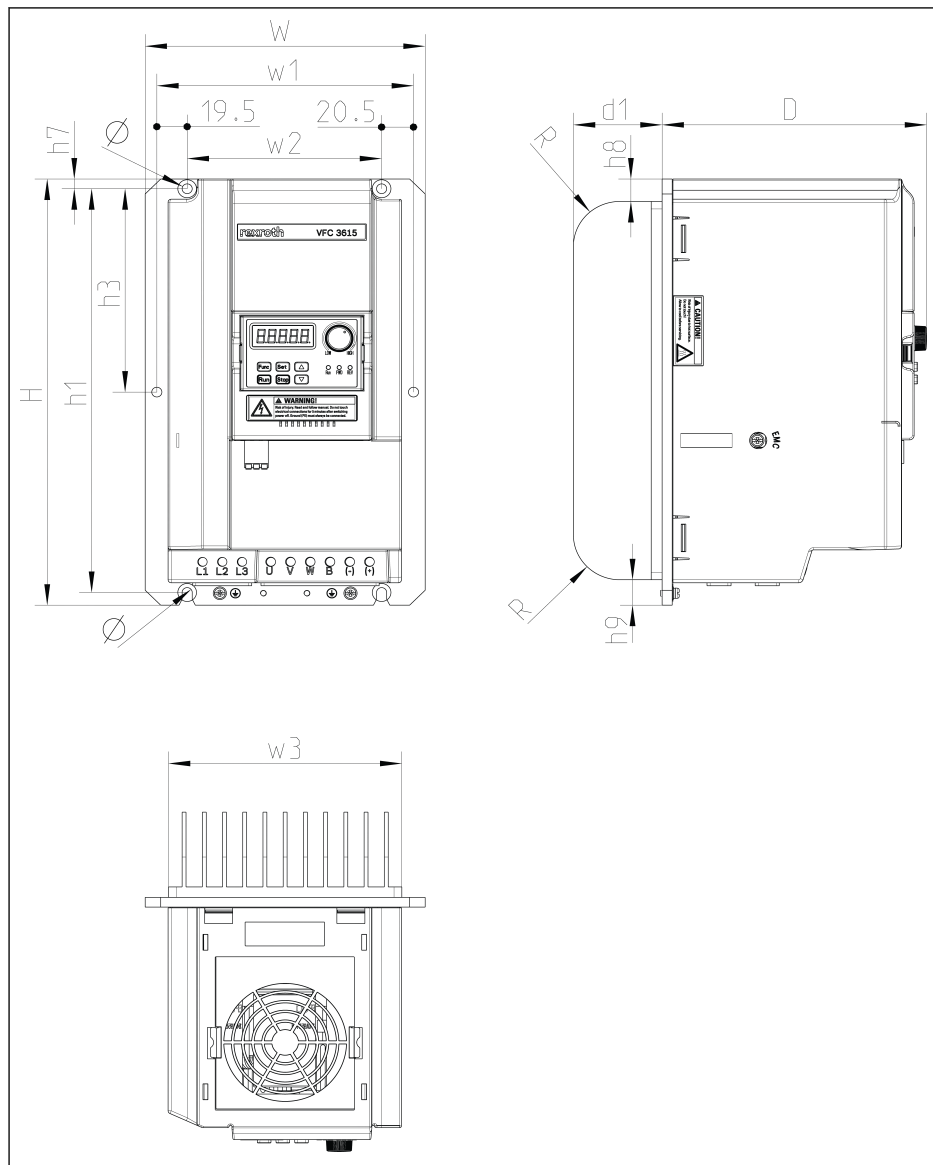


Fig. 7-7: VFC 5615 15K0 dimensions figure (wall-through models)

Frequency Converter Mounting

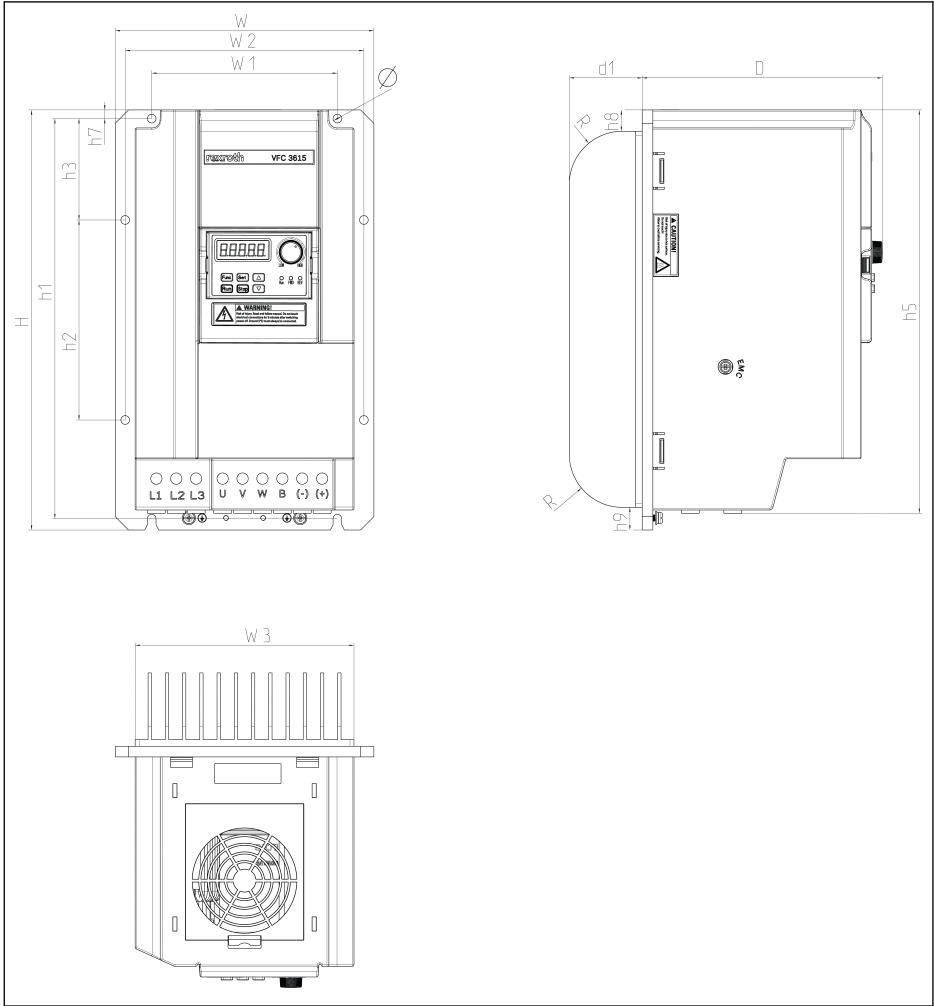


Fig. 7-8: VFC 5615 22K0 dimensions figure (wall-through models)

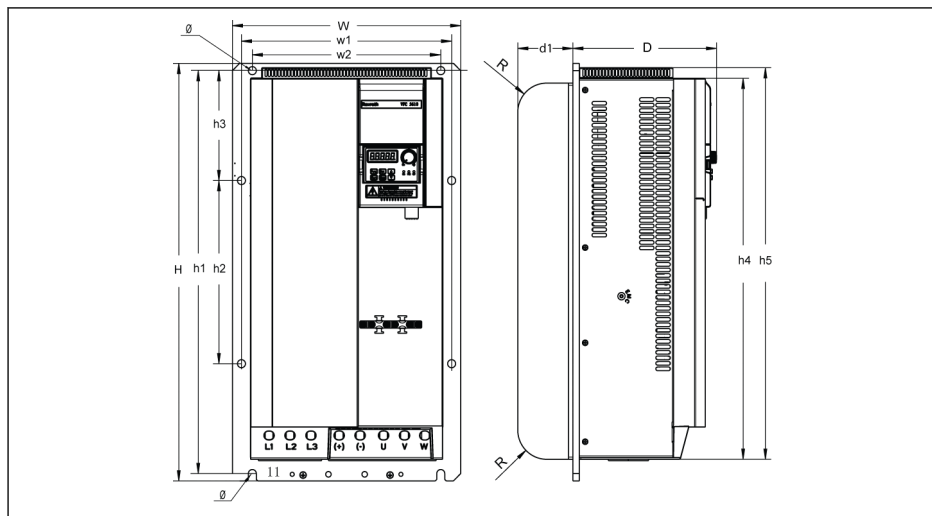


Fig. 7-9: VFC 5615 45K0...55K0 dimensions figure (wall-through models)

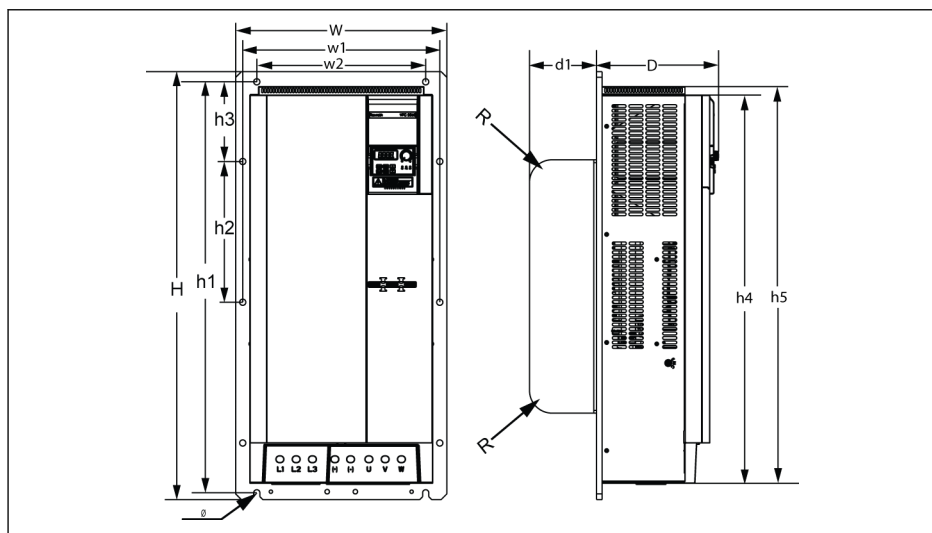


Fig. 7-10: VFC 5615 30K0...90K0 dimensions figure (wall-through models)

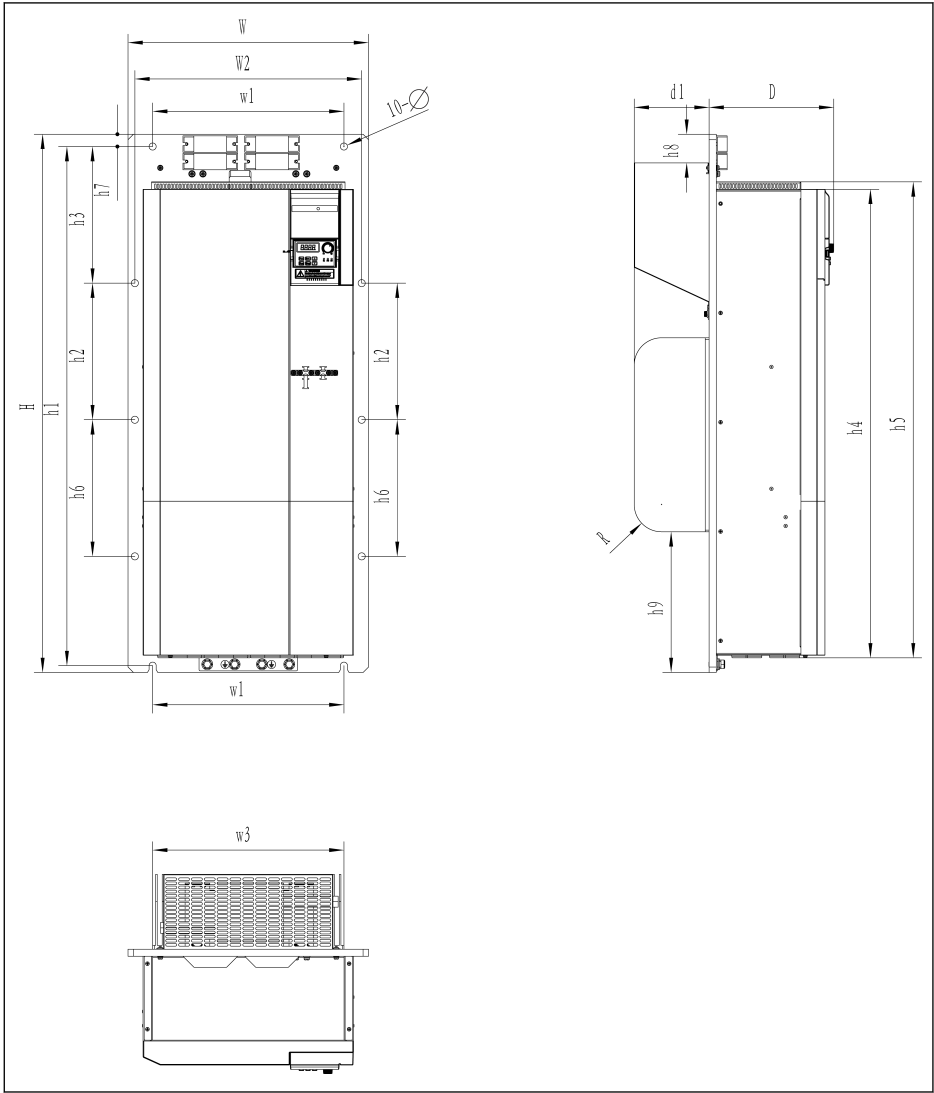


Fig. 7-11: VFC 5615 110K0...185K0 dimensions figure (wall-through models)

Mod- el	5K5	11K0	18K5	30K0	45K0	45K0	75K0	110K0	160K0
	&	&	&	&			&	&	&
	7K5	15 K0	22 K0	37 K0		55K0	90K0	132K0	1 85K0
W	170	180	195	290	315	315	375	440	530
w1	130	150	180	270	290	290	350	385	505
w2	147.5	125	140	250	260	260	300	350	350
w3	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	350	350
H	280	285	315	490	570	570	760	985	1080
h1	260	270	300	470	550	550	730	950	1055
h2	-	-	150	150	250	250	250	250	300
h3	-	136	76	200	150	150	141.5	250	250
h4	-	253	282	453	520	520	690	858	945
h5	-	-	-	466.5	534.5	534.5	705	871	959
h6	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	250	300
h7	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	22.5	15
h8	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	52.5	57
D	172	170	180	160	200	200	217	228	232
d1	42.5	57	67	77	76	106	119	137	138
Ø	7	6.5	6.5	6.5	11	11	11	13	13
R	30	30	40	40	40	40	40	50	50
Scre w size	M6	M6	M6	M6	M10	M10	M10	M12	M12
weig ht(k g)	4.2	6.5	8	TBD	27	32	44	TBD	TBD



Wall-Through models are only support HD (Heavy Duty) mode.

8 Frequency Converter Wiring

8.1 Wiring Diagram

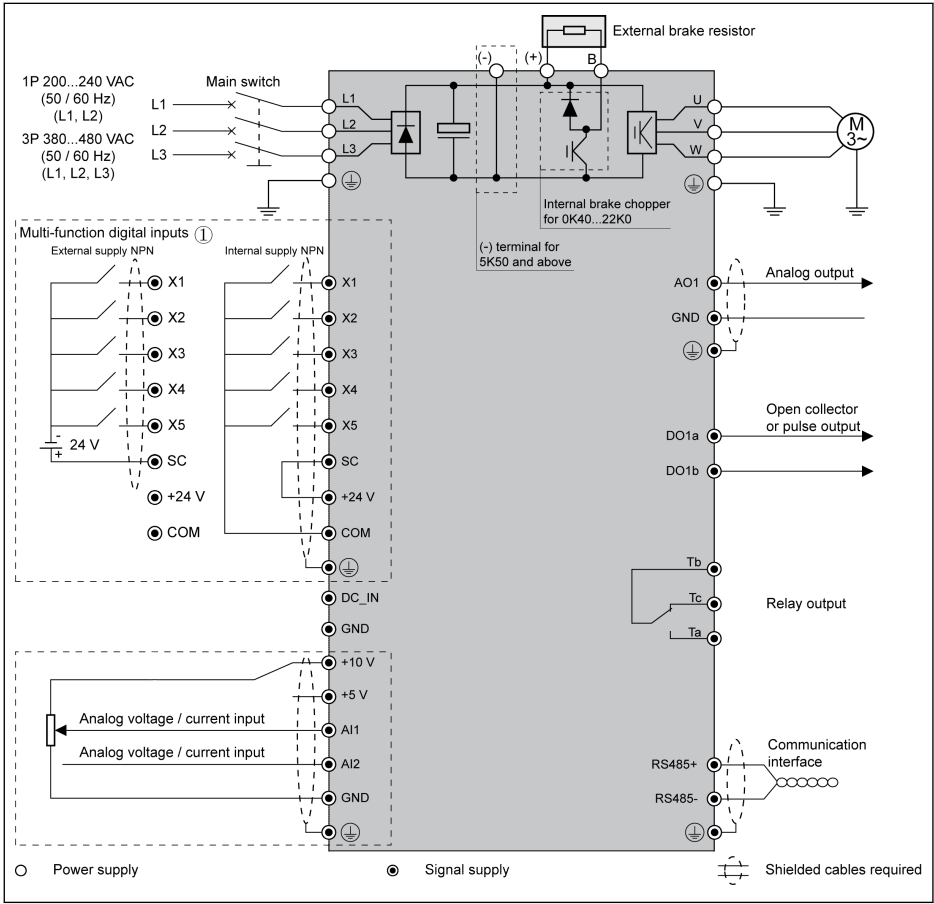


Fig. 8-1: Wiring diagram



- For cable size, fuse, screw torque, see [chapter 8.2 "Cable Specifications" on page 54](#).
 - For terminals, see [chapter 8.3 "Terminals" on page 62](#).
 - ①: PNP modes, see [chapter "Digital input NPN / PNP wiring" on page 73](#).
 - Pulse input can be **ONLY** set via 'Multi-function digital input X5'.
 - When analog current input function is applied, the supply voltage of analog input terminal can not exceed +5 V.
-

8.2 Cable Specifications

8.2.1 Power Cables

Cable specification for international without USA / Canada



- Use copper wires specified for 90 °C or above.
- Insulation based on IEC60364-5-52.
- Cable with concentric shielding must be used.
- According to IEC61800-5-1, PE cable must be at least 10 mm² or a double PE cable must be used.
- *: If additional labels available with the terminals of 0K40...11K0, please refer to the torque data on labels.

VFC x615 Model	Fuse (gG)	Power cables installation mode			PE Cable	Torque / Screw
		B1	B2	E		
	[A]	[mm ²]			[mm ²]	[N·m / lbf·in] (Mx)
0K40	10.0	2.5	2.5	2.5	10.0	1.00* / 9.0 (M3)
					2.5*2	
0K75	16.0	2.5	2.5	2.5	10.0	1.00* / 9.0 (M3)
					2.5*2	
1K50	25.0	4.0	4.0	2.5	10.0	1.00* / 9.0 (M3)
					4.0*2	
2K20	32.0	6.0 [Ⓢ]	6.0 [Ⓢ]	4.0	10.0	1.00* / 9.0 (M3)
					6.0*2	

Tab. 8-1: 1P 200 VAC fuse and cable dimensions for international without USA / Canada



Ⓢ: Stranded with ferrule without plastic sleeve.

VFC x615 Model	Fuse (gG)	Power cables installation mode			PE Cable	Torque / Screw
		B1	B2	E		
	[A]	[mm ²]			[mm ²]	[N·m / lbf·in] (Mx)
0K40	6.0	2.5	2.5	2.5	10.0	1.00* / 9.0 (M3)
					2.5*2	
0K75	10.0	2.5	2.5	2.5	10.0	1.00* / 9.0 (M3)
					2.5*2	
1K50	10.0	2.5	2.5	2.5	10.0	1.00* / 9.0 (M3)
					2.5*2	

VFCx615 Model	Fuse (gG)	Power cables installation mode			PE Cable	Torque / Screw
	[A]	B1	B2	E		[N·m / lbf·in] (Mx)
		[mm²]			[mm²]	
2K20	16.0	2.5	2.5	2.5	10.0	1.00* / 9.0 (M3)
					2.5*2	
3K00	20.0	4.0	4.0	2.5	10.0	1.00* / 9.0 (M3)
					4.0*2	
4K00	20.0	4.0	4.0	2.5	10.0	1.00* / 9.0 (M3)
					4.0*2	
5K50	32.0	6.0	6.0	4.0	10.0	1.20* / 10.5 (M4)
					6.0*2	
7K50	32.0	6.0	6.0	4.0	10.0	1.20* / 10.5 (M4)
					6.0*2	
11K0	40.0	6.0	10.0	6.0	10.0	1.20* / 10.5 (M4)
					6.0*2	
15K0	50.0	10.0	10.0	10.0	10.0	1.76 / 15.6 (M4)
18K5	50.0	10.0	10.0	10.0	10.0	1.76 / 15.6 (M4)
22K0	80.0	25.0	25.0	16.0	16.0	3.73 / 33.0 (M5)
30K0	100.0	25.0	35.0	25.0	25.0	3.73 / 33.0 (M5)
37K0	125.0	35.0	50.0	35.0	25.0	3.80 / 33.6 (M6)
45K0	125.0	35.0	50.0	35.0	35.0	3.80 / 33.6 (M6)
55K0	160.0	50.0	70.0	50.0	35.0	28.0 / 248.0 (5/16 in)
75K0	200.0	70.0	95.0	70.0	50.0	28.0 / 248.0 (5/16 in)
90K0	250.0	120.0	150.0	95.0	95.0	28.0 / 248.0 (5/16 in)
110K	250.0	120.0	150.0	95.0	95.0	28.0 / 248.0 (5/16 in)
132K	315.0	120.0	150.0	120.0	95.0	15.0 / 132.7 (M10) ^①
		95.0*2	95.0*2	95.0*2		8.0 / 70.8 (M8) ^②
160K	315.0	185.0	240.0	185.0	120.0	15.0 / 132.7 (M10) ^①
		95.0*2	95.0*2	95.0*2		8.0 / 70.8 (M8) ^②
185K	400.0	120.0*2	120.0*2	120.0*2	150.0	15.0 / 132.7 (M10) ^②

Tab. 8-2: 3P 380 VAC fuse and cable dimensions for international without USA / Canada—0K40...185K

VFC x615 Model	Fuse (gG)	Power cables installation mode				PE Cable	Torque / Screw
		B1	B2	E	F		
	[A]	[mm²]				[mm²]	[N·m / lbf·in] (Mx)
200K	400.0	-	150*2	-	-	150.0	15.0 / 132.7 (M10)②
220K	500.0	-	185*2	-	95*2	185.0	15.0 / 132.7 (M10)②
250K	500.0	-	240*2	-	95*2	240.0	15.0 / 132.7 (M10)②
280K	630.0	-	120*2	-	120*2	120*2	15.0/132.7(M10)①
315K	630.0	-	-	-	95.0*4	150*2	20.0/177.0 (M12)①
355K	800.0	-	-	-	95.0*4	150*2	20.0/177.0(M12)①
400K	1000.0	-	-	-	120.0*4	240*2	20.0/177.0(M12)①

Tab. 8-3: 3P 380 VAC fuse and cable dimensions for international without USA / Canada–
200K...400K



① and ②: According to the actual situation, single cable or double cable can be selected as the power cable of model 132K and above. ① is the torque and screw of single cable and ② is the torque and screw of double cable.

Cable specification for USA / Canada



- The data listed in the table below are only used to select fuse and cable dimensions for USA / Canada.
- Must use copper wires of 75 °C or above according to UL 61800-5-1.
- It is recommended to use shielded cables to connect the motor.
- *: If additional labels available with the terminals of 0K40...11K0, please refer to the torque data on labels.

VFCx615 Model	Fuse (Class J) [A]	Power cables [AWG]	PE Cable [AWG]	Torque / Screw [N·m / lb·in] (Mx)
0K40	10.0	14	8	1.00* / 9.0 (M3)
0K75	15.0	14	8	1.00* / 9.0 (M3)
1K50	25.0	10	8	1.00* / 9.0 (M3)
2K20	30.0	10	8	1.00* / 9.0 (M3)

Tab. 8-4: 1P 200 VAC fuse and cable dimensions for USA / Canada

VFCx615 Model	Fuse (Class J) [A]	Power cables [AWG]	PE Cable [AWG]	Torque / Screw [N·m / lbf·in] (Mx)
0K40	6.0	14	8	1.00* / 9.0 (M3)
0K75	10.0	14	8	1.00* / 9.0 (M3)
1K50	10.0	14	8	1.00* / 9.0 (M3)
2K20	15.0	14	8	1.00* / 9.0 (M3)
3K00	20.0	12	8	1.00* / 9.0 (M3)
4K00	20.0	12	8	1.00* / 9.0 (M3)
5K50	30.0	10	8	1.20* / 10.5 (M4)
7K50	30.0	10	8	1.20* / 10.5 (M4)
11K0	40.0	8	8	1.20* / 10.5 (M4)
15K0	50.0	8	8	1.76 / 15.6 (M4)
18K5	60.0	6	6	1.76 / 15.6 (M4)
22K0	80.0	4	6	3.73 / 33.0 (M5)
30K0	100.0	2	4	3.73 / 33.0 (M5)
37K0	100.0	2	3	3.80 / 33.6 (M6)
45K0	125.0	1	3	3.80 / 33.6 (M6)
55K0	175.0	2 / 0	1 / 0	28.0 / 248.0 (5/16 in)
75K0	200.0	4 / 0	3 / 0	28.0 / 248.0 (5/16 in)

VFC x615 Model	Fuse (Class J)	Power cables	PE Cable	Torque / Screw
	[A]	[AWG]	[AWG]	[N·m / lbf·in] (Mx)
90K0	250.0	250 kcmil	4 / 0	28.0 / 248.0 (5/16 in)
110K	300.0	350 kcmil	4 / 0	28.0 / 248.0 (5/16 in)
132K	300.0	400 kcmil	3 / 0	15.0 / 132.7 (M10) ^①
		3 / 0 * 2		8.0 / 70.8 (M8) ^②
160K	350.0	500 kcmil	250 kcmil	15.0 / 132.7 (M10) ^①
		250 kcmil * 2		8.0 / 70.8 (M8) ^②
185K	450.0	350 kcmil * 2	350 kcmil	15.0 / 132.7 (M10) ^②
200K	450.0	350 kcmil * 2	350 kcmil	15.0 / 132.7 (M10) ^②
220K	500.0	300 kcmil * 2	300 kcmil	15.0 / 132.7 (M10) ^②
250K	-	-	-	-
280K	-	-	-	-
315K	-	-	-	-
355K	-	-	-	-

Tab. 8-5: 3P 380 VAC fuse and cable dimensions for USA / Canada



① and ②: According to the actual situation, single cable or double cable can be selected as the power cable of model 132K and above. ① is the torque and screw of single cable and ② is the torque and screw of double cable.

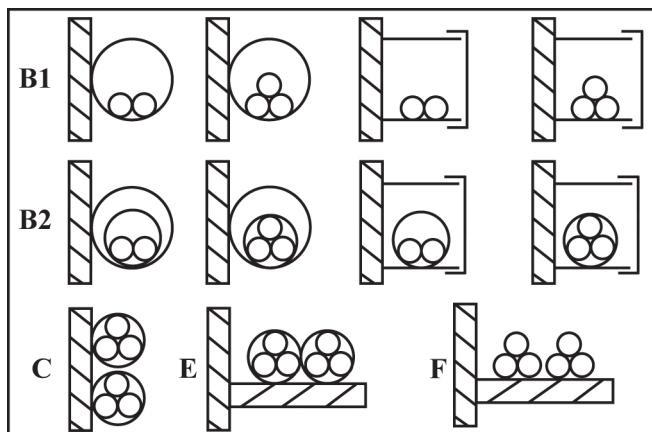
Dimensioning variables of the table values

1. Installation types:

- B1 according to IEC 60364-5-52, e.g. stranded wires routed in cable duct
- B2 according to IEC 60364-5-52, e.g. multi-core line routed in cable duct
- E according to IEC 60364-5-52, e.g. multi-core line routed on open cable tray
- F according to IEC 60364-5-52, e.g. single-core line routed on open cable tray
- According to NFPA 79 (external wiring), UL 508A (internal wiring), NEC, NFPA 70:
 - 1 cable with 3 conductors, 1 neutral conductor and 1 equipment grounding conductor
 - Routed in pipe on the wall

Internal wiring: Routing inside of control cabinet or of devices.

Field wiring: Routing of cross sections of terminal connectors wired by the user (in the field).



B1 Conductors in installation pipes and in installation channels that can be opened

B2 Cables or lines in installation pipes and in installation channels that can be opened

C Cables or lines on walls

E / F Cables or lines on open cable trays

Fig. 8-2: Cable installation types (cf. IEC 60364-5-52; DIN VDE 0298-4; EN 60204-1)

2. Recommendation for design of the fuses:

- **International except for USA / Canada:** Class gL-gG; 500 V, 690 V; design NH, D (DIAZED) or D0 (NEOZED).



Characteristics

In the case of error (e.g. ground error at connections L+, L-), fuses of characteristic **gL** (general-purpose fuse link for cables and lines) and **gG** (general-purpose fuse link for general installations) protect the **lines** in the frequency converter system.

To **protect the semiconductors** in the frequency converters, you can use fuses of characteristic **gR**.

- **USA / Canada:** Class J; 600 V

3. Terminal protection of power cables

Install and hot shrink the bushing on the copper-made lug and cable core line, and ensure that the bushing completely covers the cable conductor.

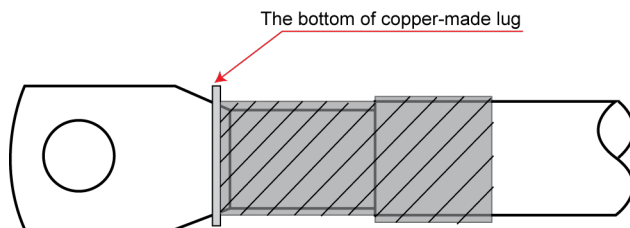


Fig. 8-3: Terminal protection of power cables

8.2.2 Control Cables

The following requirements are applicable to the signal connection wiring:

- Flexible cables with wire end sleeves
- Cable cross-section: $0.2...1.0 \text{ mm}^2$
- Cable cross-section for connectors with insulation sleeves: $0.25...1.0 \text{ mm}^2$
- Analog inputs AI1, AI2, EAI, +10 V, +5 V and GND: use shielded cables
- Digital inputs X1...X5, EX1...EX4, SC, +24 V and COM: use shielded cables
- Analog outputs AO1, EAO and GND: use shielded cables
- RS485 communication: use shielded twisted pair cables



EAI, EX1...EX4 and EAO belong to I/O card.

Recommendations on cable insulation stripping:

Please strip the insulation of control cables according to the dimensions given below. Too long stripping may cause short circuit of adjacent cables; too short stripping may lead to cables becoming loose.

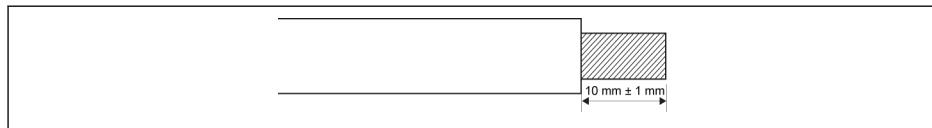


Fig. 8-4: Cable insulation stripping length



Please follow the steps below for wiring of control terminals.

Step 1: Switch off the frequency converter before performing wiring.

Step 2: Deactivate the control signals in the wiring process.

Step 3: Switch on the frequency converter.

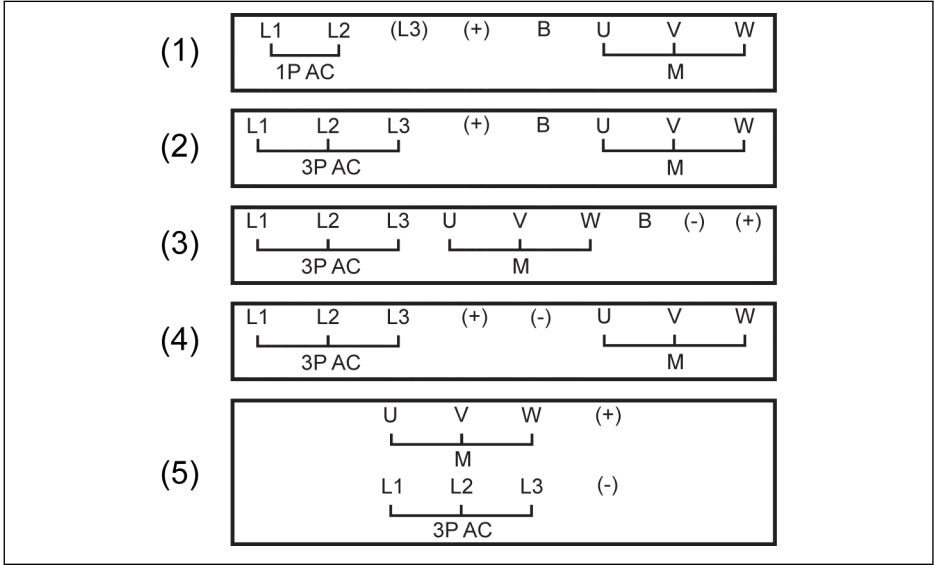
Step 4: Set respective parameters.

Step 5: Activate respective control signals.

8.3 Terminals

8.3.1 Power Terminals

Power Terminals Figure



- (1) 1P 200 VAC 0K40...2K20
- (2) 3P 380 VAC 0K40...4K00
- (3) 3P 380 VAC 5K50...30K0
- (4) 3P 380 VAC 37K0...110K

- (5) 3P 380 VAC 132K...400K
- 1P AC: Single phase AC power supply
- 3P AC: Three phases AC power supply
- M: For three phases motor connection

Fig. 8-5: Power terminals

Power Terminals Description

Terminal	Description
L1, L2	Mains supply input terminals
U, V, W	Converter output terminals
B	External brake resistor terminal
(+)	DC positive bus terminal

Tab. 8-6: 1P 200 VAC power terminals description

Terminal	Description
L1, L2, L3	Mains supply input terminals
U, V, W	Converter output terminals
B	External brake resistor terminal
(-)	DC negative bus terminal (only available with models of 5K50 and above)
(+)	DC positive bus terminal

Tab. 8-7: 3P 380 VAC power terminals description

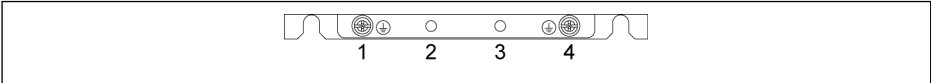


Fig. 8-6: Grounding and PE terminals

- 1: Grounding terminal for mains cables
- 2: Reserved for PE / shielding adapter (Order additionally)
- 3: Reserved for PE / shielding adapter (Order additionally)
- 4: Grounding terminal for motor cables

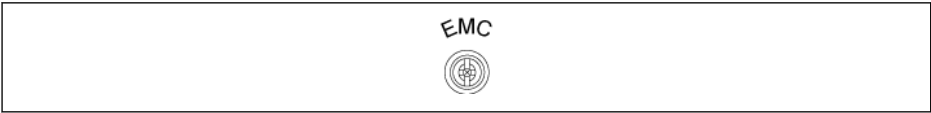


Fig. 8-7: Connection screw for internal EMC filter

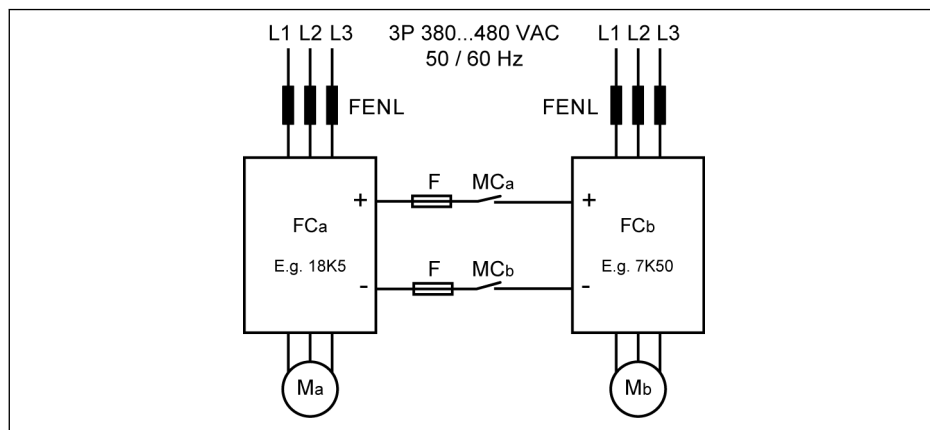
Internal EMC filter must be disconnected in isolated neutral power system (e.g., IT-Net). Otherwise, the system will be grounded via the capacitor of the EMC filter, which may lead to danger or damage to the frequency converter. The connection screw for the internal EMC filter as shown in the figure above is located at the side of the frequency converter.



With the internal EMC filter disconnected, the specified EMC performance of the frequency converter cannot be reached.

Notes on DC-bus terminals

Wiring of DC-bus in parallel



FENL Mains choke

FC_a Frequency converter a

FC_b Frequency converter b

F Fuse

MC_a Magnetic contactor a

MC_b Magnetic contactor b

M_a Motor a

M_b Motor b

Fig. 8-8: Wiring of DC-bus in parallel

Conditions for DC-bus in parallel

- In the above typical application, FC_b runs in generation mode and FC_a runs in motor mode. The power rating of FC_a needs to be 3 levels higher than that of FC_b.

E.g., FC_b is 7K50, FC_a needs to be 18K5 (11K0 and 15K0 in between)

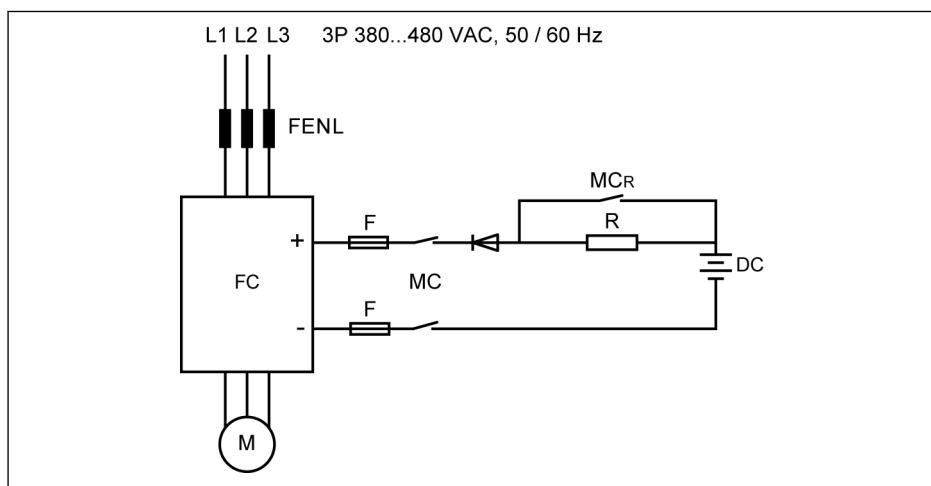
- DC-bus voltage is within the specified range: 457...745 V.
- Use mains choke.
- Select fuses according to FC_b which runs in generator mode, see [chapter "DC-bus fuse specification" on page 69](#).
- Use external brake resistor to keep the DC-bus voltage within the normal range, especially when converter a is running with light load instead of full load.
- Switch on mains supply to the frequency converters first, and then close MC_a and MC_b after the LED display is active with both frequency converters. The contactor MC_a and MC_b will be switched off by the respective relay output of the frequency converter when an error happens to any of the two frequency converters.

- Select contactors according to the current ratings in [chapter "DC-bus fuse specification" on page 69](#).
- Connect the relay output of FC_a to MC_a, FC_b to MC_b.
- Set [E2.15] = '14: Converter error' to control MC_a by relay output of FC_a.
- Set [E2.15] = '14: Converter error' to control MC_b by relay output of FC_b.



By default, the relay output is inactive when the frequency converter is not running.

Wiring of DC-bus with external DC power supply



FENL Mains choke
FC Frequency converter
F Fuse
MC Magnetic contactor
MC_R Magnetic contactor of softstart resistor

DC External DC power supply
M Motor
R Softstart resistor

Fig. 8-9: Wiring of DC-bus with external DC power supply

Conditions for DC-bus with external DC power supply

- DC-bus voltage is within the specified range: 457...745 V.
- Use mains choke.
- Select fuses according to [chapter "DC-bus fuse specification" on page 69](#).
- Use the relay output of the frequency converter to control the contactor MC of the DC-bus. The contactor will be switched off by the relay output once the frequency converter encounters an error.
- For 5K50...18K5 models, select the external softstart resistor according to the allowed maximum charging current defined in the table below.

Model	Maximum charging current [A]
5K50	25
7K50	25
11K0	35
15K0	50
18K5	75
22K0	100

Tab. 8-8: Allowed maximum charging current

- Set [E2.15] = '14: Converter error' to control MC by relay output of FC. Connect relay output of FC to MC.



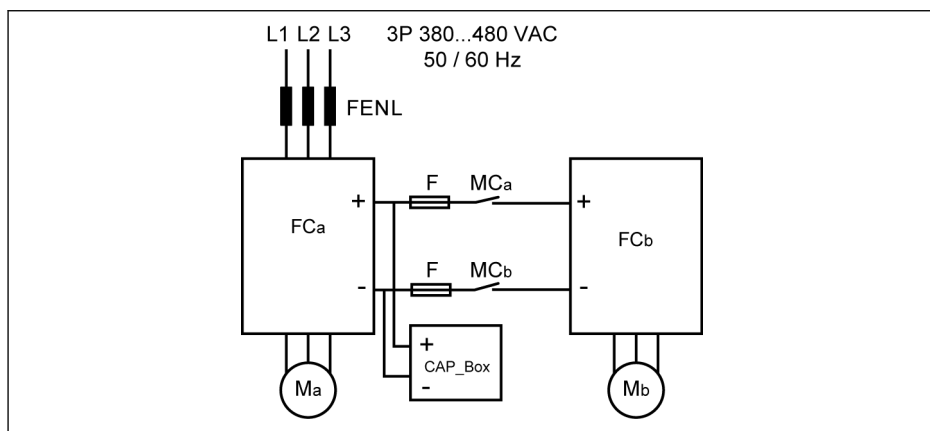
By default, the relay output is inactive when there is no error. Please use an additional device to keep the relay output status when the frequency converter is switched off without power input. Without such a device, the relay output will be restored to be inactive as the frequency converter will lose the control.

WARNING

The external softstart circuit must be properly controlled to avoid direct charging of the capacitor with external DC power supply, especially when DC power supply is the only power source for the frequency converter.

- Use a diode to ensure the current is always in the direction of flowing-in the frequency converter.

Through-wall models provide DC-bus power wiring



FENL	Mains choke	MC_b	Magnetic contactor b
FC_a	Frequency converter a	M_a	Motor a
FC_b	Frequency converter b	M_b	Motor b
F	Fuse	CAP_Box	External capacitor box accessories (optional)
MC_a	Magnetic contactor a		

Fig. 8-10: Through-wall models provide DC-bus power wiring

Through-wall models provide DC-bus power supply conditions

- The above application is for 45kW-160kW through-wall models, where FCa provides DC bus power to FCb externally, and FCb should be smaller than the power of FCa to ensure that the sum of output current of FCa and FCb is less than the nominal input current of FCa, and FCa can provide reasonable bus power and output power to FCb and Ma respectively.
- Optional parallel capacitor box fitting for DC bus to extend the power down time of FCa and FCb after FCa power failure.
- The DC bus voltage should be within the specified range: 457...745V.
- Use mains choke
- Choose a fuse according to [chapter "DC-bus fuse specification" on page 69](#) or choose a suitable lower current DC bus fuse according to the power of FCb.
- According to [chapter "DC-Bus Capacitor Box Cable Specifications" on page 68](#) select external bus capacitor box cable.
- Use an external braking resistor to keep the DC bus voltage within the normal range.
- Close the contactors MCa and MCb first, and then turn on the FCa (Frequency converter a) power supply to reduce the impulse current at the moment of FCb power supply.

- If any of the frequency converters fails, the corresponding frequency converter relay output will cut off the corresponding contactors MCa and MCb.
 - Connect the relay output of FCa to MCa and the relay output of FCb to MCb.
 - Set [E2.15] = '14: frequency converter fault', thus controlling the MCa via the FCa relay output.



When the frequency converter is not running, the relay output is invalid by default. When the frequency converter is powered off with no output, please use other devices to save the relay output status. Otherwise, when there is no frequency converter control, the relay output will be reset to invalid state.

DC-Bus Capacitor Box Cable Specifications

VFC Through-wall models	Capacitor box cable dimensions
45K0	16 mm ² /AWG5
55K0	16 mm ² /AWG5
75K0	16 mm ² x 2 / AWG5 x 2
90K0	16 mm ² x 2 / AWG5 x 2
110K	25 mm ² x 2 / AWG3 x 2
132K	25 mm ² x 2 / AWG3 x 2
160K	25 mm ² x 2 / AWG3 x 2

Tab. 8-9: DC Bus Capacitor Box Cable Specifications

DC-bus fuse specification

The fuse rating depends on the fuse type (gG) and the temporary overload capability of the frequency converter.



If no overload happens in an application, the fuses can be selected directly according to the power rating of the frequency converter.

Recommended fuse ratings at DC-bus voltage of 513 V are shown in the table below.

Model	Motor power [kW]	Motor efficiency	DC-current [A]	gG fuses [A]
5K50	5.5	85.8 %	12.5	16
7K50	5.5	85.8 %	12.5	16
11K0	7.5	87.1 %	16.8	25
15K0	11.0	88.5 %	24.2	35
18K5	15.0	89.5 %	32.7	50
22K0	18.5	90.1 %	40.0	50
30K0	22.0	90.6 %	52.7	63
37K0	30.0	91.5 %	71.1	80
45K0	37.0	92.1 %	87.1	100
55K0	45.0	92.6 %	94.7	125
75K0	55.0	93.1 %	115.2	125
90K0	75.0	93.7 %	156.0	200
110K	90.0	94.0 %	186.6	200
132K	110.0	94.6 %	226.7	250
160K	132.0	94.8 %	271.4	300
185K	160.0	94.8 %	353.0	400
200K	185.0	94.8 %	380.4	400
220K	200.0	94.6 %	412.0	500
250K	220.0	94.6 %	453.0	500
285K	250.0	95 %	512.98	630

Tab. 8-10: Recommended fuse ratings

$$I_{DC} = P_{Motor} / (V_{DC} \times \eta_{Motor})$$

$$V_{DC} = 1.35 \times V_{in}$$

V_{in} is the RMS value of the AC input voltage.

For example, if $V_{DC} = 513$ V, the equivalent $V_{in} = 380$ V.

The recommended fuse rated current is calculated based on the selected motor. In actual application, please check the value according to the equation above and the actual motor efficiency.

8.3.2 Control Terminals

Control terminals figure

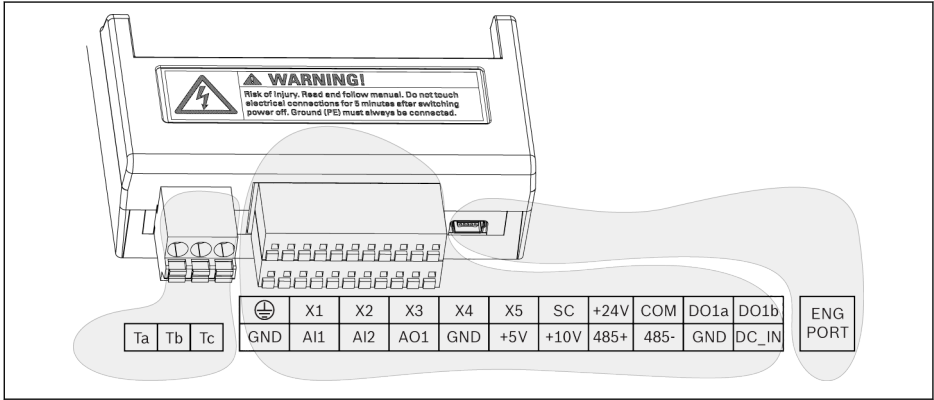


Fig. 8-11: Control circuit terminals

CAUTION

The frequency converter might be damaged!

Please make sure that the power supply of the frequency converter has been switched off before plugging or unplugging the connector.



The terminal blocks provide wiring connection points only. Additional measures by the user need to be taken to provide strain relief or other types of cable restraints.

Control terminals description

Digital inputs

Terminal	Signal function	Description	Signal requirement
X1...X5	Multi-function digital inputs	See Group E1	Inputs via opto-electric couplers: 24 VDC, 8 mA / 12 VDC, 4 mA Pulse input: Max. 50.0 kHz
X5 (multiplex)	Pulse input		
SC	Shared connection	Shared connection for isolation opto-electric couplers	–
+24 V	Power supply for digital inputs	COM is reference	Max. output current: 100 mA
COM		Isolated from GND	

Analog inputs

Terminal	Signal function	Description	Signal requirement
+10 V	Power supply for analog inputs	GND is reference	Max. output current: 30 mA
+5 V			Max. output current: 10 mA
AI1	Analog voltage input 1/ Analog current input 1	Analog voltage / current inputs are used as external frequency setting channels	Voltage input range: 0/2...10 V Input impedance: 27 k Ω Resolution: 1/1,000
AI2	Analog voltage input 2/ Analog current input 2	To switch between voltage and current or to set the input related functions, see Group E1	Current input range: 0/4...20 mA Input impedance: 250 Ω Resolution: 1/1,000
GND	Shared connection	Isolated from COM	–
	Shielding connection	Connected with grounding terminals on heatsink internally	–

Digital outputs

Terminal	Signal function	Description	Signal requirement
D01a	Open collector output or pulse output	See Group E2 COM is reference	Open collector output: Max. 30 VDC, 50 mA Pulse output Max. frequency: 32.0 kHz
D01b			
Ta	Relay changeover contacts	See Group E2	Rated capacity: 240 VAC, 3 A; 30 VDC, 3 A
Tc			
Tb	Relay shared contact		

Analog outputs

Terminal	Signal function	Description	Signal requirement
A01	Analog output	See Group E2	Voltage output: 0...10 V Maximum load current for voltage output: 5 mA Current output: 0...20 mA Maximum load resistance for current output: 500 Ω
GND	Shared connection	Isolated from COM	–

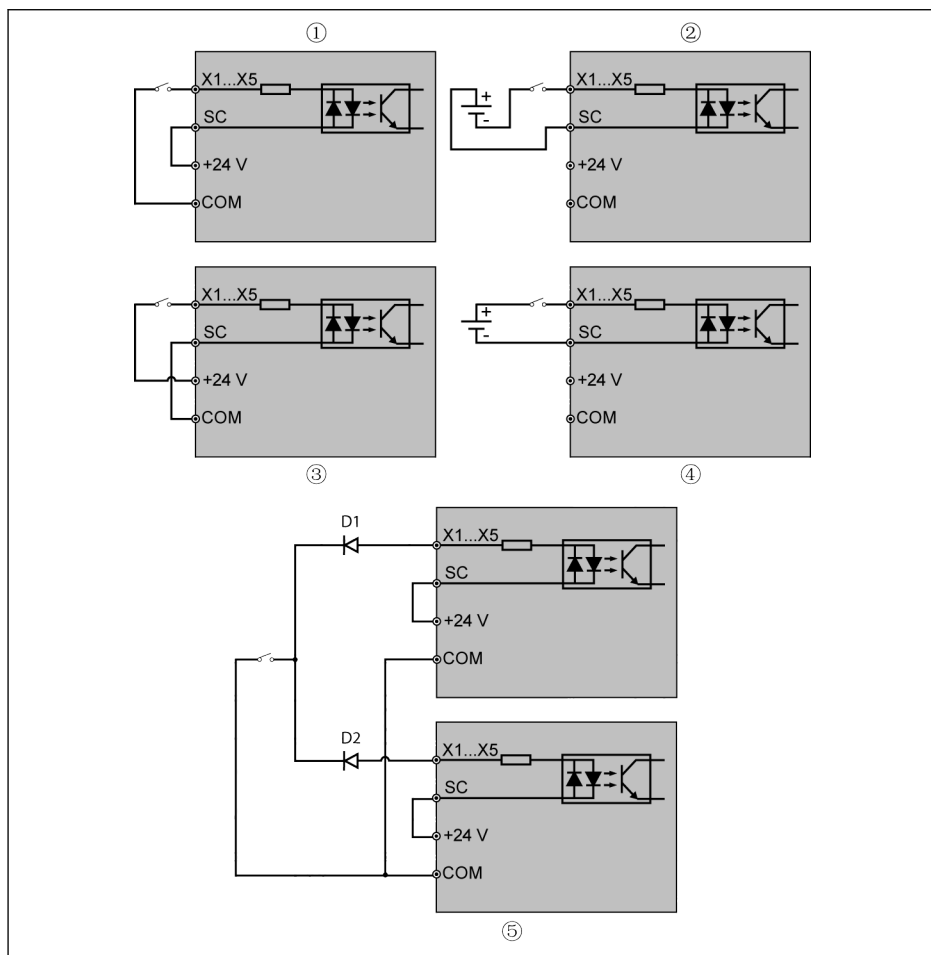
Modbus communication

Terminal	Signal function	Description	Signal requirement
485+	Positive differential signal	GND is reference	–
485-	Negative differential signal		

External power supply

Terminal	Signal function	Description	Signal requirement
DC_IN	Auxiliary power supply for control board	External +24 V supply input for control and panel boards (NOT used for digital inputs)	Rated capacity: 24 V (-10...+15 %) 200 mA
GND	Shared connection	Isolated from COM	–

Digital input NPN / PNP wiring



- ① NPN wiring with internal power supply
- ② NPN wiring with external power supply
- ③ PNP wiring with internal power supply

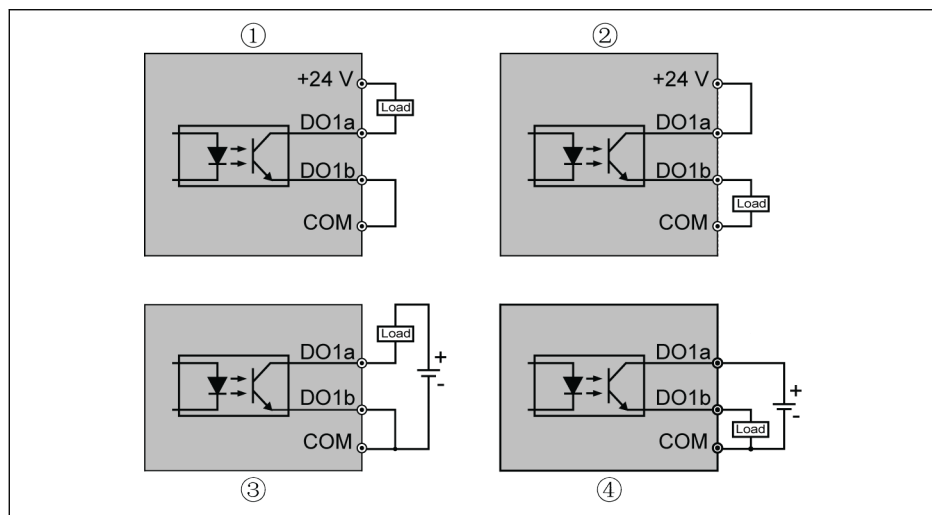
- ④ PNP wiring with external power supply
- ⑤ Parallel connection of DI terminals (NPN wiring with internal power supply)

Fig. 8-12: Digital input NPN / PNP wiring



⑤: When using this connection mode, it is necessary to connect the diode (diode anode connects the DI terminal) in series between the DI terminals of the two converters, and the diode must meet the conditions of " $I_F > 10 \text{ mA}$, $\mu\text{F} < 1 \text{ V}$ ", otherwise the converter will misoperate.

Digital output DO1a, DO1b load pull-up / pull-down wiring



① Load pull-up wiring with internal power supply

② Load pull-down wiring with internal power supply

Load Load

③ Load pull-up wiring with external power supply

④ Load pull-down wiring with external power supply

Fig. 8-13: Digital output DO1a, DO1b load pull-up / pull-down wiring

- For internal supply, **ONLY USE** terminal +24 V and **NEVER USE** terminal +10 V or +5 V!
- For external supply, its reference ground **MUST** be connected to terminal COM!
- When the digital output terminals are required to drive a relay, absorbent diodes should be installed on both sides of the relay coil. Be sure to install the polarity of the absorption diodes correctly, otherwise the DC 24V power supply will be burned out immediately when the digital output terminals have output.

Analog input terminals (AI1, AI2, EAI, +10 V, +5 V, Earth and GND)

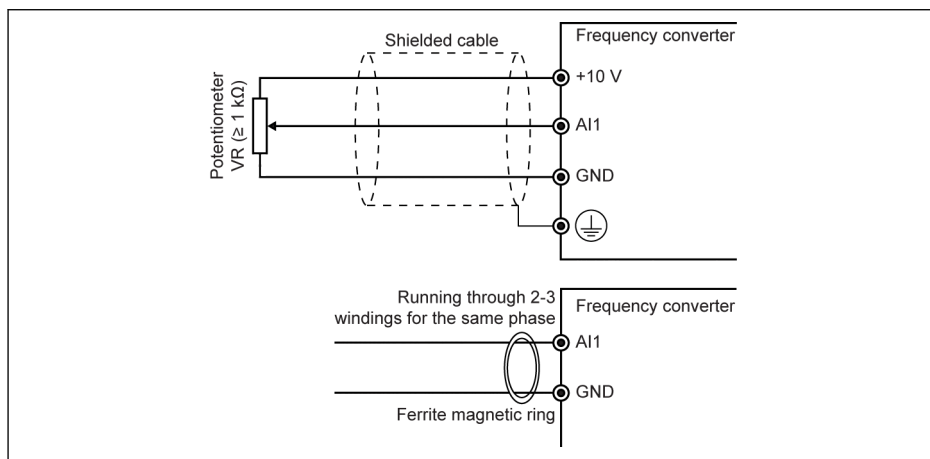


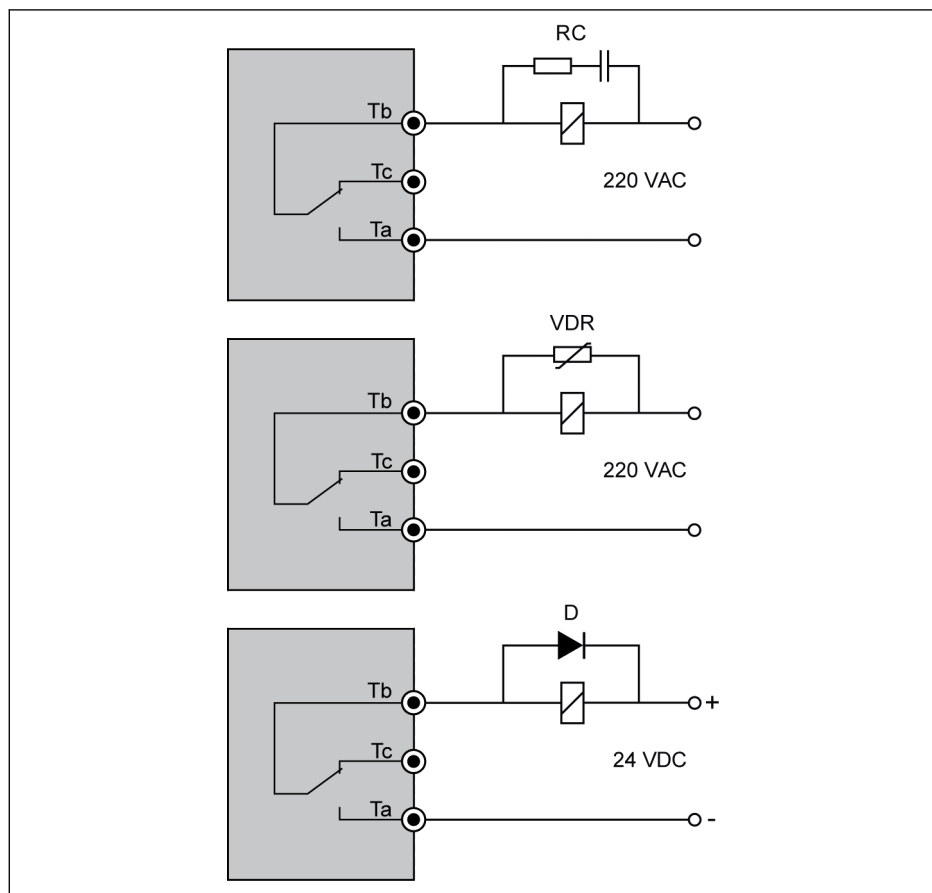
Fig. 8-14: Analog input terminals



- The figure for AI2 and +5 V is similar to the figure above.
- Incorrect operation may occur due to interference on the analog signal. In such cases, connect a ferrite magnetic ring at the input side of the analog signal, as shown above.
- The above figure is also valid for analog input EAI on I/O card.
- When analog current input function is applied, the supply voltage of analog input terminal can not exceed +5 V.

Relay output terminals

When relay output terminals are connected with inductive loads (relays, contactors, solenoid valves, motors, etc.), following noise suppression circuits need to be applied at the coils of the inductive loads, as close as possible to the inductive loads, in order to reduce the electromagnetic interference generated from inductive load action.



Tb Shared terminal
Tc Normally closed contact
Ta Normally open contact

RC RC filtering
VDR Varistor
D Diode

Fig. 8-15: Noise suppression circuits for relay output terminals

Notes on DC_IN terminal

Converter in running status: Converter stops with error 'UE-1' at AC power loss

Conditions	Description
DC_IN power is available	'UE-1' remains to be displayed on the panel 'Power loss restart mode' function does NOT work Converter can NOT be started by any command source Limited* Parameters can be viewed but can NOT be modified
DC_IN power is unavailable	Converter panel blackout after a short time
AC power resumes	Converter will remain in stop state, 'UE-1' can be reset 'Power loss restart mode' function works

Tab. 8-11: Power loss in running status

Converter in stopped status: 'P.oFF' will be displayed at AC power loss

Conditions	Description
DC_IN power is available	'P.oFF' remains to be displayed on the panel Converter can NOT be started by any command source Limited* Parameters can be viewed but can NOT be modified
DC_IN power is unavailable	Converter panel blackout after a short time
AC power resumes	Converter will remain in stop state, 'P.oFF' disappears automatically

Tab. 8-12: Power loss in stopped status

Limited* Parameters

Code	Name	Code	Name
b0.00	Access authority setting	E9.01	Automatic error reset interval
E0.45	Power loss restart mode	E9.05	Last error type
E0.46	Power loss restart delay	E9.06	Second last error type
E8.00	Communication protocol	E9.07	Third last error type
E8.01	Communication error detection time	E9.10	Output frequency at last error
E8.02	Communication error protection mode	E9.11	Setting frequency at last error
E8.10	Modbus baud rate	E9.12	Output current at last error
E8.11	Modbus data format	E9.13	Output voltage at last error
E8.12	Modbus local address	E9.14	DC bus voltage at last error
E9.00	Automatic error reset attempts	E9.15	Power module temperature at last error

Tab. 8-13: Limited parameters



Make sure that the voltage on DC_IN terminal is within 20...28 V, otherwise error code 'EPS-' will be displayed.

9 Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC)

9.1 EMC Requirements

9.1.1 General Information

The electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) or electromagnetic interference (EMI) includes the following requirements:

- Sufficient noise immunity of an electric installation or an electric device against external electric, magnetic or electromagnetic interference via lines or through air.
- Sufficiently low noise emission of electric, magnetic or electromagnetic noise of an electric installation or an electric device to other surrounding devices via lines or through air.

9.1.2 Noise Immunity in the Drive System

Basic structure for noise immunity

The figure below illustrates the interference for definition of noise immunity requirements in the drive system.

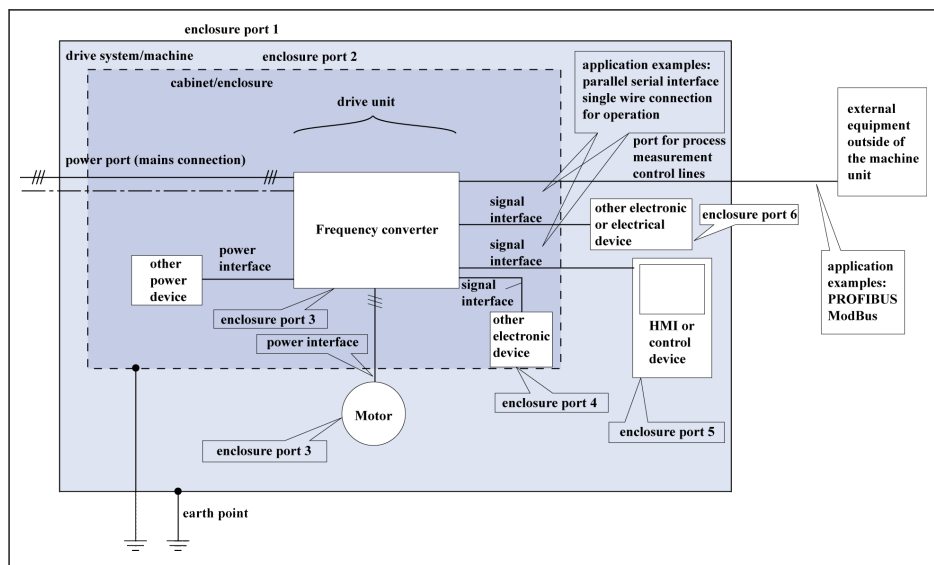


Fig. 9-1: Noise immunity in the drive system

Minimum immunity requirements for PDSs intended for use in the second environment

Port	Phenomenon	Basic standard for test method	Level	Performance (acceptance criterion)
Enclosure port	ESD	IEC 61000-4-2	4 kV CD or 8 kV AD if CD impossible	B
	Radio-frequency electromagnetic field, amplitude modulated	IEC 61000-4-3	80...1000 MHz 10 V/m 1.4...2.0 GHz 3 V/m 2.0...2.7 GHz 1 V/m 80 % AM (1 kHz)	A
Power ports	Fast transient-burst	IEC 61000-4-4	2 kV/5 kHz	B
	Surge 1.2/50 μ s, 8/20 μ s	IEC 61000-4-5	1 kV ^a , 2 kV ^b	B
	Conducted radio-frequency common mode	IEC 61000-4-6	0.15...80 MHz 10 V 80 % AM (1 kHz)	A
Power interfaces	Fast transient-burst	IEC 61000-4-4	2 kV/5 kHz Capacitive clamp	B
Signal interfaces	Fast transient-burst	IEC 61000-4-4	1 kV/5 kHz Capacitive clamp	B
	Conducted radio-frequency common mode	IEC 61000-4-6	0.15...80 MHz 10 V 80 % AM (1 kHz)	A
Ports of process measurement control lines	Fast transient-burst	IEC 61000-4-4	2 kV/5 kHz Capacitive clamp	B
	Conducted radio-frequency common mode	IEC 61000-4-6	0.15...80 MHz 10 V 80 % AM (1 kHz)	A

Tab. 9-1: Minimum immunity requirements for PDSs intended for use in the second environment

Evaluation criterion

Evaluation criterion	Explanation (abbreviated form from EN 61800-3)
A	Deviations within allowed range
B	Automatic recovery after interference
C	Switched off without automatic recovery. Device remains undamaged

Tab. 9-2: Evaluation criterion

9.1.3 Noise Emission of the Drive System

Causes of noise emission

Controlled variable-speed drives contain converters containing snappy semiconductors. The advantage of modifying the speed with high precision is achieved by means of pulse width modulation of the converter voltage. This can generate sinusoidal current with variable amplitude and frequency in the motor.

The steeper voltage rises, the higher clock rate and the resulting harmonics cause unwanted but physically unavoidable emission of interference voltage and interference fields (wide band interference). The interference mainly is asymmetric interference against ground.

The propagation of this interference strongly depends on:

- configuration of the connected drives
- number of the connected drives
- conditions of mounting
- site of installation
- radiation conditions
- wiring and installation

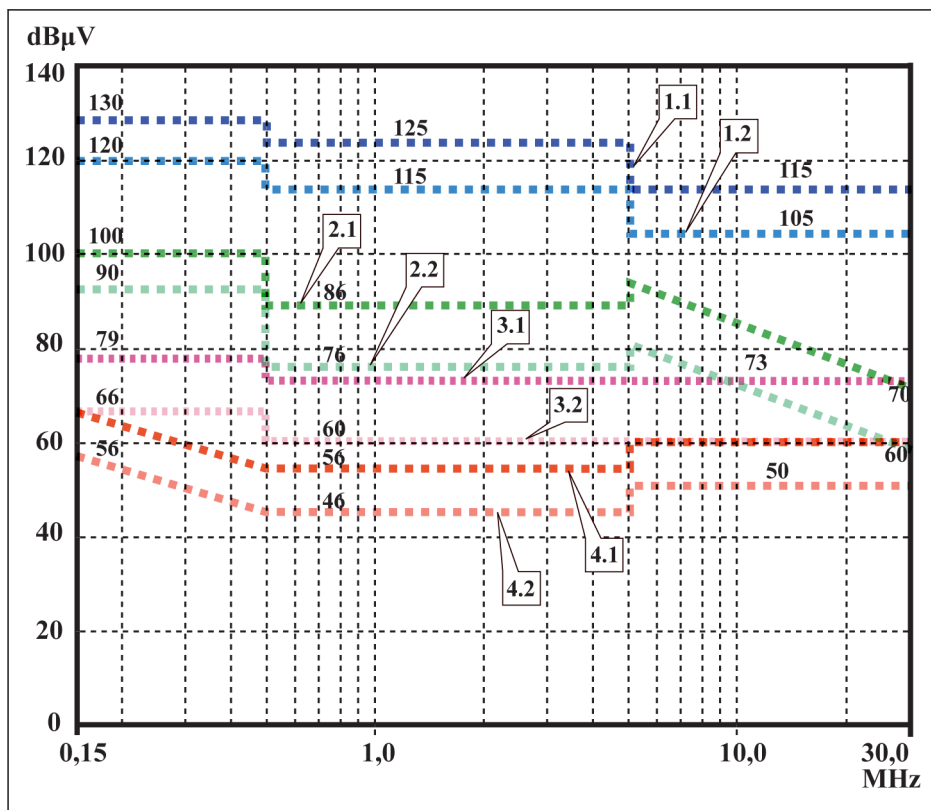
If the interference gets from the device to the connected lines in unfiltered form, these lines can radiate the interference into the air (antenna effect). This applies to power lines, too.

Limit values for line-based disturbances

According to IEC EN 61800-3 or CISPR 11 (corresponds to EN 55011), the limit values in the table below are distinguished. For this documentation both standards are combined in the limit value classes A2.1 to B1.

IEC / EN 61800-3	CISPR 11	Explanation	In this document	Curves of limit value characteristic
Category C4 2 nd environment	None	One of the following 3 requirements must have been fulfilled: • Mains connection current > 400 A, IT mains or required dynamic drive behavior not reached by means of EMC filter. • Adjust limit values to use and operation on site. • User has to carry out and provide evidence of EMC planning.	None	–
Category C3 2 nd environment	Class A; group 2, I>100 A	Limit value in industrial areas to be complied with for applications operated at supply mains with nominal current > 100 A	A2.1	1.1 1.2
Category C3 2 nd environment	Class A; group 2, I≤100 A	Limit value in industrial areas to be complied with for applications operated at supply mains with nominal current ≤ 100 A	A2.2	2.1 2.2
Category C2 1 st environment	Class A; group 1	Limit value in residential area or at facilities at low-voltage mains supplying buildings in residential areas to be complied with	A1	3.1 3.2
Category C1 1 st environment	Class B; group 1	Limit value in residential areas to be complied with	B1	4.1 4.2

Tab. 9-3: Limit values for line-based disturbances



1.1 C3 2nd environment, QP, $I > 100$ A (class A, group 2, $I > 100$ A)

1.2 C3 2nd environment, AV, $I > 100$ A (class A, group 2, $I > 100$ A)

2.1 C3 2nd environment, QP, $I \leq 100$ A (class A, group 2, $I \leq 100$ A)

2.2 C3 2nd environment, AV, $I \leq 100$ A (class A, group 2, $I \leq 100$ A)

3.1 C2 1st environment, QP (1st environment, even if source of interference in 2nd environment) (class A, group 1)

3.2 C2 1st environment, AV (1st environment, even if source of interference in 2nd environment) (class A, group 1)

4.1 C1 1st environment, QP (1st environment, even if source of interference in 2nd environment) (class B, group 1)

4.2 C1 1st environment, AV (1st environment, even if source of interference in 2nd environment) (class B, group 1)

Fig. 9-2: Limit values for line-based disturbances (IEC 61800-3); limit characteristic through frequency range



- Limit value for 1st environment is also relevant, if source of interference of 2nd environment affects 1st environment
- Designations “class” and “group” according to CISPR 11
- QP: measuring method quasi peak measurement
- AV: measuring method arithmetic averaging

Second Environment, Industrial Area

Facilities not directly connected to a low-voltage mains to supply buildings in residential areas.

If the limit values in an industrial area separated from public supply by a transformer station only have to be complied with at the property boundary or in the neighboring low-voltage mains, the filter might not be necessary. In the vicinity such as measuring sensors, measuring lines or measuring devices, it is normally required to use the interference suppression filter.

Increasing the noise immunity of a sensitive device can often be the economically better solution compared to measures of interference suppression at the drive system of installation.

First Environment

Environment containing residential areas and facilities directly connected, without interstage transformer, to a low-voltage mains supplying buildings in residential areas.

Medium-sized manufacturing plants and industrial establishments can be connected to the public low-voltage mains together with residential buildings. In this case there is a high risk for radio and television reception if there are not any measures for radio interference suppression taken. Therefore, the indicated measures are generally recommended.

Nominal Current of Supply Mains

The nominal current of the supply mains ($> 100 \text{ A}$ or $\leq 100 \text{ A}$) is specified by the local power supply company at the connection point of the mains. For industrial companies, for example, such connection points are the interconnecting stations from the power supply company.

Since it is impossible to obtain the lower limit values for residential areas with all applications by means of usual measures (like in the case of large and electrically not closed installations, longer motor cables or a large number of drives), the following note included in EN 61800-3 has to be observed.



According to EN 61800-3, components of VFC x615 drive system are products of category C3: with external EMC filter.

VFC x615 frequency converter with external EMC filter is applicable to industrial environment (category C3).

See the following chapters for the limit classes (as per categories C1, C2, C3, C4 according to EN 61800-3) which can be reached for Bosch Rexroth Frequency Converter VFC x615.

9.2 Ensuring the EMC Requirements

Standards and Laws

On the European level there are the EU Directives. In the EU states these Directives are transformed into laws valid on a national level. The relevant directive for EMC is EU Directive 2004/108/EC which was transformed on the national level in Germany into the law EMVG ("Law concerning electromagnetic compatibility of devices") of 2008-02-26.

EMC Properties of Components

Drive and control components by Rexroth are designed and built, in accordance with the present state-of-the-art of standardization, according to legal regulations of the EU Directive EMC 2004/108/EC and the German law.

The compliance with EMC standards was tested by means of a typical arrangement with a test setup conforming to standard with the indicated external EMC filter.

- Category C3 requirements according to product standard EN 61800-3 have been complied with for VFC x615 with an external EMC filter.
- Minimum immunity requirements in the second environment according to product standard EN 61800-3 have been complied with for VFC x615 with an external EMC filter.

Applicability for End Product

Measurements of the drive system with an arrangement typical for the system are not in all cases applicable to the status in a machine or installation. Noise immunity and noise emission strongly depend on:

- configuration of the connected drives
- number of the connected drives
- conditions of mounting
- site of installation
- radiation conditions
- wiring and installation

In addition, the required measures depend on the requirements of electric safety technology and economic efficiency in the application.

In order to prevent interference as far as possible, please read through and follow the detailed descriptions regarding on mounting and installation in this documentation.

Cases to Distinguish for Declaration of EMC Conformity

For validity of the harmonized standards, we distinguish the following cases:

- Case 1: Delivery of the drive system.

According to the regulations, VFC x615 drive system is complied with product standard EN 61800-3 C3 (with external EMC filters). The drive system is listed

in the declaration of EMC conformity. This fulfills the legal requirements according to EMC directive.

- Case 2: Acceptance test of a machine or installation with the installed drive systems.

The product standard for the respective type of machine/installation, if existing, applies to the acceptance test of the machine or installation. In the last years, some new product standards were created at present.

These new product standards contain references to the product standard EN 61800-3 for drives or specify higher-level requirements demanding increased filter and installation efforts. When the machine manufacturer wants to put the machine/installation into circulation, the product standard relevant to his machine/ installation has to be complied with for his end product "machine/installation". The authorities and test laboratories responsible for EMC normally refer to this product standard.

This documentation specifies the EMC properties which can be achieved, in a machine or installation, with a drive system consisting of the standard components.

It also specifies the conditions under which the indicated EMC properties can be achieved.

9.3 EMC Measures for Design and Installation

9.3.1 Rules for Design of Installations with Drive Controllers in Compliance with EMC

The following rules are the basics for designing and installing drives in compliance with EMC:

Mains Filter

Correctly use a mains filter recommended by Rexroth for radio interference suppression in the mains supply of the drive system.

For drive systems with 1P 200 VAC Frequency Converter VFC x615, it is recommended to install surge protection devices before the external filter.

Control Cabinet Grounding

Connect all metal parts of the cabinet with one another over the largest possible surface area to establish a good electric connection. This, too applies to the mounting of the external mains filter. If required, use serrated washers which cut through the paint surface. Connect the cabinet door to the control cabinet using the shortest possible grounding straps.

Line Routing

Avoid coupling routes between lines with high potential of noise and noise-free lines; therefore, signal, mains and motor lines and power cables have to be routed separately from another. Minimum distance: 10 cm. Provide separating sheets between power and signal lines. Ground separating sheets several times.

The lines with high potential of noise include:

- Lines at the mains connection (incl. synchronization connection)
- Lines at the motor connection
- Lines at the DC-bus connection

Generally, interference injections are reduced by routing cables close to grounded sheet steel plates. For this reason, cables and wires should not be routed freely in the cabinet, but close to the cabinet housing or mounting panels. Separate the incoming and outgoing cables of the radio interference suppression filter.

Interference Suppression Elements

Provide the following components in the control cabinet with interference suppression combinations:

- Contactors
- Relays
- Solenoid valves
- Electromechanical operating hours counters

Connect these combinations directly at each coil.

Twisted Wires

Twist unshielded wires belonging to the same circuit (feeder and return cable) or keep the surface between feeder and return cable as small as possible. Wires that are not used have to be grounded at both ends.

Lines of Measuring Systems

Lines of measuring systems must be shielded. Connect the shield to ground at both ends and over the largest possible surface area. The shield may not be interrupted, e.g. using intermediate terminals.

Digital Signal Lines

Ground the shields of digital signal lines at both ends (transmitter **and** receiver) over the largest possible surface area and with low impedance. This avoids low frequency interference current (in the mains frequency range) on the shield.

Analog Signal Lines

Ground the shields of analog signal lines at one end (transmitter **or** receiver) over the largest possible surface area and with lower impedance. This avoids low frequency interference current (in the mains frequency range) on the shield.

Connection of Mains Choke

Keep connection lines of the mains choke at the drive controller as short as possible and twist them.

Installation of Motor Power Cable

- Use shielded motor power cable or run motor power cables in a shielded duct
- Use the shortest possible motor power cable
- Ground shield of motor power cable at both ends over the largest possible surface area to establish a good electric connection
- It is recommended to run motor lines in shielded form inside the control cabinet
- Do not use any steel-shielded lines
- The shield of the motor power cable must not be interrupted by mounted components, such as output chokes, sine filter or motor filters

9.3.2 EMC-optimal Installation in Facility and Control Cabinet

General Information

For EMC-optimal installation, a special separation of the interference-free area (mains connection) and the interference-susceptible area (drive components) is recommended, as shown in the figures below.



- For EMC-optimal installation in the control cabinet, use a separate control cabinet panel for the drive components.
- Frequency converters need to be mounted in metal cabinet and connected to power supply with grounding.
- For motor cables used in the EMC test of the frequency converters, see [chapter 6.2 "Technical Data" on page 25](#).
- For the end application system with frequency converters, the conformity of EMC directions needs to be confirmed.

Division into Areas (zones)

Exemplary arrangements in the control cabinet: See [chapter 9.3.3 "Control Cabinet Mounting according to Interference Areas – Exemplary Arrangements" on page 90](#).

We distinguish three areas:

1. Interference-free area of control cabinet (**area A**):
 - Supply feeder, input terminals, fuse, main switch, mains side of mains filter for drives and corresponding connecting lines
 - All components that are not electrically connected with the drive system
2. Interference-susceptible area (**area B**):
 - Mains connections between drive system and mains filter for drives, mains contactor
 - Interface lines of drive controller
3. Strongly interference-susceptible area (**area C**):
 - Motor power cables including single cores

Never run lines of one of these areas in parallel with lines of another area so that there is not any unwanted interference injection from one area to the other and that the filter is jumped with regard to high frequency. Use the shortest possible connecting lines.

Recommendation for complex systems: Install drive components in one cabinet and the control units in a second, separate cabinet.

Badly grounded control cabinet doors act as antennas. Therefore, connect the control cabinet doors to the cabinet on top, in the middle and on the bottom via short equipment grounding conductors with a cross section of at least 6 mm² or, even better, via grounding straps with the same cross section. Make sure connection points have good contact.

9.3.3 Control Cabinet Mounting according to Interference Areas – Exemplary Arrangements

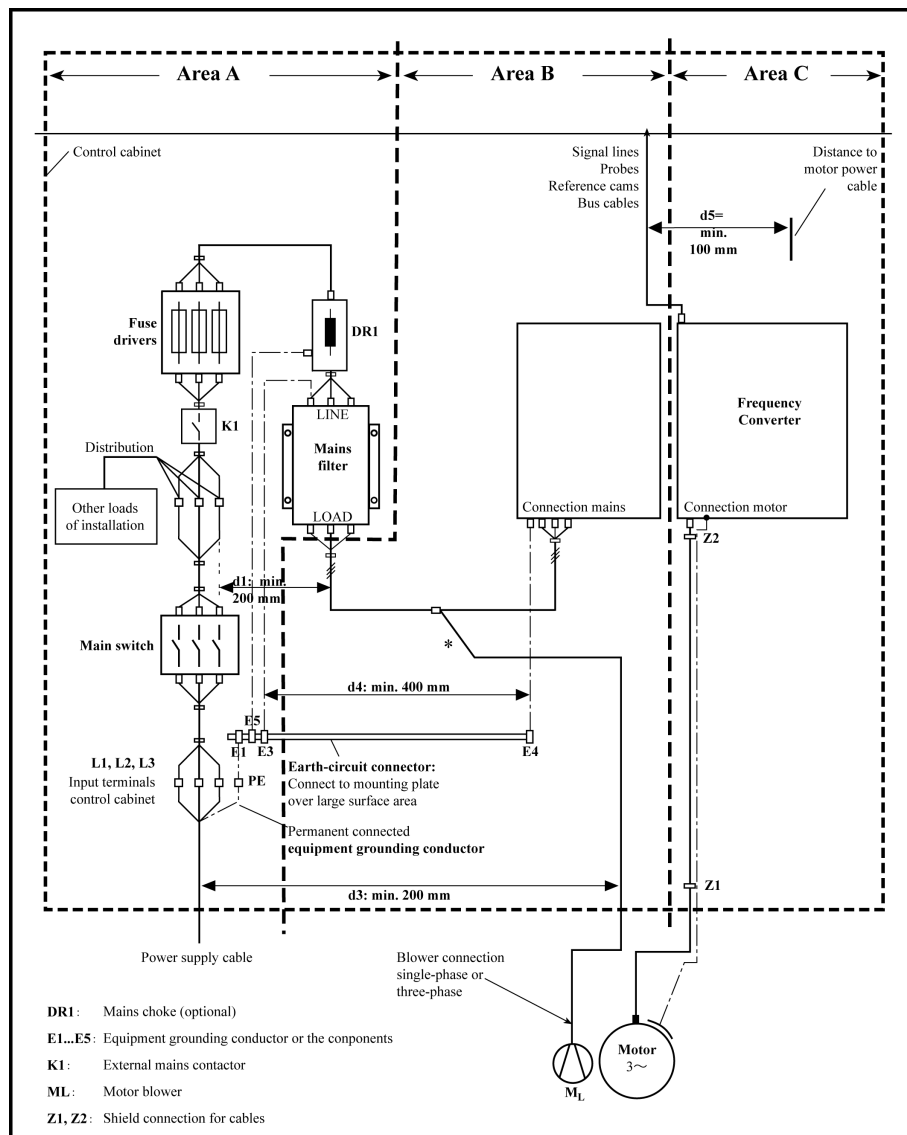


Fig. 9-3: Control cabinet mounting according to interference areas – exemplary arrangements

9.3.4 Design and Installation in Area A – Interference-free Area of Control Cabinet

Arrangement of the Components in the Control Cabinet

Comply with a distance of at least 200 mm (distance d1 in the figure):

- Between components and electric elements (switches, pushbuttons, fuses, terminal connectors) in the interference-free area A and the components in the two other areas B and C

Comply with a distance of at least 400 mm (distance d4 in the figure):

- Between magnetic components (such as transformers, mains chokes and DC-bus chokes that are directly connected to the power connections of the drive system) and the interference-free components and lines between mains and filter including the mains filter in area A

If these distances are not kept, the magnetic leakage fields are injected to the interference-free components and lines connected to the mains and the limit values at the mains connection are exceeded in spite of the installed filter.

Cable Routing of the Interference-free Lines to the Mains Connection

Comply with a distance of at least 200 mm (distance d1 and d3 in the figure):

- Between supply feeder or lines between filter and exit point from the control cabinet in area A and the lines in area B and C

If this is impossible, there are two alternatives:

1. Install lines in shielded form and connect the shield at several points (at least at the beginning and at the end of the line) to the mounting plate or the control cabinet housing over a large surface area.
2. Separate lines from the other interference-susceptible lines in areas B and C by means of a grounded distance plate vertically attached to the mounting plate.

Install the shortest possible lines within the control cabinet and install them directly on the grounded metal surface of the mounting plate or of the control cabinet housing.

Mains supply lines from areas B and C must not be connected to the mains without a filter.



In case you do not observe the information on cable routing given in this section, the effect of the mains filter is totally or partly neutralized. This will cause the noise level of the interference emission to be higher within the range of 150 kHz to 40 MHz and the limit values at the connection points of the machine or installation will thereby be exceeded.

Routing and Connecting a Neutral Conductor (N)

If a neutral conductor is used together with a three-phase connection, it must not be installed unfiltered in areas B and C, in order to keep interference off the mains.

Motor Blower at Mains Filter

Single-phase or three-phase supply lines of motor blowers, that are usually routed in parallel with motor power cables or interference-susceptible lines, must be filtered:

- In frequency converter with **only infeeding supply units**, via the available three phase filter of the frequency converter

When switching power off, make sure the blower is not switched off.

Loads at Mains Filter of frequency converter

- Only operate allowed loads at the mains filter of the frequency converter!

Shielding Mains Supply Lines in Control Cabinet

If there is a high degree of interference injection to the mains supply line within the control cabinet, although you have observed the above instructions (to be found out by EMC measurement according to standard), proceed as follows:

- Only use shielded lines in area A
- Connect shields to the mounting plate at the beginning and the end of the line by means of clips

The same procedure may be required for long cables of more than 2 m between the point of power supply connection of the control cabinet and the filter within the control cabinet.

Mains Filters for AC Drives

Ideally, mount the external mains filter on the parting line between area A and B. Make sure the ground connection between filter housing and housing of the drive controllers has good electrically conductive properties.

If **single-phase** loads are connected on the load side of the external filter, their current may be a maximum of 10 % of the three-phase operating current. A highly imbalanced load of the external filter would deteriorate its interference suppression capacity.

If the mains voltage is higher than 480 V, connect the external filter to the output side of the transformer instead of the supply side of the transformer.

Grounding

In the case of bad ground connections in the installation, the distance between the lines to the grounding points E1, E2 in area A and the other grounding points of the frequency converter should be at least $d_4 = 400 \text{ mm}$, in order to minimize interference injection from ground and ground cables to the power input lines.

See also "[Division into Areas \(zones\)](#)" on page 89.

Point of Connection for Environment Grounding Conductor at Machine, Installation, Control Cabinet

The equipment grounding conductor of the power cable of the machine, installation or control cabinet has to be permanently connected at point PE and have a cross section of at least 10 mm² or to be complemented by a second equipment grounding conductor via separate terminal connectors (according to EN 61800-5-1: 2007, section 4.3.5.4). If the cross section of the outer conductor is bigger, the cross section of the equipment grounding conductor must be accordingly bigger.

9.3.5 Design and Installation in Area B – Interference-susceptible Area of Control Cabinet

Arranging Components and Lines

Modules, components and lines in area B should be placed at a distance of at least $d1 = 200$ mm from modules and lines in area A.

Alternative: Shield modules, components and lines in area B by distance plates mounted vertically on the mounting plate from modules and lines in area A or use shield lines.

Only connect control voltage connections in the frequency converter to the mains via a mains filter. See ["Division into Areas \(zones\)" on page 89](#).

Install the shortest possible lines between drive controller and filter.

Control Voltage or Auxiliary Voltage Connection

Only in exceptional cases should you connect power supply unit and fusing for the control voltage connection to phase and neutral conductor. In this case, mount and install these components in area A far away from area B and C of the frequency converter.

Run the connection between control voltage connection of the frequency converter and power supply unit used through area B over the shortest distance.

Line Routing

Run the lines along grounded metal surfaces, in order to minimize radiation of interference fields to area A (transmitting antenna effect).

9.3.6 Design and Installation in Area C – Strongly Interference-susceptible Area of Control Cabinet

Area C mainly concerns the motor power cables, especially at the connection point of the drive controller.

Influence of the Motor Power Cable

The longer the motor cable, the greater its leakage capacitors. To comply with a certain EMC limit value, the allowed leakage capacitance of the mains filter is limited.

- Run the shortest possible motor power cables.

Routing the Motor Power Cables and Motor Encoder Cables

Route the motor power cables and motor encoder cables along grounded metal surfaces, both inside the control cabinet and outside of it, in order to minimize radiation of interference fields. If possible, route the motor power cables and motor encoder cables in metal-grounded cable ducts.

Route the motor power cables and motor encoder cables

- with a distance of at least **d5 = 100 mm** to interference-free lines, as well as to signal cables and signal lines
(alternatively separated by a grounded distance plate)
- in separate cable ducts, if possible

Routing the Motor Power Cables and Mains Connection Lines

For frequency converters (drive controllers with individual mains connection), route motor power cables and (unfiltered) mains connection lines **in parallel for a maximum distance of 300 mm**. After that distance, route motor power cables and power supply cables in opposite directions and preferably in separate **cable ducts**.

Ideally, the outlet of the motor power cables at the control cabinet should be provided in a distance of at least **d3 = 200 mm** from the (filtered) power supply cable.

9.3.7 Ground Connections

Housing and Mounting Plate

By means of appropriate ground connections, it is possible to avoid the emission of interference, because interference is discharged to ground on the shortest possible way.

Ground connections of the metal housings of EMC-critical components (such as filters, devices of the frequency converter, connection points of the cable shields, devices with microprocessor and switching power supply units) have to be well contacted over a large surface area. This also applies to all screw connections between mounting plate and control cabinet wall and to the mounting of a ground bus to the mounting plate. The best solution is to use a zinc-coated mounting plate. Compared to a lacquered plate, the connections in this area have a good long-time stability.

Connection Elements

For lacquered mounting plates, always use screw connections with tooth lock washers and zinc-coated, tinned screws as connection elements. At the connection points, remove the lacquer so that there is safe electric contact over a large surface area. You achieve contact over a large surface area by means of bare connection surfaces or several connection screws. For screw connections, you can establish the contact to lacquered surfaces by using tooth lock washers.

Metal Surfaces

Always use connection elements (screws, nuts, plain washers) with good electroconductive surface.

Bare zinc-coated or tinned metal surfaces have **good electroconductive properties**.

Anodized, yellow chromatised, black gunmetal finish or lacquered metal surfaces have **bad electroconductive properties**.

Ground Wires and Shield Connections

For connecting ground wires and shield connections, it is not the cross section but the size of contact surface that is important, as the high-frequency interference current mainly flow on the surface of the conductor.

9.3.8 Installing Signal Lines and Signal Cables

Line Routing

The following measures are recommend:

- Route signal and control lines separately from the power cables with a minimum distance of $d_5 = 100 \text{ mm}$ (see "[Division into Areas \(zones\)](#)" on page 89) or with a grounded separating sheet. The optimum way is to route them in separate cable ducts. If possible, lead signal lines into the control cabinet at one point only.
- If signal lines are crossing power cables, route them in an angle of 90° in order to avoid interference injection.
- Ground spare cables, that are not used and have been connected, at least at both ends so that they do not have any antenna effect.
- Avoid unnecessary line lengths.
- Run cables as close as possible to grounded metal surfaces (reference potential). The ideal solution are closed, grounded cable ducts or metal pipes which, however, is only obligatory for high requirements (sensitive instrument leads).
- Avoid suspended lines or lines routed along synthetic carries, because they are functioning like reception antennas (noise immunity) and like transmitting antennas (emission of interference). Exceptional cases are flexible cable tracks over short distances of a maximum of 5 m.

Shielding

Connect the cable shield immediately at the devices in the shortest and most direct possible way and over the largest possible surface area.

Connect the shield of analog signal lines at one end over a large surface area, normally in the control cabinet at the analog device. Make sure the connection to ground/housing is short and over a large surface area.

Connect the shield of digital signal lines at both ends over a large surface area and in short form. In the case of potential differences between beginning and end of the line, run an additional bonding conductor in parallel. This prevents compensating current from flowing via the shield. The guide value for the cross section is 10 mm^2 .

You absolutely have to equip separate connections with connectors with grounded metal housing.

In the case of non-shielded lines belongs to the same circuit, twist feeder and return cable.

9.3.9 General Measures of Radio Interference Suppression for Relays, Contactors, Switches, Chokes and Inductive Loads

If, in conjunction with electronic devices and components, inductive loads, such as chokes, contactors, relays are switched by contacts or semiconductors, appropriate interference suppression has to be provided for them:

- By arranging free-wheeling diodes in the case of d.c. operation
- In the case of a.c. operation, by arranging usual RC interference suppression elements depending on the contactor type, immediately at the inductance

Only the interference suppression element arranged immediately at the inductance does serve this purpose. Otherwise, the emitted noise level is too high which can affect the function of the electronic system and of the drive.

If possible, mechanical switches and contacts should only be realized as snap contacts. Contact pressure and contact material must be suited for the corresponding switching current.

Slow-action contacts should be replaced by snap switches or by solid-state switches, because slow-action contacts strongly bounce and are in an undefined switching status for a long time which emits electromagnetic waves in the case of inductive loads. These waves are an especially critical aspect in the case of manometric or temperature switches.

10 Operating Panel and Dust Cover

10.1 LED Panel

The LED panel is removable and composed of two areas: display and buttons. The display shows mode settings and operating state of the frequency converter. The buttons allow users to program the frequency converter.

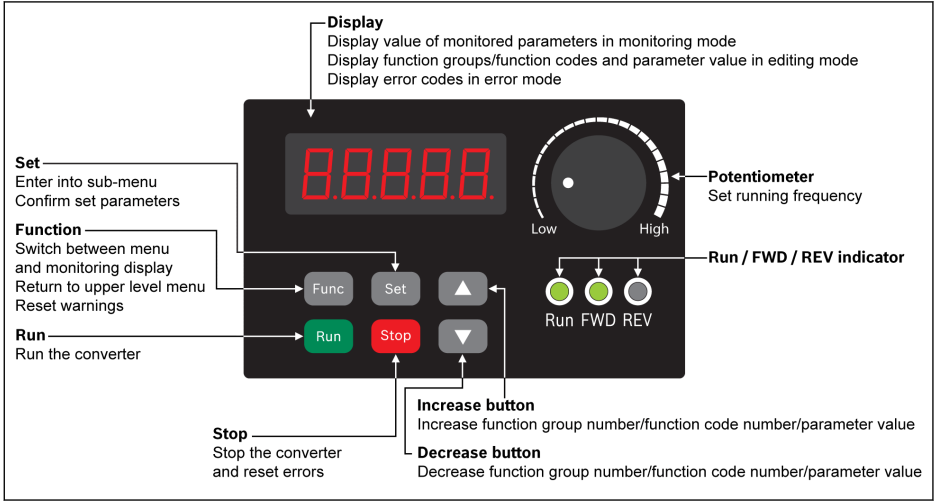


Fig. 10-1: LED panel

10.2 LED Display



Fig. 10-2: LED display

10.3 Dust Cover

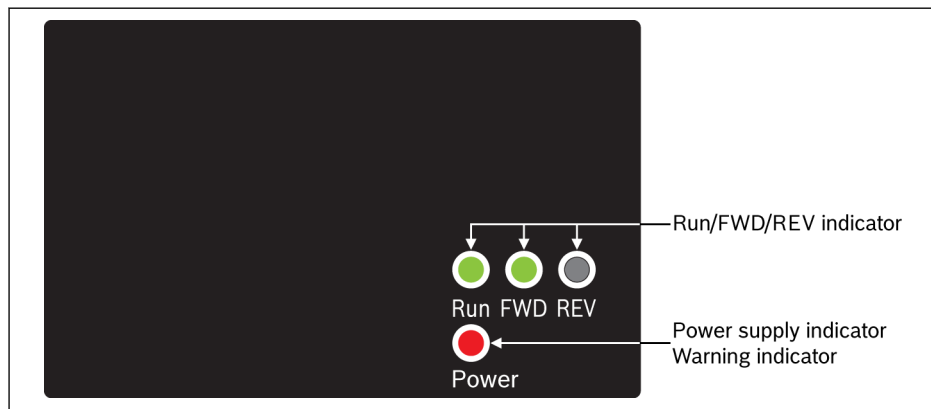


Fig. 10-3: Dust cover



Frequency Converter VFC x615 are available with **Dust Cover** instead of **LED Panel** on demand. To operate frequency converters with **Dust Cover**,

- Order an **LED Panel** additionally, and then set the frequency converter with [chapter 12.1.3 "Parameter Copy"](#) on [page 114](#).

10.4 LED Indicator

Mode	Run	FWD	REV	Power ^①
Power off	Off	Off	Off	Off
Ready	Off	Green / Off	Off / Green	Red
Run (FWD)	Green	Green	Off	Red
Run (REV)	Green	Off	Green	Red
Run pending	Blinks in green			
DC-braking at start	(Short green	Green / Off	Off / Green	Red
Direction change dead time	long dark)			
Deceleration stop phase	Blinks in green			
DC-braking at stop	(Short dark	Green / Off	Off / Green	Red
	long green)			
Warning with FWD	Green	Green	Off	Blinks in red (Short dark long red)
Warning with REV	Green	Off	Green	Blinks in red (Short dark long red)
Warning at stop	Off	Green / Off	Off / Green	Blinks in red (Short dark long red)
Error	Off	Green / Off	Off / Green	Blinks in red (Short red long dark)

Tab. 10-1: LED indicator status



- ①: Available on dust cover or when neither the LED panel nor the dust cover is installed.
- The frequency converter stops if FWD and REV commands are active at the same time.

10.5 Operating Descriptions

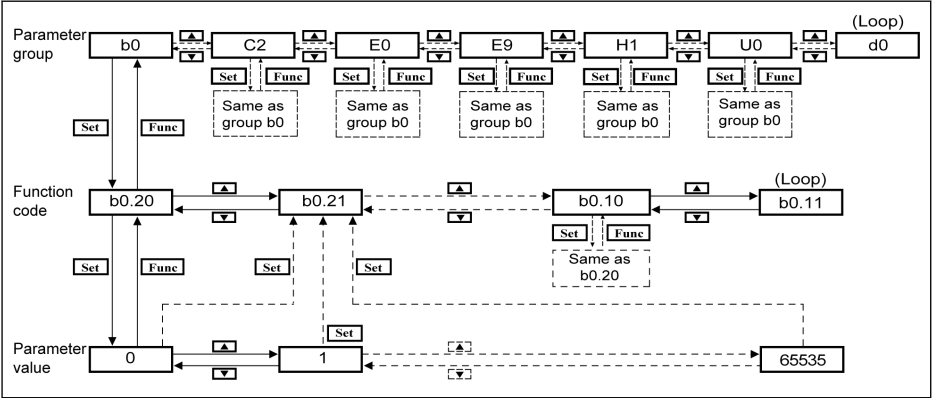


Fig. 10-4: Operating mode

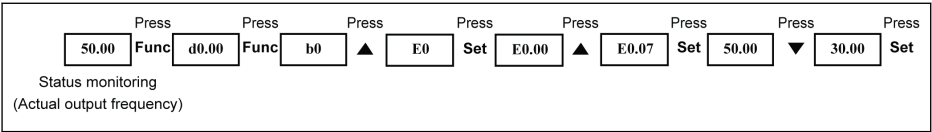


Fig. 10-5: Operating example

10.6 Fast Access to Parameters with Button Combinations

VFC x615 provides fast access to parameters within a parameter group with '<Func> + <▲>' or '<Func> + <▼>' combinations. This function is only valid for the tens digit of the function code index '□□.x□'.

- Pressing '<Func> + <▲>' once: '□□.x□' is changed to '□□.x+1□'
- Pressing '<Func> + <▼>' once: '□□.x□' is changed to '□□.x-1□'

Example: The frequency converter is now displaying 'E0.07' after setting with <Func>, <Set>, <▲> and <▼> buttons.

If 'E0.17' needs to be displayed based on 'E0.07', <▲> button has to be pressed for 10 times in the traditional way as described in the above figure. However, with button combination function, it is only necessary to press '<Func> + <▲>' buttons once.



- The parameter fast access function is only available when [b0.00] = 0, 1, or 2, unavailable with parameters in groups '-PF-' or '-EP-'
- Press <Func> button and do not release it until <▲> or <▼> button has been pressed.
- Press <▲> or <▼> button within 2 s if <Func> button is pressed.
- If the index of parameters is not continuous in a specific parameter group, the adjacent parameter will be accessed. For example, the display of 'E0.01' should be changed to 'E0.11' with '<Func> + <▲>' button function. However, parameter E0.11 is unavailable in group E. While the adjacent parameter is E0.15. In this case, 'E0.15' is accessed and displayed.

10.7 Digit Shifting Function for Modification of Parameter Values

VFC x615 also provides the digit shifting function for modification of parameter values. To activate this function, press '<Func> + <▲>' or '<Func> + <▼>' once when the frequency converter is displaying a certain parameter value. After this action, the unit digit of the value blinks.

To select the digit for modification, press the following button combinations.

- Pressing '<Func> + <▲>' once: the blinking digit is shifted one digit leftwards.
- Pressing '<Func> + <▼>' once: the blinking digit is shifted one digit rightwards.

Example: [E0.07] = 35.40. The frequency is now displaying '35.40'.

If the value '35.40' needs to be modified to be 15.40, execute the following steps.

- Step 1: Pressing '<Func> + <▲>' or '<Func> + <▼>' once to activate the digit function. '35.40' is displayed with the unit digit '5' blinking.
- Step 2: Pressing '<Func> + <▲>' again to shift the blinking digit leftwards. '35.40' is displayed with tens digit '3' blinking.
- Step 3: Pressing <▼> twice to change the tens digit '3' to be '1'. '15.40' is displayed with tens digit '1' blinking.
- Step 4: Pressing <Set> to save the modified parameter value '15.40'. The display returns back to an upper menu level to show the next parameter with 'E0.08' displayed.



- The digit shifting function is only available for parameters with values and unavailable for parameter with options.
 - Press <Func> button and do not release it until <▲> or <▼> button has been pressed.
 - Press <▲> or <▼> button within 2 s if <Func> button is pressed.
 - Press <Func> button over 2 s without pressing any other button to cancel the uncompleted setting with button combinations.
-

10.8 LCD Panel

10.8.1 LCD Panel Introduction

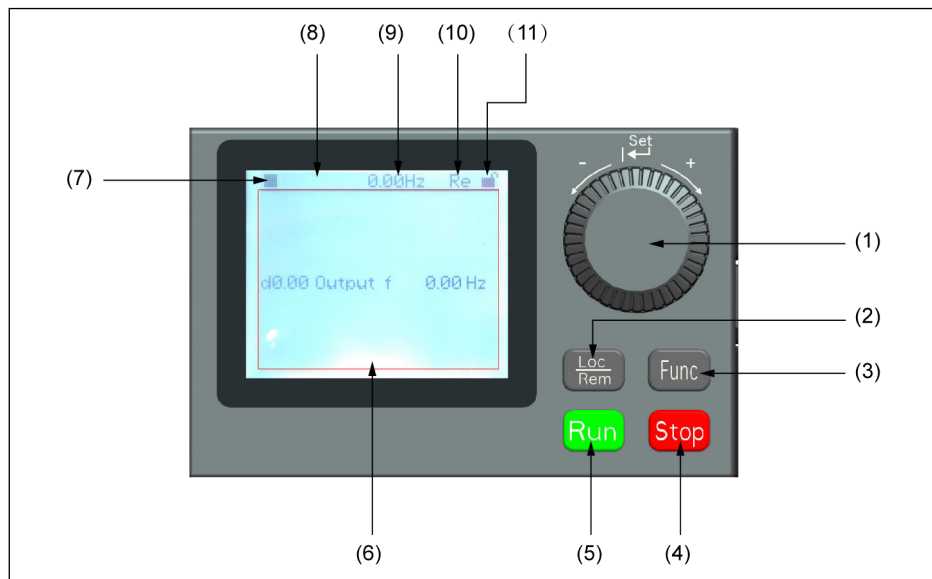


Fig. 10-6: LCD panel appearance

(1) Navigation button

1. Scroll between parameter and group code
2. Set the parameter value

(2) Loc / Rem button: Switch between "Remote" & "Local".

(3) Func button: Enter the parameter group screen and go back to previous screens.

(4) Stop button: Stop the frequency converter.

(5) Run button: Start the frequency converter.

(6) Text area: Used for displaying:

1. Parameter monitoring screen
2. Parameter group / Parameter code
3. Parameter name
4. Parameter value and unit
5. Other screens: Error / Warning display screen, welcome screen, customer information message screen

(7) Run / Stop status: It displays information regarding run / stop and forward / reverse state of the frequency converter. Details are shown in the table below.

Frequency converter status	Details
Running at 0 Hz (set RefDir: FWD)	►►: Blinking ◄◄: Invisible ■: Invisible
Running at 0 Hz (set RefDir: REV)	►►: Invisible ◄◄: Blinking ■: Invisible
Frequency converter in RUN state (set RefDir: REV)	►►: Invisible ◄◄: Shown solid, not blinking ■: Invisible
Frequency converter in RUN state (set RefDir: FWD)	►►: Shown solid, not blinking ◄◄: Invisible ■: Invisible

Tab. 10-2: Frequency converter status

(8) Error / Warning information: Error / Warning code will be displayed in this sector. Please refer to [chapter 13 "Diagnosis" on page 405](#) for details.

(9) Permanent monitoring: By default, its display as "Actual output frequency" is set by parameter U2.09. Value and unit of parameter will be displayed.

(10) Re / Lo: **Re** stands for 'Remote' and **Lo** for 'Local'. Its display is set via **Loc / Rem** button or parameter U2.03.

(11) Panel Locked / Unlocked: Panel can be locked by the following ways:

- Setting [U2.02] to '1', or
- Pressing **Func** button with **Loc** button for longer than 3 s.

Panel can be unlocked by the following ways:

- Setting [U2.02] to '0' (only in communication mode), or
- Pressing **Func** button with **Loc** button for longer than 3 s.

10.8.2 Operating Example

Please follow the steps below to set parameter [b0.10] to '1: Restore to default settings' through LCD panel.

- Press **Func** button.
- Rotate **Navigation button** to select parameter group b0.
- Press **Navigation button** and rotate it to select parameter b0.10.
- Press **Navigation button** and rotate it to select parameter value '1: Restore to default settings'.
- Press **Navigation button** to finish setting.

11 Quick Start

11.1 Checklist before Quick Start

11.1.1 Step 1: Check application conditions

Rated ambient temperature	-10...40 °C
Derating / ambient temperature	1.5 % / 1 °C (40...50 °C)
Rated storage temperature	-20...60 °C
Rated altitude	≤ 1,000 m
Derating / altitude	1 % / 100 m (1,000...4,000 m)
Mounting mode (Wall mounting)	Wall mounting

Tab. 11-1: Application conditions checklist

See also in [chapter 6.1.9 "Conditions"](#) on page 24.

11.1.2 Step 2: Check mounting conditions

Converter mounting direction	Vertical
Minimum top space	$d_{top} = 125 \text{ mm}$
Minimum bottom space	$d_{bot} = 125 \text{ mm}$
One converter is arranged above another	Air guide available is required in between
Mounting screws	4 x M6, no loose screws

Tab. 11-2: Mounting conditions checklist

See also in [chapter 7.1 "Installation Conditions"](#) on page 35.

11.1.3 Step 3: Check the wiring

Mains connection	Connect L1, L2, (L3) of converter to mains accordingly
Motor connection	Connect U, V, W of converter to motor accordingly
Grounding	Must be securely connected
Shielding	Must be securely connected
Power cables	Must observe chapter 8.1 "Wiring Diagram" on page 52
Control terminals connection	Must be securely connected
Control cables	Must observe chapter 8.2.2 "Control Cables" on page 61
EMC	Must observe chapter 9 "Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC)" on page 78
Switches	Must be switched off
Load	Must be disconnected

Tab. 11-3: Wiring checklist

11.2 Quick Start Parameters

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
C0.05	Carrier frequency	DOM	DOM	1	Run
C1.05	Motor rated power	0.1...1,000.0 kW	DOM	0.1	Stop
C1.06	Motor rated voltage	0...480 V	DOM	1	Stop
C1.07	Motor rated current	0.01...655.00 A	DOM	0.01	Stop
C1.08	Motor rated frequency	5.00...400.00 Hz	50.00	0.01	Stop
C1.09	Motor rated speed	1...60,000 rpm	DOM	1	Stop
C2.00	V/f curve mode	0: Linear	0	–	Stop
		1: Square			
		2: User-defined			
E0.00	First frequency setting source	0...21	0	–	Stop
E0.01	First run command source	0...2	0	–	Stop
E0.07	Digital setting frequency	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	50.00	0.01	Run
E0.08	Maximum output frequency	50.00...400.00 Hz	50.00	0.01	Stop
E0.09	Output frequency high limit	[E0.10]...[E0.08] Hz	50.00	0.01	Run
E0.10	Output frequency low limit	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	0.01	Run
E0.17	Direction control	0: Forward / Reverse	0	–	Stop
		1: Forward only			
		2: Reverse only			
		3: Swap default direction			
E0.25	Acceleration / deceleration curve mode	0: Linear mode	0	–	Stop
		1: S-curve			
E0.26	Acceleration time	0.1...6,000.0 s	DOM	0.1	Run
E0.27	Deceleration time	0.1...6,000.0 s	DOM	0.1	Run
E0.35	Start mode	0: Start directly	0	–	Stop
		1: DC-braking before start			
		2: Start with speed capture			
		3: Automatic start / stop according to setting frequency			
E0.50	Stop mode	0: Decelerating stop	0	–	Stop
		1: Freewheeling stop 1			
		2: Freewheeling stop 2			

Tab. 11-4: Quick start parameters

11.3 Control the Motor

WARNING

Ensure the enclosure is in place before the device is powered on. Wait for at least **10 minutes** after powering off to allow the DC capacitor being discharged, and do not remove the cover during this period!

Step	Operation	Description
1	Rotate the potentiometer counterclockwise (leftwards) to the greatest extent	Output frequency setting is 0.00
2	Press <Run> button	Control command active, 0.00 is displayed
	Rotate the potentiometer clockwise (rightwards) slowly till 5.00 is displayed	The motor starts to run
3	Observe the running status: If the motor runs in the correct direction If the motor runs steadily If there is any abnormal noise or problem	Recommended operation: Stop the motor immediately by switching off the power if any abnormality occurs Restart commissioning only after error causes have been removed
4	Rotate the potentiometer clockwise	The motor accelerates
5	Rotate the potentiometer counterclockwise	The motor decelerates
6	Press <Stop> button	Stop command activated, the motor stops
7	Check parameters without load	Settings according to actual applications
8	Check parameters with load	Settings according to actual applications

Tab. 11-5: Motor controlling procedure

- After powering on, VFC x615 will generate output if pressing down the **<Run>** button (or 'Control by terminals' is activated).
- By default, VFC x615 is set as:
 - The frequency converter is started or stopped by the operating panel.
 - The output frequency is set by the potentiometer on the operating panel.
- After powering on, please confirm:
 - The setting frequency is displayed (no error display).
 - The monitoring parameter is consistent with the actual situations.
- By default, **Output frequency** in run status and **Setting frequency** in stop status are displayed as the monitoring parameters, which can be changed to other parameters with parameters U1.00 and U1.10. The default settings are based on standard applications with standard motors.



For frequency converters with dust cover, it is recommended to install an LED panel to perform the above operations.

11.4 Motor Parameters Auto-Tuning

For SVC control and applications with higher requirement to control accuracy in V/f control, motor parameter auto-tuning is necessary. Two modes of auto-tuning are available, static auto-tuning and rotational auto-tuning. The former mode is mainly used for V/f control and the latter is mainly used for SVC control.

Check and make sure the following points before auto-tuning:

- The motor is in standstill and not at high temperature.
- The power rating of the frequency converter is close to that of the motor.
- Set C1.05...C1.10 based on motor nameplate data. If the power factor data is unavailable on the nameplate, keep the default setting of C1.10.
- Set E0.08 according to motor parameters and actual application conditions.



Disconnect the load from the motor shaft for rotational auto-tuning.

Set auto-tuning mode and start motor parameter auto-tuning:

Set the following parameter according to the control mode of the frequency converter and the application situation.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
C1.01	Motor parameter tuning	0...2	0	–	Stop

- 0: Inactive. SVC control can still be used, but with lower performance.
- 1: Static auto-tuning. This mode is suggested to be used for V/f control. It can also be used for SVC control when the load cannot be disconnected.
- 2: Rotational auto-tuning (suggested to be used for SVC control)

Press the **<Run>** button on the operating panel to start auto-tuning. In the process of auto-tuning, a status code 'tUnE' will be displayed on the operating panel. When the auto-tuning process is complete, the status code disappears and the settings of the following parameters will be obtained automatically:

Static auto-tuning	Rotational auto-tuning	Parameters obtained by auto-tuning
✓	✓	C1.12: Motor rated slip frequency
✓	✓	C1.20: Motor no-load current
✓	✓	C1.21: Stator resistance
✓	✓	C1.22: Rotor resistance
✓	✓	C1.23: Leakage inductance
✓	✓	C1.24: Mutual inductance
✓	✓	C3.05: Current loop proportional gain
✓	✓	C3.06: Current loop integral time
–	✓	C3.00: Speed loop proportional gain
–	✓	C3.01: Speed loop integral time

Tab. 11-6: Parameters obtained by auto-tuning

11.5 Possible Errors during Quick Start and Respective Solutions

Errors	Solutions
Over current (SC, OC-1 or OC-2) occurs during acceleration	Increase the acceleration time
Over voltage (OE-3) occurs during deceleration	Increase the deceleration time
Over current (SC, OC-1 or OC-2) occurs immediately after pressing the <Run> button	Incorrect wiring. Check if U, V, W outputs of the main circuit are shorted or grounded
The motor runs in the direction opposite to expected	Change the sequence of any two phases of U, V and W
The motor vibrates and runs in uncertain directions after each starting	One phase of U, V and W is disconnected (output phase loss)

Tab. 11-7: Solutions for simple errors during commissioning

11.6 Restoring Parameters to Factory Defaults

If the frequency converter fails to run the motor due to incorrect parameter settings, a simple solution is to initialize the parameters to factory defaults. Setting [b0.10] = 1 will start initialization.

Please be sure that the parameter settings match with the motor and the field applications after factory defaults restore. Adjust the parameter settings after factory defaults restore if necessary.

Output frequency	Set by the potentiometer (E0.00)
Acceleration / deceleration time	Linear, Acc. for 5 s / Dec. for 5 s (E0.26, E0.27)
Protection mode in case of motor overload or overheat	Motor rated current (C1.07), Motor thermal model protection time constant (C1.74), low speed derating frequency (C1.75), and zero speed load (C1.76)
Operating panel operation	<Run> , <Stop> buttons as command sources, potentiometer as frequency setting source
V/f curve mode	Linear

Tab. 11-8: Parameter settings by factory defaults

12 Functions and Parameters

12.1 b0: Basic System

12.1.1 Access Authority Setting

This function is used to set parameters or read parameter settings in a fast way. Five access modes are available with parameter b0.00.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
b0.00	Access authority setting	0...4	0	-	-	Run

Setting range of b0.00:

- **0: Basic parameters**
b0, d0, C0, E0, U0, U1, U2, -EP- are visible.
- **1: Standard parameters**
 - For VFC 5615, b0, d0, C0, C1, C2, C3, E0, E5, E8, U0, U1, U2, -EP- are visible.
 - For VFC 3615, b0, d0, C0, C1, C2, E0, E5, E8, U0, U1, U2, -EP- are visible.
- **2: Advanced parameters**
 - s
 - For VFC 5615, b0, d0, C0, C1, C2, C3, E0, E1, E2, E3, E4, E5, E8, E9, H0, H1, H2, H8, H9, U0, U1, U2, F0, -EP- are visible.
 - For VFC 3615, b0, d0, C0, C1, C2, E0, E1, E2, E3, E4, E5, E8, E9, H0, H1, H2, H8, H9, U0, U1, U2, F0, -EP- are visible.
- **3: Start-up parameters**
b0, d0, -St-, -EP- are visible.
- **4: Modified parameters**
 - b0, d0, -PF-, -EP- are visible.
 - -PF- group consists of only modified parameters which are different from the default setting. Parameter settings can be modified directly in -PF- group.
 - If a parameter in -PF- group was changed back to its default setting is still visible in -PF- group. It is invisible once the group has been exited and re-accessed.
 - Parameters b0.10, b0.11, b0.20, b0.21, C0.53, C1.01, E9.05...E9.07, E9.10...E9.15, H8.87, H9.97 are excluded from this function.
 - If -PF- group is accessed if no parameter is different from default the warning message noCP will be displayed for 1.5s, then it will fall back to group selection screen.

Code	Name	Code	Name
C0.05	Carrier frequency	E0.08	Maximum output frequency
C1.05	Motor rated power	E0.09	Output frequency high limit
C1.06	Motor rated voltage	E0.10	Output frequency low limit
C1.07	Motor rated current	E0.17	Direction control
C1.08	Motor rated frequency	E0.25	Acceleration / Deceleration curve mode
C1.09	Motor rated speed	E0.26	Acceleration time
C2.00	V/f curve mode	E0.27	Deceleration time
E0.00	First frequency setting source	E0.35	Start mode
E0.01	First run command source	E0.50	Stop mode
E0.07	Digital setting frequency		

Tab. 12-1: -St- group contents

-EP- group is only visible if there are erroneous parameters during parameter restore (error E.Par).



- Parameters which are linked to an extension are only shown if the corresponding card is installed.

Example: Groups H1...H9 will only be shown if the related extension card is installed.

- Group U2 will only be shown if a LCD panel is installed. At the same time, because LED panel is uninstalled, U1 will not be visible any longer.
- ASF related parameter groups F1...F3 will only be shown if an ASF is loaded and b0.00 = 2.

12.1.2 Parameter Initialization

This function is used to restore the parameters back to the factory defaults.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
b0.09	Parameter initialization setting	1: Base device and non fieldbus options 2: Fieldbus options 3: Base device, non fieldbus and fieldbus options	1	–	–	Stop
b0.10	Parameter initialization	0...2	0	–	–	Stop

Setting range of b0.10:

- **0: Inactive**

This parameter will be reset to 0 automatically after parameter initialization is finished.

- **1: Restore to default settings**

Parameters will be restored to factory default based on the setting of b0.09:

- b0.09 = 1: b0, d0, C0, C1, C2, C3, E0, E1, E2, E3, E4, E5, E8, E9, H0, H8, H9, U0, U1, U2, F0, F1, F2, F3
- b0.09 = 2: H1, H2, H3, H4
- b0.09 = 3: All parameters are restored to factory default

Following parameters will not be cleared, independent of the setting of b0.09:

- C0.51 (Fan total running time)
- E9.05...E9.07, E9.10...E9.15, E9.97...E9.99 (Error records)
- d0.23 (Power stage running time)

- **2: Clear error and warning record**

Parameters E9.05...E9.07 and E9.10...E9.15, E9.97...E9.99 will be cleared.

12.1.3 Parameter Copy

This function is used to copy parameter settings between multiple frequency converters via the operating panel. Parameters can be stored on the panel of the frequency converter, after the panel is plugged into a different converter the same settings can be copied to this converter.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
b0.11	Parameter copy	0...2	0	–	–	Stop

Setting range of b0.11:

- **0: Inactive**

This parameter will be reset to 0 automatically after parameter copy is finished.

- **1: Backup parameters to panel**

All customer parameter settings are copied to the panel.

- **2: Restore parameters from panel**

All customer parameters settings are restored from the panel.

The following parameters are not included in parameter copy function:

- Read only parameters(d0 group, F0 group, C0.51, E9.05...E9.99, U0.99, H0.01, H0.02, H0.03, H0.18, H0.19, H0.20, H0.30, H0.23, H0.33, H1.01, H1.02)
- Panel parameters(U1 group, U2 group)
- Auto reset after execution parameters(b0.09, b0.10, b0.11, b0.20, b0.21, C0.53, C1.01)
- Real time data parameters(E2.20, E2.28, H0.00, H0.10, H0.12, H0.14, H0.15, H0.16, H0.50, H8.23, H8.28)
- MEP card parameters(H3 group, H4 group)
- Diagnosis parameters(H8.87, H9.97)

All other operations will be inactive during parameter replication. The panel can't be operated, data can't be accessed with engineering tools or fieldbus until the operation is finished.

When a parameter restore is started, all the parameters on the device will be set to the initial values first, this ensures a compatible behavior also over different firmware versions.

The state of progress during the operation is shown in the panel as below:

Display in the panel	State of progress
"."	0...25% finished
".."	26...50% finished
"..."	51...75% finished
"...."	76...100% finished

Tab. 12-2: State of progress

If parameter restore is triggered via communication it may lead to a communication breakdown if the parameters in the backup are not set according to the current settings.

If the panel is unplugged during the backup process the parameter image in the panel is not valid and can't be restored to another device. If the panel is unplugged during restore process the state of the converter is undefined. Process has to be repeated or default values have to be loaded.

When the parameter backup was taken with a different firmware version then the restore is done, some parameters might not be available, those will be set to initial values.

If a parameter from a backup has a different value range (e.g. from different device class) the error E.Par will be shown. Parameters which are set to invalid values will be shown in -EP- group.

If one or more parameters in the backup are not found in the device they will be skipped during parameter restore without notification.

12.1.4 Parameter Set Switch

This function allows to switch between two sets of parameters. It is used if the motors are switched at the output of the frequency converter and two motors should be driven by one device.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
b0.12	Parameter set selection	0: Parameter set 1 active 1: Parameter set 2 active	0	–	–	Stop

Following parameters are inside the switchable parameter set:

Code	Name	Code	Name
C0.00*	Control mode	C1.71	Motor overload pre-warning delay
C1.00*	Motor type	C1.74	Motor thermal model protection time constant
C1.05	Motor rated power	C1.75	Low speed derating frequency
C1.06	Motor rated voltage	C1.76	Zero speed load
C1.07	Motor rated current	C2.00	V/f curve mode
C1.08	Motor rated frequency	C2.01	V/f frequency 1
C1.09	Motor rated speed	C2.02	V/f voltage 1
C1.10	Motor rated power factor	C2.03	V/f frequency 2
C1.11	Motor poles	C2.04	V/f voltage 2
C1.12	Motor rated slip frequency	C2.05	V/f frequency 3
C1.13	Motor inertia mantissa	C2.06	V/f voltage 3
C1.14	Motor inertia exponent	C2.07	Slip compensation factor
C1.20	Motor no-load current	C2.21	Torque boost setting
C1.21	Stator resistance	C2.22	Automatic torque boost factor
C1.22	Rotor resistance	E0.00	First frequency setting source
C1.23	Leakage inductance	E0.01	First run command source
C1.24	Mutual inductance	E0.07	Digital setting frequency
C1.69	Motor thermal model protection setting	E0.09	Output frequency high limit
C1.70	Motor overload pre-warning level		

Tab. 12-3: Parameter set contents



*: C0.00 and C1.00 are ONLY included in the switchable parameter set for VFC 5615.

Parameter set switch can be carried out in 2 different ways:

- By parameter b0.12:

When the value is changed the parameter set according to the parameter will be loaded. A parameter set switch can only be carried out in STOP mode. Dur-

ing power up parameter set is loaded according to setting of b0.12, if none of the digital inputs is used to switch between the parameters sets.

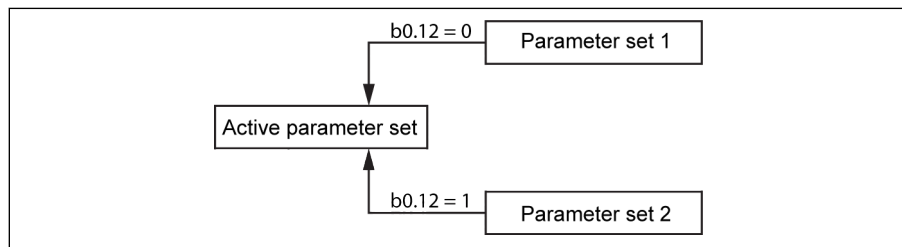


Fig. 12-1: Parameter set selection by b0.12

- By digital input:

Parameter set switch will be carried out with an digital input if one of the parameters E1.00...E1.04 or H8.00...H8.04 is set to option “46: Parameter set selection”. If one of the digital inputs is configured to option 46 it will override the setting of b0.12 and load the parameter set according to the digital input during power up. If an attempt to change [b0.12] as long as a digital input is configured, 'S.Err' will be shown.

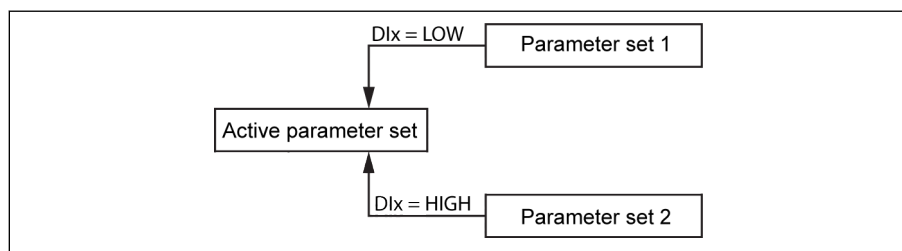


Fig. 12-2: Parameter set selection by digital input

Terminal value is considered for active parameter set selection only during STOP mode. If converter is in RUN, terminal value change will be ignored for parameter set selection. After STOP, parameter switching will be triggered once again, if the configured terminal value is not matching active parameter set.

Parameter set switch and other commands (e.g. RUN) can be given at the same time, but all other commands will be delayed until the parameter set switch is finished and triggered afterwards. If a parameter set switch is initiated during another parameter set switch in progress, the first switch will be finished and then the second switch will be carried out directly after the first one.

During parameter default loading both parameter sets will be restored to default values. During parameter set switch from set 1 to set 2, “PAR2” will be displayed on panel and during switching from set 2 to set 1, “PAR1” will be displayed with the following restrictions.



During parameter backup both sets will be copied and during restore both sets will be restored.

If any parameter data status is found invalid (e.g. from restore with different device), invalid data status parameter will be skipped and continue with update of other parameters.

12.1.5 Password Protection

Two kinds of passwords are available, user password and manufacturer password:

- User password: used to protect parameter settings from unauthorized or unintended changes.
- Manufacturer password: used for service purposes **ONLY**.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
b0.20	User password	0...65,535	0	–	1	Run
b0.21	Manufacturer password	0...65,535	0	–	1	Run

Both passwords always read as 0.

Possible operations with passwords are as below:

- **Set user password**

The default setting of user password is '0' (inactive). Enter any integer number between 1 and 65,535.

- **Change user password**

Enter the existing user password and then modify to the value of any integer number between 1 and 65,535.

- **Clear user password**

Enter the existing user password and modify to '0' to deactivate the password protection. If the super user password is entered the user password will be cleared directly.

When a user password is set all parameters can only be changed if the correct password (user or manufacturer) was input by the user. Parameter b0.00 can always be changed as this just changes the view, but does not allow other parameters to be changed.

If the user password can't be remembered anymore or was set by accident, our service department can help with a super user password.

User password protection does not affect frequency adjustment with Up and Down buttons in running status or frequency saving.

After a boot process the password protection will be active if the password protection is activated.

12.1.6 High Frequency Mode

This parameter allows to switch between two frequency modes: low frequency mode and high frequency mode.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.	Device
b0.22	Device frequency mode	0: Low frequency mode 1: High frequency mode	1	-	1	Stop	VFC3615 3P 0.4...30kW

- **Low frequency mode**

In low frequency mode, device can reach up to 400 Hz. Resolution of frequency parameters is 2 decimals in this mode. Range of E0.08 parameter is 50.00 to 400.00 Hz.

- **High frequency mode**

In high frequency mode, device can reach up to 1000 Hz. Resolution of frequency parameters is 1 decimal in this mode. Range of E0.08 parameter is 50.00 to 2000.0 Hz.



VFC3610 3P 0.4...30kW

- b0.22 will not be reset to defaults when factory resets is done (b0.10=1).
 - High frequency mode only works in V/F control mode.
-

12.2 C0: Power Control

12.2.1 Control Mode Selection

This function is used to select control mode for VFC 5615.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C0.00	Control mode	0: V/f control 1: Sensorless vector control 2: Vector control with speed sensors	0	–	–	Stop

Setting range of C0.00:

- **0: V/f control**
Used for pump and fan applications and other application without high requirement for the load, it also can be used for the application when one converter drives more motors.
With this control mode C2-group parameters are used for configuration.
- **1: Sensorless vector control***
Used for application which require higher performance control, one converter can only drive one motor.
With this control mode C3-group parameters are used for configuration.
- **2 : Vector control with speed sensors***
It is used in applications with high accuracy of speed and torque control, where one inverter drives one motor. This function is activated when using an encoder card. To use this mode, you need to configure the C3 group parameters.



- (1) Synchronous motor control is only active with sensorless vector control or vector control with encoder for VFC5615.
- (2) *: The functions of sensorless vector control, vector control with encoder and synchronous motor control are not suitable for 1 kHz model.

12.2.2 Normal Duty / Heavy Duty Setting

This function is used to set duty rating according to the load type of application.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C0.01	Normal / Heavy duty setting	0: Normal duty (ND) 1: Heavy duty (HD)	1	–	–	Stop

For some light load application, it is possible to use a lower power size frequency converter to drive a higher power size motor with normal duty setting.

- After parameter initialization the device and motor settings will be set to HD mode
- Switching from HD to ND will cause motor parameters reset to default value of normal duty, and vice versa.
- Switching from HD to ND will cause carrier frequency reset to default value of normal duty, and vice versa.



This function is only available for 5.5kW and above devices.

Overload capability and output current in ND and HD modes are shown as below:

Overload (%)	HD	ND
110	-	200
120	400	60
130	149	22
140	88	13
150	60	10
160	42	-
170	13	-
180	3.2	-
190	1.5	-
200	1.0	-

12.2.3 Carrier Frequency Setting

This function is used to set proper carrier frequency for drive.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C0.05	Carrier frequency	DOM	DOM	kHz	1	Run
C0.06	Carrier frequency automatic adjustment	0: Adjustment with temperature inactive 1: Adjustment with temperature active 2: Fixed carrier frequency	1	–	–	Stop

C0.05 setting range and default:

Product	Model	Setting range	Default	
			HD	ND
VFC x615	0K40...30K0	1...15 kHz	4 kHz	4 kHz
	37K0...110K0	1...12 kHz	4 kHz	4 kHz
	132K...400K	1...6 kHz	2 kHz	2 kHz

Tab. 12-4: C0.05 setting range and default



For SVC mode, the actual highest carrier frequency is 10kHz, even though the setting value is higher

The influence of carrier frequency on heat dissipation, noise level, and leakage current and interference is shown as below:

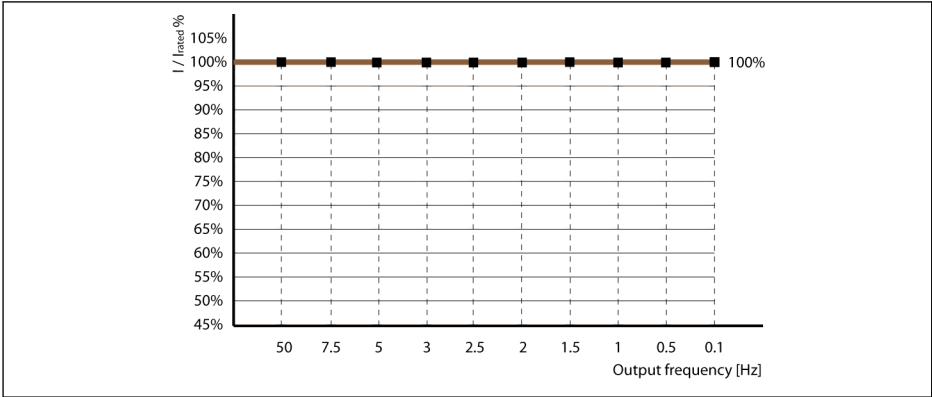
	Heat dissipation	Noise	Leakage current and interference
Higher carrier frequency	Higher	Lower	Higher
Lower carrier frequency	Lower	Higher	Lower

Tab. 12-5: Influence of carrier frequency

With C0.06 = 1, the carrier frequency will be changed automatically to keep the power module temperature within a normal range, but this could cause motor noise swing.

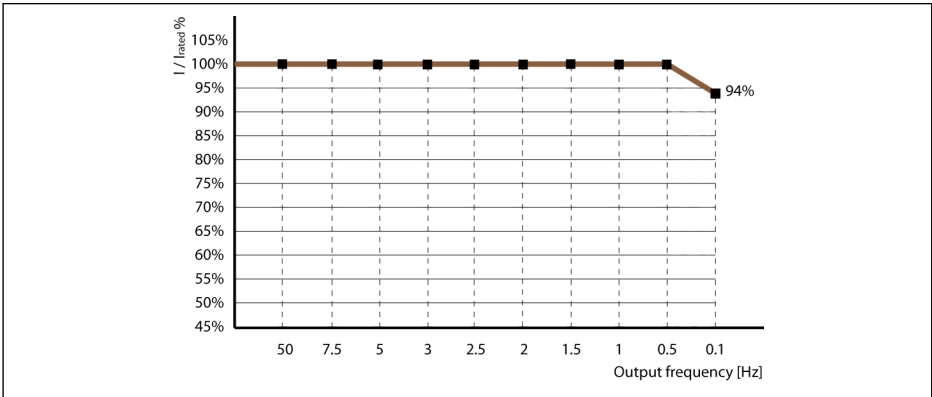
With C0.06 = 2, the carrier frequency is always fixed to C0.05.

Derating figures for the output power are shown as the figures below:



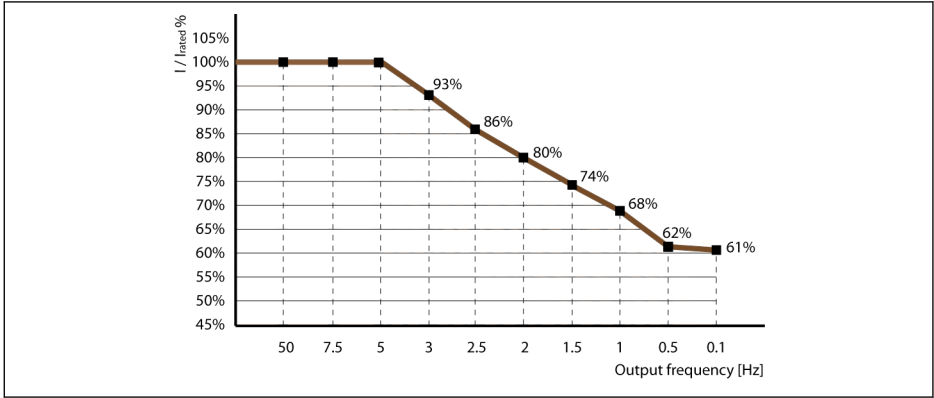
$I / I_{rated} \%$ Percentage of rated output current

Fig. 12-3:



$I / I_{rated} \%$ Percentage of rated output current

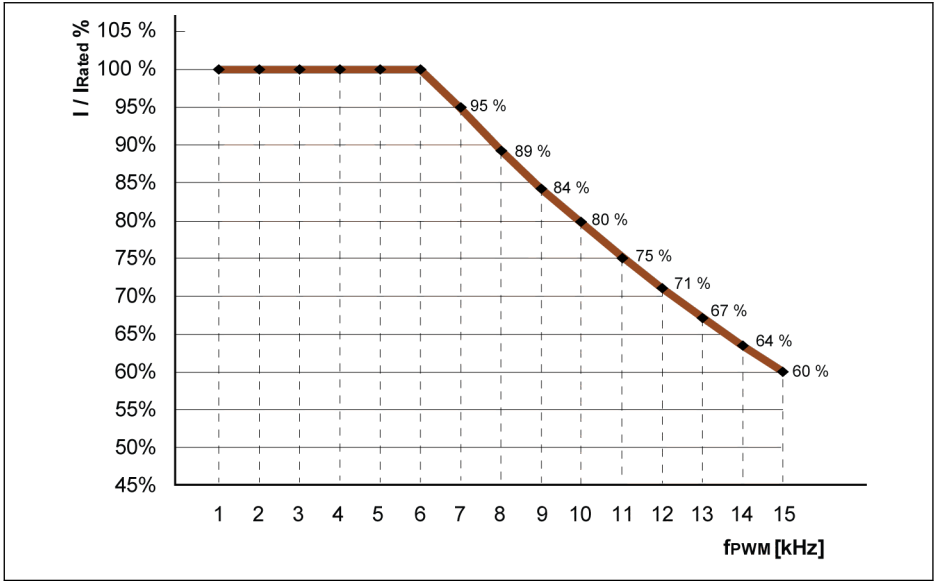
Fig. 12-4:



$I / I_{rated} \%$ Percentage of rated output current

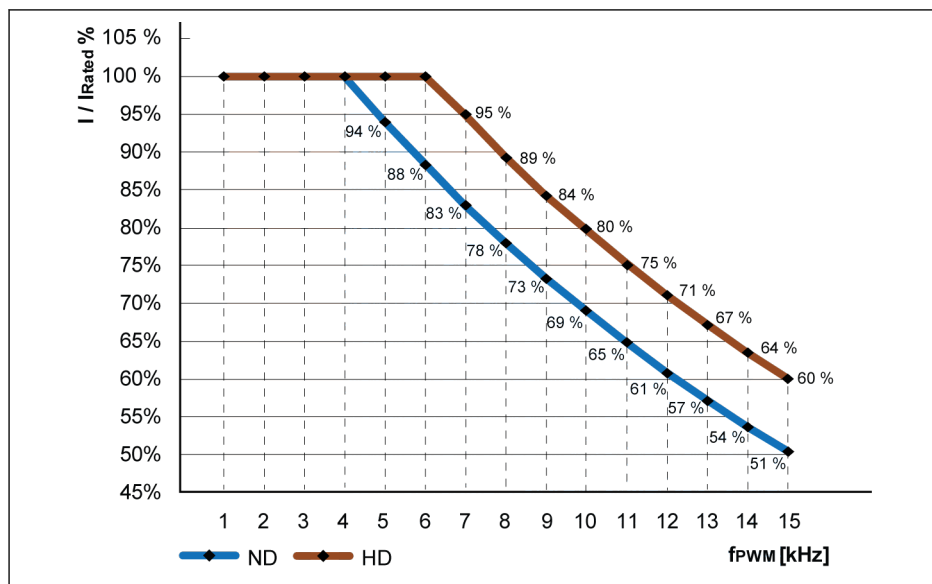
Fig. 12-5:

Derating figures related to carrier frequency are shown as the figures below:



$I / I_{rated} \%$ Percentage of rated output current
 f_{PWM} PWM or carrier frequency

Fig. 12-6: Derating and carrier frequency for 0K40...4K00 models

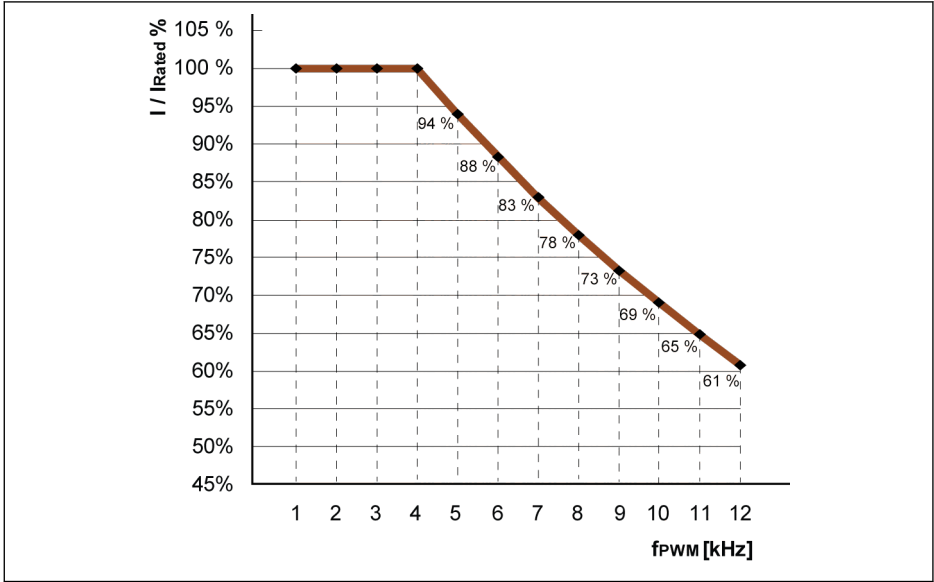


I / I_{rated} % Percentage of rated output current
 f_{PWM} PWM or carrier frequency

ND
 HD

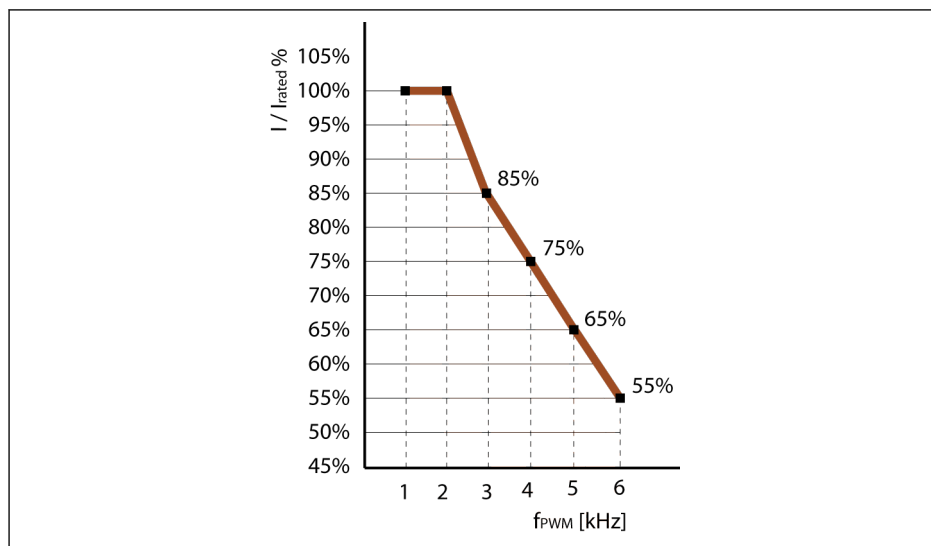
Normal Duty
 Heavy Duty

Fig. 12-7: Derating and carrier frequency for 5K50...30K0 models



$I / I_{rated} \%$ Percentage of rated output current
 f_{PWM} PWM or carrier frequency

Fig. 12-8: Derating and carrier frequency for 37K0...110K models (Normal Duty and Heavy Duty)



I / I_{rated} % Percentage of rated output current
 f_{PWM} PWM or carrier frequency

Fig. 12-9: Derating and carrier frequency for 132K...185K models (Normal Duty and Heavy Duty)



- C0.06 = 0 or 1: when output frequency is lower than 10Hz, the carrier frequency will be reduced automatically.
- C0.06 = 2: the carrier frequency is constant and will not change according to temperature and frequency.
- To achieve optimized performance, the carrier frequency setting should follow the equation: $[C0.05] \geq 10 \times [E0.08]$.

12.2.4 PWM Mode

This function is used to set the PWM mode for drive.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C0.07	PWM mode	0: SVPWM 1: SVPWM with Overmodulation 2: DPWM 3: DPWM with Overmodulation	DOM	–	–	Run
C0.08	DPWM switchover frequency upper limit	8.00...400.00	12.00	Hz	0.01	Run

C0.07 Setting range and default:

Model	Setting range	Default
0K40...30K0	0...1	0
37K0...400K	0...3	0

SVPWM mode is 7 segment continuous modulation, this mode has higher switching losses and lower current ripple.

DPWM mode is 5-segment discontinuous modulation, this mode has lower switching losses and higher current ripple, but may cause the motor not stable when higher output frequency.

In the overmodulation range, the converter can increase the output voltage by increasing the utilization rate of DC bus voltage.

Only in DPWM modes the parameter C0.08 is active. If the output frequency with slip compensation is above this limit then the DPWM mode is active.



Selecting overmodulation doesn't mean that the output voltage is directly increased in all cases. If overmodulation is selected then the final output voltage is only increased if it is needed from demanded output voltage. In that case the overmodulation can provide a further increase of output voltage. But the output voltage is no longer sinusoidal.

This may cause more current distortion or noise effects.

12.2.5 Automatic Voltage Stabilization

This function is used to keep the output voltage constant within the output capability, when the rated voltage deviation is inputted.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C0.10	Automatic voltage stabilization	0: Always active 1: Always inactive 2: Inactive only during deceleration	0	–	–	Stop
C0.11	Automatic voltage stabilization reference voltage	1P200 VAC: 180...264 V	220	V	1	Stop
		3P200 VAC: 180...264 V				
		3P380 VAC: 323...528 V	380			

Setting range of C0.10:

- **0: Always active**

Constant voltage control is enabled, the converter will automatically control the output voltage within motor rated voltage, and the output voltage will not be higher than motor rated voltage.

- **1: Always inactive**

Constant voltage control is disabled, then the output voltage will be in direct proportion to the input voltage.

- **2: Inactive only during deceleration**

Constant voltage control is disabled during deceleration. This function can effectively reduce the 'OE' error for fast deceleration application.

In some application which require quick stop, automatic voltage stabilization function should be closed (C0.10 = 1 or 2). In this case the motor is in generation mode, braking torque produced by regeneration voltage will be helpful for the motor quick stop, so that over voltage error can be avoided, then in deceleration process, when DC-bus voltage is higher than the reference voltage set by C0.11, the output voltage will be higher, but it may cause motor overheat.



- When C0.10 = 1 or 2, output voltage might be higher than motor rated voltage.
- C0.11 is only active when C0.10 = 1 or 2, it should be set according to mains voltage.

12.2.6 Brake Chopper Control

This function is used to get better braking performance via braking resistor.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C0.15	Brake chopper start voltage	1P 200 VAC: 300...390 V	385	V	1	Stop
		3P 380 VAC: 600...785 V	770			
C0.16	Brake chopper duty cycle	1...100%	100	–	1	Stop

Brake chopper control:

- Enable resistor braking function by setting [C0.25] = 2 or 3.
- Set braking start voltage via [C0.15] according to power supply and load inertia. When DC-bus voltage is higher than [C0.15], the brake chopper switches on / off according to the duty [C0.16] with an internal hysteresis.
- Set braking duty cycle via [C0.16] according to actual application, excessive low setting of [C0.16] may bring overvoltage error during braking.

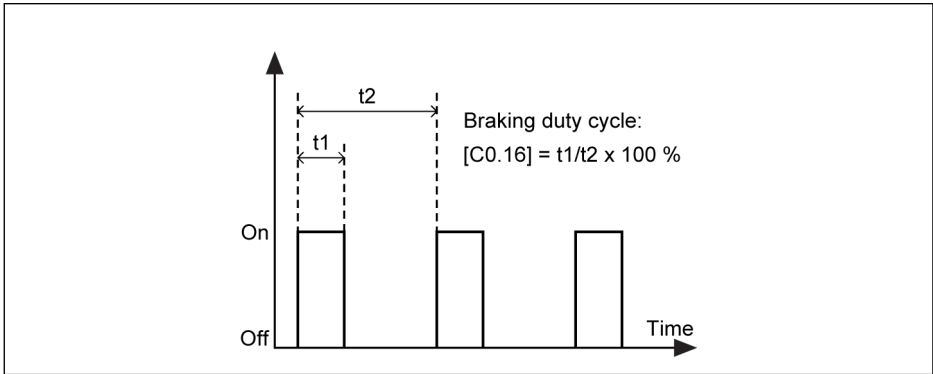


Fig. 12-10: Braking duty cycle

$$t_1 = t_2 \times [C0.16] / 100\%; \quad t_2 = 1 / 100 \text{ Hz} = 10 \text{ ms}$$

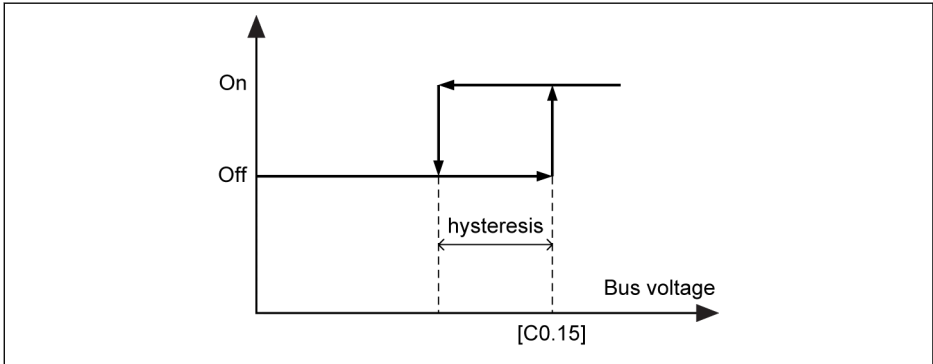


Fig. 12-11: Hysteresis

The hysteresis for different models is as listed below:

- 1P 200 VAC: 10 V
- 3P 380 VAC: 15 V



For power size ≥ 37 kW, there is no internal brake chopper, [C0.15] and [C0.16] are not visible.

12.2.7 Overvoltage suppression

This function is used to adjust the active slip compensation factor in order to match the higher mechanical speed due to reciprocating load characteristic.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C0.23	Overvoltage suppression adjustment gain	0.00...10.00	1.00	–	0.01	Run

Basic principle of reciprocating load application:

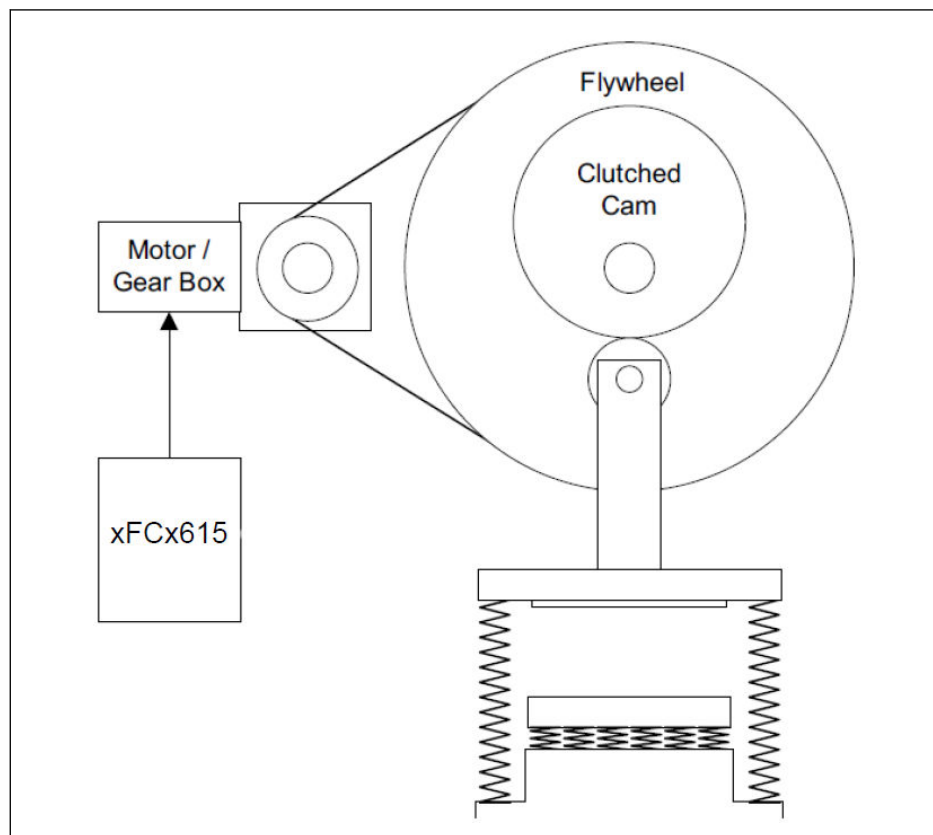


Fig. 12-12: Basic principle of reciprocating load

The character of load torque is kind of sine wave:

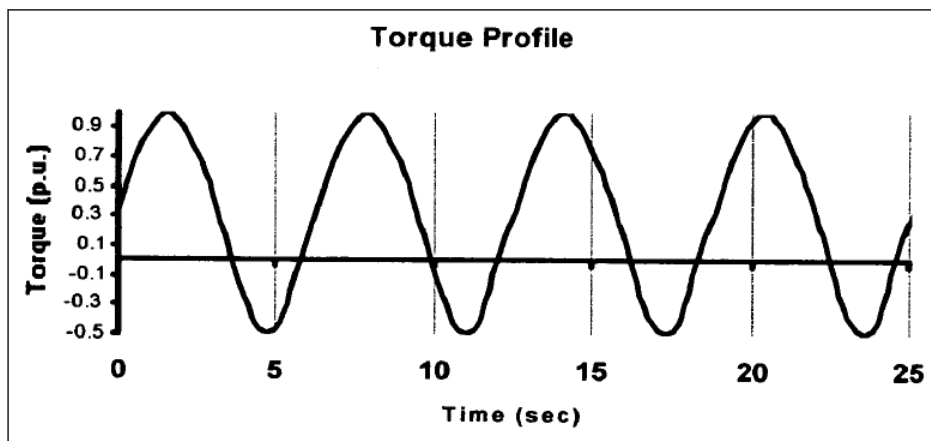


Fig. 12-13: Torque profile of reciprocating load

From the torque profile, the drive will work partly at motoring mode and partly at generating mode. In generating mode, the drive tends to be overvoltage of DC bus capacitor, in order to suppress the overvoltage, actual output frequency to the motor has to be adapted with the load torque.

In VFCx615, this is realized by adjusting the effective slip compensation factor when in generating mode via C0.23, so the resulting slip compensation factor will be:

$$Factor_{slip_comp} = \begin{cases} C2.07, & \text{motoring mode} \\ C0.23 * |C0.26 - U_{dc}|, & \text{generating mode} \end{cases}$$

Fig. 12-14: Calculation formula



1. This overvoltage suppression mode only works in V/f control.
2. Proper parameters setting for C0.23 depends on the load. During commissioning, if the actual output frequency still can not catch up with real mechanical velocity which can trigger overvoltage error, E0.08 and E0.09 might be adjusted since these will limit the actual output frequency.
3. This overvoltage suppression function cannot be used to shorten the actual deceleration time on application with large loads, so it is strongly recommended to set stop mode (E0.50) to 1 (freewheeling to stop 1).
4. This overvoltage suppression mode is **NOT** active when the output frequency is at upper limit (E0.09). This is because this function needs frequency space room to adjust.

12.2.8 Overvoltage Prevention Mode

This function is used to select proper mode to prevent overvoltage during deceleration caused by heavy load or too short deceleration time.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C0.25	Overvoltage prevention mode	0...4	3	–	1	Stop

Setting range:

- 0: Stall overvoltage protection is disabled, resistor braking is disabled.
- 1: Stall overvoltage protection is enabled, adjust protection level via [C0.26], resistor braking is disabled.
- 2: Stall overvoltage protection is disabled, resistor braking is enabled, adjust braking start voltage and duty cycle via [C0.15] and [C0.16].
- 3: Both stall overvoltage protection and resistor braking are enabled.
- 4: Reciprocating load mode, used when the drive controls rotating machinery where part of the machine's cycle creates a cyclic regenerative (over-hauling) load, adjust overvoltage suppression adjustment gain via [C0.23].



- Please select freewheeling to stop when this function is activated.
- This function is only used for V/f control.

12.2.9 Stall Overvoltage Prevention

This function is used to automatically adjust the deceleration process to prevent over voltage error.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C0.24	Stall overvoltage hysteresis voltage	0...100 V	1P 200 VAC: 30	V	1	Stop
			3P 380 VAC: 50			
C0.26	Stall overvoltage prevention level	1P 200 VAC: 300...390 V	385	V	1	Stop
		3P 380 VAC: 600...785 V	770			

Enable the function by setting [C0.25] =1 or 3.

With this function, the frequency converter detects the DC-bus voltage and compare it with [C0.26] during deceleration:

- [DC-bus voltage] > [C0.26]: Output frequency stops decreasing
- [DC-bus voltage] < [C0.26] - [C0.24]: Output frequency resumes decreasing

The typical behavior of stall overvoltage prevention is shown as the figure below:

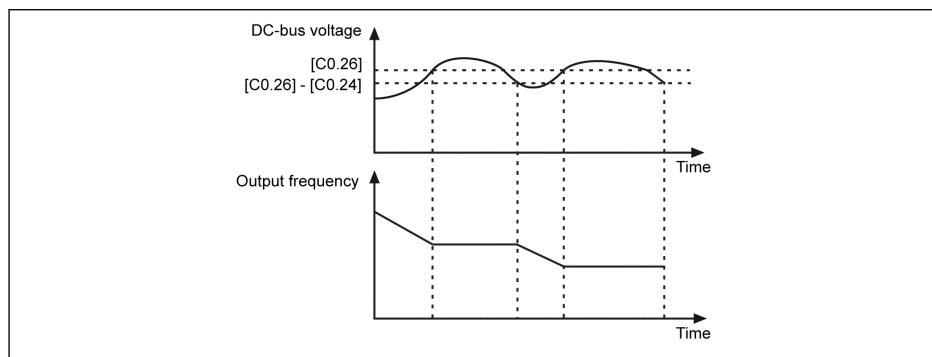


Fig. 12-15: Stall overvoltage prevention during deceleration



Enable stall overvoltage prevention function may cause the actual deceleration time is longer than expected. If the deceleration time needs to be accurate only resistor braking should be used.

12.2.10 Stall Overcurrent Prevention

This function is used to prevent the frequency converter from overcurrent when the load is excessively heavy or the acceleration time is excessively short. This function is always active during acceleration or at constant speed.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C0.27	Stall overcurrent prevention level	20.0...[C2.42]	150.0	-	0.1	Stop

This function is always enabled and only controlled by the setting current level. With this function, the frequency converter detects the output current and compares it with the level set in [C0.27] during acceleration and at constant speed:

- [Output current] > [C0.27]
Output frequency stops increasing during acceleration or decreases with the set deceleration time at constant speed.
- [Output current] < [C0.27]
Output frequency resumes increasing during acceleration or increases back to the setting frequency with the set acceleration time at constant speed.

Behavior of stall overcurrent prevention during acceleration is shown as the figure below:

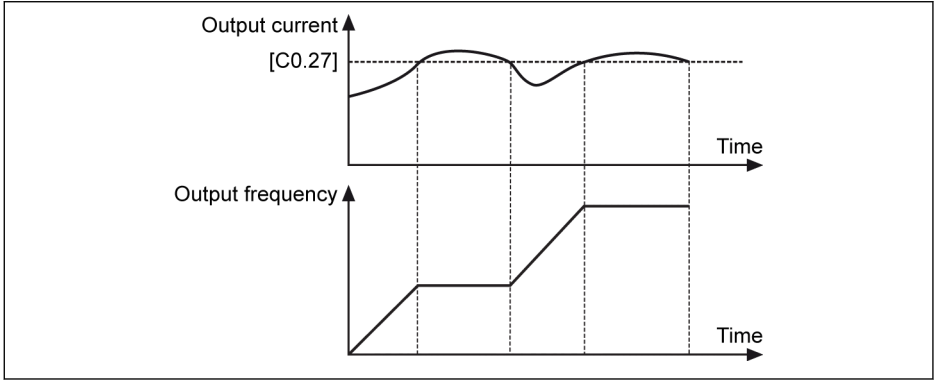


Fig. 12-16: Stall overcurrent during acceleration

- [Output current] > [C0.27]
The output frequency stops increasing.
- [Output current] < [C0.27]
The output frequency resumes increasing to the setting frequency with defined acceleration time.

Behavior of stall overcurrent at constant speed is shown as the figure below:

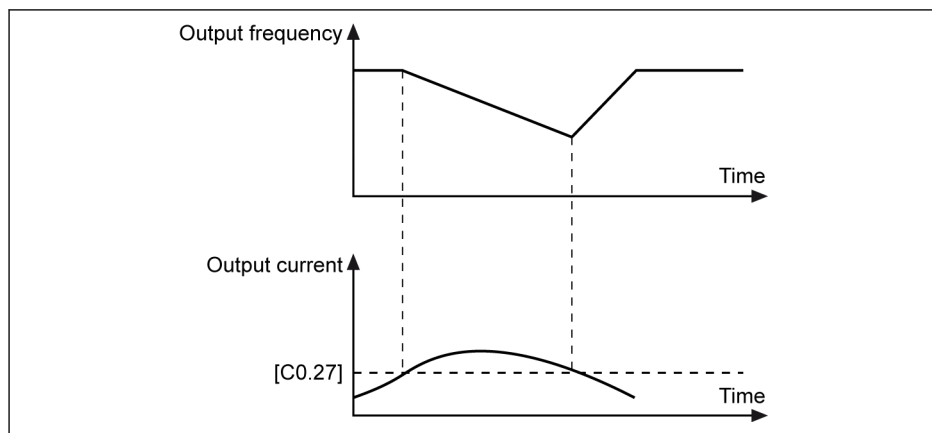


Fig. 12-17: Stall overcurrent at constant speed

- [Output current] > [C0.27]

The output frequency decreases till the output current is lower than [C0.27] with defined deceleration time.

- [Output current] < [C0.27]

The output frequency increases to the setting frequency with defined acceleration time.



This function can have influence on the speed accuracy during constant running and on the acceleration performance.

12.2.11 Phase Loss Protection

This function is used to detect input or output phase losses.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C0.28	Phase loss protection mode	0...3	3	-	-	Run

Setting range:

- **0: Both input and output phase loss protection active**
- **1: Only input phase loss protection active**
- **2: Only output phase loss protection active**
- **3: Both input and output phase loss protection inactive**

Phase loss protection will detect missing phases in the input or output line. Input phase loss detection will protect the converter power stage from overload, output phase loss detection will protect the motor phases from overload.

Both input and output phase loss protection will only work if the converter is in **RUN** state.

An input phase loss can also be triggered by line voltage imbalance or deterioration of DC-bus capacitors. The input phase loss cannot be detected in the following conditions:

- The output current is lower than 30 % of converter rated current
- During motor deceleration

The output phase loss has a dead zone in the following cases:

- The output frequency is lower than 1.00 Hz
- During DC-braking
- During restarting with speed capture
- During motor parameters auto-tuning
- Wrong settings of parameter C1.07 "Motor rated current"



Input phase loss protection only works on 3x400V devices.

12.2.12 Converter Overload Pre-Warning

Converter overload pre-warning will be notified if the load for the converter is too high for a defined time.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C0.29	Converter overload pre-warning level	20.0...200.0	110.0	-	0.1	Stop
C0.30	Converter overload pre-warning delay	0.0...20.0	2.0	s	0.1	Stop

When the frequency converter output current is higher than [C0.29] "Converter overload pre-warning level" and lasts for longer than [C0.30] "Converter overload pre-warning delay", the "Converter overload pre-warning" signal will be active on the selected digital output terminal. The signal will be immediately inactive when the output current is lower than [C0.29].

Parameter E2.01, E2.15, H8.20, H8.21, H9.00, H9.01, H9.02, H9.03 can be set to "11: Converter overload pre-warning" to configure the digital outputs to show this warning.

Behavior of converter overload pre-warning is shown as the figure below:

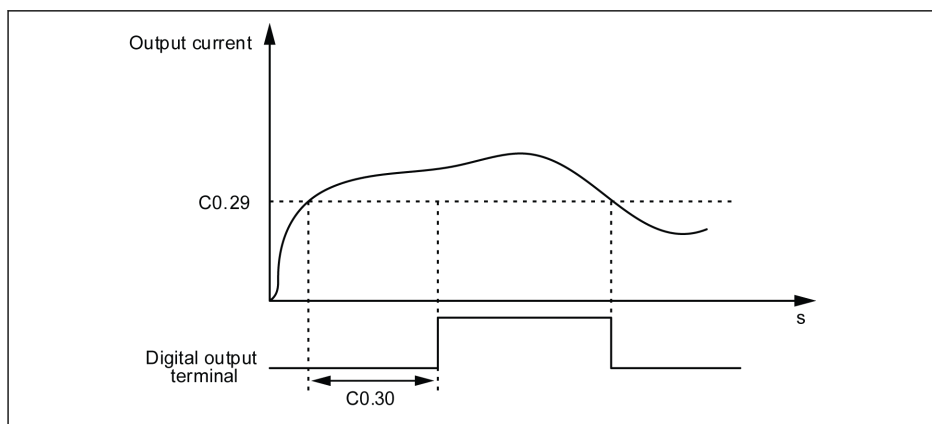


Fig. 12-18: Converter overload pre-warning

The actual overload pre-warning level will be reduced by the carrier frequency output current derating by the equation:

$$[\text{Actual overload pre-warning level}] = [\text{C0.29}] \times [\text{Derating percentage}]$$

This derating percentage can be found in the hardware specification for each device.

12.2.13 Power Loss Ride-Through

This function is helpful for continuing running of frequency converter when temporary power loss occurs.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C0.40	Power loss ride-through mode	0: Inactive 1: Output disabled 2: Regain kinetic energy 3: Regain kinetic energy, decelerate to stop 4: Regain kinetic energy, decelerate no stop	0	-	-	Stop
C0.41	Power loss ride-through recovery delay	0.10...30.00 s	0.50	s	0.01	Stop
C0.42	Power loss ride-through action voltage	1P 200 VAC: 216...366 V	240	V	1	Stop
		3P 380 VAC: 406...739 V	440			
C0.43	Power loss ride-through recover voltage	1P 200 VAC: 223...373 V	250	V	1	Stop
		3P 380 VAC: 413...746 V	450			
C0.44	Power loss ride-through deceleration time	0.1...6000.0 s	5.0	s	0.1	Stop
C0.45	Power loss ride-through control voltage	1P 200VAC: 226...373V	250	V	1	Stop
		3P 400VAC: 416...746V	450			
C0.46	Power loss ride-through limited voltage	1P 200VAC: 233...373V	280	V	1	Stop
		3P 400VAC: 423...746V	500			
C0.47	Power loss ride-through change frequency	0.00...400.00 Hz	5.00	HZ	0.01	Stop
C0.48	Power loss ride-through change frequency	0...100 Hz/s	10	HZ/s	1	Stop

When AC power is lost or not stable for a short time, the frequency converter will enter the power fault ride-through mode as long as the DC-bus voltage is still maintained stable:

- For 1P 200 VAC, DC-bus voltage is above 180 VDC
- For 3P 380 VAC, DC-bus voltage above 310 VDC

The power fault ride-through operation will be decided by the selected options as below:

1. The frequency converter output will be switched off

When the power supply resumes, the frequency converter will execute speed capture and resume its previous operation, example for 3-Phase Device actual minimum action voltage and recover voltage:

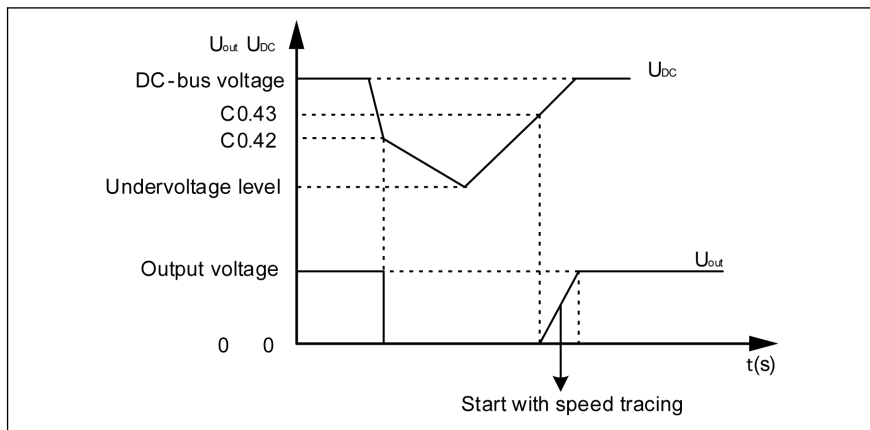


Fig. 12-19: Power loss ride-through mode 1

2. The frequency converter will decrease the output frequency to regain the kinetic energy from the rotating motor, to stabilize the DC bus voltage

When DC bus voltage is recovered, then converter output frequency will rise again and converter will enter the normal running mode, example for 3-phase device actual minimum action voltage and recover voltage:

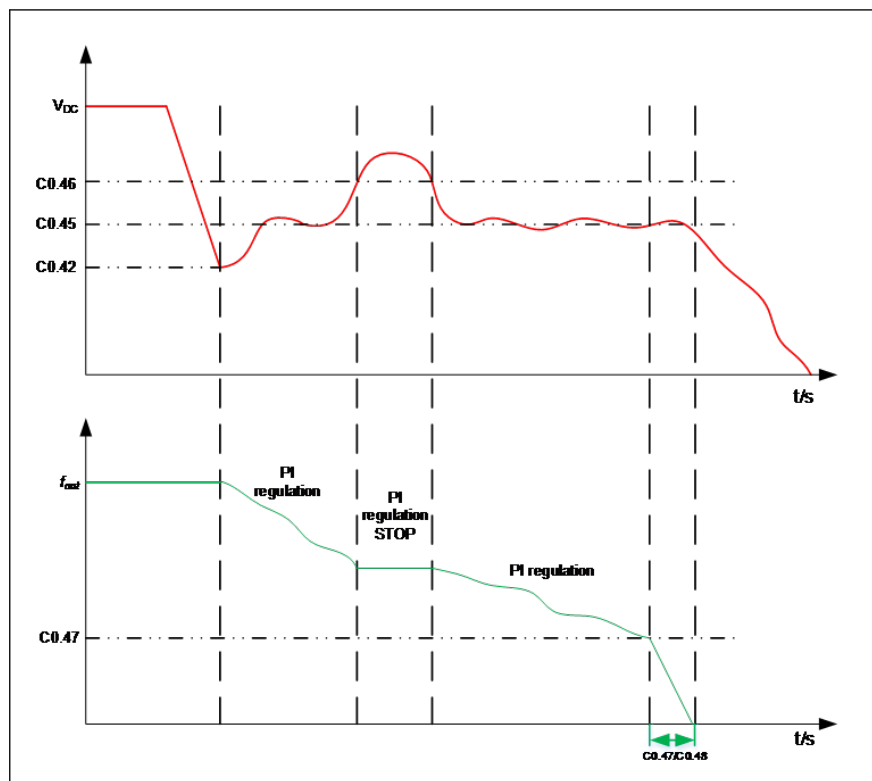


Fig. 12-20: Power loss ride-through mode 2

3. The frequency converter regains kinetic energy from the motor in generator mode with a defined ramp (defined by deceleration time [C0.44] which is the time from [E0.08] to 0Hz). Even when the power supply comes up again before the kinetic energy is consumed the drive will continue to decelerate down to stop. When the kinetic energy is consumed and the drive reaches the power fail voltage level the drive will be shut down, example for 3-phase device actual minimum action voltage and recover voltage:

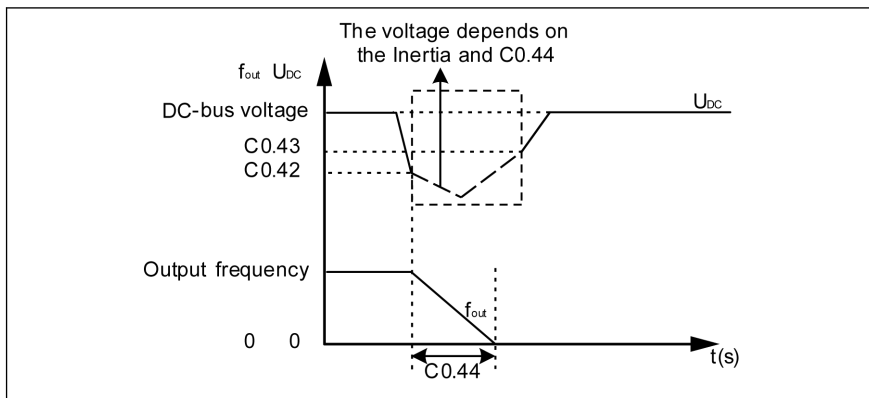


Fig. 12-21: Power loss ride-through mode 3



When option 3/4 is selected, special care must be taken by configuration of the deceleration time. If the time is too short overvoltage will occur. If the time is too long undervoltage will occur. For overvoltage a braking resistor may be used.

12.2.14 Fan Control and Maintenance

This function is used to set the running mode of both the fan for the heat sink and the capacitor fan, and to remind users maintaining the fan for the heat sink in time. The maintenance time can be set according to the actual application conditions.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C0.50	Fan control	0: Automatically controlled 1: Always on 2: On when converter run	0	-	-	Run
C0.51	Fan total running time	0...65,535 h	0	h	1	Read
C0.52	Fan maintenance time	0...65,535 h (0: Inactive)	0	h	1	Stop
C0.53	Fan total running time reset	0: Inactive 1: Active Reset to '0' after action is executed	0	-	-	Run

Setting range:

- **C0.50 = 0: Automatically controlled**

The fan for the heat sink is by default switched on / off automatically according to the temperature of the heat sink. In this mode, the noise level of the frequency converter can be reduced.

- **C0.50 = 1: Always on**

The fan for the heat sink and the fan for electrolytic capacitor are switched on and running all the time once the frequency converter is powered on. In this mode, a better cooling performance of the frequency converter can be achieved.

- **C0.50 = 2: On when converter run**

The fan for the heat sink and the fan for electrolytic capacitor on when converter runs, and off when converter stops.

To use the fan maintenance reminder function, take the following steps:

Step 1: Set the maintenance time of the fan properly

Set parameter C0.52 'Fan maintenance time' according to the actual application conditions.

Step 2: Observe the fan lifetime status at warning

When [C0.51] 'Fan total running time' is higher than [C0.52] 'Fan maintenance time', a warning code 'FLE' (Fan maintenance period expired) is displayed on the operating panel.

- Pause the display of the warning code 'FLE' by pressing the <Func> button.
- Perform fan maintenance or replacement.

Step 3: Reset the fan lifetime counter after fan maintenance or replacement

- Set parameter C0.53 'Fan total running time reset' to '1: Active'.

After the execution, [C0.53] and [C0.51] will be reset to '0' automatically. By now, the warning code 'FLE' is cleared completely.

- Adjust the value of C0.52 'Fan maintenance time' if necessary.



If C0.50 = "0: Automatically controlled", when the converter runs, the fan for electrolytic capacitor is switched on; When the converter stops, the fan for electrolytic capacitor is switched off.

12.3 C1: Motor and System

12.3.1 Motor Type Selection

This function is used to select which type of motor is connected.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C1.00	Motor type	0: Asynchronous motor 1: Synchronous motor	0	–	–	Stop



- Synchronous motor is only for VFC 5615.
- After setting C1.00 to '1', the parameter C0.00 (the control mode) will be modified automatically to '1', and user can modify C0.00 to '2' manually.

12.3.2 Motor Parameter Tuning

The auto-tuning function will determine the motor parameters and adjust the control accordingly.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C1.01	Motor parameter tuning	0: Inactive 1: Static auto-tuning 2: Rotational auto-tuning	0	-	-	Stop
C1.02	Expert mode	0: Standard mode 1: Expert mode	0	-	-	Stop

- C1.02 = 0: every change of a motor parameter leads to a recalculation based on the ascending rule.
- C1.02 = 1: Only for commissioning by manufacturer.

The application level and setting order of motor parameters

As shown in the table below, the motor control parameters are divided into 4 application levels that are interrelated on certain computational basis. In the process of parameter setting, the level attribute is a defining factor for the setting of the parameter value.

Code	Name	Level
C0.00	Control mode	Top level
C0.01	Normal / Heavy duty setting	
C1.00	Motor type	
C1.01	Motor parameter tuning	

Code	Name	Level
C1.05	Motor rated power	Nameplate level
C1.06	Motor rated voltage	
C1.07	Motor rated current	
C1.08	Motor rated frequency	
C1.09	Motor rated speed	
C1.10	Motor rated power factor	
C1.11	Motor poles	
C1.12	Motor rated slip frequency	Physical parameter level
C1.13	Motor inertia mantissa	
C1.14	Motor inertia exponent	
C1.15	Torque constant	
C1.20	Motor no-load current	
C1.21	Stator resistance	
C1.22	Rotor resistance	
C1.23	Leakage inductance	
C1.24	Mutual inductance	
C1.25	Rotor leakage inductance	
C2.43	Current limitation proportional gain	Control parameter level
C2.44	Current limitation integral time	
C3.00	Speed loop proportional gain 1	
C3.01	Speed loop integral time 1	
C3.02	Speed loop proportional gain 2	
C3.03	Speed loop integral time 2	
C3.05	Current loop proportional gain	
C3.06	Current loop integral time	

Tab. 12-6: The application level of motor parameters

The user shall follow the order as specified below to set or modify the parameters if it is needed, Top level -> Nameplate level -> Physical parameter level -> Control parameter level.

Taking the example of SVC control for asynchronous motor, the user shall first set top level parameters, C0.00, C0.01 and C1.00, and next set the nameplate level parameters, C1.05...C1.10, and in the end execute parameter auto-tuning to acquire the parameters of physical parameter level and control parameter level.

If the user does not conform to the order as specified above, this would cause undesired change to the parameter setting.

For example, if by applying the parameter auto-tuning function, the user goes first to set the parameters of physical parameter level and control parameter level,

el, and next execute the modify to the parameters of top level or nameplate level. After all, this would activate the internal computation function of motor parameters that end up with the change to the parameters of physical parameter level and control parameter level, namely the parameters defined after C1.12.

Auto-tuning of Motor Parameters

Check and make sure the following points before auto-tuning:

- The motor is in standstill and not at high temperature.
- The power rating of the frequency converter is close to that of the motor.
- For permanent magnetized synchronous motor, set C1.05, C1.07, C1.09, C1.11 based on motor nameplate data. C1.08 will be calculated by tuning, user can also set this parameter.

If motor poles is unavailable on the nameplate, it can be calculated by $p = 60 \cdot f / n$ (p: pole pairs; f: motor rated frequency; n: motor rated speed)

- For asynchronous motor, set C1.05...C1.09 based on motor nameplate data.
- If the power factor data is unavailable on the nameplate, keep the default setting of C1.10.
- Set E0.08, E0.09 according to motor parameters and actual application conditions.

Set auto-tuning mode and start motor parameter auto-tuning:

- **C1.01 = 0: Inactive**

Auto-tuning is by default inactive. If the function was used it will reset to this value after function is finished.

- **C1.01 = 1: Static auto-tuning**

Static auto-tuning is recommended to use as standard for all applications using V/f control. For vector control it can be used in case the load can't be disconnected.

- **C1.01 = 2: Rotational auto-tuning**

Rotational auto-tuning is recommended to use as standard for all applications using vector control. The load must be disconnected during rotational auto-tuning.

Press the <Run> button on the operating panel when the setting is finished for auto-tuning. In the process of auto-tuning, a status code 'tUnE' will be displayed on the operating panel. When the auto-tuning process is completed, the status code disappears and the settings of the following parameters will be obtained automatically:

Static auto-tuning	Rotational auto-tuning	Parameters obtained by auto-tuning
√	√	C1.12: Motor rated slip frequency (Only for asynchronous motor)
-	√	C1.13: Motor inertia mantissa

Static auto-tuning	Rotational auto-tuning	Parameters obtained by auto-tuning
–	√	C1.14: Motor inertia exponent
√	√	C1.20: Motor no-load current
√	√	C1.21: Stator resistance
√	√	C1.22: Rotor resistance (Only for asynchronous motor)
√	√	C1.23: Leakage inductance
√	√	C1.24: Mutual inductance (Only for asynchronous motor)
√	√	C1.25: Rotor leakage inductance
√	√	C3.00: Speed loop proportional gain 1
√	√	C3.01: Speed loop integral time 1
√	√	C3.05: Current loop proportional gain
√	√	C3.06: Current loop integral time

Tab. 12-7: Parameters obtained by auto-tuning



- C1.01=2: Rotational auto-tuning is only for VFC 5615.
- Disconnect the load from the motor shaft for rotational auto-tuning.

12.3.3 Motor Name Plate Data

This function is about motor nameplate parameters configuration, most of motor data are available on the motor nameplate, based on which the following parameters of the frequency converter need to be set accordingly.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C1.05	Motor rated power	0.1...1,000.0 kW	DOM	kW	0.1	Stop
C1.06	Motor rated voltage	0...480 V	DOM	V	1	Stop
C1.07	Motor rated current	0.01...655.00 A (0.4...45 kW)	DOM	A	0.01	Stop
		0.1...6550.0 A (55 kW and above)			0.1	
C1.08	Motor rated frequency	5.00...400.00 Hz	50.00	Hz	0.01	Stop
C1.09	Motor rated speed	1...60,000	DOM	-	1	Stop
C1.10	Motor rated power factor	0.00...0.99	0.00	-	0.01	Stop
C1.11	Motor poles	2...256	4	-	1	Stop

The input of rating plate data must correspond with the wiring of the motor (star / delta). This means, if delta wiring is used for the motor, delta rating plate data has to be entered:

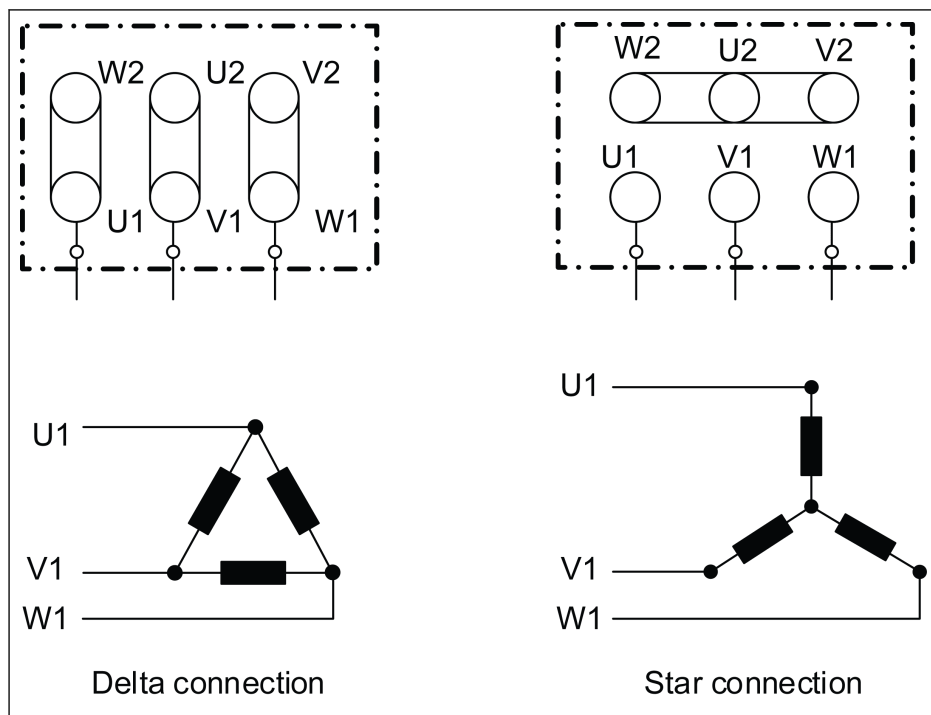


Fig. 12-22: Wiring of the motor

If the parameters above cannot be acquired from the motor nameplate. These parameters can be calculated according to the following steps or auto tuning. Only for synchronous motors MSK. For the new MS2N motors the data can be found in the MS2N instruction manual.

1. Choose motor rated speed **N_n** as required.
2. Select "speed-torque" characteristic curve according to the actual working conditions, and derive torque **M_n** at the rated speed.
3. Rated power is calculated by $P_n = (M_n \times N_n \times 2\pi) / 60$.
4. Acquire torque constant **km·n** and number of pole pairs **o** from Rexroth motor instruction.
5. Rated current is calculated by $I_n = M_n / (K_m \cdot n)$.
6. Rated frequency is calculated by $f_n = o \times N_n / 60$.
7. The number of motor poles equals to $2 \times o$.

Take the motor MSK071C-0450-NN as an example. The required motor rated speed is 1,500 rpm, motor works continuously and the housing temperature rise must not exceed 60 °C. The parameters are calculated as follows.

According to the operation mode and temperature rise requirement, select **S1** (60K) curve and derive **Mn** as 7.5 Nm, as shown in the following figure.

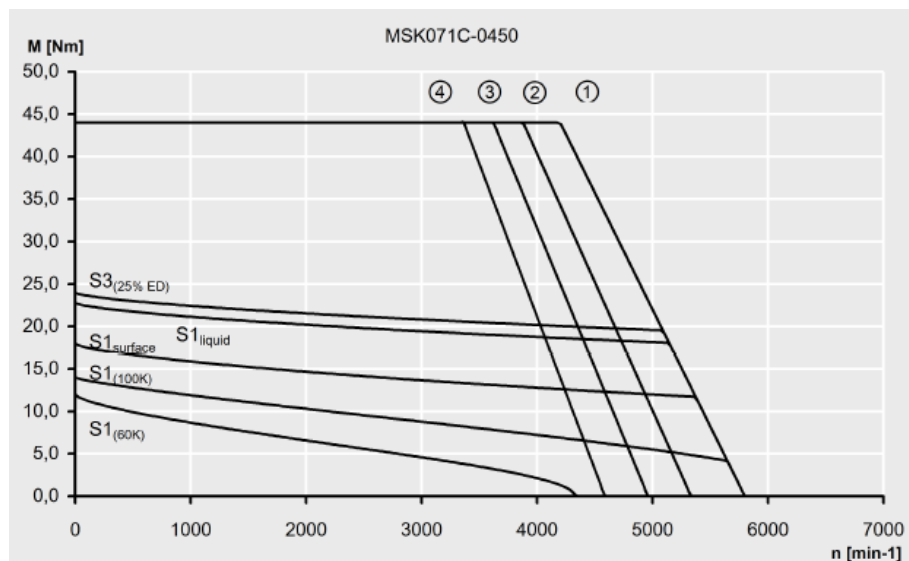


Fig. 12-23: Speed-torque characteristic curve

The torque constant **Km-n** of this motor is 1.49 Nm/A, the number of pole pairs **o** is 4.

Thus, the parameters can be calculated as:

Rated power is $P_n = (M_n \times n_n \times 2\pi) / 60 = 1.2 \text{ kW}$

Rated current is $I_n = M_n / (K_m-n) = 5 \text{ A}$

Rated frequency is $f_n = o \times n_n / 60 = 100 \text{ Hz}$

The number of pole pairs is $2 \times o = 8$



- For the C1.09 'motor rated speed', do not put in the synchronous speed for an asynchronous motor.
- C1.10 = 0.00: Automatically identified; C1.10 = 0.01...0.99: Power factor setting.
- If the data for C1.10 'Motor rated power factor' is not available on the motor nameplate, keep its default setting '0.00: Automatically identified'. However, the rotational auto-tuning performance may be affected.

12.3.4 Motor Internal Data

This function is about motor internal data, which can be calculated internally or input by users.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C1.12	Motor rated slip frequency	0.00...60.00 Hz	DOM	Hz	0.1	Stop
C1.13	Motor inertia mantissa	1...5,000	DOM	-	1	Stop
C1.14	Motor inertia exponent	0...7	DOM	-	1	Stop
C1.15	Torque constant	0.01...200.00 Nm/A	DOM	Nm/A	0.01	Stop
C1.16	Back emf voltage constant	0.0 ... 6550.0 V/1000 min ⁻¹	0.0	V/1000 min ⁻¹	0.1	Read
C1.17	Motor rated torque	0.0...6553.5 N.m	DOM	N.m	0.1	Read
C1.20	Motor no-load current	0.00...[C1.07] A (0.4...45 kW)	DOM	A	0.01	Stop
		0.0...[C1.07] A (55 kW and above)			0.1	
C1.21	Stator resistance	0.00...50.00 Ω (0.4...45 kW)	DOM	Ω	0.01	Stop
		0.000...50.000 Ω (55 kW and above)			0.001	
C1.22	Rotor resistance	0.00...50.00 Ω (0.4...45 kW)	DOM	Ω	0.01	Stop
		0.000...50.000 Ω (55 kW and above)			0.001	
C1.23	Leakage inductance	0.00...600.00 mH	DOM	mH	0.01	Stop
C1.24	Mutual inductance	0.0...6,000.0 mH	DOM	mH	0.1	Stop
C1.25	Rotor leakage inductance	0.00...600.00 mH	DOM	mH	0.01	Stop

Motor rated slip frequency

By default, C1.12 (Motor rated slip frequency) will be set automatically according to the basic motor parameters. The value can be adjusted with the following equations:

- $n_s = f_n \times 60 / p$
- $s = (n_s - n_n) / n_s$
- $f_s = s \times f_n$

n_s : synchronous speed; f_n : rated frequency

p : numbers of pole pairs; s : rated slip

n_n : rated speed; f_s : rated slip frequency

Motor no-load current

The actual no-load current is limited to be less than 75 % of the motor rated current.

Example

[C1.07] = 2.06, then set [C1.20] = 2.06, the actual setting value is 1.54.

Motor inertia mantissa and Motor inertia exponent

The inertia parameter C1.13 and C1.14 is defined as:

$$J = [C1.13] \times 10^{[C1.14]}$$

J - Inertia, Unit: Kg.m²

Accurate system inertia is important for achieving the optimal control performance. If by using the default inertia value fail to achieve the required control performance, the following three methods can be used to obtain the inertia value:

1. Run rotational auto-tuning (C1.01 = 2) and the motor inertia can be obtained automatically. This method is recommended if the motor is disconnectable from the load.
2. Look up for the inertia value on the nameplate of synchronous motor or in the datasheet of motor manufacturer.
3. If the inertia value is not available on the nameplate or in the datasheet, neither the motor load is removable that allows for the execution of the rotational auto-tuning, derive an estimated value according to the formula below and make fine tuning for better control effect.

$$J = \frac{1}{2} \times m \times r^2$$

m - Rotor weight of synchronous motor, unit: kg

r - Rotor radius of synchronous motor, unit: m

In case rotor weight and rotor radius are not available, the following formula can be used for rough estimation of inertia.

$$J = \frac{1}{2} \times k \times M \times R^2$$

M - Total weight of synchronous motor, unit: kg

R - Stator radius of synchronous motor, unit: m

k - Coefficient, generally ranging from 1/32 to 1/8. For compact motor, such as servo motor, a bigger value could be selected, while for general asynchronous motor, a smaller value may be more suitable.

Due to the fact that the actual inertia is not obtainable through static auto tuning, and additionally if the default inertia could not meet the control requirement, only method 2 and method 3 shall be used for identifying the inertia value.



C1.13 and C1.14 are only available for VFC 5615.

12.3.5 Motor Thermal Model

This function is designed to protect the motor from over-temperature according internal thermal model.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C1.69	Motor thermal model protection setting	0: idle 1: Reserve 2: Current monitoring on	0	-	-	Stop
C1.74	Motor thermal model protection time constant	0.0...400.0 min	DOM	min	0.1	Stop

C1.69=2 When the output current exceeds the [C1.70] 'Motor overload warning level' setting and the duration exceeds [C1.71] 'Motor overload warning delay', the device stops immediately and indicates an OL-2 error.

[C1.74] is obtained by the equation below:

$$[C1.74] = \frac{C_v * M}{9 * [C1.21] * [C1.07]^2 * 60}$$

Cv: Specific heat capacity
(J/kg)

Cv of iron (Fe): 450 J/kg

Cv of aluminum (Al): 900 J/kg

M: Motor weight (kg)

Fig. 12-24: Motor thermal protection time constant

Increase the value of C1.74 'Motor thermal model protection time constant' appropriately if motor overload protection error code 'OL-2' occurs frequently. This function can be disabled by setting [C1.69] = 0, if necessary.



Ensure that the converter output current does not exceed 110 % of the [C1.07] 'Motor rated current'.

Motor derating frequency at low speed

This function is used to reduce the overload and thermal risks as motors have worse cooling performance at low speed compared with it at rated speed.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C1.75	Low speed derating frequency	0.10...300.00	25.00	-	0.01	Run
C1.76	Zero speed load	25.0...100.0 %	25.0	-	0.1	Run

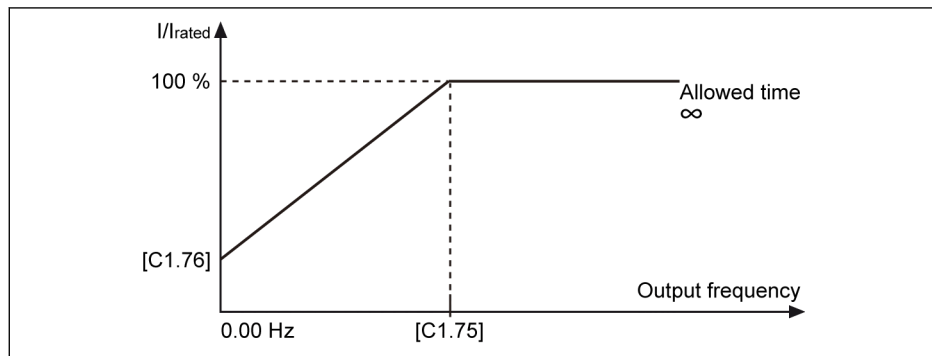


Fig. 12-25: Derating at low speed

- Low speed derating frequency

When the output frequency is higher than [C1.75] 'Low speed derating frequency', the allowed continuous current is [C1.07] 'Motor rated current'.

When the output frequency is lower than [C1.75], the allowed continuous current is reduced according to the above curve, with the lowest value to [C1.76] 'Zero speed load' at standstill.

- Zero speed load

Zero speed load is the allowed continuous current (percentage of rated current) at standstill.



For a motor with external cooling, [C1.76] 'Zero speed load' is set to 100 %, and the low speed derating function is inactive.

12.3.6 Motor Overload Pre-Warning

This function is used to monitor if the load for the motor is too high for a defined time, it will not lead to a device stop running but a digital output signal.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.	Device
C1.69	Motor thermal model protection setting	0: Inactive 1: Reserve 2: Current monitoring active	0	-	-	Stop	All
C1.70	Motor overload pre-warning level	100.0...250.0 %	100.0	-	0.1	Run	All
C1.71	Motor overload pre-warning delay	0.0...20.0	2.0	-	0.1	Run	All

- **C1.69=0 or 1 (Attention: valid only in motor overload pre-alarm)**

When the output current exceeds the threshold defined by C1.70 'Motor overload pre-warning level' and lasts for C1.71 'Motor overload pre-warning delay', the "Motor overload pre-warning" signal will be active on the selected digital output terminal. The signal will be immediately inactive when the output current is lower than [C1.71].

Parameter E2.01, E2.15, H8.20, H8.21, H9.00, H9.10, H9.02, H9.03 can be set to "12: Motor overload pre-warning" to configure the digital outputs to show this warning.

Behavior of motor overload pre-warning is shown as the figure below:

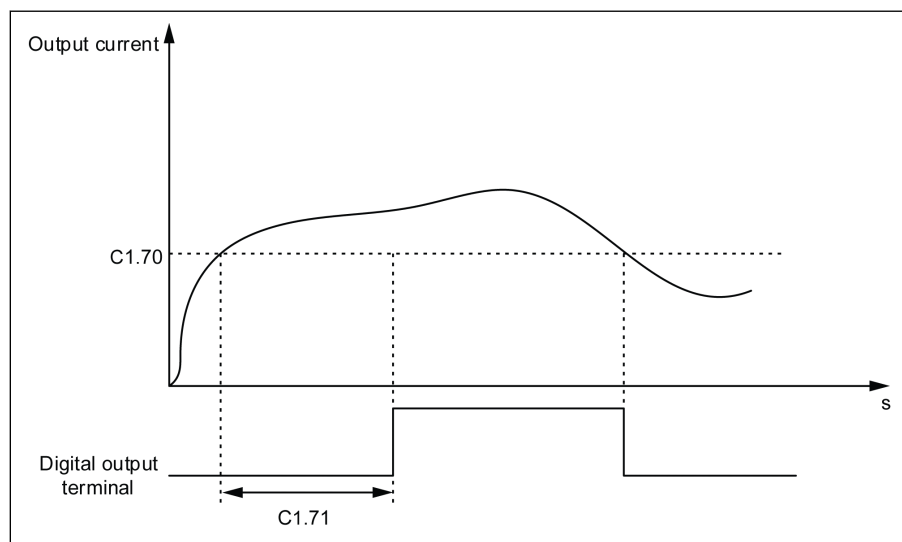


Fig. 12-26: Motor overload pre-warning

- Parameter E2.01, E2.15, H8.20, H8.21, H9.00, H9.10, H9.02, H9.03 can be set to "14: Converter error " to configure the digital outputs to show this error.

Behavior of motor overload pre-warning is shown as the figure below:

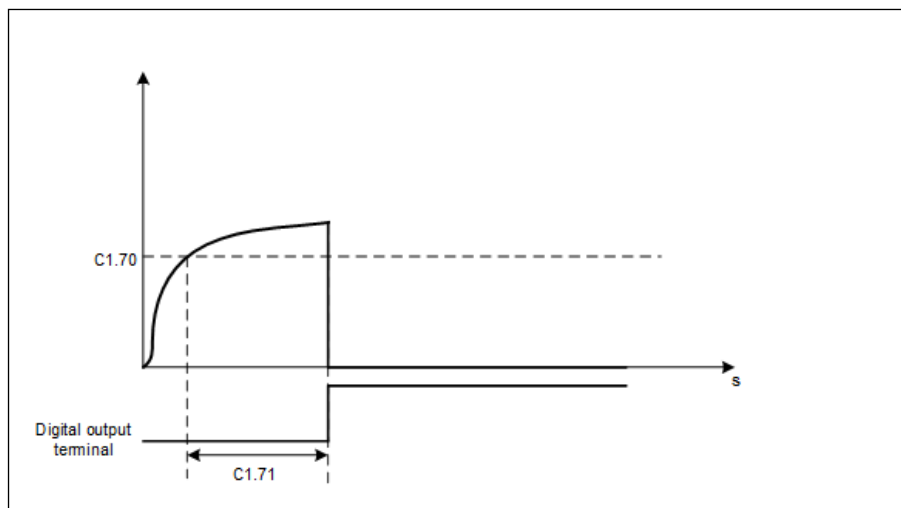


Fig. 12-27: Motor overload pre-warning

12.3.7 Motor Thermal Sensor Selection

This function is used to protect the motor against overheat. The analog voltage input can be used as temperature signal input.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C1.72	Motor thermal sensor type	0: KTY84/130 (PTC) 1 : PTC/SNM-150 2: PT100 3: PT1000 4: TDK G1551_8320 (NTC)	0	-	-	Stop
C1.73	Motor thermal sensor protection level	0.0...10.0 V	2.0	V	0.1	Stop

To connect a temperature sensor to the converter, external wiring outside the converter is required.

For a temperature sensor with voltage supply, use terminals +10 V, AI1 / AI2 / EAI1 / EAI2 and GND on the frequency converter.

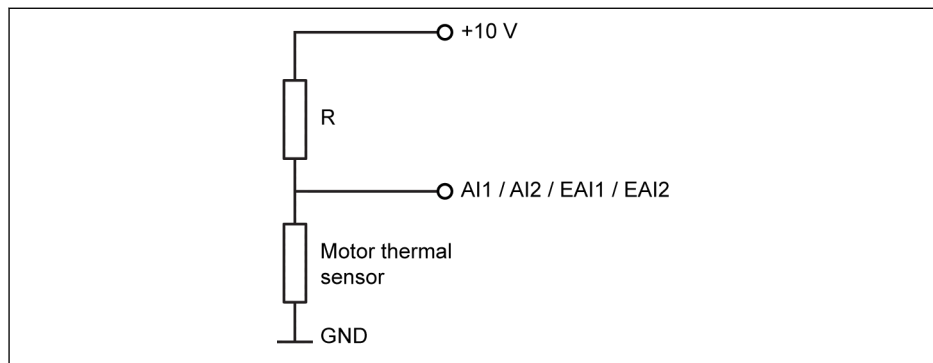


Fig. 12-28: Temperature sensor with voltage supply

For a temperature sensor with current supply, use terminals AO1 / EAO, AI1 / AI2 / EAI1 / EAI2 and GND on the frequency converter.

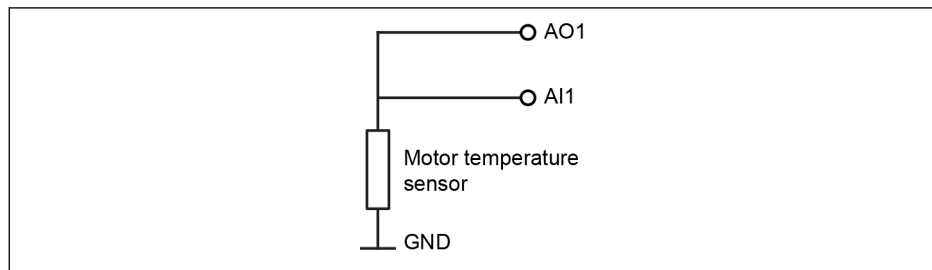


Fig. 12-29: Temperature sensor with current supply

Activate the function of temperature monitoring with temperature sensor:

Parameter [E1.60] 'Motor temperature sensor channel' is used enable to the protection with sensor.

Select the sensor type:

- [C1.72] = 0: KTY84/130

For KTY84/130 sensors, the value of resistor R in the figure should be close to the sensor resistance when the motor is at high temperature.

[C1.72] = 1 : PTC/SNM-150

- [C1.72] = 2: PT100

For a good resolution of temperature with PT100 sensors, the value of resistor R in the figure should be close to the sensor resistance at the motor temperature limit.

- [C1.72] = 3: PT1000

For PT1000 sensors, the relationship between the resistor R and the motor temperature is:

-30 °C: 882 Ω

0 °C: 1,000 Ω

200 °C: 1,758 Ω

- [C1.72] = 4: TDK G1551_8320 (NTC)

Supply source to the temperature sensor:

- If [E2.26] = '11: Motor temperature sensor power supply' (or [H8.26] = 11), the analog output is shifted with current supply mode regardless of the setting of E2.25 (or H8.25). In this case, the output current on the selected analog output terminal is:
 - [C1.72] = 0, output current = 1.6 mA
 - [C1.72] = 2, output current = 9.1 mA
 - [C1.72] = 3, output current = 1 mA
 - [C1.72] = 4, output current = 4 mA
- If [E2.26] $\neq$ 11, the AO output mode is resumed to [E2.25] 'AO1 output mode' automatically.

- If [H8.26] ≠ 11, EAO output mode is resumed to [H8.25] 'EAO output mode' automatically.

Set the motor protection level

Set C1.73 'Motor thermal sensor protection level' according to the characteristic of the temperature sensor. The setting value corresponds to the voltage value detected by of analog input.

Example: If [C1.72] = 0, 2, 3, [C1.73] = 2, it represents 2 V, and the frequency converter stops with error code 'Ot' displayed on the operating panel when the voltage level on analog input is higher than 2 V; if [C1.72] = 4, [C1.73] = 2, it represents 2 V, and the frequency converter stops with error code 'Ot' displayed on the operating panel when the voltage level on analog input is lower than 2 V.

12.4 C2: V/f Control

12.4.1 V/f Curve Setting

This function is used to adjust the output voltage in accordance with the V/f curve.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C2.00	V/f curve mode	0: Linear 1: Square 2: User-defined 3: V/f separation	0	-	-	Stop
C2.01	V/f frequency 1	0.00...[C2.03] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Stop
C2.02	V/f voltage 1	0.0...120.0 %	0.0	-	0.1	Stop
C2.03	V/f frequency 2	[C2.01]...[C2.05] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Stop
C2.04	V/f voltage 2	0.0...120.0 %	0.0	-	0.1	Stop
C2.05	V/f frequency 3	[C2.03]...[E0.08] Hz	50.00	Hz	0.01	Stop
C2.06	V/f voltage 3	0.0...120.0 %	100.0	-	0.1	Stop
C2.08	V/f separation output voltage source selection	0: Panel potentiometer 1: Panel button setting 2: AI1 analog input 10: X5 pulse input 20: Communication (Modbus 0x7F0B/Fieldbus extension card H0.50) 22: Digital setting 23: Voltage PID control	22	-	-	Stop
C2.09	V/f separation output voltage digital setting	0.00...100.00 %	0.00	-	0.01	Run
C2.10	V/f separation output voltage acceleration time	0.0...6,000.0 s	0.0	-	0.1	Run
C2.11	V/f separation output voltage deceleration time	0.0...6,000.0 s	0.0	-	0.1	Run

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C2.12	V/f separation stop mode selection	0: Voltage and frequency decelerates independently 1: Voltage decelerates to zero, then frequency decelerates to zero	0	-	-	Run
C2.13	V/f separation boost factor	0.00...100.00	0.00	-	0.01	Run

The frequency converter provides four curve modes:

- **0: Linear**

This mode refers to linear voltage / frequency control, which is used for normal constant torque loads.

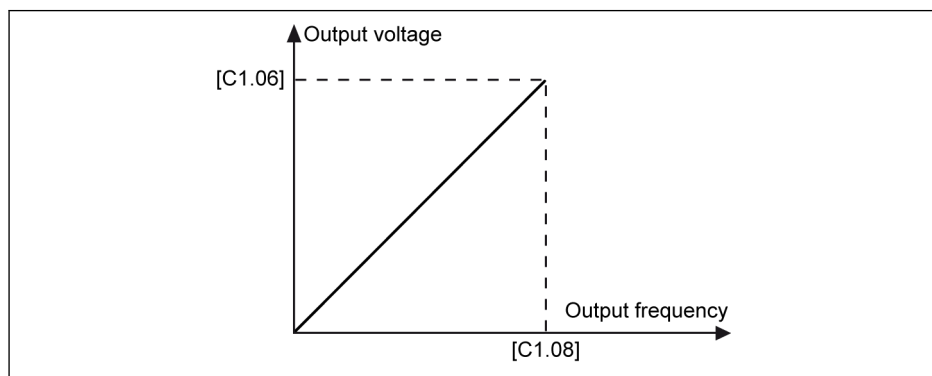


Fig. 12-30: Linear V/f curve

- **1: Square**

This mode refers to square voltage / frequency control, which is used for variable torque loads of fans, pumps, etc.

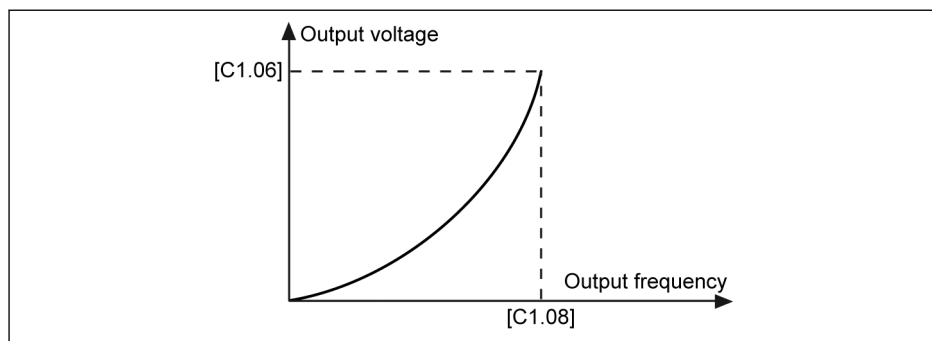


Fig. 12-31: Square V/f curve

● 2: User-defined

This mode refers to voltage / frequency control with curve defined according to actual application, which is used for special loads of dewatering machines, centrifuges, etc.

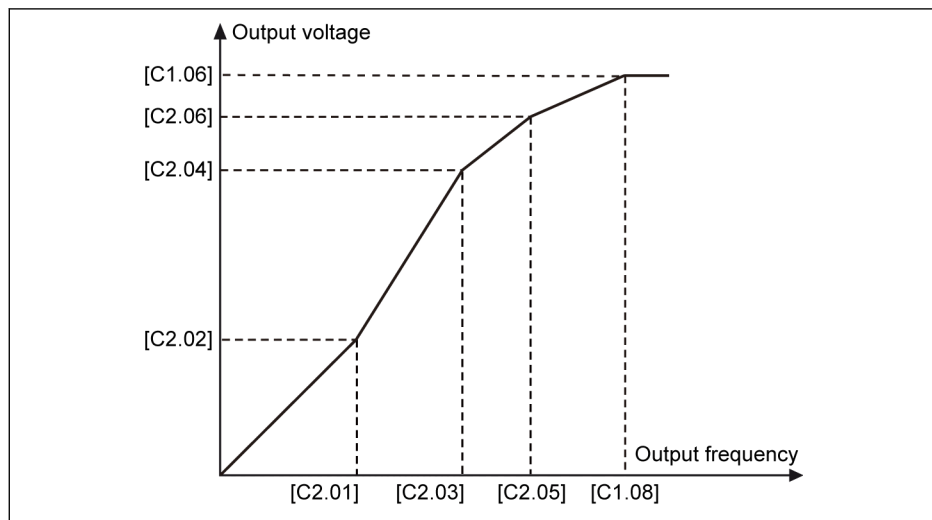


Fig. 12-32: User-defined V/f curve

Each of the three V/f frequency points is limited by the neighboring V/f frequency points. In general, each V/f frequency point shall be set according to following sequence: $0 \leq [C2.01] \leq [C2.03] \leq [C2.05] \leq [C1.08]$.

There are two modes of user-defined V/f curve:

1. User-defined V/f curve when $[C2.05] \leq [C1.08]$

In this mode, the output voltage is limited to 100 % even if [C2.06] 'V/f voltage 3' is higher than 100 %.

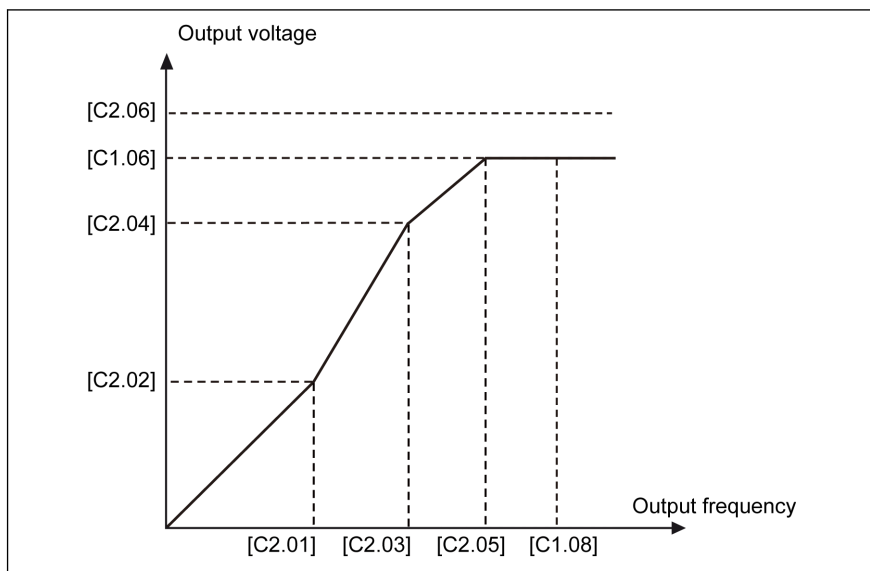


Fig. 12-33: User-defined V/f curve when $[C2.05] \leq [C1.08]$

2. User-defined V/f curve when $[C2.05] \geq [C1.08]$

In field weakening range, output voltage needs to be higher than the rated voltage. In this case,

- The maximum value of C2.05 'V/f frequency 3' can be higher than [C1.08] 'Motor rated frequency'.
- The maximum value of C2.06 'V/f voltage 3' can be higher than 100 %.

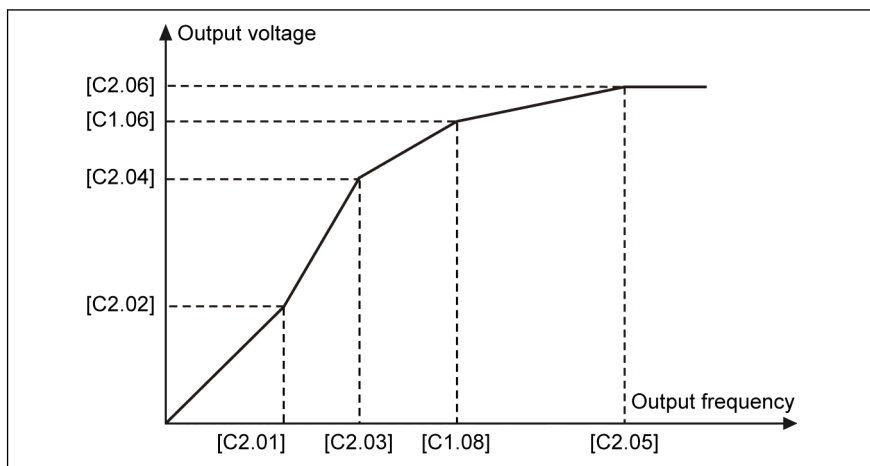


Fig. 12-34: User-defined V/f curve when $[C2.05] \geq [C1.08]$

- **3: V/f separation**

In case of V/f separation mode, voltage is not derived from the frequency instead user can control the voltage and frequency independently. In this mode, keeping the frequency constant, voltage can be varied and vice-versa. So that any curve can be followed based on the load requirements.

The voltage source selection can be made by setting the parameter C2.08 with the following options.

C2.08 setting range:

- **0: Panel potentiometer**

The V/f separation output voltage is set by adjusting the potentiometer on the operating panel.

- **1: Panel button setting**

Press <▼> and <▲> button on the operating panel will decrease and increase the V/f separation output voltage. The setting value will be saved to C2.09.

- **2: AI1 analog input**

For AI1 analog input, curves are not considered. Maximum value of analog input will be directly converting to motor rated voltage.

- **10: X5 pulse input**

For X5 pulse input, curves are not considered. Maximum value of pulse input will be directly converting to motor rated voltage.

- **20: Communication**

The voltage command values are given in percentage through Modbus or any other Fieldbus communication. If Modbus is selected as communication channel for voltage command value, data is written through the register address 0x7F0B. If other Fieldbus communication is selected as channel for voltage command value, data can be written through the parameter H0.50.

- **22: Digital setting**

C2.09 is used for setting the voltage in percentage value through panel or ConverterWorks.

- **23: Voltage PID control**

The voltage reference value will be set by the PID output. In this mode the reference/feedback source of PID is limited:

- E4.00 Valid voltage sources: Panel potentiometer, panel button digital setting, AI1, pulse train and communication
- E4.01 Valid voltage sources: AI1 and pulse train output

When the PID reference source is selected as panel button digital setting, the reference value will be saved to C2.09.

C2.10 'V/f separation output voltage acceleration time' is the time for V/f separation output voltage increase from 0 V to motor rated voltage.

C2.11 'V/f separation output voltage deceleration time' is the time for V/f separation output voltage decrease from motor rated voltage to 0 V.

The voltage boost is calculated as the following way:

Voltage boost (%) = (Factor [C2.13] * Total current * 100) / (Motor rated voltage)

Output voltage (%) = Set voltage (%) + Voltage boost (%)

Device has to start directly when 'RUN' command is issued irrespective of 'START' mode E0.35. Device has to stop directly when 'STOP' command is issued irrespective of 'STOP' mode E0.50. But it has to stop based on the new V/f separation 'STOP' mode C2.12.

Whenever V/f separation mode is enabled, setting voltage can be displayed through display parameter d0.09.

12.4.2 Slip Compensation

This function is used to compensate the speed difference caused by the load in the case of V/f control, to ensure that the rotator's speed is close to the synchronous speed and improve the mechanical behavior of the motor.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C2.07	Slip compensation factor	0...200 %	0	–	1	Run

The actual slip compensation is calculated from [C1.12] 'motor rated slip frequency' and load, and is automatically compensated, with [C2.07] being the maximum compensation value:

- 0 %: No slip compensation

The slip compensation function is deactivated.

- 1...100 %: Full slip compensation

Example: [C1.12] = 2.50 Hz, [C2.07] = 100 %

The maximum slip compensation is 2.50 Hz x 100 % = 2.50 Hz.

- 101...200 %: Over slip compensation

Example: [C1.12] = 2.50 Hz, [C2.07] = 200 %

The maximum slip compensation is 2.50 Hz x 200 % = 5.00 Hz.

12.4.3 0 Hz Output Mode

This function is used in some application when no torque output is required in 0 Hz.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C2.20	0 Hz output mode	0: No output 1: Standard	1	–	1	Stop

Setting range:

- 0: No output

No any torque output in this mode.

- 1: Standard

There is certain torque output in this mode.

12.4.4 Torque Boost Setting

The torque boost function is used to obtain higher output torque and better stabilization by boosting the output voltage, especially at low speed.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C2.21	Torque boost setting	0.0 %: Automatic boost 0.1... 20.0 %: Manual boost	DOM	–	0.1	Run
C2.22	Automatic torque boost factor	0...320 %	50	–	1	Run

- **Manual torque boost with linear or user-defined V/f curve**

In this V/f curve, the output voltage starts to be boosted when the output frequency is lower than half of [C1.08].

Example: If [C1.08] = 50.00 Hz, then torque boost function is active when output frequency is lower than 25.00 Hz.

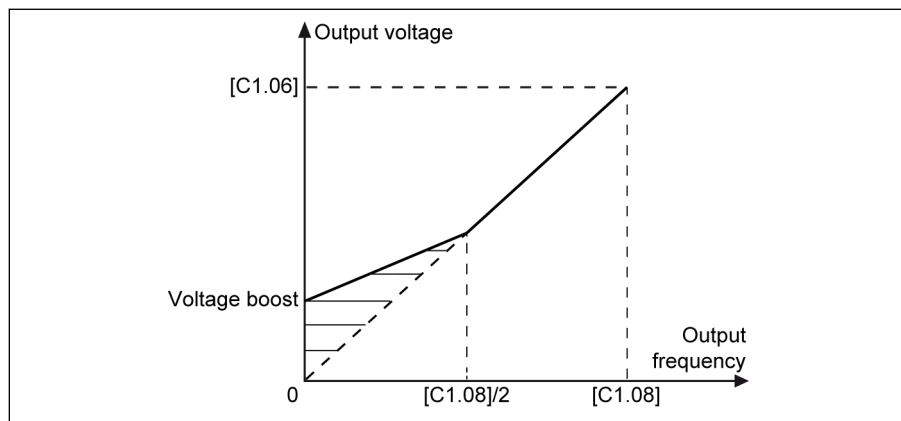


Fig. 12-35: Manual torque boost with linear or user-defined V/f curve

[C2.21] is the voltage boost value at 0.00 Hz. The actual voltage boost values for other frequency points decreases in linear along with output frequency increase.

- **Manual torque boost with square curve**

In this square V/f curve, the output voltage starts to be boosted when the output frequency is lower than [C1.08].

Example: If [C1.08] = 50.00 Hz, then torque boost function is active when the output frequency is lower than 50.00 Hz.

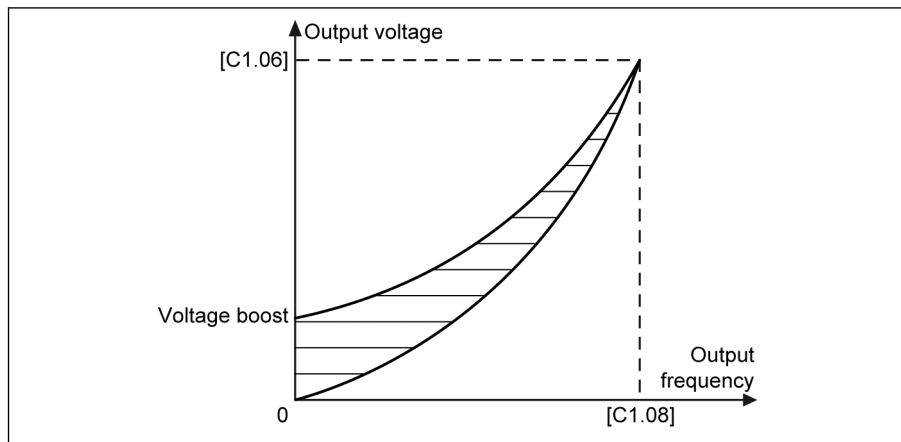


Fig. 12-36: Manual torque boost with square curve

In automatic boost mode, the output voltage boost percentage is determined automatically by the output frequency and the load current. The linear and square V/f curves for automatic torque boost are shown as figures below:

- **Automatic torque boost with linear V/f curve**

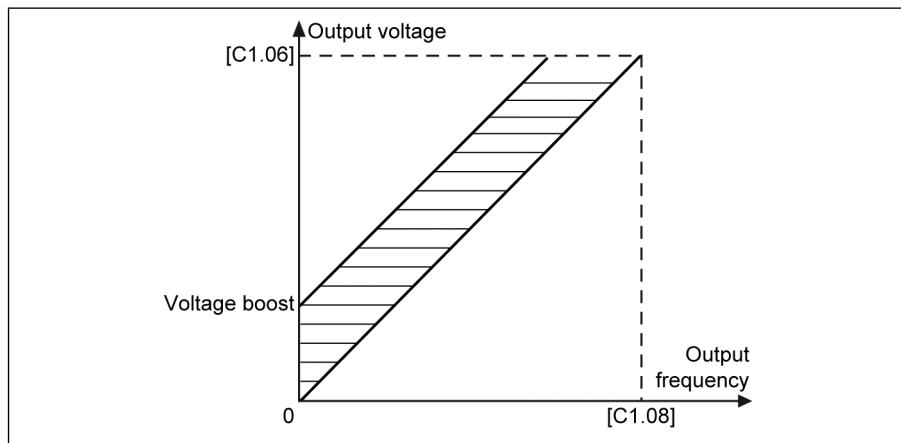


Fig. 12-37: Automatic torque boost with linear V/f curve

- **Automatic torque boost with square V/f curve**

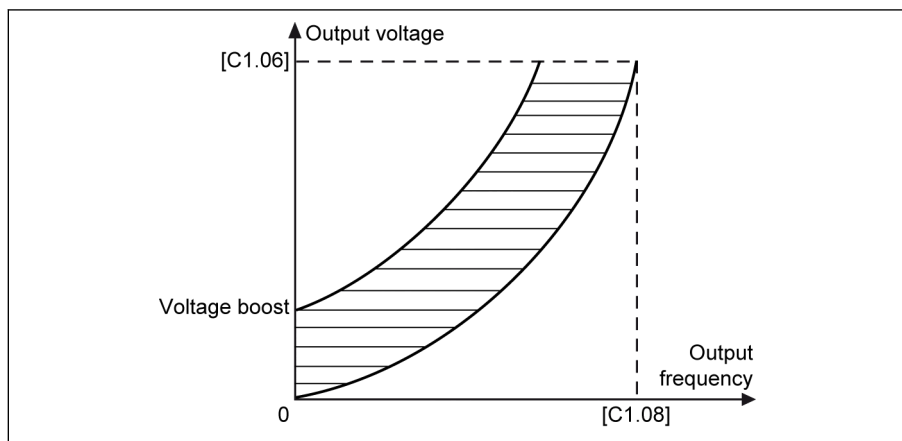


Fig. 12-38: Automatic torque boost with square V/f curve

For further adjustment of the voltage boost, set parameter C2.22 'Automatic torque boost factor'. Its default value 50 % means no adjustment. The calculation equation is shown as below:

$$[\text{Voltage boost}] = \sqrt{3} \times 0.5 \times I_1 \times R_1 \times [\text{C2.22}]$$

R_1 : stator resistance

I_1 : stator current

12.4.5 Heavy Load Stabilization

This function is used to suppress the output voltage oscillation caused by large impact to DC-bus voltage in case of heavy load.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C2.23	Heavy load stabilization	0: Inactive 1: Active	1	–	–	Run

Setting range:

- **0: Inactive**

Heavy load stabilization function inactive.

- **1: Active**

Heavy load stabilization function active.



This function can lead to slightly lower output voltage to the motor.

12.4.6 Light Load Oscillation Damping

This function is used to suppress the motor oscillation in the case of light load or no load.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C2.24	Light load oscillation damping factor	0...5,000 %	0.4~110k W: 300	–	1	Run
			132kW and above: 100			
C2.25	Light load oscillation damping filter factor	10...2,000 %	0.4~110k W: 30	–	1	Run
			132kW and above: 50			

1. [C2.24] = 0 %: Oscillation suppression is inactive.
2. Increasing [C2.24] brings a better effect of oscillation suppression, but excessive increase leads to unstable running of the motor.
3. [C2.25] = 30 %: This setting can suppress oscillation in most situations.
4. Adjustment of [C2.25] is helpful in the following conditions:
 - Increase [C2.25] if the oscillation damping performance is not obvious, but excessive increase leads to slow suppression.
 - Decrease [C2.25] if the oscillation occurs at low speed.

12.4.7 Current Limitation

This function is used to avoid the tripping caused by over current when the load has large inertia or sudden changes.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C2.40	Current limitation mode	0...2	2	–	–	Stop
C2.42	Current limitation level	20...250 %	150	–	1	Stop
C2.43	Current limitation proportional gain	0.000...10.000	DOM	–	0.001	Stop
C2.44	Current limitation integral time	0.001...10.000	DOM	–	0.001	Stop

- **C2.40 = 0: Always inactive**

Current limitation control function is inactive.

- **C2.40 = 1: Inactive at constant speed**

Current limitation control is active during acceleration and deceleration, but inactive at constant speed.

- **C2.40 = 2: Active at constant speed**

Current limitation control is active during acceleration, deceleration and at constant speed.

The current regulator is a PI regulator with configurable P factor and I factor.

- The higher value of C2.43 'Current limitation proportional gain', the faster the current suppression, but too high value of C2.43 will cause oscillation.
- The shorter value of C2.44 'Integral time', the more quick response of current suppression, but too short value of C2.44 will cause oscillation.

The default settings of C2.43 and C2.44 can meet requirements in most applications. If slight adjustment is necessary, increase [C2.43] first with no oscillation, and then decrease [C2.44] to achieve fast response without overshooting.

[C0.27] 'Stall overcurrent prevention level' should be smaller than [C2.42] 'Automatic current limitation level', otherwise a warning code 'PrSE' will be displayed on the operating panel and parameter setting can not be saved.

12.5 C3: Vector Control

12.5.1 Speed Loop Setting

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C3.00	Speed loop proportional gain 1	0.00...655.35	DOM	-	0.01	Run
C3.01	Speed loop integral time 1	0.01...655.35 ms	DOM	ms	0.01	Run
C3.02	Speed loop proportional gain 2	0.00...655.35	DOM	-	0.01	Run
C3.03	Speed loop integral time 2	0.00...655.35 ms	DOM	ms	0.01	Run
C3.10	Speed loop switching frequency 1	0.00...[C3.11]	4.00	Hz	0.01	Stop
C3.11	Speed loop switching frequency 2	[C3.10]...[C1.08]	6.00	Hz	0.01	Stop

Frequency converter can select different PI parameter while they are running in different frequency. When the running frequency is lower than switch frequency 1 (C3.10), speed loop PI tuned parameters are C3.00 and C3.01. When the running frequency is higher than switch frequency 2 (C3.11), speed loop PI tuned parameters are C3.02 and C3.03. The speed loop PI parameters that between switch frequency 1 and switch frequency 2 are the linear switch of two group parameters. It is shown as figure below:

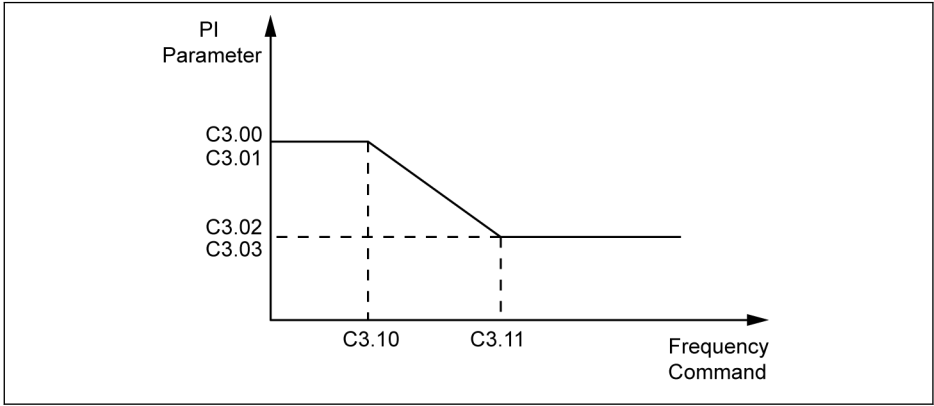


Fig. 12-39: PI parameters

The velocity dynamic response characteristic of vector control can be tuned by setting the proportional coefficient and integral time of speed regulator.

Increase the proportional gain or reduce the integral time can speed up the dynamic response of speed loop. But higher proportional gain or lower integral time may cause the system oscillation, it is suggested that:

If the default parameter value can not satisfy the requirement, it can be adjusted according to the actual needs based on the default value: increase the proportional gain to ensure the system dose not oscillation, then reduce the integral time, so that the system has a faster response characteristic and a smaller overshoot.



If the PI parameters are not set properly, it may lead to speed excessive overshoot or overvoltage fault during overshoot drops.

12.5.2 Speed Observer Mode

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C3.12	Speed observer mode	0: mode 1 1: mode 2	0	-	-	Run
C3.13	Speed observer mode	1...10	1	ms	1	Run

12.5.3 Current Loop Setting

The current loop parameters are calculated based on the motor parameter. In most cases it is not advised to change them. But if the motor is running at low frequency (under 3 Hz) but not smooth enough, the proportional gain of the current loop can be set bigger.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C3.05	Current loop proportional gain	0.1...1,000.0	DOM	-	0.1	Run
C3.06	Current loop integral time	0.01...655.35 ms	DOM	ms	0.01	Run

12.5.4 Torque Limitation

This function defines the torque limitation when the frequency converter is running in speed control mode.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C3.20	Low speed torque limitation	1...200 %	100	–	1	Stop
C3.44	Torque positive limit	0.0...200.0 %	150.0	–	0.1	Run
C3.45	Torque negative limit	0.0...200.0 %	150.0	–	0.1	Run
C3.47	Torque limitation reference selection at speed control mode	0: Parameter C3.44 and C3.45 1: AI1 analog input 2: AI2 analog input 3: EAI1 analog input 4: Communication (Torque FWD limitation register: Modbus 0x7F03/Fieldbus extension card H0.14) (Torque REV limitation register: Modbus 0x7F04/Fieldbus extension card H0.15) 5: EAI2 analog input	0	–	–	Stop

C3.20 “low speed torque limitation” only works in sensorless vector control mode and limits the torque output at “low speed area”. Its value means the percentage of the rated torque. The “low speed area” and “high speed area” are switched by a hysteresis shown in the figure below, which is related to the rated frequency and rated voltage of the motor.

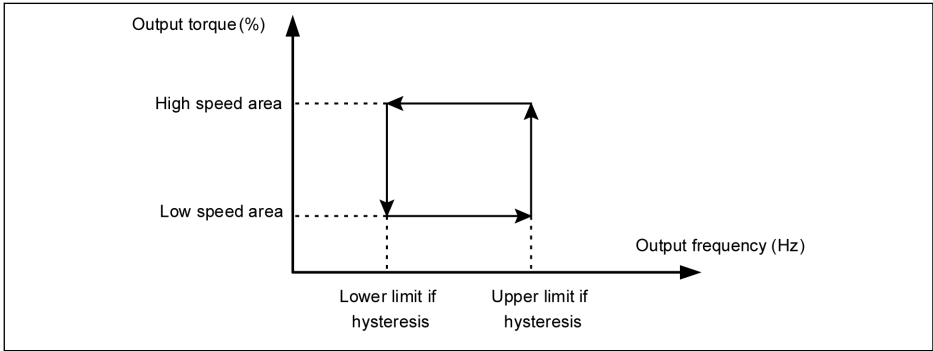


Fig. 12-40: Low speed torque limitation hysteresis

The hysteresis is calculated by the following equations:

- Lower limit of hysteresis = $15.2 \cdot \text{rated frequency} / \text{rated voltage}$
- Upper limit of hysteresis = $22.8 \cdot \text{rated frequency} / \text{rated voltage}$

For sensorless vector control, the output torque in “high speed area” is limited by the reference selected by C3.47.

C3.47 setting range:

- C3.47 = 0: Parameter C3.44 and C3.45

C3.44 “Torque positive limit” is used to set the limit maximum value of positive torque of the frequency converter.

C3.45 “Torque negative limit” is used to set the limit minimum value of the negative torque of the frequency converter.

The reference torque direction will be set by [U0.00] or external terminals:

- If [E0.01] = 0 “Operating panel”, the reference torque direction will be set by [U0.00]. [U0.00] = 0 “Forward” means the reference torque direction is positive. [U0.00] = 1 “Reverse” means the reference torque direction is negative.
 - If [E0.01] = 1 “Multi-function digital input”, the reference torque direction will be determined according to running direction which is controlled by external terminals. (“Forward” corresponding to “Positive” and “Reverse” corresponding to “Negative”).
- C3.47 = 1: AI1 analog input
The range of AI1 corresponds to the 0.0...200.0% rated torque.
 - C3.47 = 2: AI2 analog input
The range of AI2 corresponds to the 0.0...200.0% rated torque.
 - C3.47 = 3: EAI1 analog input
The range of EAI1 corresponds to the 0.0...200.0% rated torque.
 - C3.47 = 4: Communication
Torque FWD limitation register: Modbus 0x7F03/Fieldbus extension card H0.14.
Torque REV limitation register: Modbus 0x7F04/Fieldbus extension card H0.15.
 - C3.47 = 5: EAI2 analog input
The range of EAI2 corresponds to the 0.0...200.0% rated torque.

12.5.5 Speed Monitor

The speed monitor will monitor the speed difference between setting point and actual frequency as well as of maximum frequency and actual frequency. In case of problems it will show error SPE-.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C3.25	Speed monitor timeout	0.0...6,553.5	5.0	s	0.1	Stop
C3.26	Speed monitor maximum speed difference	0.00...655.35	10.00	Hz	0.01	Stop

12.5.6 Fieldweakening control for PMSM

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C3.30	Maximum FW current factor for SM	1...95	75	%	1	Stop

This parameter is the maximum allowed percent of motor rated current C1.07, it is used when PMSM runs in field weakening area, or called constant power region.

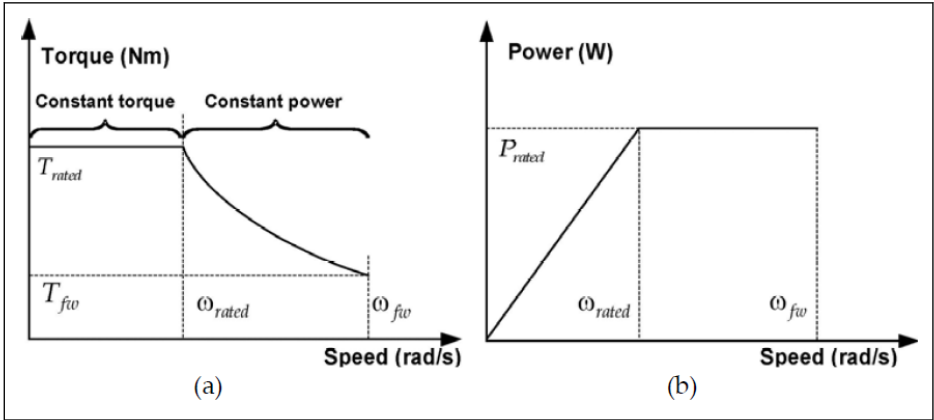


Fig. 12-41: Torque characteristics and power versus speed curves

In order to reach higher running speed for PMSM, field weakening control is needed to offset the effect of EMF, which occupies the main part of needed output voltage in higher speed region. With field weakening control, the regulator has more capability to regulate the output voltage to increase the running speed for PMSM, this is achieved via modifying this parameter.



In some application fields, it is NOT allowed for motor to run beyond the rated speed, so C3.30 should be set to a smaller value; For some application fields, with increasing of C3.30, the running speed can be reached at a higher level. But please be aware that higher field weakening current might lead to the irreversible demagnetizing of permanent magnet mounted on the rotor, and also higher EMF with higher running speed would lead to the damage of the drive.

12.5.7 Torque Control

This function is about torque control, the motor will keep the output torque as the setting value until it reaches the speed limit.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C3.38	Forward frequency limitation at torque control mode	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	50.00	Hz	0.01	Run
C3.39	Reverse frequency limitation at torque control mode	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	50.00	Hz	0.01	Run
C3.40	Torque control mode	0: Activated by digital inputs 1: Always active 2: Communication (Bit 8 of Modbus 0x7F00) (Bit 9 of extension card H0.00)	0	–	–	Stop
C3.41	Torque reference channel	0: AI1 analog input 1: AI2 analog input 2: Panel potentiometer 3: EAI1 analog input 4: Pulse input via DI5 5: Parameter setting C3.46 6: Communication (Modbus 0x7F02/Fieldbus extension card H0.12) 7: EAI2 analog input	0	–	–	Stop
C3.42	Torque reference minimum value	0.0 %...[C3.43]	0.0	–	0.1	Run
C3.43	Torque reference maximum value	[C3.42]...200.0 %	150.0	–	0.1	Run
C3.46	Digital torque reference setting	0.0...200.0 %	150.0	–	0.1	Run

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C3.48	Speed limitation reference selection at torque control mode	0: Parameter C3.38 and C3.39 1: AI1 analog input 2: AI2 analog input 3: EAI1 analog input 4: Communication (Speed limitation register: Modbus 0x7F05/Fieldbus extension card H0.16) 5: EAI2 analog input	0	–	–	Stop
C3.49	Torque command ramp	0.0...5.0 s	0	s	0.1	Stop

Torque control activation mode

Parameter C3.40 'Torque control mode' is used to set the activation mode of torque control.

C3.40 setting range:

- [C3.40] = 0: Activated by digital inputs

The corresponding parameter [E1.00] ... [E1.04], [H8.00] ... [H8.04] of the selected digital input needs to be set as 23: Torque / speed control switch. Please keep in mind that with this setting the switch can also happen when the converter is in run.

- [C3.40] = 1: Always active

Torque control mode is selected.

- [C3.40] = 2: Communication

-bit8 of Modbus 0x7F00 = 1: torque control enable

-bit8 of Modbus 0x7F00 = 0: torque control disabled

-bit9 of extension card H0.00 = 1: torque control enable

-bit9 of extension card H0.00 = 0: torque control disabled

Torque reference channel

Parameter C3.41 'Torque reference channel' is used to set torque reference channel.

Parameters C3.42 'Torque reference minimum value' and C3.43 'Torque reference maximum value' are used to define the curve characteristic for the torque reference.

Torque curve is defined as below:

- When [C3.41] = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4 or 7, and EAI1/EAI2 input is non -10 V to 10 V, C3.42 and C3.43 are used to define curve:

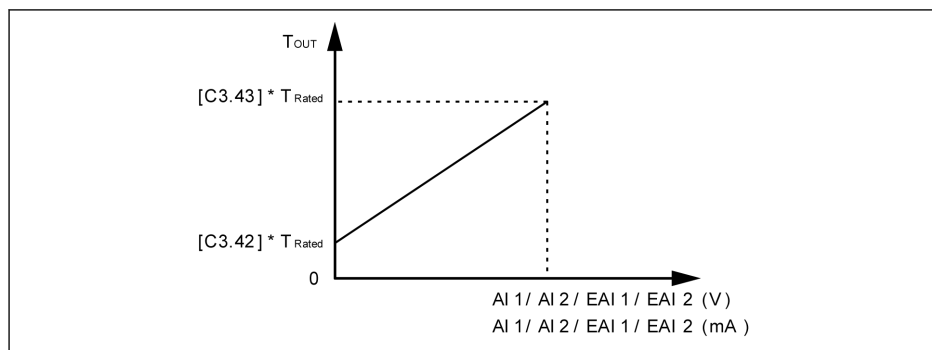


Fig. 12-42: Torque reference characteristic curve

- When [C3.41]=3, 7 and EAI1/EAI2 input is -10 V to 10 V, C3.43 is used to define curve:
 - [H8.06] / [H8.31] = 0 or 1

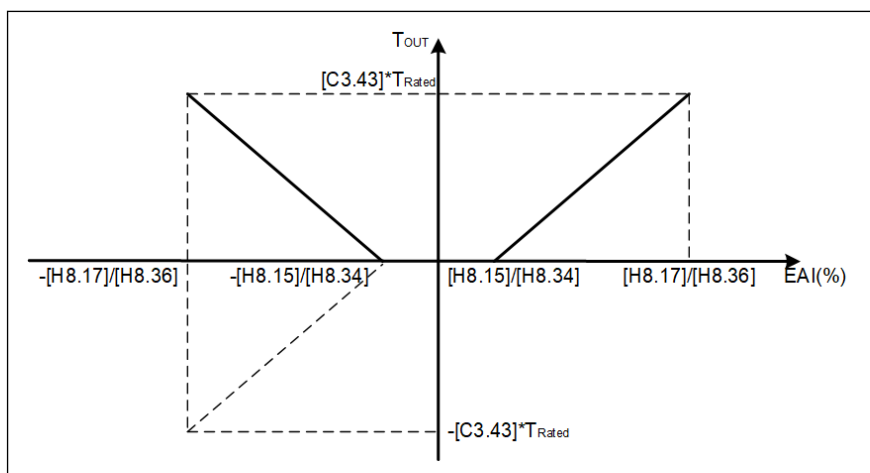


Fig. 12-43: Torque curve 1

- [H8.06] / [H8.31] = 2

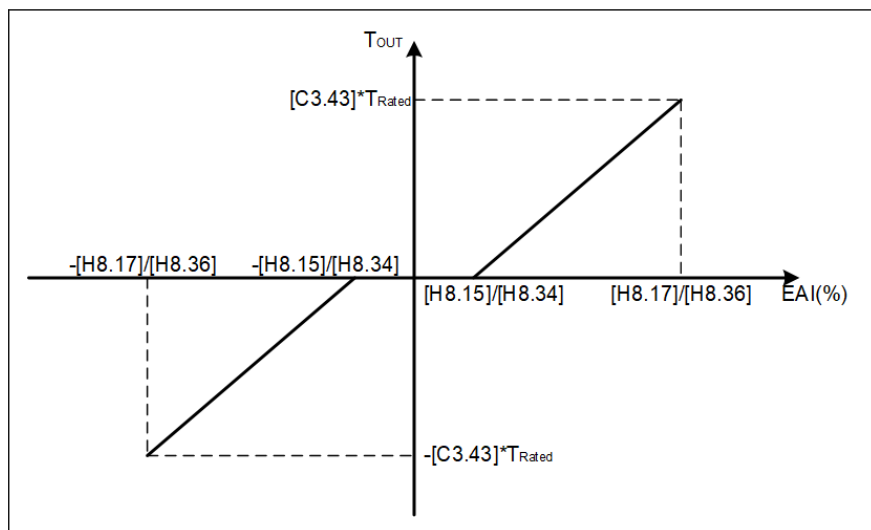


Fig. 12-44: Torque curve 2

Speed limitation at torque control mode

In torque control mode the motor speed is limited by C3.48 'Speed limitation reference selection at torque control'.

C3.48 setting range:

- C3.48 = 0: Parameter C3.38 and C3.39
C3.38: Forward frequency limitation at torque control mode
C3.39: Reverse frequency limitation at torque control mode
- C3.48 = 1: AI1 analog input
Analog input AI1, scaled to 0.00...E0.09 based on analog input curve.
- C3.48 = 2: AI2 analog input
Analog input AI2, scaled to 0.00...E0.09 based on analog input curve.
- C3.48 = 3: EAI1 analog input
Analog input EAI1 scaled to 0.00...E0.09 based on analog input curve.
- C3.48 = 4: Communication
Speed limitation register: Modbus 0x7F05/Fieldbus extension card H0.16.
- C3.48 = 5: EAI2 analog input
Analog input EAI2, scaled to 0.00...E0.09 based on analog input curve.

Torque command ramp setting

Torque command ramp [C3.49] is the time for torque command increase from 0 to C1.17 'motor rated torque'.

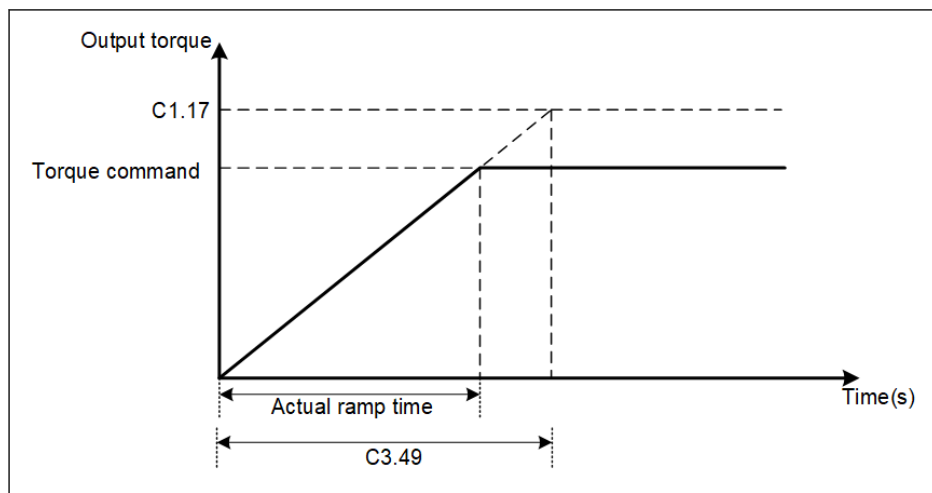


Fig. 12-45: Torque command ramp

12.5.8 Initial Angle Detection

Initial rotor angle detection is automatically checking the rotor position before the motor startup. The advantage of this function is to prevent the reverse running at the startup, the disadvantage is extended startup time with moderate amount of noises.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C3.50	Initial angle detection current	50...150 %	80	-	1	Stop
C3.51	Initial angle detection mode	0...2	2	-	-	Stop

C3.50 is to set the current value to be used for checking the rotor initial position. The smaller the current, the smaller noise generation over the time of checking. However current input too small may decrease the accuracy of the checking result.

C3.51 is to set initial position angle checking mode:

- C3.51 = 0: No detection
Possible to have the reverse running at the startup.
- C3.51 = 1: Detection when first power on
Applicable for small inertia systems which do NOT allow reverse running at the startup and cause no change to rotor position after the system stop.
- C3.51 = 2: Detection at every running
Normally the checking shall be performed on the rotor initial position at each startup. Set C3.51 to '2' for the applications which do NOT allow the reverse running at startup and cause change to the rotor position after system stop.

12.5.9 SVC switch point

The two parameters are switching points used between low frequency area and high frequency area.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C3.52	SVC regulation area lower frequency	0.00...600	DOM	Hz	0.01	Stop
C3.53	SVC regulation area upper frequency	0.00...600	DOM	Hz	0.01	Stop

C3.52: this parameter is the switching point where the high frequency area decelerate to the low frequency area.

C3.53: this parameter is the switching point where the low frequency area accelerate to the high frequency area.

12.5.10 Speed Damping Factor for SVC

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
C3.04	Speed observer harmonics damping factor	0.10...20.00	0.66	-	0.01	Stop
C3.54	SVC damp factor enhance upper frequency	DOM	DOM	Hz	0.01	Stop
C3.55	SVC damp factor enhance coefficient	1...20	1	-	1	Stop

C3.04 is a specified parameter for speed observer in sensorless vector control. It can affect the level of the harmonics, which presents in the observed speed and is caused by the offset and harmonics of the input values of the speed observer (voltage, current), especially in the speed area below 20% of the rated motor speed.

The default value of C3.04 can cover most application cases. Only if the motor runs not smoothly in SVC mode and other control parameters can't help to improve it, C3.04 can be set with a higher value by setting step size 0.3 ~ 0.5. Please note that high C3.04 has a negative influence on the loading performance.

C3.54 and C3.55 are used to enhance damping factor in the SVC low speed area. Normally, only increasing C3.54 can satisfy the need of enhancing the damping factor. But C3.54 can not be too high, otherwise speed fluctuation will occur. Now C3.55 can be used, increasing C3.55 also can enhance the damping factor.

12.6 d0: Basic Monitoring

This part is about basic monitoring parameters.

Code	Name	Minimum unit	Attri.
d0.00	Output frequency	0.01 Hz	Read
d0.01	Actual speed	1 rpm	Read
d0.02	Setting frequency	0.01 Hz	Read
d0.03	Setting speed	1 rpm	Read
d0.04	User-defined setting speed	0.1	Read
d0.05	User-defined output speed	0.1	Read
d0.06	Encoder frequency	0.01	Read
d0.07	Encoder speed	1	Read
d0.09	V/f separation setting voltage	0.01 V	Read
d0.10	Output voltage	1 V	Read
d0.11	Output current	0.1 A	Read
d0.12	Output power	0.1 kW	Read
d0.13	DC-bus voltage	1 V	Read
d0.14	Energy saving counter kWh	0.1 kWh	Read
d0.15	Energy saving counter MWh	1 MWh	Read
d0.16	Output torque	0.1 %	Read
d0.17	Setting torque	0.1 %	Read
d0.18	FWD speed limitation setting	0.01 rpm	Read
d0.19	REV speed limitation setting	0.01 rpm	Read
d0.20	Power module temperature	1 °C	Read
d0.21	Actual carrier frequency	1 kHz	Read
d0.23	Power stage running time	1 h	Read
d0.30	AI1 input	0.01 V / 0.01 mA	Read
d0.31	AI2 input	0.01 V / 0.01 mA	Read
d0.33	I/O card EAI1 input	0.01 V / 0.01 mA	Read
d0.34	I/O card EAI2 input	0.01 V / 0.01 mA	Read
d0.35	AO1 output	0.01 V / 0.01 mA	Read
d0.37	I/O card EAO output	0.01 V / 0.01 mA	Read
d0.38	IO plus card TSI input signal value	0.001 V	Read
d0.40	Digital input 1	–	Read
d0.43	I/O card digital input	–	Read
d0.45	DO1 output	–	Read
d0.47	I/O card EDO1 output	–	Read
d0.48	I/O card EDO2 output	–	Read
d0.50	Pulse input frequency	0.01 kHz	Read

Code	Name	Minimum unit	Attri.
d0.55	Pulse output frequency	0.1 kHz	Read
d0.60	Relay output	–	Read
d0.62	I/O card relay output	–	Read
d0.63	Relay card output	–	Read
d0.70	PID reference engineering value	0.1	Read
d0.71	PID feedback engineering value	0.1	Read
d0.80	ASF Display00	–	Read
d0.81	ASF Display01	–	Read
d0.82	ASF display02	–	Read
d0.83	ASF display03	–	Read
d0.84	ASF display04	–	Read
d0.85	ASF display05	–	Read
d0.86	ASF display06	–	Read
d0.87	ASF display07	–	Read
d0.88	ASF display08	–	Read
d0.89	ASF display09	–	Read
d0.98	High resolution output current	0.01 A	Read
d0.99	Firmware version	0.01	Read

12.7 d1: Enhanced Monitoring

This part is about enhanced monitoring parameters, which are not visible via Panel, but can be scoped in IndraWorks.

Code	Name	Minimum unit	Attri.
d1.00	Phase current U [A]	0.1 A	Read
d1.01	Phase current V [A]	0.1 A	Read
d1.02	Phase current W [A]	0.1 A	Read
d1.05	Current Id filtered Display	0.01 A	Read
d1.06	Current Iq filtered Display	0.01 A	Read
d1.10	Signed rotor frequency	0.1 Hz	Read
d1.11	Rotor speed	1 rpm	Read
d1.12	Signed encoder frequency	0.1 Hz	Read
d1.15	High resolution output power	0.01 kW	Read
d1.20	Encoder angle	0.01 °	Read

12.8 E0: Set Point and Control

12.8.1 Frequency Setting Source

Different frequency setting sources can be selected by setting parameter E0.00 'First frequency setting source' or E0.02 'Second frequency setting source'.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E0.00	First frequency setting source	0...21	0	-	-	Stop
E0.02	Second frequency setting source	0...21	2	-	-	Stop

Setting range of E0.00, E0.02:

- **0: Panel potentiometer**

The setting frequency is set by adjusting the potentiometer on the operating panel. By default, the first frequency setting source is from the potentiometer on the operating panel. To adjust the output frequency, follow the instructions below:

- Rotate the potentiometer counterclockwise (leftwards)
The output frequency decreases, and the motor decelerates.
- Rotate the potentiometer clockwise (rightwards)
The output frequency increases, and the motor accelerates.

- **1: Panel button setting**

The setting frequency is set by parameter E0.07 'Digital setting frequency'. Pressing <▼> and <▲> buttons on the operating panel will decrease and increase the output frequency respectively when the frequency converter is running.

- **2: AI1 analog input**

The setting frequency is set by analog input AI1 input. When AI1 is used as the frequency setting source, the relationship between AI1 and the setting frequency is shown as the figure below:

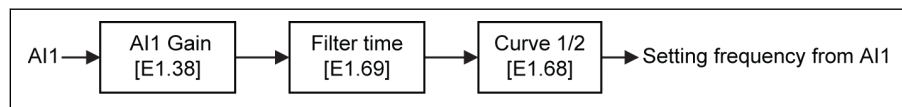


Fig. 12-46: AI1 setting frequency

- **3: AI2 analog input**

The setting frequency is set by analog input AI2 input. When AI2 is used as the frequency setting source, the relationship between AI2 and the setting frequency is shown as the figure below:

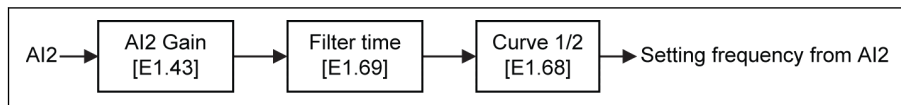


Fig. 12-47: AI2 setting frequency

• 4: EAI1 analog input

The setting frequency is set by analog input EAI1 input. When EAI1 is used as the frequency setting source, the relationship between EAI1 and the setting frequency is shown as the figure below:

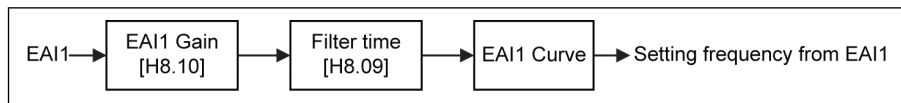


Fig. 12-48: EAI1 setting frequency

• 5: EAI2 analog input

The setting frequency is set by EAI2 analog input. When EAI2 is used as the frequency setting source, the relationship between EAI2 and the setting frequency is shown as the figure below:

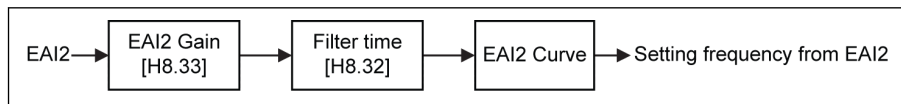


Fig. 12-49: EAI2 setting frequency

• 10: X5 pulse input

The setting frequency is set by pulse input via X5 input. When X5 pulse input is used as the frequency setting source, the setting frequency can be changed by changing the pulse frequency. The relationship between X5 pulse input and the setting frequency is shown as the figure below:

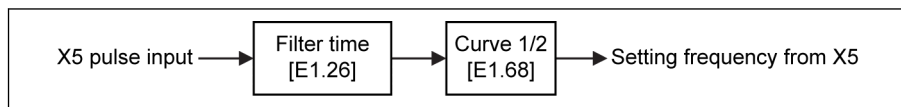


Fig. 12-50: X5 setting frequency

• 11: Digital input Up / Down command

The setting frequency is set by command of Up / Down / Reset via digital inputs. The setting frequency will increase with Up command active, decrease with Down command active, reset to '0' with Reset command active.

Any three digital input parameters E1.00, E1.01, E1.02, E1.03, E1.04, H8.00, H8.01, H8.02, H8.03, H8.04 can be set to 20 'Frequency Up command' and 21 'Frequency Down command' and 22 'Up/Down command reset' to define this function.

For digital input Up / Down change rate and digital input Up / Down initial frequency, see parameter E1.16 and E1.17.

• 20: Communication

The setting frequency is set by engineering software, PLC or other external device via Modbus protocol.

- **21: Multi-speed settings**

The setting frequency is set by multi-speed settings, see [chapter 12.11 "E3: Multi-Speed and Simple PLC"](#) on page 254 for details.

Frequency setting source switching

When [E0.04] = 0, 'Frequency setting source combination' is inactive. The setting frequency can be switched between the first and second frequency setting source by setting digital input parameters E1.00, E1.01, E1.02, E1.03, E1.04, H8.00, H8.01, H8.02, H8.03, H8.04 to 30 'Second frequency setting source activation'. The active / inactive of the selected digital input is triggered by voltage level, instead of the edge.

If status of the selected digital input is changed when frequency converter is running, the frequency setting source will be switched instantly and the frequency converter will accelerate / decelerate according to the actual setting frequency of respective frequency setting source.

To use the frequency setting source switching function, take the following steps:

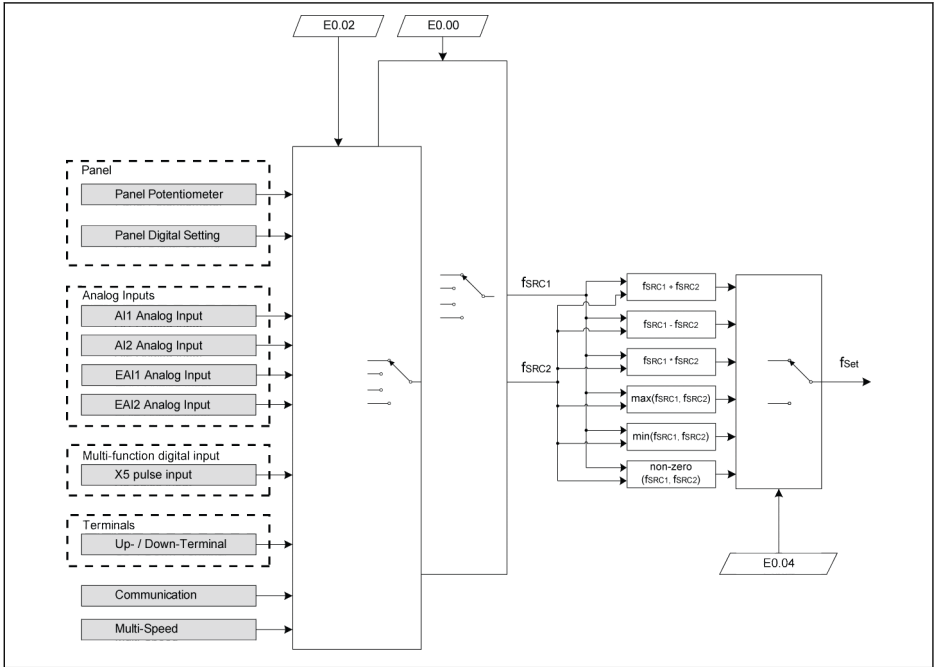
- **Step 1:** Check and be sure that [E0.04] = '0: No combination';
- **Step 2:** Select the second frequency setting source by setting parameter E0.02;
- **Step 3:** Configure the setting frequency for the selected frequency setting source;
- **Step 4:** Select a digital input terminal, and set its function to '30: Second frequency setting source activation'.

Example: [E0.00] = '0: Panel potentiometer', the setting frequency of the first frequency setting source is 30.00 Hz. [E0.02] = '3: AI2 analog input', the setting frequency of the second frequency setting source is 50.00 Hz. Set [E1.00] = 30, X1 is used to switch the setting frequency between the first and the second frequency sources.

- When X1 input is inactive, the actual setting frequency is 30.00 Hz set by panel potentiometer.
- When X1 input is active, the actual setting frequency is 50.00 Hz set by AI2 input and the converter accelerates from 30.00 Hz to 50.00 Hz.

Frequency setting sources combination

It is possible to combine the two frequency setting sources for complicated applications:



f_{SRC1} First frequency setting source
 f_{SRC2} Second frequency setting source
 f_{Set} Setting frequency

Fig. 12-51: Frequency setting sources combination

Related parameter:

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E0.04	Frequency setting source combination	0...6	0	-	-	Stop

Setting range of E0.04:

- 0: No combination**
By default, actual setting frequency is set by 'First frequency setting source'. 'Second frequency setting source' can be activated by setting one of digital inputs to 30 'Second frequency setting source activation'.
- 1: First frequency setting + Second frequency setting**
The actual setting frequency is the result of the addition operation of the first and second frequency setting sources.
- 2: First frequency setting - Second frequency setting**
The actual setting frequency is the result of the subtraction operation of the first and second frequency setting sources.
- 3: First frequency setting * Second frequency setting**

The actual setting frequency is the result of the multiplication operation of the first and second frequency setting sources.

- **4: Bigger one of 2 sources**

The actual setting frequency is the bigger one of the first and second frequency setting sources.

- **5: Smaller one of 2 sources**

The actual setting frequency is the smaller one of the first and second frequency setting sources.

- **6: Valid which channel is non-zero**

If the first frequency setting sources $\neq$ 0Hz and the second frequency setting sources $\neq$ 0Hz; then the actual setting frequency is the first frequency setting sources

If the first frequency setting sources $\neq$ 0Hz and the second frequency setting sources = 0Hz; then the actual setting frequency is the first frequency setting sources

If the first frequency setting sources = 0Hz and the second frequency setting sources $\neq$ 0Hz; then the actual setting frequency is the second frequency setting sources

If the first frequency setting sources = 0Hz and the second frequency setting sources = 0Hz; then the actual setting frequency is 0Hz.

To use the frequency setting source combination function, take the following steps:

- **Step 1:** Be sure that no digital inputs is set to '30: Second frequency setting source activation' to deactivate the frequency setting source switching function;
- **Step 2:** Set parameter E0.00 and E0.02 to select the first and second frequency setting sources;
- **Step 3:** Set parameter E0.04 according to the actual application.



The result of the combination is always limited within the range of 0.00...[E0.09] Hz.

12.8.2 Run Command Source

Different run command sources can be selected by setting parameter E0.01 'First run command source' or E0.03 'Second run command source'.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E0.01	First run command source	0...2	0	-	-	Stop
E0.03	Second run command source	0...2	1	-	-	Stop

Setting range of E0.01, E0.03:

- **0: Operating panel**

Control the frequency converter for run and stop with <Run>, <Stop> buttons on the operating panel.

Control the running direction by setting parameters U0.00 'Direction control by panel' and E0.17 'Direction control'.

- **1: Multi-function digital input**

Control the frequency converter for run, stop and running direction by setting digital inputs.

- **2: Communication**

Control the frequency converter for run, stop and running direction with Modbus communication protocol.

The run command can be switched between the first and second frequency setting source by setting digital input parameters E1.00, E1.01, E1.02, E1.03, E1.04, H8.00, H8.01, H8.02, H8.03, H8.04 to 31 'Second run command source activation'. The active / inactive of the selected digital input is triggered by voltage level, instead of the edge.

If status of the selected terminal is changed when converter is running, the run command source will be switched and the converter will freewheel to stop.



The priority about Run/Stop/Direction Command for different configuration is following:

First priority: PID control

Second priority: Simple PLC

Third priority: Jog function

Fourth priority: Basic command sources

12.8.3 Digital Setting Frequency

This function defines the digital setting frequency and four different saving modes during fine tuning of the setting frequency by using <▲> / <▼> or digital inputs, so that unexpected data loss in commissioning or actual application engineering process can be avoided.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E0.06	Digital setting frequency saving mode	0...4	0	-	-	Stop
E0.07	Digital setting frequency	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	50.00	Hz	0.01	Run

When parameter E0.00 'First frequency setting source' or E0.02 'Second frequency setting source' is set to 1 'Panel button setting', the setting frequency is set by parameter E0.07 'Digital setting frequency'. Pressing <▲> and <▼> buttons on the operating panel will decrease and increase the output frequency respectively when the frequency converter is running.

During fine tuning of the setting frequency by using <▲> / <▼> or digital inputs in the actual application engineering process, E0.06 'Digital setting frequency saving mode' defines the following saving modes:

- 0: Not saved when powered off or stopped
- 1: Not saved when powered off; saved when stopped
- 2: Saved when powered off; not saved when stopped
- 3: Saved when powered off or stopped
- 4: Not saved when powered off; memorized when stopped

12.8.4 Frequency Limitations

This function defines direct output frequency limitation, reverse running frequency, and behavior at low speed running.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E0.08	Maximum output frequency	50.00...400.00 Hz	50.00	Hz	0.01	Stop
E0.09	Output frequency high limit	[E0.10]...[E0.08] Hz	50.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E0.10	Output frequency low limit	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E0.11	Reverse running frequency	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Stop
E0.15	Low speed running setting	0: Run with 0.00 Hz 1: Run with low limit frequency	0	-	-	Stop
E0.16	Low speed frequency hysteresis	0.00...[E0.10] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Stop

Direct output frequency limitation:

- **E0.08 'Maximum output frequency'**

The allowed maximum output frequency of the frequency converter.

- **E0.09 'Output frequency high limit'**

The allowed maximum output frequency according to the requirements in actual applications.

- **E0.10 'Output frequency low limit'**

The allowed minimum output frequency according to the requirements in actual applications.

E0.11 'Reverse running frequency'

- **E0.11 'Reverse running frequency'**

When frequency converter's running direction is "reverse", the setting frequency is decided by the value of E0.11 if the reverse running frequency parameter (E0.11) is configured to a non-zero value.



Reverse running frequency is **ONLY** active when converter is **NOT** running in multi-speed, simple PLC, or PID control mode.

Behavior at low speed running:

By default, the frequency converter runs at 0 Hz when the output frequency is lower than [E0.10] 'Output frequency low limit'.

- **[E0.15] = 0: Running at 0.00 Hz**

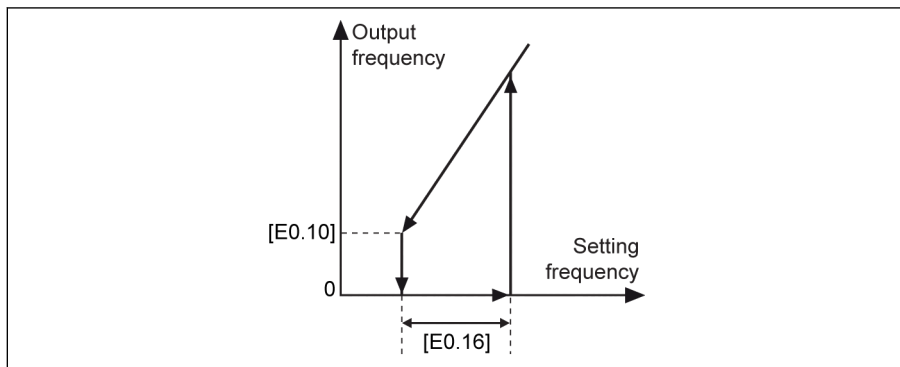


Fig. 12-52: Running at 0 Hz

For applications, in which the running frequency cannot be too low, define the low limit frequency running mode when the output frequency is lower than $[E0.10]$ 'Output frequency low limit'.

- **$[E0.15] = 1$: Running with low limit frequency**

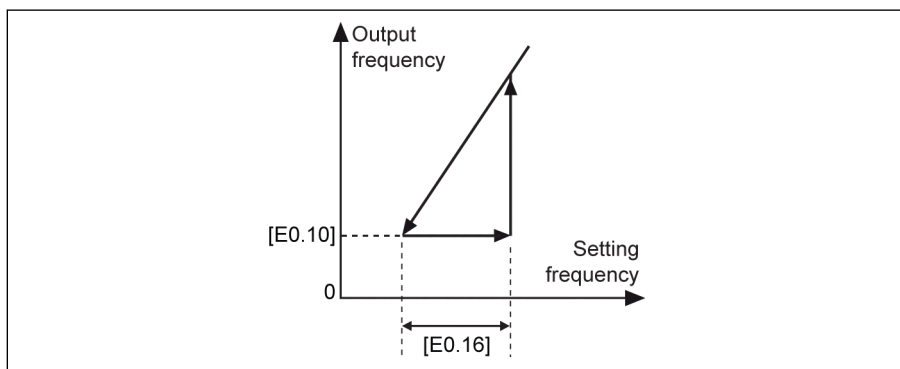


Fig. 12-53: Run with low limit frequency

A hysteresis band is set by $[E0.16]$. If actual setting frequency is higher than $[E0.10] + [E0.16]$ again, the output frequency will accelerate from $[E0.10]$ to the setting frequency according to the actual acceleration time.

If $[E0.10] < [E0.16]$, $[E0.16]$ will be set as $[E0.10]$ automatically.

12.8.5 Direction Control

This function defines the rotation direction control with adjustable dead zone.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E0.17	Direction control	0: Forward / Reverse 1: Forward only 2: Reverse only 3: Swap default direction	0	-	-	Stop
E0.18	Direction change dead time	0.0...60.0 s	1.0	-	0.1	Stop

The actual direction of converter is controlled by the configuration of parameter [U0.00] 'Direction control by panel' and [E0.17] 'Direction control'.

[E0.17] setting		[U0.00] setting	Actual direction
0	Forward / Reverse	Forward	Forward
		Reverse	Reverse
1	Forward only	Forward	Forward
		Reverse	Converter stop and show error code 'dir1'
2	Reverse only	Forward	Converter stop and show error code 'dir2'
		Reverse	Reverse
3	Swap default direction	Forward	Reverse
		Reverse	Forward

Tab. 12-8: Direction configuration

A dead time exists if the direction is changed from forward / reverse to reverse / forward, which can be defined according to actual application.

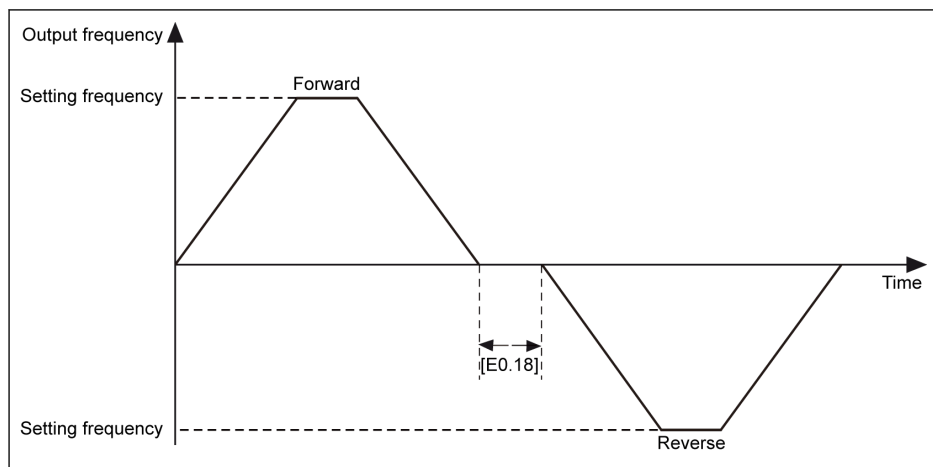


Fig. 12-54: Direction change dead time

12.8.6 Acceleration and Deceleration Setting

This function defines the configuration of acceleration and deceleration process.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E0.25	Acceleration / deceleration curve mode	0: Linear mode 1: S-curve	0	-	-	Stop
E0.26	Acceleration time	0.1...6,000.0 s	DOM	s	0.1	Run
E0.27	Deceleration time	0.1...6,000.0 s	DOM	s	0.1	Run
E0.28	S-curve starting phase factor	0.0...40.0 %	20.0	-	0.1	Stop
E0.29	S-curve stopping phase factor	0.0...40.0 %	20.0	-	0.1	Stop

'Acceleration time' is the time for frequency increase from 0.00 Hz to [E0.08] 'Maximum output frequency'.

'Deceleration time' is the time for frequency decrease from [E0.08] 'Maximum output frequency' to 0.00 Hz.

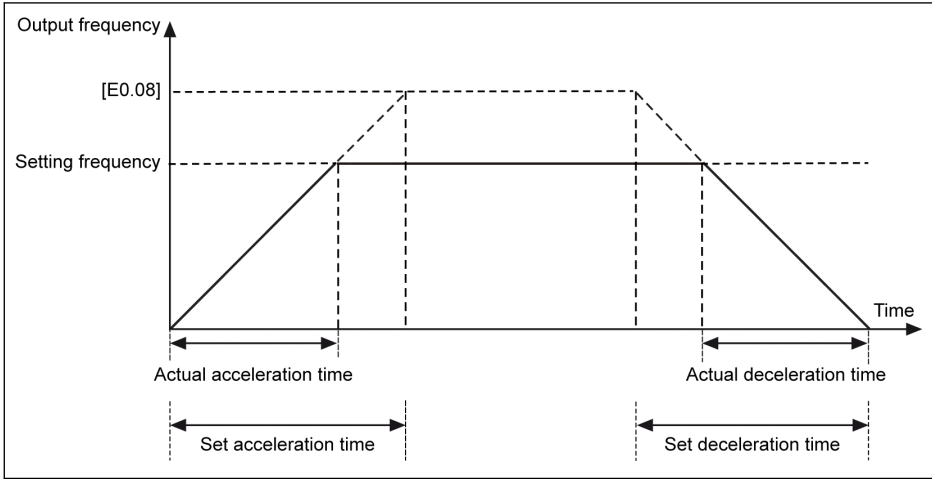


Fig. 12-55: Acceleration and deceleration time

There are eight groups of acceleration / deceleration time which is selected with external control terminals. Group E0.26 and E0.27 is used as default value if no acceleration / deceleration time terminal is defined. For using of other acceleration / deceleration time which is defined by E3.10...E3.23, up to three terminals of E1.00...E1.04 and H8.00...H8.04 should be selected to '10: Acceleration / deceleration time 1 activation', '11: Acceleration / deceleration time 2 activation' and '12: Acceleration / deceleration time 3 activation'. See [chapter 12.11.1 "Simple PLC and Multi-Speed Setting" on page 254](#).

Two curve modes are available for acceleration / deceleration which is defined by [E0.25] : 'linear curve' and 'S-curve'.

- [E0.25] = 0: Linear mode

Linear mode is used for normal application situations:

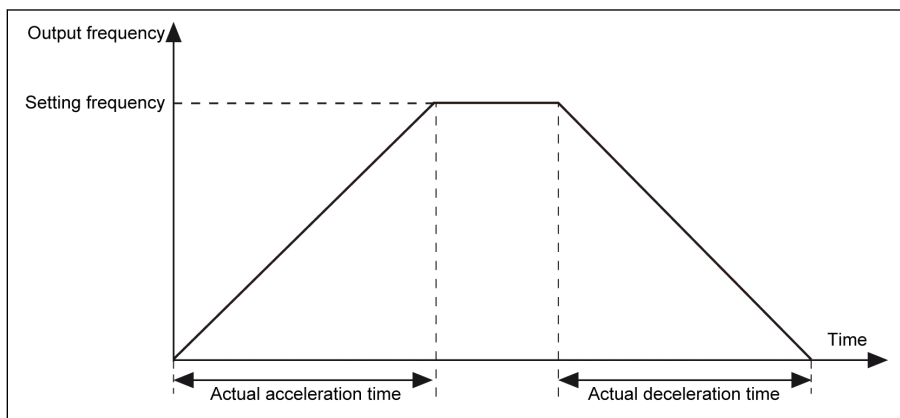
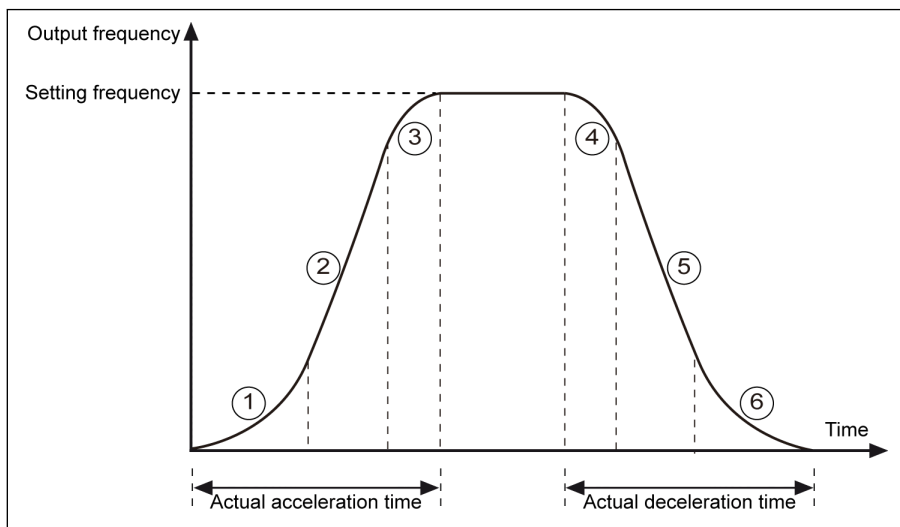


Fig. 12-56: Linear mode acceleration and deceleration

- **[E0.25] = 1: S-curve**

S-curve mode is used to achieve a smooth starting or stopping:



① [E0.28] Acceleration starting phase

④ [E0.28] Deceleration starting phase

③ [E0.29] Acceleration stopping phase

⑥ [E0.29] Deceleration stopping phase

Fig. 12-57: S-curve acceleration and deceleration

Stage ①, ③: a percentage of setting acceleration time.

Stage ④, ⑥: a percentage of setting deceleration time.

12.8.7 Start Mode Configuration

This function defines different start modes in different applications.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E0.35	Start mode	0: Start directly 1: DC-braking before start 2: Start with speed tracing 3: Automatic start / stop according to setting frequency	0	-	-	Stop
E0.36	Start frequency	0.00...50.00 Hz	0.05	Hz	0.01	Stop
E0.37	Start frequency holding time	0.0...20.0 s	0.0	s	0.1	Stop
E0.38	Start DC-braking time	0.0...20.0 s (0.0: Inactive)	0.0	s	0.1	Stop
E0.39	Start DC-braking current	0.0...150.0 %	0.0	-	0.1	Stop
E0.41	Automatic start / stop frequency threshold	0.01...[E0.09] Hz	16.00	Hz	0.01	Stop
E0.42	Speed tracing voltage recovery ratio	0...20	10	-	1	Stop
E0.43	Speed tracing deceleration time	0.5...20.0s	2.0	s	0.1	Stop

Start directly

This mode is used in applications with high static friction torque and low load inertia. The frequency converter runs at [E0.36] 'Start frequency' for [E0.37] 'Start frequency holding time', and then accelerates/decelerates to setting frequency with defined acceleration/deceleration time.

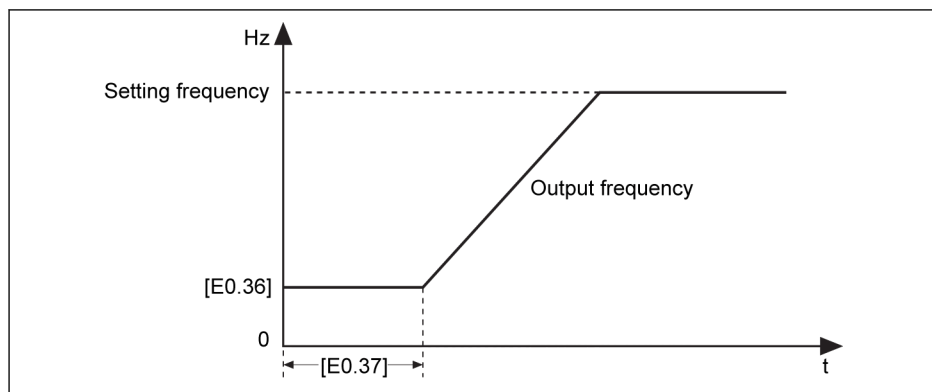


Fig. 12-58: Start directly



Set parameter E0.37 'Start frequency holding time' to a non-zero value when the motor needs to be started with certain start frequency.

DC-braking before start

'DC-braking before start' is used in applications where the load may encounter forward / reverse rotation when the frequency converter is in stop mode. The larger DC-braking current, the larger braking force. However, the withstanding capability of the motor has to be considered before use the DC-braking function.

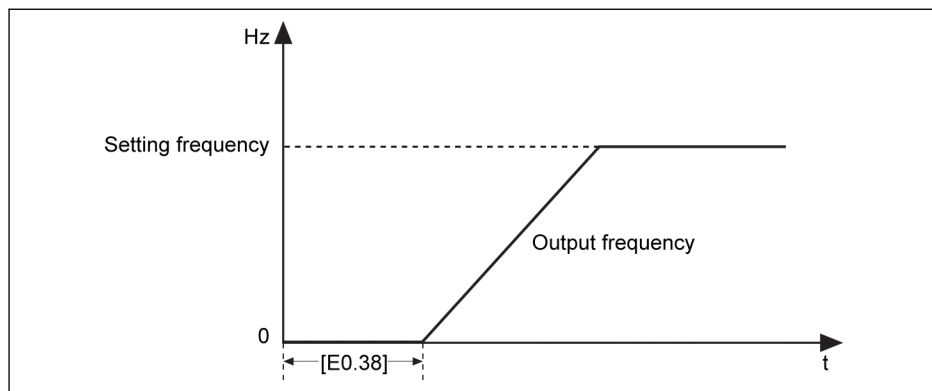


Fig. 12-59: DC-braking before start

- When [E0.38] $\neq$ 0, DC-braking will be executed before the frequency converter starting to accelerate to [E0.36] 'Start frequency', the braking current is decided by [E0.39].
- When [E0.38] = 0, the converter starts at the starting frequency.



[E0.39] 'Start DC-braking current' is the percentage of frequency converter rated current.

Start with speed tracing

This mode is used after transient power fault in applications with a large inertia load. The frequency converter firstly identifies the rotation speed and direction of the motor, and then starts with the current frequency of the motor to realize smooth starting without shock to the rotating motor.

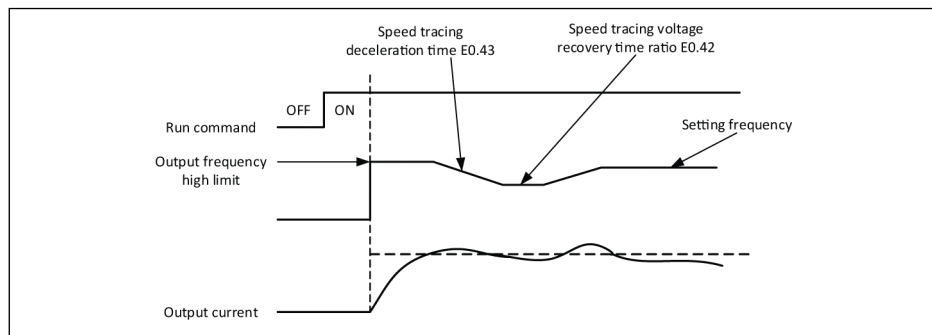


Fig. 12-60: Start with speed tracing

E0.42 sets the time ratio for the drive to restore the output voltage to the level specified by the V/f mode after speed tracing. The larger setting value is, the faster voltage recovery is. But the setting value is too large will cause an overcurrent. In the low-power converter this value can be set larger, in the high-power converter this value should be set smaller.

E0.43 is the deceleration time for the speed tracing.

Automatic start / stop according to setting frequency

This function defines converter automatic start / stop according to setting frequency.

With this function, the converter starts when the setting frequency from analog input is higher than the threshold, and stops when the setting frequency from analog input is lower than the threshold. The threshold is set by parameter E0.41 'Automatic start / stop frequency threshold'.

To use this function, follow the rules below:

- The frequency setting source should be set to analog inputs.
- The first and second run command source should be set to '0: Panel'.

Related parameters setting:

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E0.35	Starting mode	3: Auto start / stop according to setting frequency	0	-	-	Stop
E0.00	First frequency setting source	2: AI1 analog input 3: AI2 analog input	0	-	-	Stop
E0.02	Second frequency setting source	4: EAI1 analog input 5: EAI2 analog input	2	-	-	Stop
E0.01	First run command source	0: Panel	0	-	-	Stop
E0.03	Second run command source		1	-	-	Stop

The logic of automatic start or stop according to frequency threshold is shown as below:

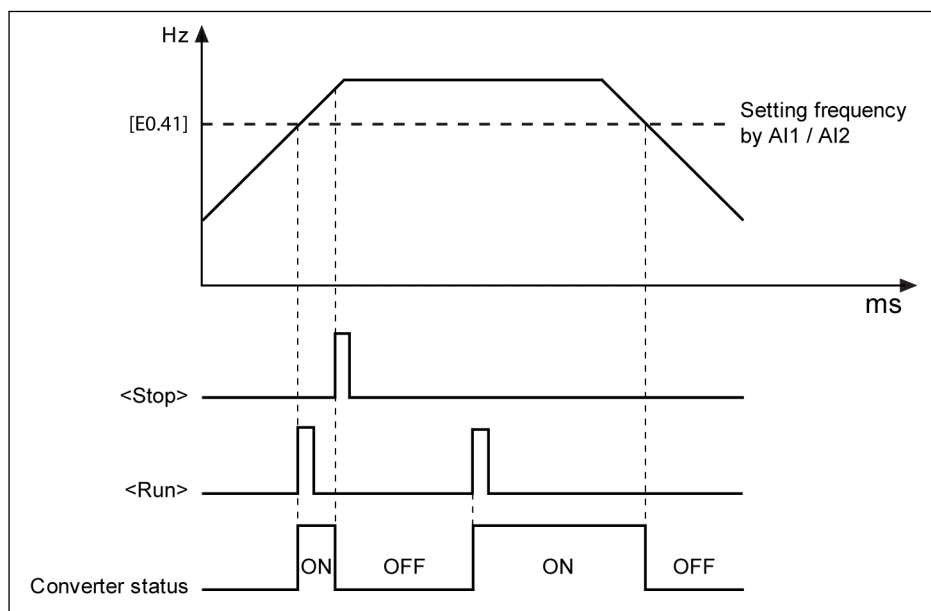


Fig. 12-61: Automatic start or stop according to frequency threshold

When the setting frequency is higher than [E0.41], the frequency converter starts and runs to the setting frequency automatically.

1. Pressing **<Stop>** at this time, the frequency converter stops.
2. Pressing **<Run>** again, the frequency converter runs again.

When the setting frequency is lower than [E0.41], the frequency converter stops automatically.



- If the threshold [E0.41] is set higher than the setting frequency high limit [E0.09], the threshold will be limited to the high limit [E0.09].
- Make sure that:
 1. The first and the second run command sources are both via panel.
 2. The active frequency setting source is via analog inputs.
 3. The simple PLC, PID control and jog function are deactivated.

Otherwise, E0.35 'Starting mode' cannot be set to '3: Auto start / stop according to setting frequency'. In this case, warning code 'PrSE' will be displayed and the frequency converter keeps in stop status.

12.8.8 Power Loss Restart

Power loss restart

This function allows the converter to start running automatically after power on if the converter was running before power off.

Related parameters:

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E0.45	Power loss restart mode	0: Inactive 1: Active for panel control 2: Active for digital input control	0	-	-	Stop
E0.46	Power loss restart delay	0.0...10.0	10.0	s	0.1	Stop

Setting range of E0.45:

- **E0.45=0: Inactive**

Power loss restart feature is disabled.

- **E0.45=1: Active for panel control**

When [E0.01]/[E0.03] = 0 (Operating panel), if the converter is running before power off, then converter will automatically start after waiting for the time of [E0.46] after power-on.

- **E0.45=2: Active for digital input control**

When [E0.01]/[E0.03] = 1 (Multi-function digital input), if the converter is running before power off, then converter will automatically start after waiting for the time of [E0.46] after power-on.



- Power loss restart function is active for panel and digital input control only.
- When E0.45 select "1" or "2", if the power supply of frequency converter and the error "UE-1" recover within the time of [E9.01], the frequency converter will restart.

WARNING

The power loss restart function may cause damage to people and equipment!

The power loss restart function can make the frequency converter run automatically after the power supply is restored, which may cause damage to people and equipment.

12.8.9 Stop Mode Configuration

This function defines different stop modes for different applications.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E0.50	Stop mode	0: Decelerating stop 1: Freewheeling stop 1 2: Freewheeling stop 2	0	-	-	Stop

Setting range of E0.50:

- **[E0.50] = 0: Decelerating stop**
The motor decelerates to stop according to the defined deceleration time.
In this stop mode DC-braking can be activated by parameter settings or by digital inputs.
- **[E0.50] = 1: Freewheeling stop 1**
Once the stopping command is activated, the converter stops output and the motor mechanically freewheels to stop.
'Freewheeling stop' can also be activated by digital inputs. When the digital input signal is active, the frequency converter freewheels to stop. If the digital input signal is inactive and a run command is active, the frequency converter resumes the previous running status.
- **[E0.50] = 2: Freewheeling stop 2**
 - When stopping command is active, the motor freewheels to stop as [E0.50] = 1.
 - When direction command is changed during running, the motor decelerates to stop according to the defined deceleration time as [E0.50] = 0.



If an error occurs due to too fast deceleration, increase the deceleration time or calculate if additional resistor braking is necessary.

12.8.10 Stop DC-braking

This function defines DC-braking during deceleration to stop.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E0.47	Run command priority	0: High priority 1: Low priority	0	-	-	Stop
E0.51	Stop DC-braking waiting time	0.00...100.00 s	0.00	s	0.01	Stop
E0.52	Stop DC-braking initial frequency	0.00...50.00 Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Stop
E0.53	Stop DC-braking time	0.0...20.0 s (0.0: Inactive)	0.1	s	0.1	Stop
E0.54	Stop DC-braking current	0.0...150.0 %	0.0	-	0.1	Stop

Setting range of E0.50:

- **E0.47 = 0: High priority**

If run command comes during stop DC braking, stop DC braking will be stopped and run command is active.

- **E0.47 = 1: Low priority**

If run command comes during stop DC braking, run command will get active after stop DC braking finish.

'DC-braking to stop' can be activated in two ways:

1. By parameter settings

During decelerating stop process, if 'Output frequency' is lower than [E0.52] 'Stop DC-braking initial frequency' and 'Stop DC-braking time' [E0.53] $\neq 0$, then DC-braking is activated. The 'Stop DC-braking current' is decided by [E0.54]:

- [E0.50] = 0;
- [E0.53] > 0;
- [E0.54] > 0;
- [Output frequency] $\leq$ [E0.52].

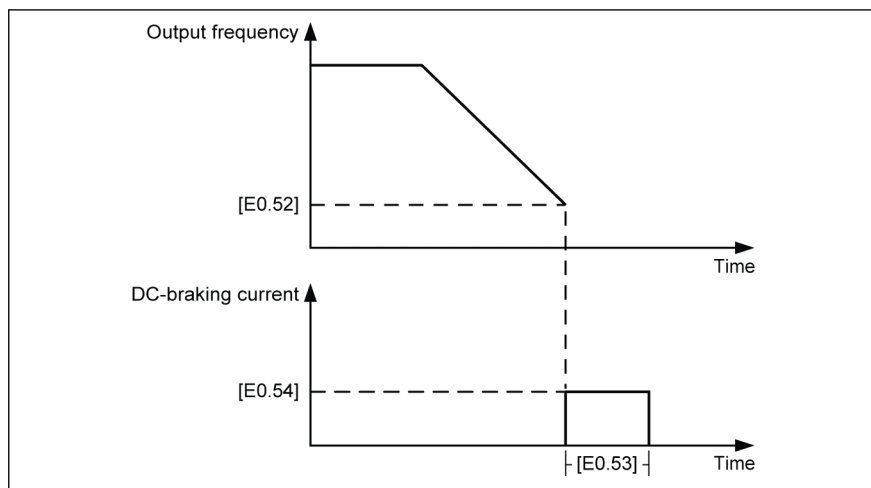


Fig. 12-62: Stop DC-braking_1

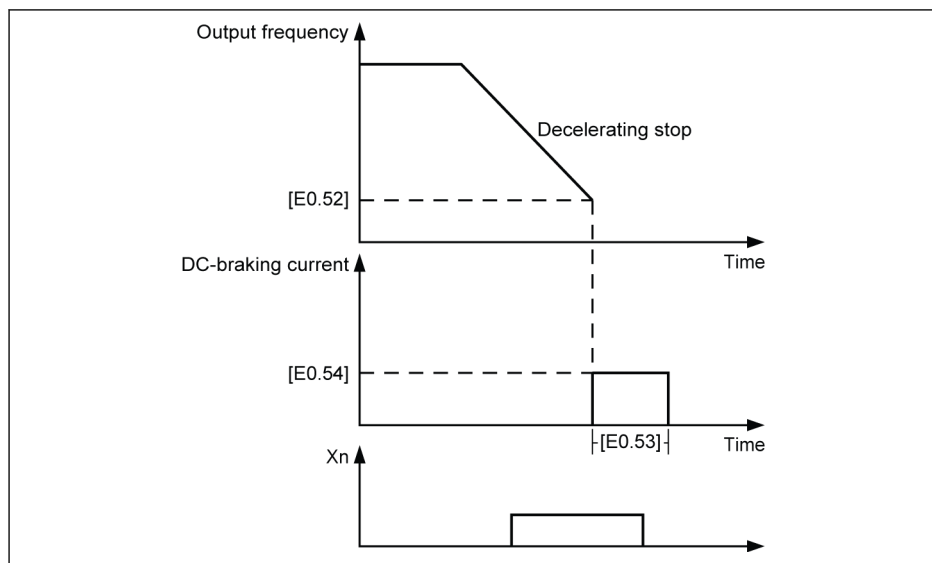
2. By digital inputs

During decelerating stop process, if 'Output frequency' is lower than [E0.52] 'Stop DC-braking initial frequency' and the defined digital input signal is active, then DC-braking is activated:

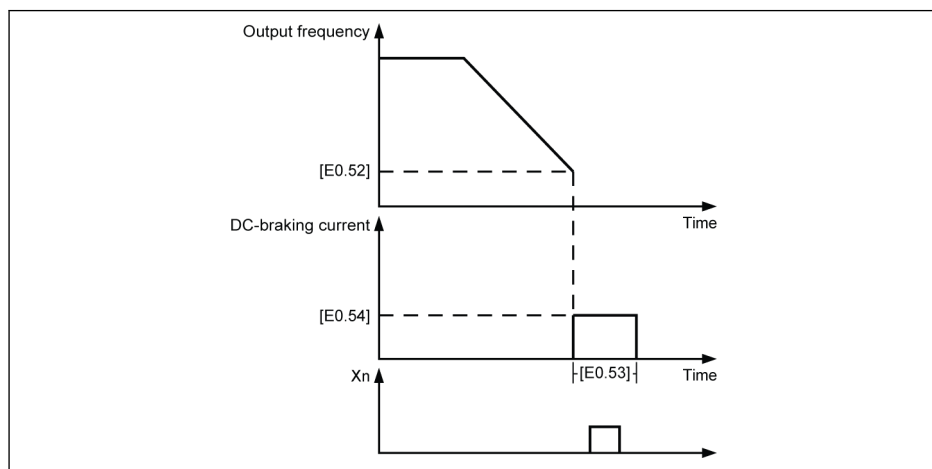
- Any one of digital inputs is set to '16: Stop DC-braking activation'.
- [E0.50] = 0.
- DC-braking starts when the defined digital input signal is active and [Output frequency] $\leq$ [E0.52], and stops when digital input is inactive. There is no time limitation.

With some special cases when 'DC-braking to stop' is activated by parameter setting and meanwhile digital input active, please see figures below:

Case 1: Xn active before the DC braking starts and inactive before [E0.53] ends.

**Fig. 12-63:** Stop DC-braking_2

Case 2: Xn active after the DC braking starts and inactive before [E0.53] ends.

**Fig. 12-64:** Stop DC-braking_3

Case 3: Xn active before the DC braking starts and inactive after [E0.53] ends.

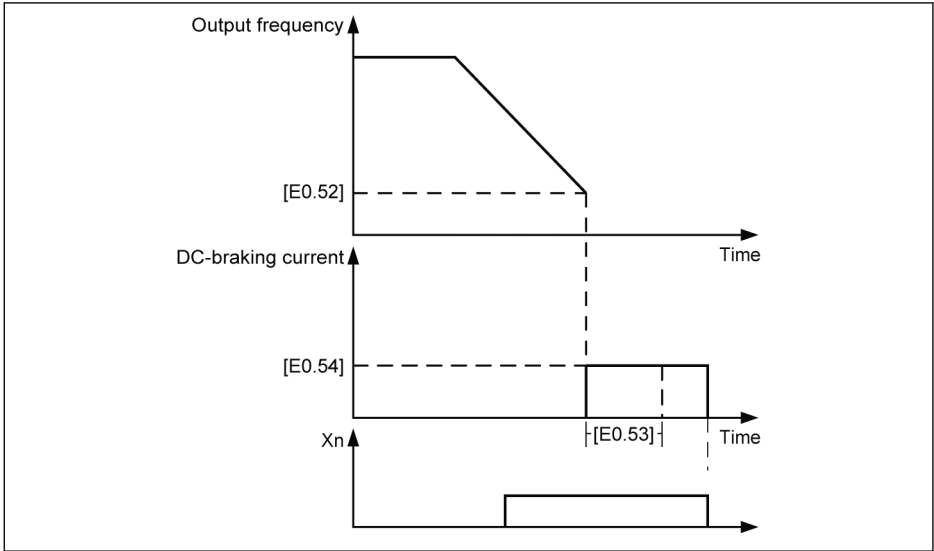


Fig. 12-65: Stop DC-braking_4
Case 4: Xn active after the DC braking starts and inactive after [E0.53] ends.

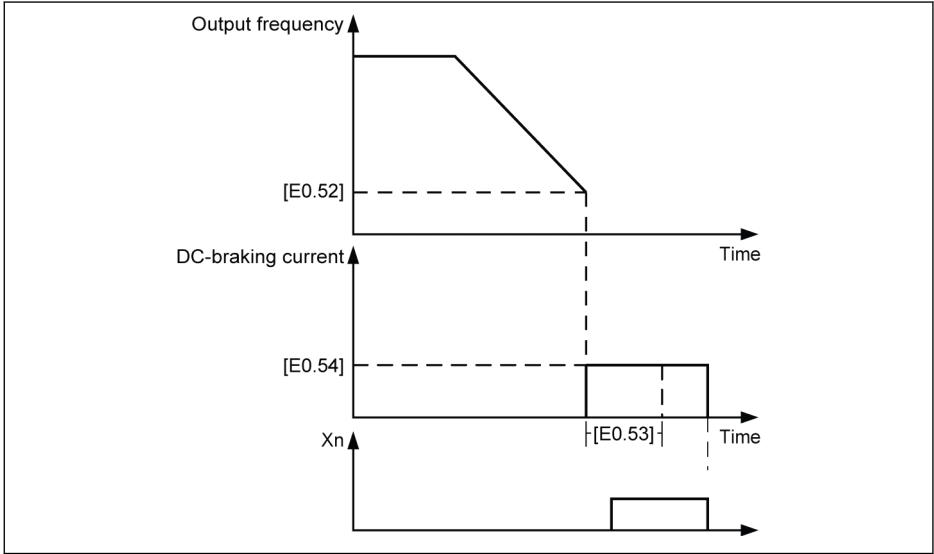


Fig. 12-66: Stop DC-braking_5

12.8.11 Overexcitation Braking

Overexcitation braking is used to obtain an optimized braking performance of the frequency converter in V/f control mode. To realize this function, increase 'Converter output voltage' by fine tuning of parameter E0.55 'Overexcitation braking factor' during deceleration process.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E0.55	Overexcitation braking factor	1.00...2.00	1.10	-	0.01	Run

- When [E0.55] = 1.00, 'Overexcitation braking' is inactive.
- A higher factor brings a higher braking force.

However, an excessive high factor may trigger errors of overcurrent (OC-1, OC-2, OC-3), converter overload (OL-1), motor overload (OL-2), or surge current / short circuit (SC). Reduce the setting of the factor in such cases.

12.8.12 Emergency Stop

This function defines the stop mode when emergency stop is activated (E-st is shown on panel) through digital input or control word via field bus.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E0.56	Emergency stop action	0: Freewheeling stop 1: Decelerating stop	0	-	-	Stop
E0.57	Emergency stop deceleration time	0.1...6,000.0 s	5.0	s	0.1	Run

Setting range of E0.56:

- **[E0.56] = 0: Freewheeling stop**

Once the emergency stop command is activated, the converter stops output and the motor mechanically freewheels to stop.

- **[E0.56] = 1: Decelerating stop**

The motor decelerates to stop according to the deceleration time defined by E0.57 'Emergency stop deceleration time'.

12.8.13 Jog Function

This function is used for flexible control. When command comes, the motor runs with predefined speed, after command inactive, the motor goes back to previous status.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E0.60	Jog frequency	0.00...[E0.08] Hz	5.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E0.61	Jog acceleration time	0.1...6,000.0 s	5.0	s	0.1	Run
E0.62	Jog deceleration time	0.1...6,000.0 s	5.0	s	0.1	Run

The 'Jog command' has a higher priority than and is independent of the 'Run / Stop command'. This function can ONLY be set by digital input or communication.

To use this function, take the following steps:

Step 1: Select any 2 digital inputs

Set any 2 digital inputs of E1.00...E1.04 and H8.00...H8.04 to 37 'Forward jog' and 38 'Reverse jog'.

Step 2: Set respective parameters

Set Jog function parameters E0.60...E0.62 according to application.

Once the 'Jog command' is active, the frequency converter runs immediately to [E0.60] 'Jog frequency' with acceleration / deceleration time defined by 'Jog acceleration time' [E0.61] / 'Jog deceleration time' [E0.62] no matter the converter is running or not. When 'Jog command' is inactive, the motor resumes the previous status.

● Converter is at stop

- 'Jog command' active: Accelerate to [E0.60] 'Jog frequency' according to [E0.61] 'Jog acceleration time'.
- 'Jog command' inactive: Deceleration time is according to [E0.62] 'Jog deceleration time'.

● Converter is running

- **Output frequency' is higher than 'Jog frequency'**
 - 'Jog command' active: Decelerate to [E0.60] 'Jog frequency' according to [E0.62] 'Jog deceleration time'.
 - 'Jog command' inactive: Accelerate to previous 'Setting frequency' according to [E0.26] 'Acceleration time'.
- **Output frequency' is lower than 'Jog frequency'**
 - 'Jog command' active: Accelerate to [E0.60] 'Jog frequency' according to [E0.61] 'Jog acceleration time'.
 - 'Jog command' inactive: Decelerate to prior 'Setting frequency' according to [E0.27] 'Deceleration time'.

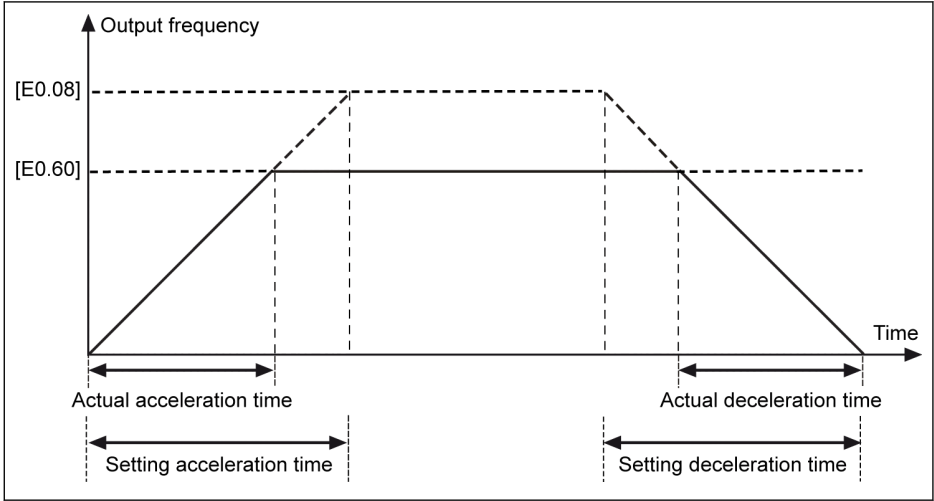


Fig. 12-67: Jog acceleration / deceleration time

Forward jog	Reverse jog	Running status
Active	Active	Stop
Active	Inactive	Jog forward
Inactive	Active	Jog reverse

Tab. 12-9: Jog configuration



If the jog command direction does not match the current jog running direction, the converter will stop according to [E0.50] 'Stop mode'.

12.8.14 Skip Frequency

This function is implemented to define a few skip frequencies to avoid the mechanical resonance. If the running frequency is in the hysteresis range of defined skip frequency, the frequency is set to the upper/lower limit automatically to skip this frequency area.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E0.70	Skip frequency 1	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Stop
E0.71	Skip frequency 2	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Stop
E0.72	Skip frequency 3	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Stop
E0.73	Skip frequency range	0.00...30.00 Hz	0.00	-	0.01	Stop
E0.74	Skip window acceleration factor	1...100	1	-	1	Stop

The setting ranges of the three skip frequencies are shown in the figure below:

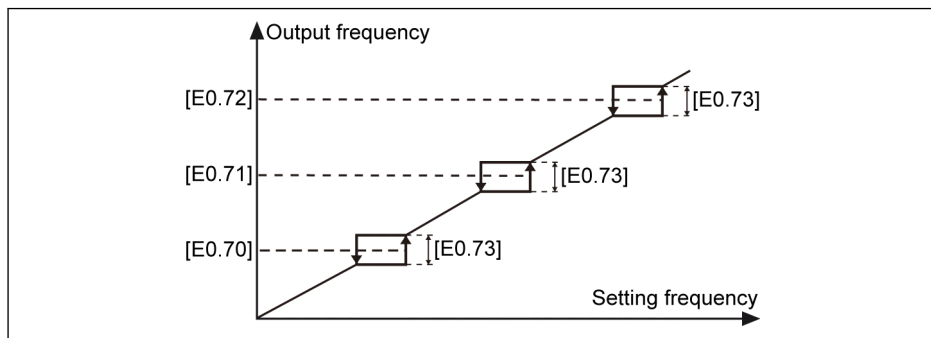


Fig. 12-68: Skip frequency 1

Skip frequency points are defined by parameters E0.70...E0.72. Skip frequency range or boundaries are defined by parameter E0.73 as listed below:

- [Upper boundary frequency] = [Skip frequency] + [E0.73]/2
- [Lower boundary frequency] = [Skip frequency] - [E0.73]/2

If the current 'Output frequency' is higher than the 'Upper boundary frequency', and the target 'Setting frequency' is within the 'Skip frequency range', the actual output frequency will be limited to 'Upper boundary frequency'.

If the current 'Output frequency' is lower than the 'Lower boundary frequency', and the target 'Setting frequency' is within the 'Skip frequency range', the actual output frequency will be limited to 'Lower boundary frequency'.

If the current 'Output frequency' is within the 'Skip frequency range' and the target 'Setting frequency' is also within the range, the actual output frequency is previous output frequency.



- If the lower frequency of one active skip frequency range is below zero, the lower frequency is limited to 0Hz.

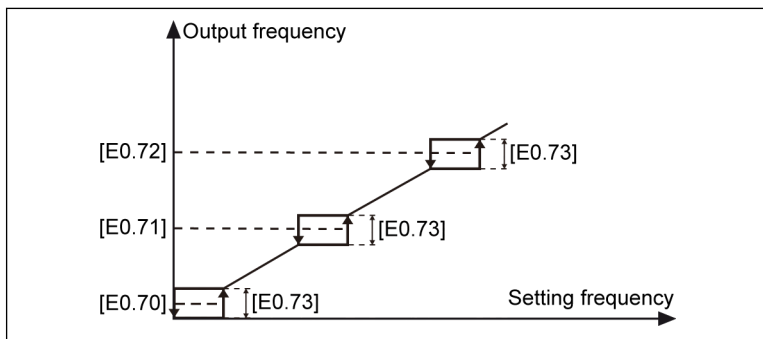


Fig. 12-69: Skip frequency 2

- It would be suggested to users not to make the three frequency ranges overlap or nest in each other. However, if users do set parameters like this by mistake, the following measure be considered.

Setting range by users:

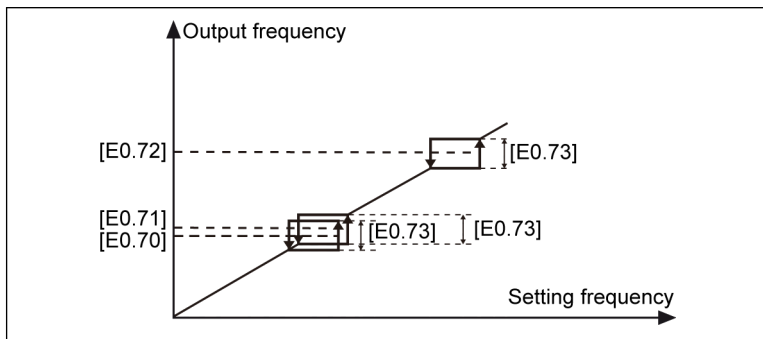


Fig. 12-70: Skip frequency 3

Actual skip range:

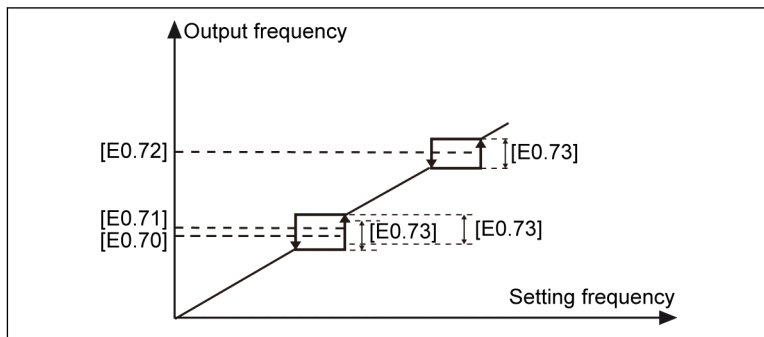


Fig. 12-71: Skip frequency 4

Parameter E0.74 is used to control the acceleration / deceleration speed inside the skip-window, the range for this factor is 1 (normal speed) to 100 (100 times speed of the normal speed). The actual acceleration / deceleration time for skip frequency is shorter than the setting value when the factor is higher than 1.

Acceleration / deceleration curve mode is S-curve(E0.25 = 1) in skipping Window:

- In the linear phase of S-curve, if E0.74 'Skip window acceleration factor' is above 1 and S-curve ramp is active, the change of acceleration will happen directly with a corner (no S-shaped curve) as long as the acceleration/ deceleration is :

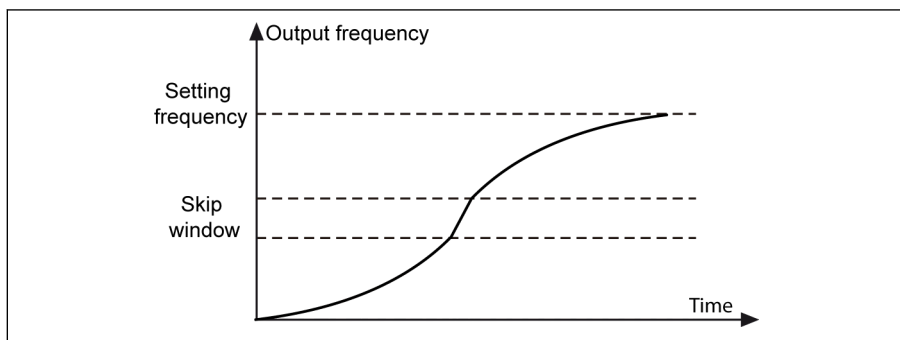


Fig. 12-72: Skip frequency 5

- In the start or end S-curve phase, E0.74 'Skip window acceleration factor' will not be active. There will be no higher acceleration or deceleration:

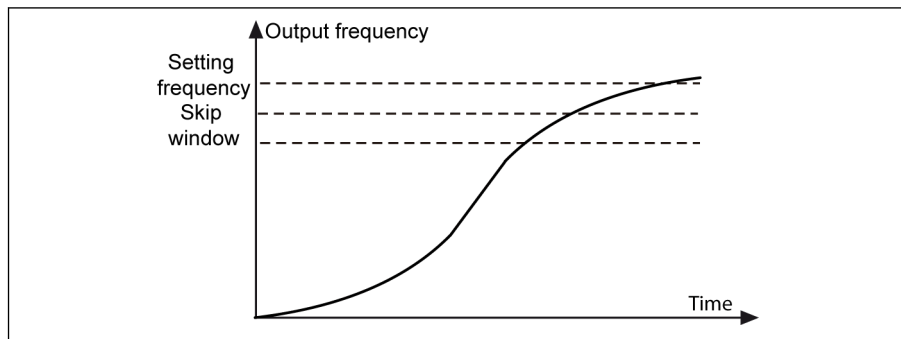


Fig. 12-73: Skip frequency 6



- If [E0.73] = 0.00, 'Skip frequency' function is inactive.
- If skip frequency is set to 0Hz, this skip frequency point is inactive.
- If acceleration or deceleration is stopped by stall protection (over current or over voltage), stall protection has priority. The frequency converter is running with constant output frequency inside the skip-window as long as stall protection is active.

12.9 E1: Input Terminal

12.9.1 Digital Input Configuration

This function defines 5 multi-function digital inputs with PNP and NPN wiring.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E1.00	X1 input	0...52	35	-	-	Stop
E1.01	X2 input		36	-	-	Stop
E1.02	X3 input		0	-	-	Stop
E1.03	X4 input		0	-	-	Stop
E1.04	X5 input		0	-	-	Stop

Setting range of E1.00...E1.04:

- **0: Inactive**
No function assigned.
- **1: Multi-speed control input 1**
- **2: Multi-speed control input 2**
- **3: Multi-speed control input 3**
- **4: Multi-speed control input 4**
16 multi-speeds are available by combination of 4 terminals, details see [chapter 12.11 "E3: Multi-Speed and Simple PLC" on page 254](#).
- **10: Acceleration / deceleration time 1 activation**
- **11: Acceleration / deceleration time 2 activation**
- **12: Acceleration / deceleration time 3 activation**
Used to switch between 8 groups of acceleration / deceleration time, details see [chapter 12.11 "E3: Multi-Speed and Simple PLC" on page 254](#).
- **15: Freewheeling stop activation**
'Freewheeling stop activation' generates a stop command and forces the frequency converter to freewheel to stop regardless of the stopping mode configured by E0.50.
- **16: Stop DC-braking activation**
This function is used when stopping mode is set with [E0.50] = '0: Decelerating stop', details see [chapter 12.8.9 "Stop Mode Configuration" on page 208](#).
- **20: Frequency Up command**
- **21: Frequency Down command**
- **22: Up / Down command reset**
Used to change the output frequency, details see [chapter 12.9.3 "Digital Input Frequency Change Function" on page 231](#).
- **23: Torque / speed control switch**

Used to switch between torque control mode and speed control mode. If the defined switch is open, speed control mode is selected; If the defined switch is closed, torque control mode is selected.

- **25: 3-wire control**

Used for the 3-wire control mode, details see [chapter 12.9.2 "2- and 3-Wire Control" on page 226](#).

- **26: Simple PLC stop**

- **27: Simple PLC pause**

Used for the simple PLC to stop and pause a PLC cycle, details see [chapter 12.11 "E3: Multi-Speed and Simple PLC" on page 254](#).

- **30: Second frequency setting source activation**

Used for switching to the second frequency setting source, details see [chapter 12.8.1 "Frequency Setting Source" on page 189](#).

- **31: Second run command source activation**

Used for switching to the second run command source, details see [chapter 12.8.2 "Run Command Source" on page 194](#).

- **32: Error signal N.O. contact input**

- **33: Error signal N.C. contact input**

Used for receive error signal from external sources. The frequency converter stops once an external error signal is active and the error code 'E-St' will be displayed on the operating panel if one X1...X5 or EX1...EX5 input is defined as either 'Error signal N.O. contact input' or 'Error signal N.C. contact input'.

- 32: Error signal N.O. contact input

- If the defined switch is closed, the external error signal is active.
- If the defined switch is open, the external error signal is inactive.

- 33: Error signal N.C. contact input

- If the defined switch is open, the external error signal is active.
- If the defined switch is closed, the external error signal is inactive.

The converter will stop when the external error signal is active, and the stop mode is defined by E0.56 'Emergency stop action', please see [chapter 12.8.9 "Stop Mode Configuration" on page 208](#) for the detailed information.

Example:

Set [E1.00] = '32: Error signal N.O. contact input' **or**

Set [E1.01] = '33: Error signal N.C. contact input'

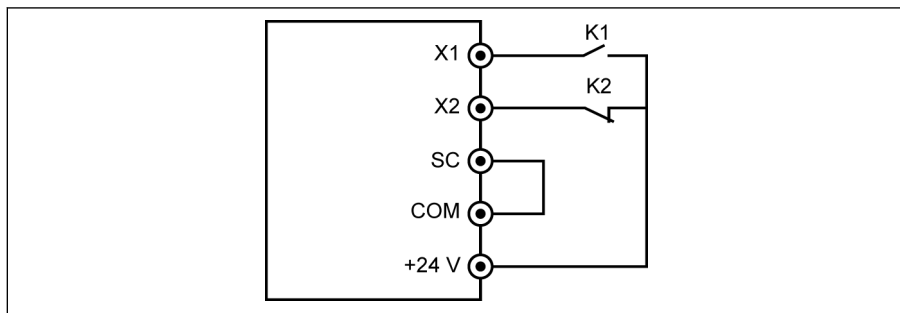


Fig. 12-74: Error signal

The frequency converter stops and indicates error code 'E-St' if K1 is closed.

Or the frequency converter stops and indicates error code 'E-St' if K2 is open.

- **34: Error reset**

Used for error reset operation. The error reset input can be defined with one digital input. This function works in the same manner as the panel error reset function does, which allows remote error reset. 'Error reset signal' is edge sensitive.

- **35: Forward running (FWD)**

- **36: Reverse running (REV)**

Used for Run / Stop command control, details see [chapter 12.8.2 "Run Command Source" on page 194](#).

- **37: Forward jog**

- **38: Reverse jog**

See [chapter 12.8.13 "Jog Function" on page 215](#).

- **39: Counter input**

- **40: Counter reset**

See [chapter 12.10.6 "Pulse Counter Function" on page 252](#).

- **41: PID deactivation**

See [chapter 12.12 "E4: PID Control" on page 268](#).

- **46: User parameter set selection**

Used to switch between two sets of parameters, details see [chapter 12.1.4 "Parameter Set Switch" on page 116](#).

- **47: Pulse input mode activation (ONLY for X5 input)**

See [chapter 12.9.4 "Pulse Input Configuration" on page 233](#).

- **48: Motor overheating error N.O. contact input**

- **49: Motor overheating error N.C. contact input**

Used for receive motor overheating error signal from external sources. The frequency converter stops once an external motor overheating error signal is

active and the error code 'Ot' will be displayed on the operating panel if one of X1...X5 or EX1...EX5 input is defined as either 'Motor overheating error N.O. contact input' or 'Motor overheating error N.C. contact input'.

- 48: Motor overheating error N.O. contact input
 - If the defined switch is closed, the motor overheating error signal is active.
 - If the defined switch is open, the motor overheating error signal is inactive.
- 49: Motor overheating error N.C. contact input
 - If the defined switch is open, the motor overheating error signal is active.
 - If the defined switch is closed, the motor overheating error signal is inactive.

Example:

Set [E1.00] = '48: Motor overheating error N.O. contact input' or

Set [E1.01] = '49: Motor overheating error N.C. contact input'

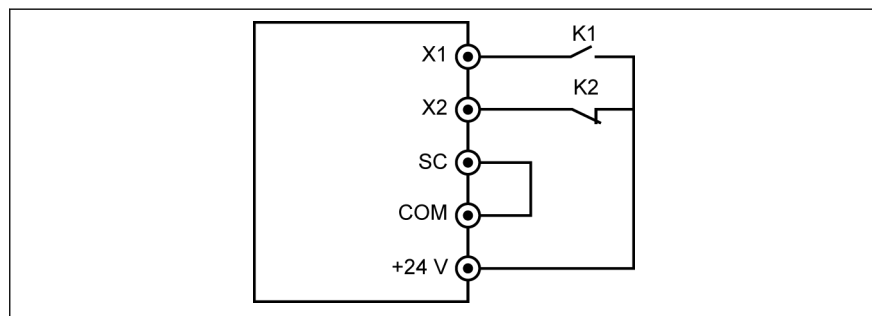


Fig. 12-75: Error signal

The frequency converter stops and indicates error code 'Ot' if K1 is closed. Or the frequency converter stops and indicates error code 'Ot' if K2 is open.

- **50: Motor overheating warning N.O. contact input**
- **51: Motor overheating warning N.C. contact input**

Used for receive motor overheating warning signal from external sources. Warning code 'Ot' will be displayed on the operating panel if one of X1...X5 or EX1...EX5 input is defined as either 'Motor overheating warning N.O. contact input' or 'Motor overheating warning N.C. contact input'.

- 50: Motor overheating warning N.O. contact input
 - If the defined switch is closed, the motor overheating warning signal is active.
 - If the defined switch is open, the motor overheating warning signal is inactive.

- 51: Motor overheating warning N.C. contact input
 - If the defined switch is open, the motor overheating warning signal is active.
 - If the defined switch is closed, the motor overheating warning signal is inactive.

Example:

Set [E1.00] = '50: Motor overheating warning N.O. contact input' or

Set [E1.01] = '51: Motor overheating warning N.C. contact input'

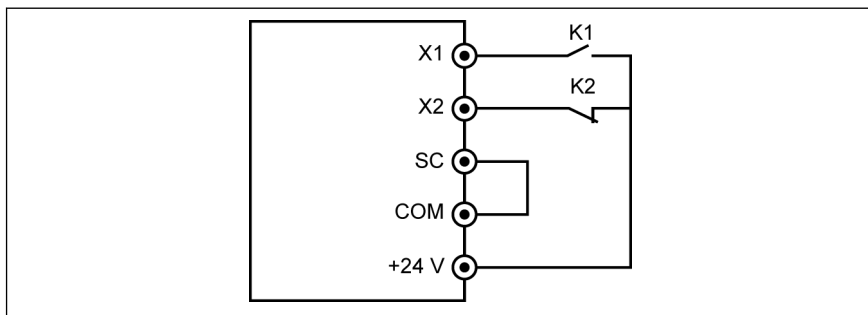


Fig. 12-76: Error signal

The frequency indicates warning code 'Ot' if K1 is closed. Or the frequency converter indicates warning code 'Ot' if K2 is open.



Digital input status is monitored by parameter d0.40 'Digital input 1'.

- 52: Jog with Run Command Direction

For digital inputs, to activate Jog by taking direction from the active run command source (Panel/wire control).

When 52 is chosen for the input and input signal is given, the frequency converter will jog, and the direction of jog is from run command.

For example: X4=52

X4	Run command(Panel/DI)	Actual action
Closed	FWD	FWD Jog
Closed	REV	REV Jog
Opened	FWD	FWD
Opened	REV	REV

12.9.2 2- and 3-Wire Control

This function defines 5 modes when use digital input to trigger FWD and REV running.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E1.15	2-wire/3-wire control mode	0: 2-wire forward / stop, reverse / stop 1: 2-wire forward / reverse, run / stop 2: 3-wire control mode 1 3: 3-wire control mode 2 4: 1-wire control	0	-	-	Stop

Setting range of E1.15:

- 0: 2-wire forward / stop, reverse / stop
 - Step 1: Activate 2-wire control mode 1
Set [E1.15] = '0: 2-wire forward / stop, reverse / stop'.
 - Step 2: Define two digital inputs
 - Set one of digital inputs as '35: Forward running (FWD)'
 - Set one of digital inputs as '36: Reverse running (REV)'

Example:

Connected switch K1 to X1, and set [E1.00] = '35: Forward running (FWD)'.
Connected switch K2 to X2, and set [E1.01] = '36: Reverse running (REV)'.

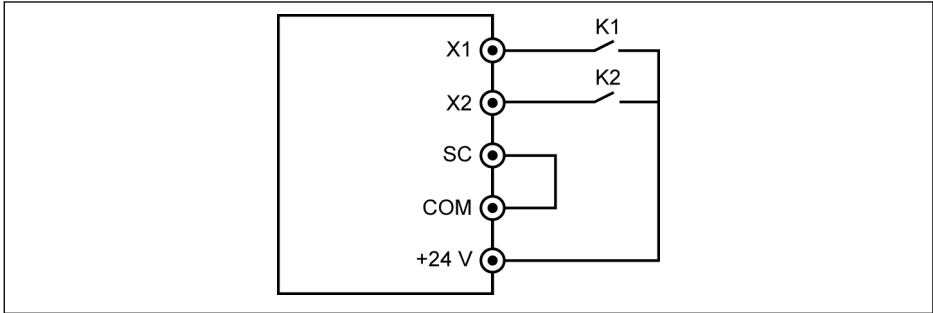


Fig. 12-77: 2-wire control mode 1

The control logic is shown in the table below:

K1	K2	Running status
Open	Open	Stop
Closed	Open	Running forward

K1	K2	Running status
Open	Closed	Running reverse
Closed	Closed	Stop

Tab. 12-10: 2-wire control mode 1 configuration

 If switch K1 and K2 are closed at the same time, the frequency converter stops according to [E0.50] 'Stop mode' and both FWD and REV LED indicators are lighted during stop status.

● **1: 2-wire forward / reverse, run / stop**

Step 1: Activate 2-wire control mode 2

Set [E1.15] = '1: 2-wire forward / reverse, run / stop'.

Step 2: Define two digital inputs

- Set one of digital inputs as '35: Forward running (FWD)'
- Set one of digital inputs as '36: Reverse running (REV)'

Example:

Connected switch K1 to X1, and set [E1.00] = '35: Forward running (FWD)'.

Connected switch K2 to X2, and set [E1.01] = '36: Reverse running (REV)'.

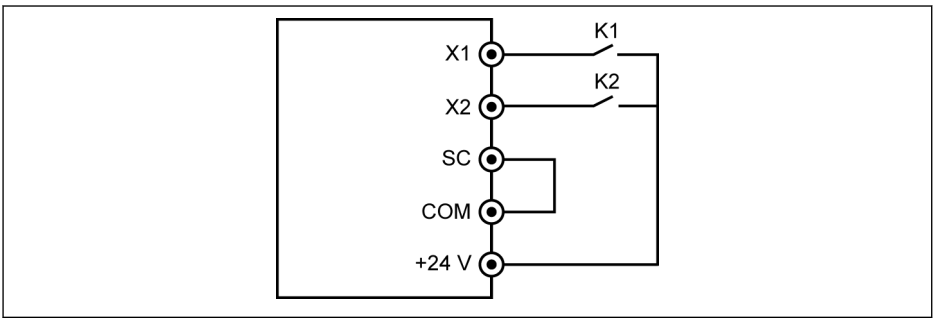


Fig. 12-78: 2-wire control mode 2

The control logic is shown in the table below:

K1	K2	Running status
Open	Open	Stop
Closed	Open	Running forward
Open	Closed	Stop
Closed	Closed	Running reverse

Tab. 12-11: 2-wire control mode 2 configuration

● **2: 3-wire control mode 1**

Step 1: Define 3 digital inputs

- Set one of digital inputs as '35: Forward running (FWD)'
- Set one of digital inputs as '36: Reverse running (REV)'
- Set one of digital inputs as '25: 3-wire control'

To use 3-wire function, define the digital inputs first, and then activate the control mode. Otherwise, warning code 'PrSE' will be displayed on the operating panel.

To deactivate the 3-wire function, deactivate the control mode first, and then deactivate the function assignment of '25: 3-wire control'. Otherwise, warning code 'PrSE' will be displayed.

Step 2: Activate 3-wire control 1

Set [E1.15] = '2: 3-wire control mode 1'.

Example:

Connected switch K1 to X1, and set [E1.00] = '35: Forward running (FWD)', edge-sensitive.

Connected switch K2 to X2, and set [E1.01] = '36: Reverse running (REV)', level-sensitive.

Connected switch K3 to X3, and set [E1.02] = '25: 3-wire control', level-sensitive.

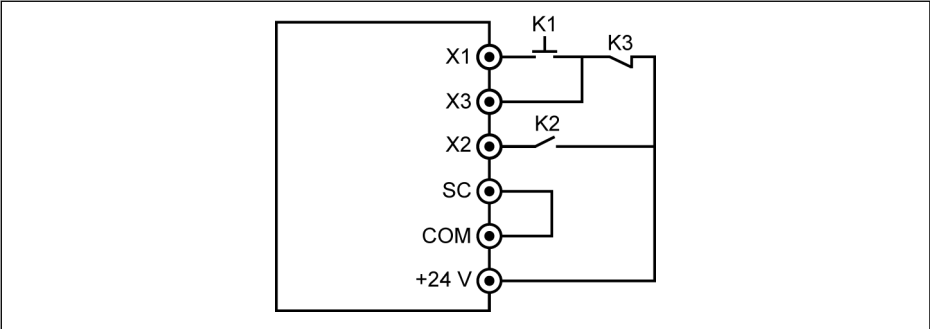


Fig. 12-79: 3-wire control 1

The control logic is shown in the table below:

K3	K1	K2	Running status
Open	Inactive / Edge	Open / Closed	Stop
Open	Inactive / Edge	Open / Closed	Stop
Closed	Edge	Open	Running forward
Closed	Inactive / Edge	Closed	Running reverse

Tab. 12-12: 3-wire control configuration

● 3: 3-wire control mode 2

Different from the 3-wire control mode 1, 3-wire control mode 2 has an edge sensitive characteristic for direction control terminals.

Step 1: Define 3 digital inputs

- Set one of digital inputs as '35: Forward running (FWD)'
- Set one of digital inputs as '36: Reverse running (REV)'
- Set one of digital inputs as '25: 3-wire control'

Step 2: Activate 3-wire control 2

Set [E1.15] = '3: 3-wire control mode 2'.

Example:

Connected K1 to X1, set [E1.00] = '35: Forward running (FWD)', edge-sensitive.
Connected K2 to X2, set [E1.01] = '36: Reverse running (REV)', edge-sensitive.
Connected K3 to X3, set [E1.02] = '25: 3-wire control', level-sensitive.

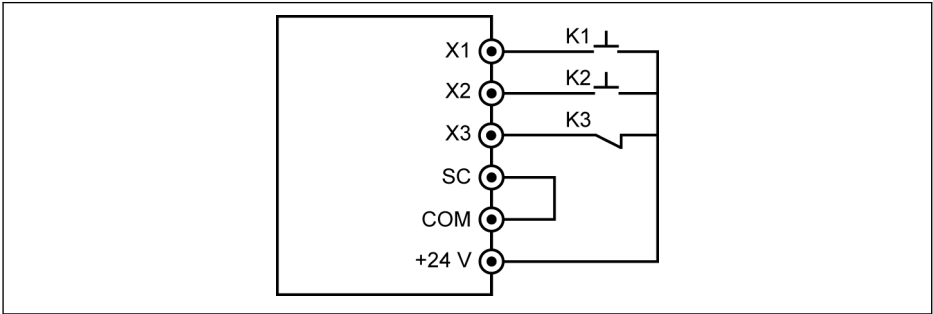


Fig. 12-80: 3-wire control mode 2

K3	K1	K2	Running status
Open	Edge / Inactive	Edge / Inactive	Stop
Closed	Edge	Inactive	Running forward
Closed	Inactive	Edge	Running reverse
Closed	Edge	Edge	No change

Tab. 12-13: 3-wire control configuration

● **4: 1-wire control**

1-wire control mode is Run /Stop mode, it is used for multi-speed function when 9 or more stages were selected.

Step 1: Define 1 digital input

Set one of digital inputs as '35: Forward running (FWD)'.

Step 2: Activate 1-wire control

Set [E1.15] = '4: 1-wire control'.

Example:

Connect K5 to X5, set [E1.04] = '35: Forward running (FWD)'.

The control logic is shown in the table below:

K5	Status
Inactive	Stop
Active	Run

Tab. 12-14: 1-wire control configuration
Detailed multi-speed information refer to [chapter 12.11 "E3: Multi-Speed and Simple PLC"](#) on page 254.



In 2-wire / 3-wire running control, check and ensure that the direction setting meets the requirement in the actual application. If the direction command is changed when the frequency converter is running, [E0.18] 'direction change dead time' is active.

12.9.3 Digital Input Frequency Change Function

This function allows to adjust the setting frequency by digital input Up / Down command in RUN state.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E1.17	Digital input Up / Down initial frequency	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E1.16	Digital input Up / Down change rate	0.10...100.00 Hz/s	1.00	Hz/s	0.01	Run

The setting frequency can be adjusted with command of Up / Down / Reset, by setting the status of digital inputs. The setting frequency will increase with Up command active, decrease with Down command active, reset to '0' with Reset command active.

To use this function, take the following steps:

Step 1: Set the frequency setting source

Set either E0.00 'First frequency setting source' or E0.02 'Second frequency setting source' to '11: Digital input Up / Down command'. If the active frequency command input channel ([E0.00] or [E0.02]) is set to 11, the [E1.17] will be taken as the current set frequency.

Step 2: Select any 3 digital inputs and define functions accordingly

Set any 3 digital inputs of E1.00... E1.04 and H8.00...H8.04 to '20: Frequency Up command', '21: Frequency Down command' and '22: Up / Down command reset'.

Step 3: Set the change rate and initial frequency for Up / Down operation

Set E1.16 'Digital input Up / Down change rate' and E1.17 'Digital input Up / Down initial frequency' according to the application.

Example:

[E1.00] = 20, [E1.01] = 21, [E1.02] = 22

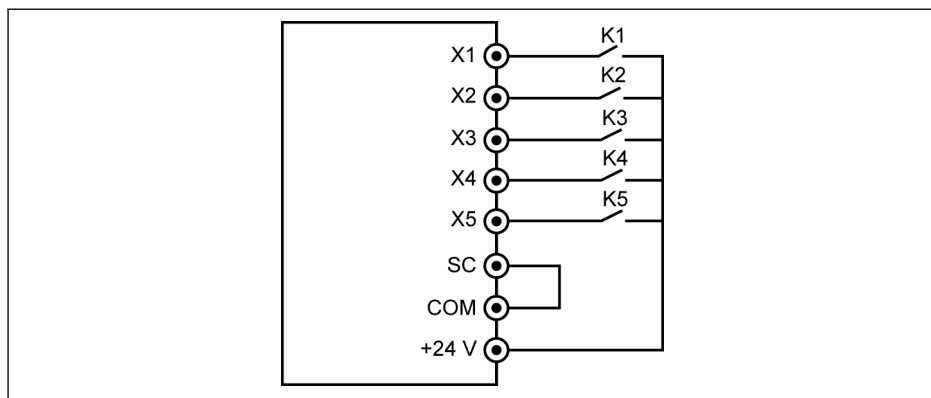


Fig. 12-81: External control terminals

Connect switch K1 to X1, and set [E1.00] = '20: Frequency Up command'.

Connect switch K2 to X2, and set [E1.01] = '21: Frequency Down command'.
Connect switch K3 to X3, and set [E1.02] = '22: Up / Down command reset'.
The combination of the control terminals are described in the table below:

K1	K2	K3	Response of setting frequency
Closed / Open	Closed / Open	Closed	Is reset to 0.00 Hz
Closed	Open	Open	Increases with the change rate defined by [E1.16]
Open	Closed	Open	Decreases with the change rate defined by [E1.16]
Open	Open	Open	No change
Closed	Closed	Open	No change

Tab. 12-15: K1, K2, K3 settings



Up / Down / Reset command is only active when the frequency converter is running. Whether the setting frequency modified by Up / Down terminals will be saved or not after power off depends on [E0.06], see [chapter 12.8.3 "Digital Setting Frequency" on page 195](#).

12.9.4 Pulse Input Configuration

The pulse input is required to be input via digital input terminal with frequency up to 50kHz, and X5 digital input is used to receive this pulse signal with a 30...70 % duty ratio.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E1.25	Pulse input maximum frequency	0.0...50.0 kHz	50.0	kHz	0.1	Run
E1.26	Pulse input filter time	0.000...2.000 s	0.100	s	0.001	Run

This pulse input can be used in 3 purposes:

- Frequency setting source
See [chapter 12.8.1 "Frequency Setting Source" on page 189](#).
- PID reference
- PID feedback
See [chapter 12.12 "E4: PID Control" on page 268](#).

To use 'X5 pulse input' as the frequency source, take following steps:

Step 1: Activate terminal 'X5 input' with pulse input function

Set [E1.04] 'X5 input' to 47: Pulse input mode activation.

Step 2: Set the maximum input frequency and filter time

Set [E1.25] 'Pulse input maximum frequency' and [E1.26] 'Pulse input filter time' according to application.

Step 3: Select pulse input curve

[E1.68]	bit 2	bit 1	bit 0	Curve for AI1	Curve for AI2	Curve for pulse input
0	0	0	0	1	1	1
1	0	0	1	2	1	1
2	0	1	0	1	2	1
3	0	1	1	2	2	1
4	1	0	0	1	1	2
5	1	0	1	2	1	2
6	1	1	0	1	2	2
7	1	1	1	2	2	2

Tab. 12-16: Curve configuration

[E1.70]...[E1.73] are used to define characteristics of curve 1, and [E1.75]...[E1.78] are used to define characteristics of curve 2. Detailed curve setting see [chapter 12.9.5 "Analog Input Configuration" on page 234](#).



Pulse input frequency is monitored by parameter d0.50 'Pulse input frequency'.

12.9.5 Analog Input Configuration

This function is implemented to configure the analog command value input of external analog input AI1 and AI2.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E1.35	AI1 input mode	0: 0...20 mA	2	-	-	Run
E1.40	AI2 input mode	1: 4...20 mA 2: 0...10 V 3: 0...5 V 4: 2...10 V	1	-	-	Run
E1.38	AI1 gain	0.00...10.00	1.00	-	0.01	Run
E1.43	AI2 gain	0.00...10.00	1.00	-	0.01	Run
E1.68	Analog input curve setting	0...7	0	-	-	Run
E1.69	Analog input filter time	0.000...2.000 s	0.100	s	0.001	Run
E1.70	Input curve 1 minimum	0.0 %...[E1.72]	0.0	-	0.1	Run
E1.71	Input curve 1 minimum frequency	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E1.72	Input curve 1 maximum	[E1.70]...100.0 %	100.0	-	0.1	Run
E1.73	Input curve 1 maximum frequency	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	50.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E1.75	Input curve 2 minimum	0.0 %...[E1.77]	0.0	-	0.1	Run
E1.76	Input curve 2 minimum frequency	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E1.77	Input curve 2 maximum	[E1.75]...100.0 %	100.0	-	0.1	Run
E1.78	Input curve 2 maximum frequency	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	50.00	Hz	0.01	Run

To configure these two inputs AI1 and AI2, take the following steps:

Step 1: Select the input mode

Set [E1.35] to select the input mode of AI1 and [E1.40] to select the input mode of AI2.

Step 2: Set the channel gain and filter time

[E1.38] is for AI1 gain and [E1.43] is for AI2 gain.

Parameter [E1.69] is used to define the analog channel filtering time constant for processing of input signals. Longer filtering time means stronger anti-interference capability and slower response; shorter filtering time means weaker anti-interference capability and faster response.

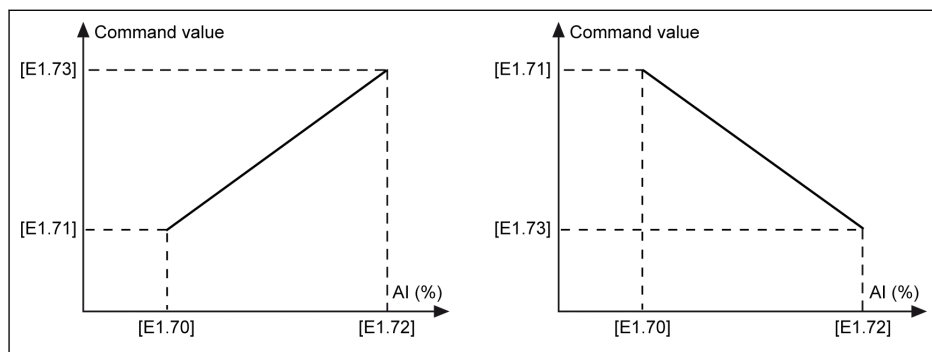
Step 3: Select input curve

There are two analog input curves that can be selected by [E1.68], AI1 and AI2 inputs can use both curve 1 and curve 2.

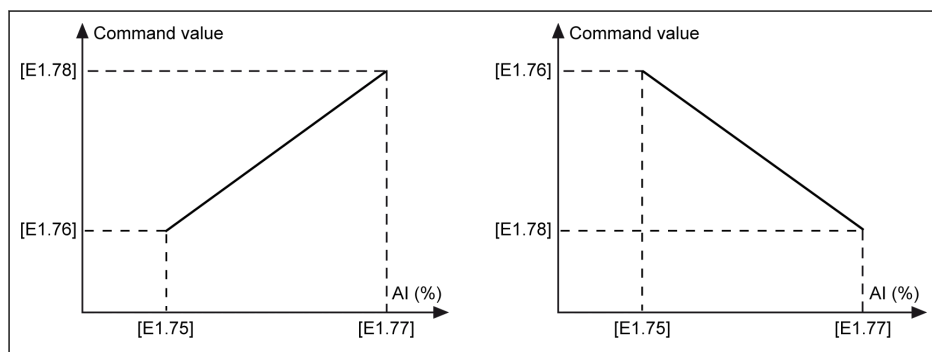
[E1.68]	bit 2	bit 1	bit 0	Curve for AI1	Curve for AI2	Curve for pulse input
0	0	0	0	1	1	1
1	0	0	1	2	1	1
2	0	1	0	1	2	1
3	0	1	1	2	2	1
4	1	0	0	1	1	2
5	1	0	1	2	1	2
6	1	1	0	1	2	2
7	1	1	1	2	2	2

Tab. 12-17: Curve configuration

[E1.70]...[E1.73] are used to define characteristics of curve 1:

**Fig. 12-82:** Curve 1

[E1.75]...[E1.78] are used to define characteristics of curve 2:

**Fig. 12-83:** Curve 2

Analog input status is monitored by parameter d0.30 'AI1 input' / d0.31 'AI2 input'.

Analog Input Broken Wire Detection

If '4...20 mA' or '2...10 V' is selected for analog inputs (AI1, AI2 and EAI1, EAI2), then this function can detect the input missing possibly due to the cable disconnection. Once the broken wire is detected, the frequency converter can either continue running with warning (Warning code: Aib-) or stop with error (Error code: AibE), which can be configured by parameter E1.61.

Related parameter:

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E1.61	Broken wire protection	0: Inactive 1: Warning 2: Error	0	-	-	Stop

Setting range of E1.61:

- **0: Inactive**

There is no reaction on the output frequency (broken wire disable, no warning display and stop command).

- **1: Warning**

There is warning reaction will be enabled and warning message will be displayed with warning code "Aib-".

- **2: Error**

There is error reaction will be enabled, then stop command will be raised and error message will be displayed with error code of "AibE".

For 4...20 mA analog input, if the current drops below $4\text{mA} - 10\% = 3.6\text{mA}$, the action according to the parameter E1.61 will be performed.

For 2...10 V analog input, if the voltage drops below $2\text{V} - 7.5\% = 1.85\text{V}$, the action according to the parameter E1.61 will be performed.

12.9.6 Motor Temperature Sensor Channel

This function defines the motor temperature sensor channel selection when protect the motor from overheat.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E1.60	Motor temperature sensor channel	0: Inactive 1: AI1 analog input 2: AI2 analog input 3: EAI1 analog input 4: EAI2 analog input 5: TSI input (only for IO plus card)	0	-	-	Stop

Setting range of E1.60:

- **0: Inactive**
Inactivate the function of temperature monitoring with temperature sensor:
- **1: AI1 analog input**
Motor temperature sensor channel is AI1.
- **2: AI2 analog input**
Motor temperature sensor channel is AI2.
- **3: EAI1 analog input**
Motor temperature sensor channel is EAI1.
- **4: EAI2 analog input**
Motor temperature sensor channel is EAI2.
- **5: TSI input (only for IO plus card)**
Motor temperature sensor channel is TSI when IO plus card was used.



AI1 / AI2 / EAI1 / EAI2 will be automatically set as voltage input mode when [E1.60] = 1...4.

12.10 E2: Output Terminal

12.10.1 Digital Output Configuration

This function defines the open collector output for system state monitoring.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E2.01	DO1 output setting	0...25	1	-	-	Stop
E2.20	DO1/relay1 output values from extension card fieldbus communication	Bit0: 0 (open collector is opened); 1 (open collector is closed) Bit8: 0 (Tb_Ta is opened); 1 (Tb_Ta is closed)	0x00000	-	-	Run

Setting range of E2.01:

- **0: Converter ready**

After power on, when no error happens, no run command, output active indicates that the converter is ready for running.

- **1: Converter running**

The output is active when the frequency converter is running and has frequency output (including 0.00 Hz).

- **2: Converter DC-braking**

The output is active when the converter is in the DC braking process at starting or stopping process. See [chapter 12.8.7 "Start Mode Configuration" on page 202](#) and [chapter 12.8.9 "Stop Mode Configuration" on page 208](#).

- **3: Converter running at zero speed**

The output is active when the frequency converter is running at zero speed.



There is no output for this selection during dead zone time of rotation direction change.

- **4: Speed arrival**

This function is used to detect the difference between the output frequency and the set frequency. The indicative signals are outputted when the difference between the output frequency and the set frequency is within the range set in [E2.70], see [chapter 12.10.5 "Frequency Detection Function" on page 250](#).

- **5: Frequency level detection signal (FDT1)**

- **6: Frequency level detection signal (FDT2)**

See [chapter 12.10.5 "Frequency Detection Function" on page 250](#).

- **7: Simple PLC stage complete**

- **8: Simple PLC cycle complete**

See [chapter 12.11 "E3: Multi-Speed and Simple PLC"](#) on page 254.

- **10: Converter undervoltage**

The output is active when DC-bus voltage is lower than 170 VDC (1P/200 VAC models) / 300 VDC (3P 400 VAC models). The output will be inactive when DC-bus voltage resumes and becomes stable.

In addition, this digital output will be activated by any soft start error.

- **11: Converter overload pre-warning**

See [chapter 12.2.12 "Converter Overload Pre-Warning"](#) on page 139.

- **12: Motor overload pre-warning**

See [chapter 12.3.6 "Motor Overload Pre-Warning"](#) on page 157.

- **13: Converter stop by external error**

This signal is activated when the error "E-St" is generated and deactivated when this error is reset. See [chapter 12.9.1 "Digital Input Configuration"](#) on [page 221](#) when digital input is set to '32: Error signal N.O. contact input' and '33: Error signal N.C. contact input'.

- **14: Converter error**

The output is active when an error occurs, inactive when the error is reset.

- **15: Converter OK**

The output is inactive when the frequency converter is powered off or encounters error / warning.

The output is active when the frequency converter is powered on but not running, or the frequency converter is running without error / warning.

- **16: Counter target value arrival**

- **17: Counter middle value arrival**

See [chapter 12.10.6 "Pulse Counter Function"](#) on page 252.

- **18: PID reference engineering value arrival**

Used for PID function, see [chapter 12.12 "E4: PID Control"](#) on page 268.

- **19: Pulse output mode enable**

See [chapter 12.10.2 "Pulse Output Setting"](#) on page 241.

- **20: Torque control mode**

The output is active when the frequency converter is in torque control mode.

The output is inactive when the frequency converter is not in torque control mode.

- **21: Parameter setting from communication**

- For modbus mode, the output is defined by bit0 of register 0x7F08, when bit0 of register 0x7F08 is '0', open collector is opened; when bit0 of register 0x7F08 is '1', open collector is closed.

- For other fieldbus mode, the output is defined by bit0 of parameter E2.20, when bit0 of E2.20 is '0', open collector is opened; when bit0 of E2.20 is '1', open collector is closed.
- **25: Converter error or warning**
 - The output is active when the frequency converter encounters error / warning.
 - The output is inactive when the frequency converter without error / warning.



Digital output status is monitored by parameter d0.45 'DO1 output'.

12.10.2 Pulse Output Setting

This function defines pulse train output functionality up to 32 kHz for open collector output.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E2.02	DO1 pulse output setting	0: Converter output frequency 1: Converter output voltage 2: Converter output current 3: Setting torque 4: Output torque	0	-	-	Stop
E2.03	Pulse output maximum frequency	0.1...32.0 kHz	32.0	kHz	0.1	Run

Before using DO1 pulse output mode, first set E2.01 to '19: Pulse output mode enable' so that pulse train output functionality is enabled through the open collector output.

Pulse train output characteristics:

- Frequency range: 1Hz to 32.0 kHz
- Duty cycle range: 40% ~ 60%
- Maximal pulse train output frequency: as specified by [E2.03] parameter

Setting range of E2.02:

• E2.02 = 0: Converter output frequency

Pulse train output 1 Hz to [E2.03] corresponds to output frequency 0 to [E0.09] output frequency high limit.

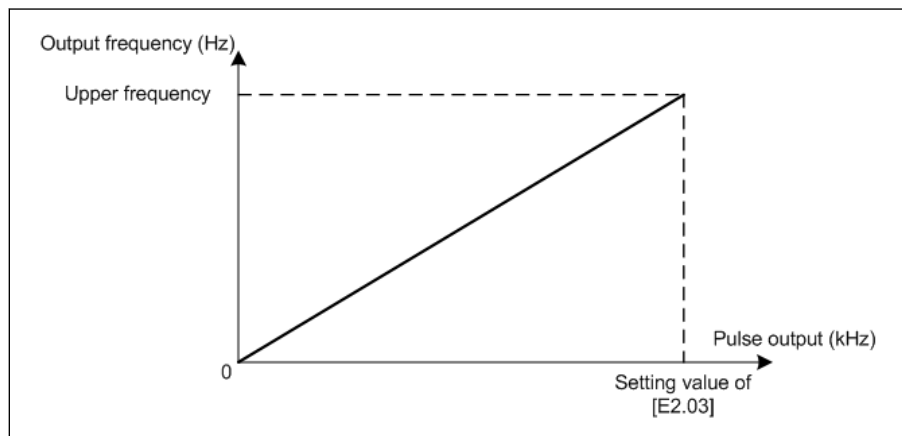


Fig. 12-84: Converter output frequency

• E2.02 = 1: Converter output voltage

Pulse train output 1 Hz to [E2.03] corresponds to output voltage 0 to max. voltage (1P200V: 250V; 3P400V: 500V).

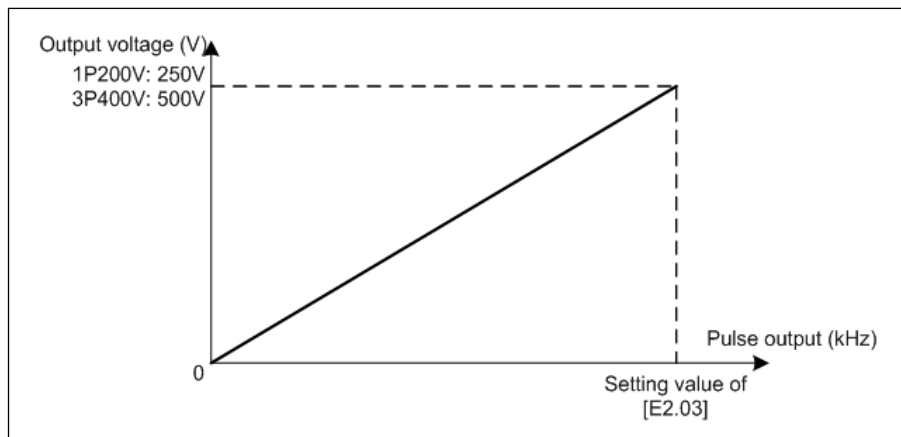


Fig. 12-85: Converter output voltage

- **E2.02 = 2: Converter output current**

Pulse train output 1 Hz to [E2.03] corresponds to output current 0 to (2 * converter rated current).

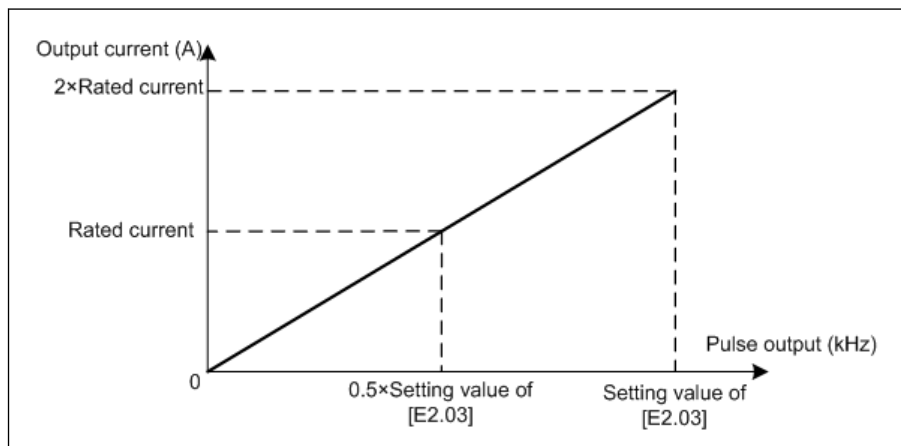


Fig. 12-86: Converter output current

- **E2.02 = 3: Setting torque**

Pulse train output 1 Hz to [E2.03] corresponds to setting torque value of C3.42 to C3.43.

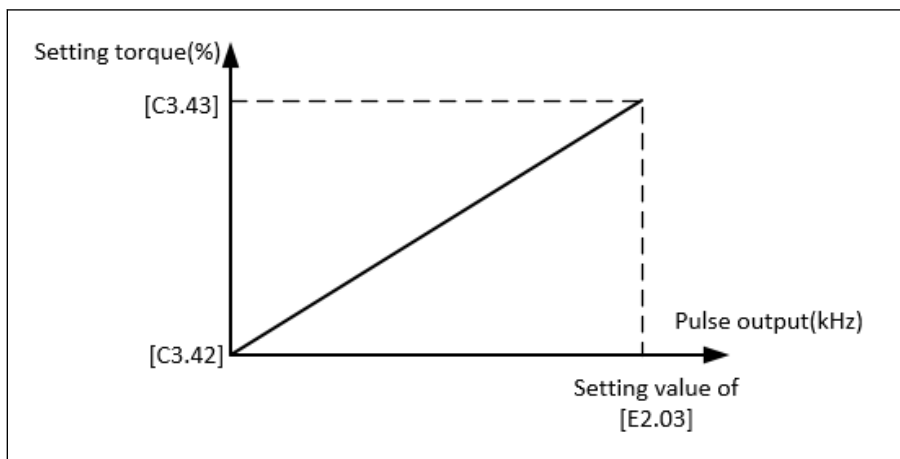


Fig. 12-87: Setting torque

- **E2.02 = 4: Output torque**

Pulse train output 1 Hz to [E2.03] corresponds to output torque value of C3.42 to C3.43.

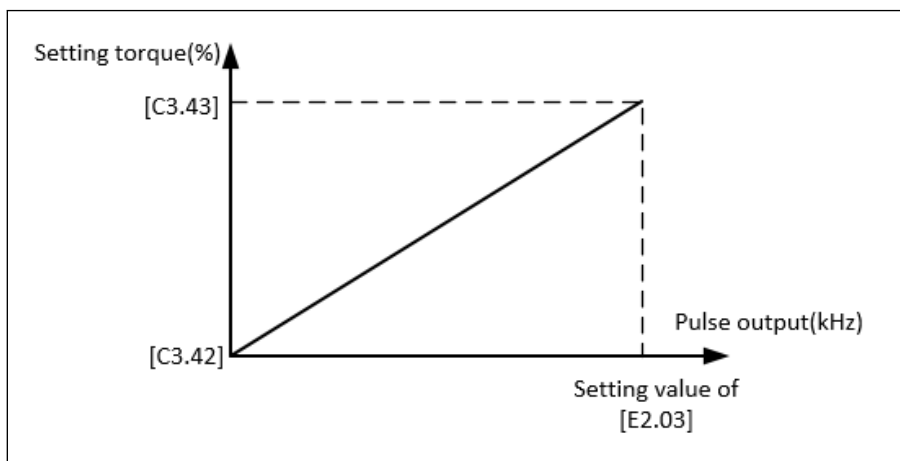


Fig. 12-88: Output torque

12.10.3 Relay Output

This function defines the relay output for system state monitoring.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E2.15	Relay 1 output selection	0...25	1	-	-	Stop
E2.20	DO1/relay1 output values from extension card fieldbus communication	Bit0: 0 (open collector is opened); 1 (open collector is closed) Bit8: 0 (Tb_Ta is opened); 1 (Tb_Ta is closed)	0x00000	-	-	Run

Setting range of E2.15:

- **0: Converter ready**

After power on, when no error happens, no run command, output active indicates that the converter is ready for running.

- **1: Converter running**

The output is active when the frequency converter is running and has frequency output (including 0.00 Hz).

- **2: Converter DC-braking**

The output is active when the converter is in the DC braking process at starting or stopping process. See [chapter 12.8.7 "Start Mode Configuration" on page 202](#) and [chapter 12.8.9 "Stop Mode Configuration" on page 208](#).

- **3: Converter running at zero speed**

The output is active when the frequency converter is running at zero speed.



There is no output for this selection during dead zone time of rotation direction change.

- **4: Speed arrival**

This function is used to detect the difference between the output frequency and the set frequency. The indicative signals are outputted when the difference between the output frequency and the set frequency is within the range set in [E2.70], see [chapter 12.10.5 "Frequency Detection Function" on page 250](#).

- **5: Frequency level detection signal (FDT1)**

- **6: Frequency level detection signal (FDT2)**

See [chapter 12.10.5 "Frequency Detection Function" on page 250](#).

- **7: Simple PLC stage complete**

- **8: Simple PLC cycle complete**

See [chapter 12.11 "E3: Multi-Speed and Simple PLC" on page 254](#).

- **10: Converter undervoltage**

The output is active when DC-bus voltage is lower than 170 VDC (1P/200 VAC models) / 300 VDC (3P 400 VAC models). The output will be inactive when DC-bus voltage resumes and becomes stable.

In addition, this digital output will be activated by any soft start error.

- **11: Converter overload pre-warning**

See [chapter 12.2.12 "Converter Overload Pre-Warning" on page 139](#).

- **12: Motor overload pre-warning**

See [chapter 12.3.6 "Motor Overload Pre-Warning" on page 157](#).

- **13: Converter stop by external error**

This signal is activated when the error "E.-St" is generated and deactivated when this error is reset. See [chapter 12.9.1 "Digital Input Configuration" on page 221](#) when digital input is set to '32: Error signal N.O. contact input' and '33: Error signal N.C. contact input'.

- **14: Converter error**

The output is active when an error occurs, inactive when the error is reset.

- **15: Converter OK**

The output is inactive when the frequency converter is powered off or encounters error / warning.

The output is active when the frequency converter is powered on but not running, or the frequency converter is running without error / warning.

- **16: Counter target value arrival**

- **17: Counter middle value arrival**

See [chapter 12.10.6 "Pulse Counter Function" on page 252](#).

- **18: PID reference engineering value arrival**

Used for PID function, see [chapter 12.12 "E4: PID Control" on page 268](#).

- **20: Torque control mode**

The output is active when the frequency converter is in torque control mode.

The output is inactive when the frequency converter is not in torque control mode.

- **21: Parameter setting from communication**

- For modbus mode, the output is defined by bit0 of register 0x7F08, when bit0 of register 0x7F08 is '0', open collector is opened; when bit0 of register 0x7F08 is '1', open collector is closed.

- For other fieldbus mode, the output is defined by bit0 of parameter E2.20, when bit0 of E2.20 is '0', open collector is opened; when bit0 of E2.20 is '1', open collector is closed.

- **25: Converter error or warning**

The output is active when the frequency converter encounters error / warning.

The output is inactive when the frequency converter without error / warning.



Digital output status is monitored by parameter d0.45 'DO1 output'.

12.10.4 Analog Output Configuration

The analog output terminal may output 0...10V voltage signals or 0...20mA current based on some system variables with adjustable gain setting.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E2.25	AO1 output mode	0: 0...10 V 1: 0...20 mA 3: 2...10V 4: 4...20 mA	0	-	-	Run
E2.26	AO1 output setting	0: Output frequency 1: Setting frequency 2: Output current 4: Output voltage 5: Output power 6: AI1 analog input 7: AI2 analog input 8: EAI1 analog input 9: EAI2 analog input 11: Motor temperature sensor power supply 12: Parameter setting from communication 13: Setting torque 14: Output torque	0	-	-	Run
E2.27	AO1 gain	0.00...10.00	1.00	-	0.01	Run
E2.28	AO1 value in percentage from extension card Fieldbus communication	0.00...100.00 %	0.00	-	0.01	Run
E2.40	Rated voltage	1P 200...240 VAC	220	VAC	1	Stop
		3P 380...480 VAC	380			
E2.50	Output curve 1 minimum	0.0 %...[E2.52]	0.0	-	0.1	Run
E2.51	Output curve 1 minimum value	0.00...100.00 %	0.00	-	0.01	Run
E2.52	Output curve 1 maximum	[E2.50]...100.0 %	100.0	-	0.1	Run
E2.53	Output curve 1 maximum value	0.00...100.00 %	100.00	-	0.01	Run

Analog output configuration step:**• Step 1: Set AO1 output mode**

E2.25 is for AO1 output mode selection, 0 is for voltage mode and 1 is for current mode.

• Step 2: Select AO1 output signal

E2.26 setting range:

– E2.26 = 0: Output frequency

Represents the actual output frequency between 0.00...[E0.08] Hz.

– E2.26 = 1: Setting frequency

Represents the setting frequency between 0.00...[E0.08] Hz.

– E2.26 = 2: Output current

Represents the 0...2 x [rated current].

– E2.26 = 4: Output voltage

Represents 0...1.2 x [rated voltage], which is defined by parameter E2.40.

– E2.26 = 5: Output power

Represents 0...1.2 x [rated power].

– E2.26 = 6: AI1 Analog input

Represents AI1 input value.

– E2.26 = 7: AI2 Analog input

Represents AI2 input value.

– E2.26 = 8: EAI1 analog input

Represents EAI1 analog input value from I/O card or I/O plus card.

– E2.26 = 9: EAI2 analog input

Represents EAI2 analog input value from I/O plus card.

– E2.26 = 11: Motor temperature sensor power supply

Provides current source for motor temperature sensor, see [chapter 12.3.7 "Motor Thermal Sensor Selection" on page 159](#).

– E2.26 = 12: Parameter setting from communication

– For Modbus mode, the output is defined by register 0x7F06. The value range of register is 0.00 %...100.00 % (It means percentage of maximum analog output value).

– For other Fieldbus mode, the output is defined by parameter E2.28.

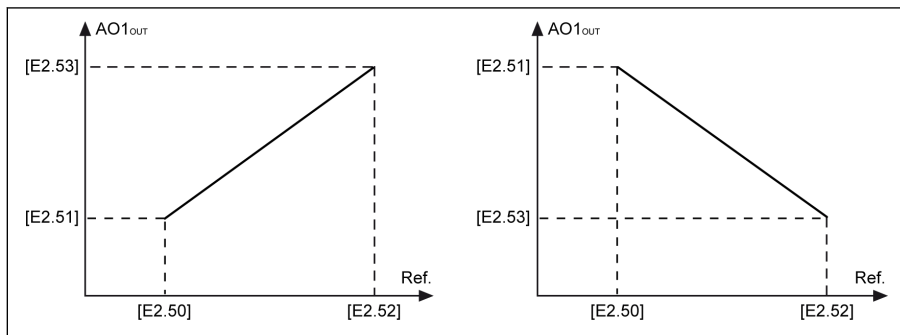
– E2.26 = 13: Setting torque

Represents range of setting torque selected using C3.42 and C3.43.

– E2.26 = 14: Output torque

Represents range of output torque selected using C3.42 and C3.43.

• Step 3: Set AO1 filter time and output curve



$AO1_{OUT}$ AO1 output

$Ref.$ Reference

Fig. 12-89: AO1 output curve



Analog output status is monitored by parameter d0.35 'AO1 output'.

12.10.5 Frequency Detection Function

This function is used to detect the difference between the output frequency and the setting frequency, the indication signal can be used for further engineering in the application.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E2.70	Frequency detection width	0.00...400.00 Hz	2.50	Hz	0.01	Run
E2.71	Frequency detection level FDT1	0.00...400.00 Hz	50.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E2.72	Frequency detection level FDT1 width	0.00...[E2.71] Hz	1.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E2.73	Frequency detection level FDT2	0.00...400.00 Hz	25.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E2.74	Frequency detection level FDT2 width	0.00...[E2.73] Hz	1.00	Hz	0.01	Run

● Frequency Arrival

Parameter E2.01, E2.15, H8.20, H8.21, H8.22, H9.00, H9.01, H9.02, H9.03 can be set to '4: Speed arrival' to configure the digital outputs to show this function.

The 'Speed arrival' signal is active on the selected output terminal when the difference between the 'Output frequency' and the 'Setting frequency' is within the range set by parameter E2.70 'Frequency detection width':

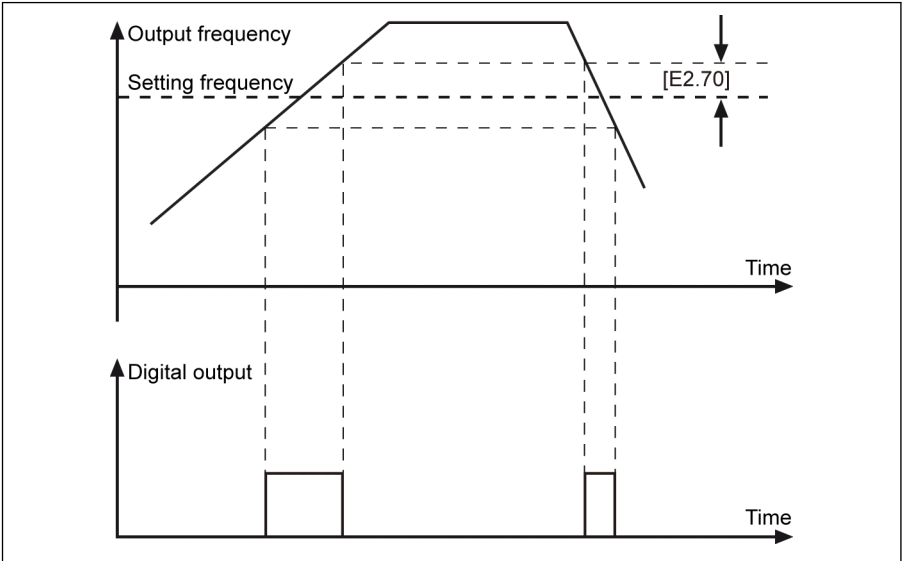


Fig. 12-90: Frequency arrival

● Frequency Level Detection

Parameter E2.01, E2.15, H8.20, H8.21, H8.22, H9.00, H9.01, H9.02, H9.03 can be set to '**5: Frequency level detection signal (FDT1)**' or '**6: Frequency level detection signal (FDT2)**' to configure the digital outputs to show this function.

The indication signal is active when the output frequency is **HIGHER** than the frequency detection level, and inactive when the output frequency is **LOWER** than the frequency detection level minus frequency detection level width.

The selected digital output signal and status are as below:

- 5: Frequency level detection signal (FDT1)
 - Active when 'Output frequency' is higher than [E2.71]
 - Inactive when 'Output frequency' is lower than [E2.71] - [E2.72]
- 6: Frequency level detection signal (FDT2)
 - Active when 'Output frequency' is higher than [E2.73]
 - Inactive when 'Output frequency' is lower than [E2.73] - [E2.74]

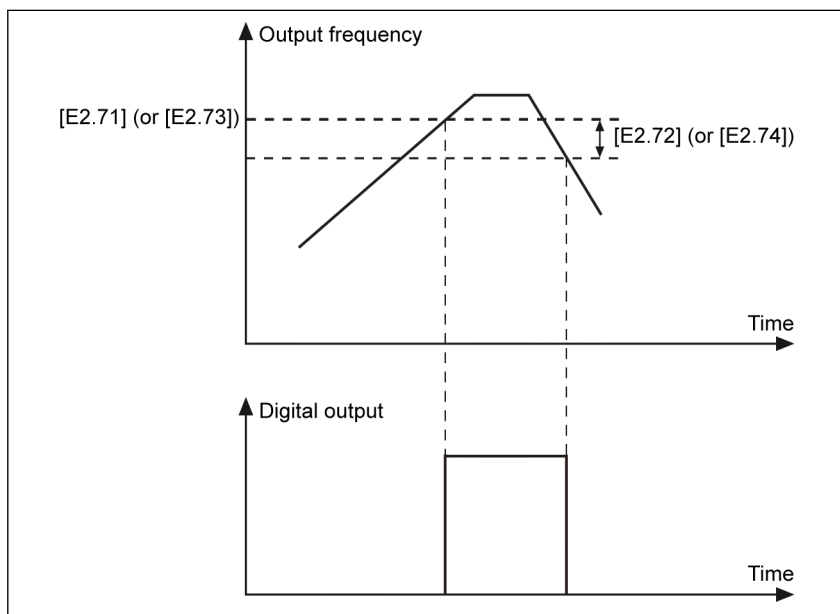


Fig. 12-91: Frequency level detection

12.10.6 Pulse Counter Function

The internal counter counts the input pulses received from 'Digital input' and compares it with the setting value of 'Counter middle value' or 'Counter target value'.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E2.80	Counter middle value	0...[E2.81]	0	-	1	Run
E2.81	Counter target value	[E2.80]...9,999	0	-	1	Run

Digital input E1.00... E1.04 and H8.00...H8.04 can be set to '39: Counter input' as pulse input.

By setting parameter E2.01, E2.15, H8.20, H8.21, H8.22, H9.00, H9.01, H9.02, H9.03 to '16: Counter target value arrival' or '17:Counter middle value arrival' output signal will be indicated via DO or Relay output when the counter value equals to that of setting value.

The counter is cleared and the DO or Relay output signal is reset by a valid edge signal of another digital input E1.00... E1.04 and H8.00...H8.04 defined as '40:Counter reset'.

Example:

X1 input is defined as '39: Counter input'.

X2 input is defined as '40: Counter reset'.

The wiring is shown as the figure below:

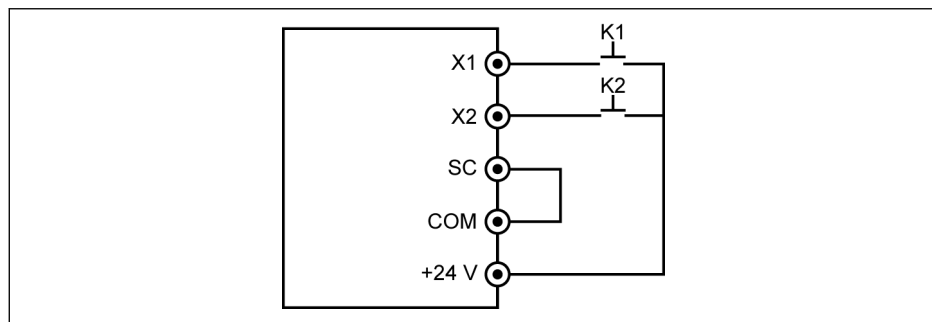


Fig. 12-92: Digital input configuration

Connected K1 to X1, and set [E1.00] = '39: Counter input'.

Connected K2 to X2, and set [E1.01] = '40: Counter reset'.

K1	K2	Running status	Status
Inactive	Inactive	–	–
Edge	Inactive	Counter value = [E2.80] / [E2.81]	Internal counter value stays at [E2.80] / [E2.81] Digital output is active
Edge	Edge	Counter is reset	Internal counter value is reset to '0' Digital output is inactive

Tab. 12-18: Counter function

'DO1 output' or 'Relay 1 output' signal and status are as below:

- [E2.01] / [E2.15] = '16: Counter target value arrival'
When the internal counter receives from 'X1 input' the number of input pulse, which equals to [E2.81] 'Counter target value'.
- [E2.01] / [E2.15] = '17: Counter middle value arrival'
When the internal counter receives from 'X1 input' the number of input pulse, which equals to [E2.80] 'Counter middle value'.

The signal is reset by the next valid edge signal of 'X2 input' which is defined as '40: Counter reset'.

Example:

[E2.80] = 5, [E2.81] = 8

The output behavior is described as below:

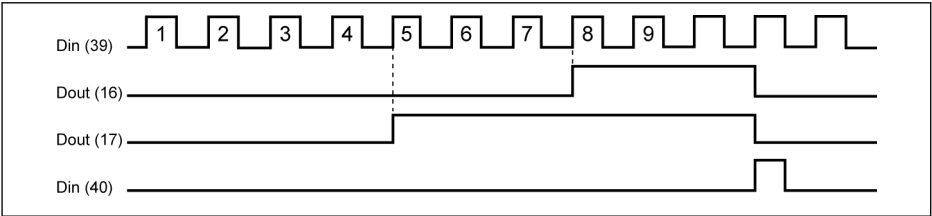


Fig. 12-93: Output behavior



- If the setting of any parameter E2.80, E2.81 and / or the status of the defined digital inputs is changed, the counter value will be re-set and the digital outputs will be inactive immediately.
- The allowed maximum digital input frequency is 50 Hz and the allowed minimum pulse width (both active and inactive) is higher than 8 ms.

12.11 E3: Multi-Speed and Simple PLC

12.11.1 Simple PLC and Multi-Speed Setting

Parameters

PLC is an automatic running mode according to the preset acceleration /deceleration time, running frequency, running time and rotation direction.

The multi-speed control shares some parameters with simple PLC control. If this control mode is active, the corresponding external terminals should be configured with correct values to realize this function.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E3.00	Simple PLC running mode	0: Inactive 1: Stop after selected cycle 2: Continuously cycling 3: Run last stage after selected cycle 4: Continuous cycling without decelerating to 0.00 Hz	0	-	-	Stop
E3.01	Simple PLC time multiplier	1...60	1	-	1	Stop
E3.02	Simple PLC cycle number	1...1,000	1	-	1	Stop
E3.10	Acceleration time 2	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	s	0.1	Run
E3.11	Deceleration time 2	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	s	0.1	Run
E3.12	Acceleration time 3	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	s	0.1	Run
E3.13	Deceleration time 3	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	s	0.1	Run
E3.14	Acceleration time 4	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	s	0.1	Run
E3.15	Deceleration time 4	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	s	0.1	Run
E3.16	Acceleration time 5	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	s	0.1	Run
E3.17	Deceleration time 5	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	s	0.1	Run
E3.18	Acceleration time 6	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	s	0.1	Run
E3.19	Deceleration time 6	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	s	0.1	Run
E3.20	Acceleration time 7	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	s	0.1	Run
E3.21	Deceleration time 7	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	s	0.1	Run
E3.22	Acceleration time 8	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	s	0.1	Run
E3.23	Deceleration time 8	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	s	0.1	Run
E3.40	Multi-speed frequency 1	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E3.41	Multi-speed frequency 2	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E3.42	Multi-speed frequency 3	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E3.43	Multi-speed frequency 4	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E3.44	Multi-speed frequency 5	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E3.45	Multi-speed frequency 6	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E3.46	Multi-speed frequency 7	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E3.47	Multi-speed frequency 8	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E3.48	Multi-speed frequency 9	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E3.49	Multi-speed frequency 10	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E3.50	Multi-speed frequency 11	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E3.51	Multi-speed frequency 12	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E3.52	Multi-speed frequency 13	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E3.53	Multi-speed frequency 14	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E3.54	Multi-speed frequency 15	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	-	0.01	Run
E3.59	Stage 0 frequency source	0: Digital setting frequency 1: AI1 analog input 2: AI2 analog input 3: EAI1 analog input 4: X5 pulse input 5: Communication 6: Panel potentiometer 7: Digital input up/down command 8: EAI2 analog input	0	-	-	Stop

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E3.60	Stage 0 action	011, 012, 013, 014, 015,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.62	Stage 1 action	016, 017, 018, 021, 022,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.64	Stage 2 action	023, 024, 025, 026, 027,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.66	Stage 3 action	028, 031, 032, 033, 034,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.68	Stage 4 action	035, 036, 037, 038, 041,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.70	Stage 5 action	042, 043, 044, 045, 046,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.72	Stage 6 action	047, 048, 051, 052, 053,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.74	Stage 7 action	054, 055, 056, 057, 058,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.76	Stage 8 action	061, 062, 063, 064, 065,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.78	Stage 9 action	066, 067, 068, 071, 072,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.80	Stage 10 action	073, 074, 075, 076, 077,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.82	Stage 11 action	078, 081, 082, 083, 084,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.84	Stage 12 action	085, 086, 087, 088, 111,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.86	Stage 13 action	112, 113, 114, 115, 116,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.88	Stage 14 action	117, 118, 121, 122, 123,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.90	Stage 15 action	124, 125, 126, 127, 128,	011	-	-	Stop
		131, 132, 133, 134, 135,	011	-	-	Stop
		136, 137, 138, 141, 142,	011	-	-	Stop
		143, 144, 145, 146, 147,	011	-	-	Stop
		148, 151, 152, 153, 154,	011	-	-	Stop
		155, 156, 157, 158, 161,	011	-	-	Stop
		162, 163, 164, 165, 166,	011	-	-	Stop
		167, 168, 171, 172, 173,	011	-	-	Stop
		174, 175, 176, 177, 178,	011	-	-	Stop
		181, 182, 183, 184, 185,	011	-	-	Stop
		186, 187, 188	011	-	-	Stop
E3.61	Stage 0 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	s	0.1	Stop
E3.63	Stage 1 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	s	0.1	Stop
E3.65	Stage 2 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	s	0.1	Stop
E3.67	Stage 3 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	s	0.1	Stop
E3.69	Stage 4 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	s	0.1	Stop
E3.71	Stage 5 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	s	0.1	Stop
E3.73	Stage 6 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	s	0.1	Stop
E3.75	Stage 7 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	s	0.1	Stop
E3.77	Stage 8 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	s	0.1	Stop
E3.79	Stage 9 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	s	0.1	Stop
E3.81	Stage 10 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	s	0.1	Stop
E3.83	Stage 11 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	s	0.1	Stop
E3.85	Stage 12 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	s	0.1	Stop
E3.87	Stage 13 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	s	0.1	Stop
E3.89	Stage 14 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	s	0.1	Stop
E3.91	Stage 15 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	s	0.1	Stop

Multi-Speed Setting

Multi-speed function offers flexible, switchable 16 independent stages of setting frequency. The rotation direction of each stage depends on both the 'Stage action' and the 'Run command source', see the table below:

Frequency source	Run command source	Rotation direction	Acc. / Dec. time
Multi-speed	Operating panel	[E3.60], [E3.62], [E3.64], [E3.66]	[E0.26] / [E0.27]
		[E3.68], [E3.70], [E3.72], [E3.74]	[E3.10] / [E3.11]
		[E3.76], [E3.78], [E3.80], [E3.82]	[E3.12] / [E3.13]
		[E3.84], [E3.86], [E3.88], [E3.90]	[E3.14] / [E3.15]
	External terminals	8 or less stages: 2-wire control	[E3.16] / [E3.17]
		9 or more stages: parameters	[E3.18] / [E3.19]
	Communication	Set by communication	[E3.20] / [E3.21] [E3.22] / [E3.23]

Tab. 12-19: Setting frequency and multi-speed settings
To configure the multi-speed settings, take the following steps:

Step 1: Activate multi-speed function

Set E0.00 or E0.02 to '21: Multi-speed settings' to activate multi-speed function.

Step 2: Select any 4 digital inputs and define functions accordingly

Select any 4 digital inputs of E1.00...E1.04, H8.00...H8.04 to '1: Multi-speed control input 1', '2: Multi-speed control input 2', '3: Multi-speed control input 3', '4: Multi-speed control input 4'.

Assign functions to digital inputs properly when 'Acceleration / deceleration time activation' and '2-wire / 3-wire running control' are also necessary defined via digital inputs.

Step 3: Configure the setting frequency for each stage

If the setting frequency of next stage is lower than that of the current stage, it will decelerate to the next stage with the deceleration time of the current stage; if the setting frequency of next stage is higher than that of the current stage, it will accelerate to the next stage with the acceleration time of next stage.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E3.40	Multi-speed frequency 1	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E3.41	Multi-speed frequency 2	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E3.42	Multi-speed frequency 3	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E3.43	Multi-speed frequency 4	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E3.44	Multi-speed frequency 5	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E3.45	Multi-speed frequency 6	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E3.46	Multi-speed frequency 7	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E3.47	Multi-speed frequency 8	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E3.48	Multi-speed frequency 9	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E3.49	Multi-speed frequency 10	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E3.50	Multi-speed frequency 11	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E3.51	Multi-speed frequency 12	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E3.52	Multi-speed frequency 13	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E3.53	Multi-speed frequency 14	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E3.54	Multi-speed frequency 15	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	-	0.01	Run

Step 4: Set the acceleration time / deceleration time, rotation direction for each stage

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E3.60	Stage 0 action	011, 012, 013,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.62	Stage 1 action	014, 015, 016 ,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.64	Stage 2 action	017, 018, 021,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.66	Stage 3 action	022, 023, 024,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.68	Stage 4 action	025, 026, 027,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.70	Stage 5 action	028, 031, 032,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.72	Stage 6 action	033, 034, 035,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.74	Stage 7 action	036, 037, 038,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.76	Stage 8 action	041, 042, 043,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.78	Stage 9 action	044, 045, 046,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.80	Stage 10 action	047, 048, 051,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.82	Stage 11 action	052, 053, 054,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.84	Stage 12 action	055, 056, 057,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.86	Stage 13 action	058, 061, 062,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.88	Stage 14 action	063, 064, 065,	011	-	-	Stop
E3.90	Stage 15 action	066, 067, 068, 071, 072, 073, 074, 075, 076, 077, 078, 081, 082, 083, 084, 085, 086, 087, 088, 111, 112, 113, 114, 115, 116, 117, 118, 121, 122, 123, 124, 125, 126, 127, 128, 131, 132, 133, 134, 135, 136, 137, 138, 141, 142, 143, 144, 145, 146, 147, 148, 151, 152, 153, 154, 155, 156, 157, 158, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165, 166, 167, 168, 171, 172, 173, 174, 175, 176, 177, 178, 181, 182, 183, 184, 185, 186, 187, 188	011	-	-	Stop
E0.26	Acceleration time	0.1...6,000.0 s	DOM	s	0.1	Run
E0.27	Deceleration time	0.1...6,000.0 s	DOM	s	0.1	Run
E3.10	Acceleration time 2	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	s	0.1	Run
E3.11	Deceleration time 2	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	s	0.1	Run

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E3.12	Acceleration time 3	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	s	0.1	Run
E3.13	Deceleration time 3	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	s	0.1	Run
E3.14	Acceleration time 4	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	s	0.1	Run
E3.15	Deceleration time 4	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	s	0.1	Run
E3.16	Acceleration time 5	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	s	0.1	Run
E3.17	Deceleration time 5	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	s	0.1	Run
E3.18	Acceleration time 6	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	s	0.1	Run
E3.19	Deceleration time 6	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	s	0.1	Run
E3.20	Acceleration time 7	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	s	0.1	Run
E3.21	Deceleration time 7	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	s	0.1	Run
E3.22	Acceleration time 8	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	s	0.1	Run
E3.23	Deceleration time 8	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	s	0.1	Run

The digit definition for each stage action is as the figure below:

Digit:	Hundreds	Tens	Unit
Example:	0	1	1
Rotation direction Forward (FWD)..... = 0 Reverse (REV)..... = 1 Acceleration time [E0.26] Acceleration time = 1 [E3.10] Acceleration time 2..... = 2 [E3.12] Acceleration time 3..... = 3 [E3.14] Acceleration time 4..... = 4 [E3.16] Acceleration time 5..... = 5 [E3.18] Acceleration time 6..... = 6 [E3.20] Acceleration time 7..... = 7 [E3.22] Acceleration time 8..... = 8 Deceleration time [E0.27] Deceleration time..... = 1 [E3.11] Deceleration time 2..... = 2 [E3.13] Deceleration time 3..... = 3 [E3.15] Deceleration time 4..... = 4 [E3.17] Deceleration time 5..... = 5 [E3.19] Deceleration time 6..... = 6 [E3.21] Deceleration time 7..... = 7 [E3.23] Deceleration time 8..... = 8			

Fig. 12-94: Bit definition of rotation direction, acceleration and deceleration time

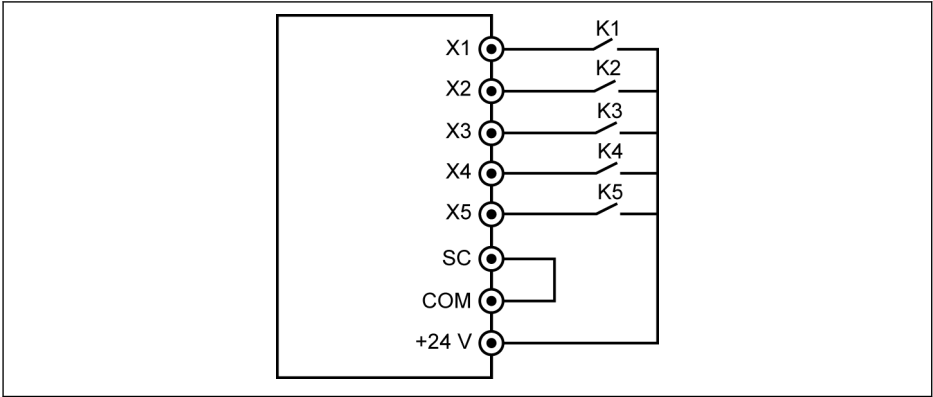


Fig. 12-95: Multi-speed control via digital inputs

Case 1: 8 or less stages

Set [E1.15] = 0 or 1 first.

Connect switch K1 to X1, and set [E1.00] = '1: Multi-speed control input 1'.

Connect switch K2 to X2, and set [E1.01] = '2: Multi-speed control input 2'.

Connect switch K3 to X3, and set [E1.02] = '3: Multi-speed control input 3'.

Connect switch K4 to X4, and set [E1.03] = '35: Forward running (FWD)'.

Connect switch K5 to X5, and set [E1.04] = '36: Reverse running (REV)'.

K3	K2	K1	Setting frequency	Acc. / Dec. time
Open	Open	Open	[E0.07]	[E0.26] / [E0.27]
Open	Open	Closed	[E3.40]	[E3.10] / [E3.11]
Open	Closed	Open	[E3.41]	[E3.12] / [E3.13]
Open	Closed	Closed	[E3.42]	[E3.14] / [E3.15]
Closed	Open	Open	[E3.43]	[E3.16] / [E3.17]
Closed	Open	Closed	[E3.44]	[E3.18] / [E3.19]
Closed	Closed	Open	[E3.45]	[E3.20] / [E3.21]
Closed	Closed	Closed	[E3.46]	[E3.22] / [E3.23]

Tab. 12-20: Multi-speed settings for 8 or less stages

The running logic for K4 and K5 see [chapter 12.9.2 "2- and 3-Wire Control" on page 226](#) E1.15 = '0: 2-wire forward / stop, reverse / stop' and E1.15 = '1: 2-wire forward / reverse, run / stop'.

Case 2: 9 or more stages

Set [E1.15] = 4 first.

Connect switch K1 to X1, and set [E1.00] = '1: Multi-speed control input 1'.

Connect switch K2 to X2, and set [E1.01] = '2: Multi-speed control input 2'.

Connect switch K3 to X3, and set [E1.02] = '3: Multi-speed control input 3'.

Connect switch K4 to X4, and set [E1.03] = '4: Multi-speed control input 4'.

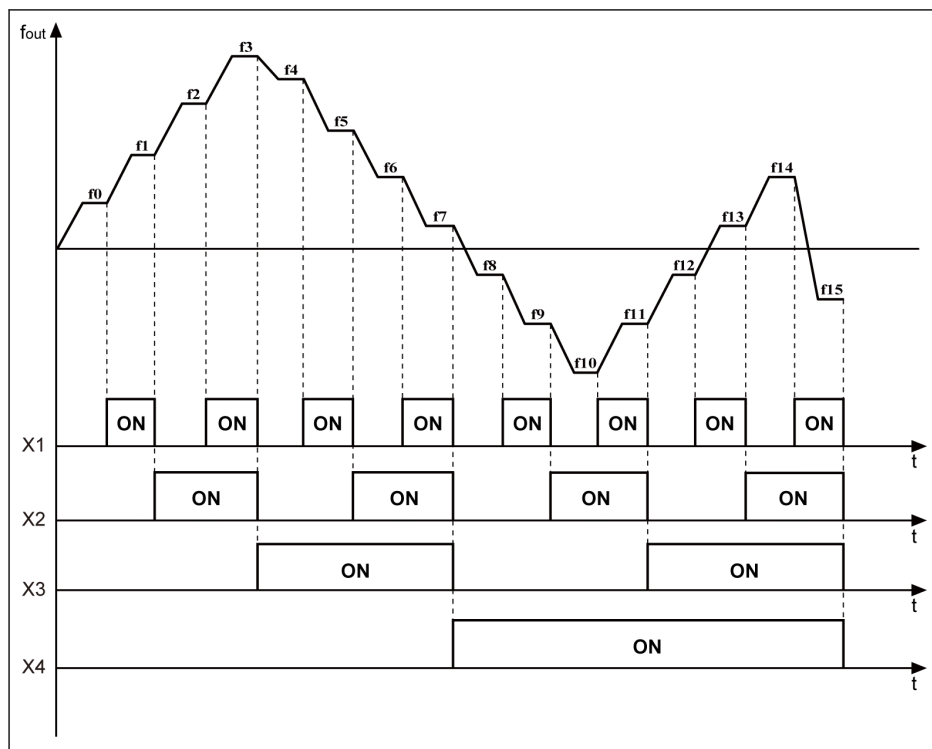
Connect switch K5 to X5, and set [E1.04] = '35: Forward running (FWD)'.

K4	K3	K2	K1	Setting frequency	Acc. / Dec. time
Open	Open	Open	Open	[E0.07]	[E0.26] / [E0.27]
Open	Open	Open	Closed	[E3.40]	[E3.10] / [E3.11]
Open	Open	Closed	Open	[E3.41]	[E3.12] / [E3.13]
Open	Open	Closed	Closed	[E3.42]	[E3.14] / [E3.15]
Open	Closed	Open	Open	[E3.43]	[E3.16] / [E3.17]
Open	Closed	Open	Closed	[E3.44]	[E3.18] / [E3.19]
Open	Closed	Closed	Open	[E3.45]	[E3.20] / [E3.21]
Open	Closed	Closed	Closed	[E3.46]	[E3.22] / [E3.23]
Closed	Open	Open	Open	[E3.47]	[E0.26] / [E0.27]
Closed	Open	Open	Closed	[E3.48]	[E3.10] / [E3.11]
Closed	Open	Closed	Open	[E3.49]	[E3.12] / [E3.13]
Closed	Open	Closed	Closed	[E3.50]	[E3.14] / [E3.15]
Closed	Closed	Open	Open	[E3.51]	[E3.16] / [E3.17]
Closed	Closed	Open	Closed	[E3.52]	[E3.18] / [E3.19]
Closed	Closed	Closed	Open	[E3.53]	[E3.20] / [E3.21]
Closed	Closed	Closed	Closed	[E3.54]	[E3.22] / [E3.23]

Tab. 12-21: Multi-speed settings for 9 or more stages

K5	Status
Inactive	Stop
Active	Run

Tab. 12-22: Run / Stop control via K5



f_{out} Output frequency
 t Time

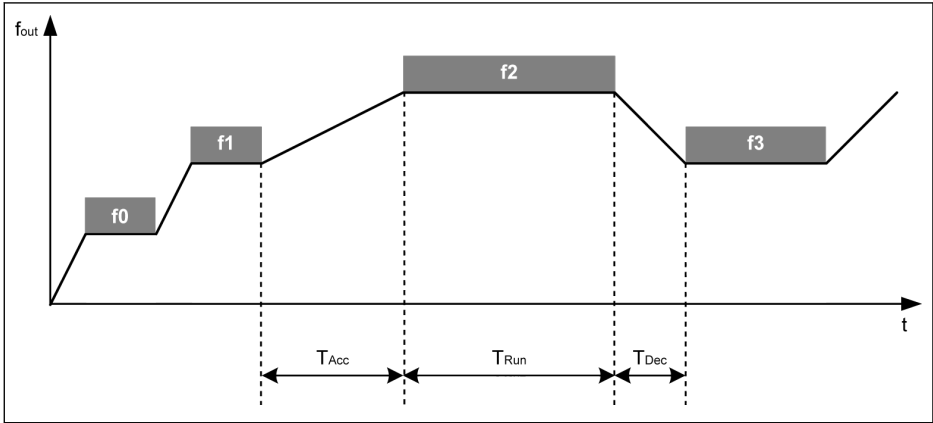
ON Digital input switched on

Fig. 12-96: Multi-speed stage transition

Simple PLC setting

Simple PLC is an automatic running mode based on the current acceleration / deceleration time, setting frequency, duration and rotation direction.

Simple PLC consists of 16 stages, each of which has its own settings of acceleration time, deceleration time, setting frequency, rotation direction and duration. An example of simple PLC control is shown in the figure below:



f_{out} Output frequency
 t Time
 T_{Acc} Acceleration time

T_{Run} Stage running time
 T_{Dec} Deceleration time

Fig. 12-97: Example of simple PLC control

Frequency source	Run command source	Rotation direction and Acc. / Dec. time
Simple PLC	Operating panel	[E3.60], [E3.62], [E3.64], [E3.66]
	Multi-function digital input	[E3.68], [E3.70], [E3.72], [E3.74]
	Communication	[E3.76], [E3.78], [E3.80], [E3.82]
		[E3.84], [E3.86], [E3.88], [E3.90]

Tab. 12-23: Simple PLC configuration

Set the Simple PLC Mode:

- E3.00 = 0: Inactive**
Simple PLC inactive.
- E3.00 = 1: Stop after selected cycle**
In this mode, the frequency converter decelerates to 0.00 Hz after the last stage of simple PLC, and then stops according to the configured stopping mode.
- E3.00 = 2: Continuously cycling**
In this mode, the frequency converter decelerates to 0.00 Hz after the last stage of simple PLC, and then starts a new cycle automatically.
- E3.00 = 3: Run last stage after selected cycle**
In this mode, the frequency converter keeps running at the setting frequency of the last stage of simple PLC.
- [E3.00] = 4: Continuous cycling without decelerating to 0.00 Hz**
In this mode, the frequency converter doesn't decelerate to 0.00 Hz after the last stage of simple PLC, and starts a new cycle directly.

The actual duration for each stage is defined by following equation (Take stage 0 as an example):

$$T_{\text{Run}} = [E3.61] \times [E3.01]$$

Based on the equation above, the maximum duration of one cycle is:

$$8 \times 6,000.0 \text{ s} \times 60 = 800 \text{ hours.}$$



For the settings of acceleration time, deceleration time, setting frequency, rotation direction of each 16 stages definition, see multi-speed setting above.



- If a stage running time is set to 0, simple PLC skips that stage.
- 'PID control' has a higher priority than 'Simple PLC control'. To use 'Simple PLC control', deactivate 'PID control' first.

Stop and Pause Simple PLC Control

Active 'Simple PLC control' can be stopped or paused by configuration of digital inputs E1.00...E1.04, H8.00...H8.04 to '26: Simple PLC stop' or '27: Simple PLC pause'.

• 26: Simple PLC stop

The frequency converter stops output till next 'Run command' is active, and the motor freewheels to stop.

• 27: Simple PLC pause

'PLC control' is paused and the frequency converter decelerates to run at 0 Hz till the pause signal is inactive.

A typical simple PLC pause process is as listed in the table below:

Step	Simple PLC pause	Run command	Converter status	Description
1	Inactive	Active	Run	Simple PLC cycles with each stage
2	Active	Active	Decelerating to 0 Hz (No stop DC-braking)	Dec. time is according to current simple PLC stage setting
3	Inactive	Active	Accelerate to previous stage	Acc. Time is according to previous simple PLC stage setting before pause

Step	Simple PLC pause	Run command	Converter status	Description
4	Inactive	Inactive	Stop	Stop according to [E0.50]
5	Inactive	Active	Run	Restart from 1 st simple PLC stage

Tab. 12-24: Typical simple PLC pause process

Indication of Simple PLC Status

An indication signal is active via 'DO output' or 'Relay output' when a simple PLC cycle or stage is complete.

Define the output with respective indication signals by setting E2.01, E2.15, H8.20, H8.21, H8.22, H9.00, H9.01, H9.02, H9.03 to '7: Simple PLC stage complete' or '8: Simple PLC cycle complete'.

● **7: Simple PLC stage complete**

When a stage is complete, a pulse signal is active for the duration of 0.5 s. Any stage with running time of 0.0 s will be skipped without pulse output.

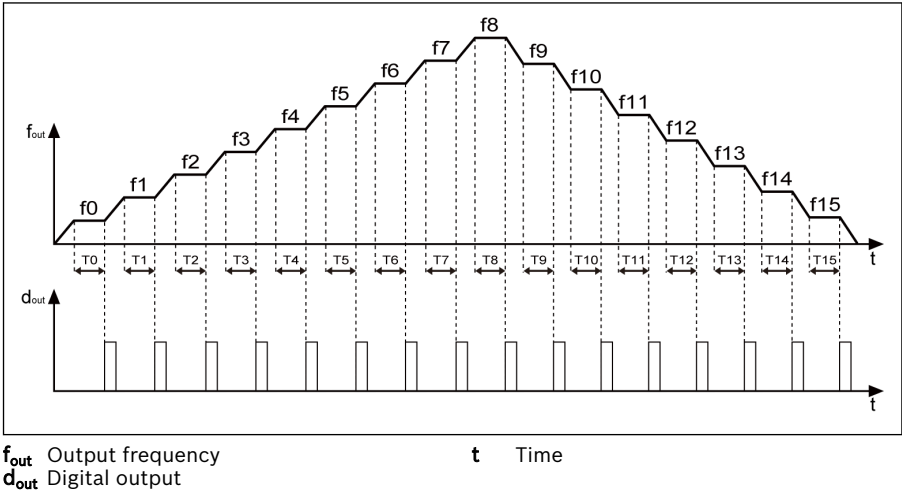


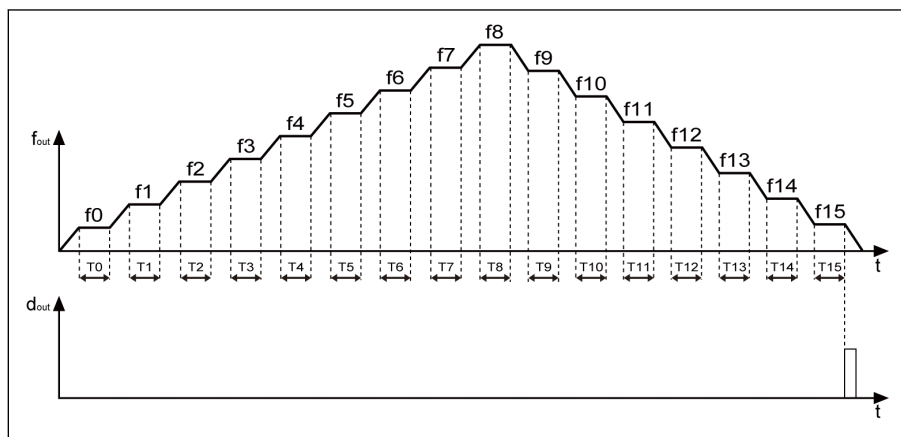
Fig. 12-98: Simple PLC stage complete

1. If the running time of one stage is so short that it finishes before the 'Simple PLC stage complete' signal of the previous stage is deactivated, the signal remains active and the pulse duration calculation is restarted.
2. If the setting frequency of next stage is lower than that of the current stage, the frequency converter decelerates to the next stage with the deceleration time of current stage.

3. If the setting frequency of next stage is higher than that of the current stage, the frequency converter accelerates to the next stage with the acceleration time of next stage.

- **8: Simple PLC cycle complete**

When a cycle is complete, a pulse signal is active for the duration of 0.5 s.



f_{out} Output frequency

t Time

d_{out} Digital out

Fig. 12-99: Simple PLC cycle complete

12.12 E4: PID Control

12.12.1 PID Control Setting

Parameters

PID control is used in process controls such as flow control, pressure control, temperature control, and in control of other engineering values. In PID control, a negative feedback system is formed with proportional, integral and derivative operations based on the differences between reference values and their feedback. In this way, the difference between the actual output and the reference is reduced.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E4.00	PID reference channel	0: Inactive 1: Panel potentiometer 2: Panel button 3: AI1 analog input 4: AI2 analog input 5: X5 pulse input 6: EAI1 analog input 7: Communication 8: Analog reference E4.03 9: Speed reference E4.04 10: EAI2 analog input	0	-	–	Stop
E4.01	PID feedback channel	0: AI1 analog input 1: AI2 analog input 2: X5 pulse input 3: EAI1 analog input 4: Encoder card speed 5: EAI2 analog input	0	-	–	Stop
E4.02	PID reference / feedback factor	0.01...100.00	1.00	-	0.01	Run
E4.03	PID engineering analog reference	0.00...10.00	0.00	-	0.01	Run
E4.04	PID engineering speed reference	0...30,000 rpm	0	rpm	1	Run
E4.05	PID feedback polarity	0: Positive; 1: Negative	0	-	–	Stop
E4.15	Proportional gain - P	0.000...60.000	1.500	-	0.001	Run

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E4.16	Integral time - Ti	0.00...100.00 s (0.00: no integral)	1.50	s	0.01	Run
E4.17	Derivative time - Td	0.00...100.00 s (0.00: no derivative)	0.00	s	0.01	Run
E4.18	Sampling period - T	0.01...100.00 s	0.50	s	0.01	Run
E4.19	PID feed forward dynamic limit	0.00...100.00 %	10.00	-	0.01	Run
E4.20	PID feed forward minimum value	0.00...100.00 %	0.00	-	0.01	Run
E4.30	PID deadband	0.0...20.0 %	2.0	-	0.1	Run
E4.31	PID regulation mode	0, 1	0	-	-	Run
E4.32	PID engineering value detection width	0.01...100.00	1.00	-	0.01	Run
E4.33	PID feed forward settings	0: Inactive; 1: Active	0	-	-	Stop

The basic control principle is shown as the figure below:

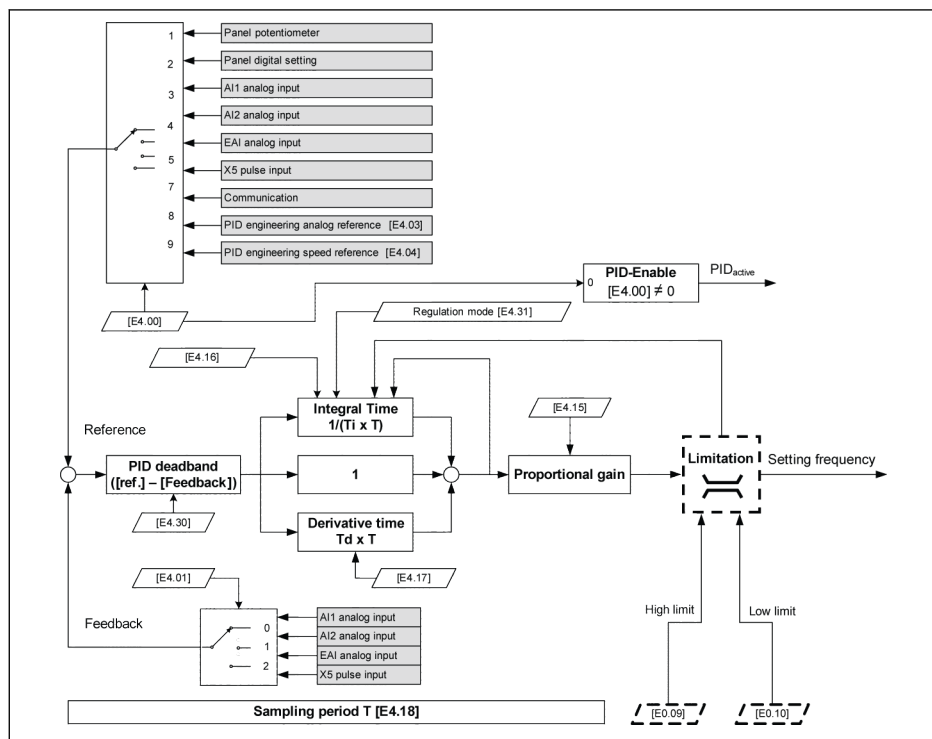


Fig. 12-100: PID control principle

Selecting the Reference and Feedback

Before using PID control function make sure [E1.00]...[E1.04] ≠ '41: PID deactivation'.

Take the following steps to configure the PID reference:

Step 1: Select the PID reference channel

- [E4.00] = 0: Inactive

The PID control function is inactive.

- [E4.00] = 1: Panel potentiometer

The reference value is set by adjusting the potentiometer on the operating panel.

- [E4.00] = 2: Panel button

The reference value is set by E0.07 'Digital setting frequency', which can be decreased or increased by pressing the <▼> or <▲> buttons on the operating panel respectively when the frequency converter is running.

- [E4.00] = 3: AI1 analog input

The reference value is set by AI1 analog input.

- **[E4.00] = 4: AI2 analog input**

The reference value is set by AI2 analog input.

- **[E4.00] = 5: X5 pulse input**

The reference value is set by pulse signal via X5 input.

- **[E4.00] = 6: EAI1 analog input**

The reference value is set by EAI1 analog input.

- **[E4.00] = 7: Communication**

The reference value is set by engineering software, PLC or other external devices via Modbus or other communication.

- **[E4.00] = 8: Analog reference E4.03**

The reference value is set by parameter E4.03.

- **[E4.00] = 9: Speed reference E4.04**

The reference value is set by parameter E4.04.

- **[E4.00] = 10: EAI2 analog input**

The reference value is set by EAI2 analog input.

Step 2: Select the PID feedback channel

- **[E4.01] = 0: AI1 analog input**

Feedback value is set by AI1 analog input.

- **[E4.01] = 1: AI2 analog input**

Feedback value is set by AI2 analog input.

- **[E4.01] = 2: X5 pulse input**

Feedback value is set by X5 pulse input.

- **[E4.01] = 3: EAI1 analog input**

Feedback value is set by EAI1 analog input.

- **[E4.01] = 4: Encoder card speed**

Feedback value is set by encoder card speed.

- **[E4.01] = 5: EAI2 analog input**

Feedback value is set by EAI2 analog input.

PID feedback polarity

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E4.05	PID feedback polarity	0: Positive 1: Negative	0	-	-	Stop

By default, E4.05 is '0: Positive', "**Reference- Feedback**" is used for PID regulation, which is used when feedback value will **rise** when output frequency **rises**.

When E4.05 is set to '1: Negative', then **"Feedback- Reference"** is used for PID regulation, which is used when feedback value will **drop** when output frequency **raises**.

E4.05	PID Output	PID Feedback
0: Positive	↑	↑
	↓	↓
1: Negative	↑	↓
	↓	↑

Tab. 12-25: PID feedback polarity

Control Loop Configuration

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E4.15	Proportional gain - P	0.000...60.000	1.500	-	0.001	Run
E4.16	Integral time - Ti	0.00...100.00 s (0.00: no integral)	1.50	s	0.01	Run
E4.17	Derivative time - Td	0.00...100.00 s (0.00: no derivative)	0.00	s	0.01	Run
E4.18	Sampling period - T	0.01...100.00 s	0.50	s	0.01	Run

Proportional gain - P: Decides the gain of deviation

- Larger P means larger scale and faster response, but excessively large P leads to oscillation.
- P cannot eliminate deviation completely.

Integral time - Ti: Used to eliminate the deviation

- Smaller Ti means faster response of the frequency converter to deviation changes, but excessively small Ti leads to oscillation.
- If Ti = 0, integration is deactivated during PID control.
 - Integration stops but the integral value is kept.
 - Integration continues if Ti ≠ 0.

Derivative time - Td: Used to respond fast to changes of deviation between reference and feedback.

- Larger Td means faster response, but excessively large Td leads to oscillation.
- If Td = 0, derivative is deactivated during PID control.
 - Derivative stops and its value is reset to '0'.

Sampling period - T: Sampling time in PID control

The value should match with the selected time constant Ti or Td, normally shorter than 1/5 of the time constant.

PID Regulation Mode Setting

Parameter [E4.30] 'PID deadband' is used to set the limit of the deviation between reference and feedback value. When the difference is within the defined 'PID deadband', PID control stops to bring a stable output.

When the PID output reaches [E0.09] 'Output frequency high limit' or [E0.10] 'Output frequency low limit' in PID control, following modes that is defined by Parameter [E4.31] 'PID regulation mode' are available for PID regulation:

[E4.31] = 0: Stop integral regulation when frequency arrives at upper / lower limit

When the difference between the reference values and the feedback values changes, the integral value follows immediately the difference. When the setting frequency reaches the limits, the integration stops, and the integral value remains unchanged. This mode is used in applications with fast change reference values.

[E4.31] = 1: Continue integral regulation when frequency arrives at upper / lower limit

When the PID output reaches the limits, the integral continues up to its possible numerical limit.

This mode is used in applications with stable reference values. When the difference between reference and feedback changes, more time is needed to eliminate the impact of accumulated integral regulation before the integral value can follow the change in the trend.

PID Feedforward Control

PID feedforward controls the process item through amending the output frequency setting with the fine tuning signal of PID output. Before using this function, users need set [E4.00] $\neq 0$, and E4.33 should be set refer to the following choice:

- 0: PID feedforward inactive. If [E4.00] $\neq 0$, the given frequency is set by PID output.
- 1: PID feedforward activate. If [E4.00] $\neq 0$, the given frequency is set by the result of PID output plus the main frequency setting; the given frequency is set by parameter E0.00 "First frequency setting source", and be obtained through Acc / Dcc module.

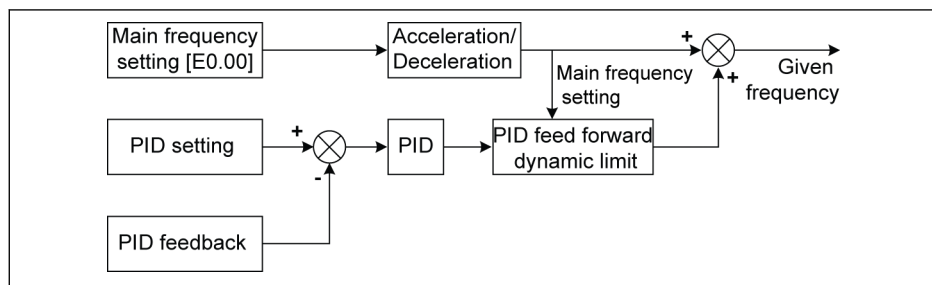


Fig. 12-101: PID feedforward

The parameters E4.19 and E4.20 are both used for limiting the value of PID feedforward. E4.19 is the percentage relative to the main frequency, and E4.20 is the percentage relative to E0.08.

So, the range of PID feedforward frequency is:

$-\text{Min}\{[E4.19] \times \text{Main frequency} + [E4.20] \times [E0.08], [E0.09]\} \dots \text{Min}\{[E4.19] \times \text{Main frequency} + [E4.20] \times [E0.08], [E0.09]\}$

PID Deactivation by Digital Input

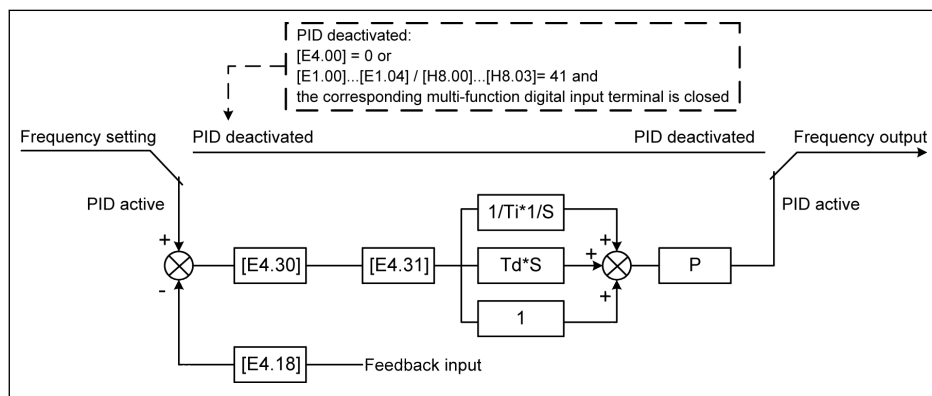


Fig. 12-102: PID deactivation by digital input

The PID control is deactivated in the following ways:

- 'PID reference channel' [E4.00] = '0: No PID control' or
- 'X1...X4 input' [E1.00]...[E1.04] or 'EX1...EX4 input' [H8.00]...[H8.03] = '41: PID deactivation' and respective multi-function digital input terminal is active.

PID Status Indication

[E4.32] 'PID engineering value detection width' is used to set the tolerance window between [d0.70] 'PID reference engineering value' and [d0.71] 'PID feed-

back engineering value'. When the difference between reference and feedback is within the detection width, the value arrival signal will be active via DO1 output.

Set [E4.32] = $\left| [d0.70] - [d0.71] \right| / [d0.70] \times 100 \%$

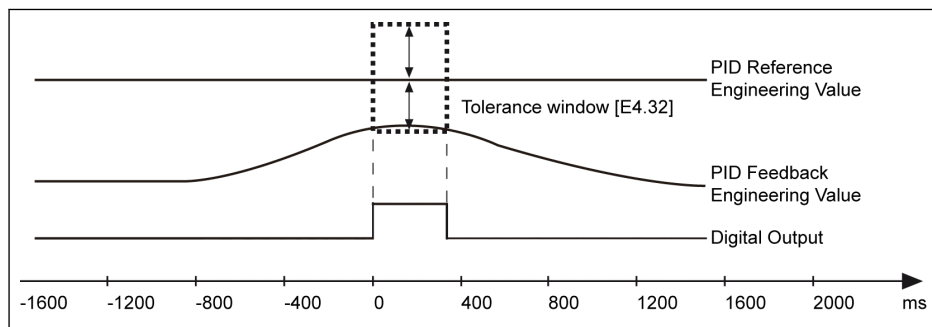


Fig. 12-103: PID engineering value detection width

12.13 E5: Extended Application Functions

12.13.1 High Resolution Current Display

E5.01 is used to set the time constant of dynamic output current in applications where a high resolution value with two decimals are required for monitoring or control. The high resolution output current can be monitored via d0.98.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E5.01	High resolution output current filter time	5...500 ms	40	ms	1	Run

12.13.2 Speed Display Scaling

This function is used to display an engineering value which is convenient for the application engineering with scaling the output value.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E5.02	User-defined speed scaling factor	0.01...100.00	1.00	-	0.01	Run

Follow the equations below:

- User-defined setting speed:
 $[d0.04] = [d0.02] \times [E5.02]$
- User-defined output speed:
 $[d0.05] = [d0.00] \times [E5.02]$

12.13.3 Pump Dry and Leakage Protection

This function defines two modes of pump protection:

- Pump dry protection: Protecting the pump from running without water load (e.g., water pump without water)
- Pump leakage protection: Protecting the pump from running with leakage

Both protection modes are realized by comparing the PID feedback with the PID reference when the frequency converter is running at [E0.09] 'Output frequency high limit'.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E5.05	Pump dry protection threshold	0.0 %... [E5.08]	30.0	-	0.1	Run
E5.06	Pump dry protection delay	0.0...300.0 s (0.0 s: Inactive)	0.0	-	0.1	Run
E5.07	Pump dry protection delay at start-up	0.0...300.0 s	30.0	s	0.1	Run
E5.08	Pump leakage protection threshold	0.0...100.0 %	50.0	-	0.1	Run
E5.09	Pump leakage protection delay	0.0...600.0 s (0.0 s: Inactive)	0.0	s	0.1	Run
E5.10	Pump leakage protection delay at start-up	0.0...600.0 s	60.0	s	0.1	Run

The conditions to trigger the pump dry protection:

- Frequency converter runs at the [E0.09] 'Output frequency high limit'
- $([\text{PID feedback}] \div [\text{PID reference}]) < [\text{E5.05}]$ 'Pump dry protection threshold'
- Duration $\geq [\text{E5.06}]$ 'Pump dry protection delay'

When the pump dry protection is triggered, the error code 'Pdr' will be displayed on the operating panel. The error message '24: Pdr, pump dry' can be read via parameters E9.05...E9.07.

The conditions to trigger the pump leakage protection:

- Frequency converter runs at the [E0.09] 'Output frequency high limit'
- $([\text{PID feedback}] \div [\text{PID reference}]) < [\text{E5.08}]$ 'Pump leakage protection threshold'
- Duration $\geq [\text{E5.09}]$ 'Pump leakage protection delay'

When the pump leakage protection is triggered, the warning code 'PLE' will be displayed on the operating panel.



- The 'Pump dry protection delay at start-up' E5.07 and the 'Pump leakage protection delay at start-up' E5.10 are used to prevent the two modes of protection at start-up process.
- These two modes of protection are only valid when PID control is enabled.

12.13.4 Sleep Function

This function is used to achieve the maximum extent of energy-saving according to type of loads in actual applications.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E5.15	Sleep level	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
E5.16	Sleep delay	0.0...3,600.0 s	60.0	s	0.1	Run
E5.17	Sleep boost time	0.0...3,600.0 s	0.0	s	0.1	Run
E5.18	Sleep boost amplitude	0.0...100.0 %	0.0	-	0.1	Run
E5.19	Wake up level	0.0...100.0 %	0.0	-	0.1	Run
E5.20	Wake up delay	0.0...60.0 s	0.5	-	0.1	Run



E5.18 and E5.19 are the percentage of PID reference.

The frequency converter may go into the sleep mode when all the conditions below are met:

- [PID feedback] > [E5.19] 'Wake up level'
- [PID output] < [E5.15] 'Sleep level'
- [Duration] $t \geq$ [E5.16] 'Sleep delay'

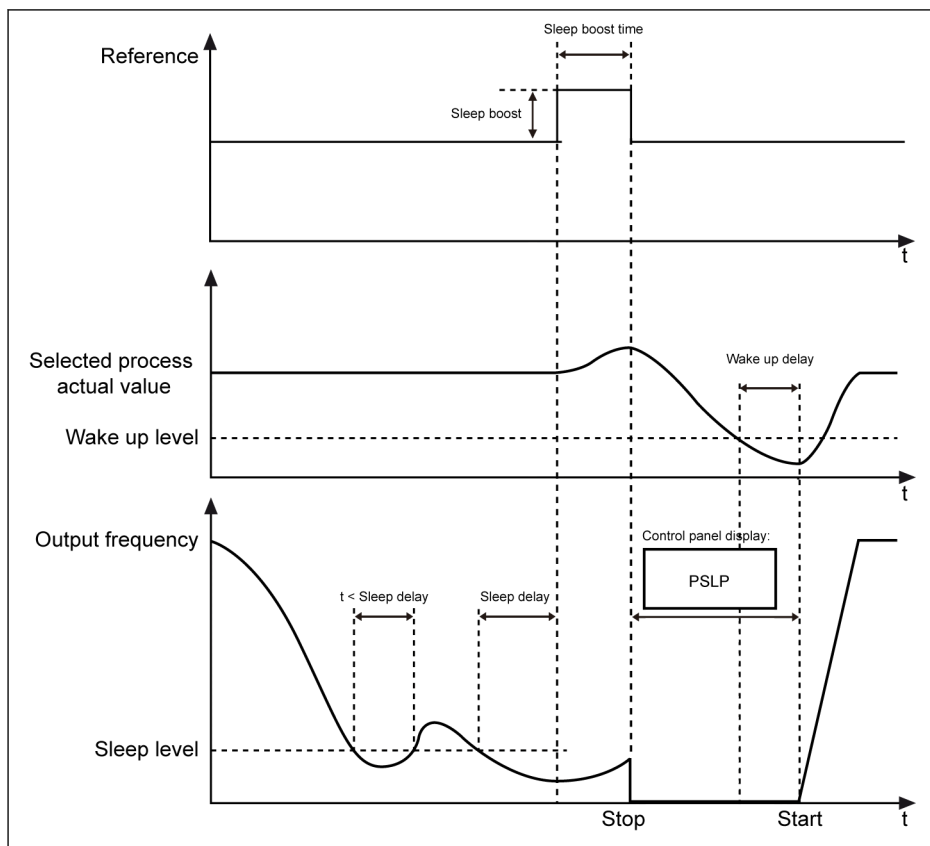


Fig. 12-104: Sleep and wake up process

After [E5.16] 'Sleep delay', the PID controller boosts up with [E5.18] 'Sleep boost amplitude' within [E5.17] 'Sleep boost time', and then enters to sleep mode. In sleep mode, the frequency converter stops output with 'PSLP' displayed on the operating panel.

$$[\text{Sleep boost}] = [\text{E5.18}] \times [\text{PID reference}]$$

During sleeping, the frequency converter monitors the actual PID feedback and wakes up when the following two conditions are met:

- [PID feedback] < [E5.19] 'Wake up level'
- [Duration] $t \geq$ [E5.20] 'Wake up delay'

The frequency converter resumes to its previous running status after waking up.

12.14 E8: Standard Communication

12.14.1 Modbus Protocol

Brief Introduction

VFC x615 frequency converters provide standard RS485 communication interface to realize the communication between the master and slaves via Modbus protocol. With the help of a PC, a PLC or an external computer a 'single master / multiple slaves' network control can be realized (setting of frequency control command and running frequency, modification of parameters, monitoring of frequency converter running status and error messages) to address the specific requirements of applications.



User parameters of the frequency converter can be written via communication interface for 150,000 times.

Protocol Description

Protocol introduction

- Modbus is a master / slave protocol. Only one device may send commands in the network at a particular time.
- The master station manages message exchange by polling the slave stations. Unless being approved by the master station, no slave station may send message. In case of an error during data exchange, if no response is received, the master station will query the slave stations absent from the polling.
- If a slave station is unable to recognize a message from the master station, an exception response will be sent to the master station.
- Slave stations cannot communicate with each other but through the master's software which reads data from one slave station and sends them to another. There are two types of dialogs between the master station and the slave stations:
 - The master station sends a request to a slave station and waits for its response.
 - The master station sends a request to all slave stations and does not wait for their response (broadcasting).

Transmission

The transmission is of RTU (Remote Terminal Unit) mode with frames containing no message header or end mark. A typical RTU frame format is shown below:

Slave address	Function code	Data	CRC
1 byte	1 byte	0...252 byte(s)	CRC low CRC high

Tab. 12-26: Typical RTU frame format



- Data are transmitted in binary codes.
- CRC: Cyclic redundancy code.

- The address 0 is reserved as broadcast address.
- All slave nodes must recognize the broadcast address for writing function (no need of reply).
- The master node has no specific address, only the slave nodes must have addresses (1...247).

For RTU transmission mode, four types of character format are shown below:

- 1 start bit, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, no parity
- 1 start bit, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, even parity
- 1 start bit, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, odd parity
- 1 start bit, 8 data bits, 2 stop bits, no parity

The character or byte is sent in the following sequence (from left to right):

<-Least significant bit (LSB)					Most significant bit (MSB)->					
Start	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	Stop	-
Start	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	Even	Stop
Start	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	Odd	Stop
Start	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	Stop	Stop

Tab. 12-27: RTU transmission mode

Message frames are separated by a silent interval of at least 3.5 characters' time. The entire frame must be transmitted as a continuous stream of bytes. If the interval of two separated frames is less than 3.5 characters' time, then the slave address of second frame will be treated as the part of first frame by mistake, due to the confusion of the frames, the CRC check will fail and lead to communication fault. If a silent interval of more than 1.5 characters' time occurs between two bytes, the message frame is regarded incomplete and discarded by the receiver.

Modbus Interface

The Modbus communication is via RS485 interface, see descriptions on RS485+ and RS485- in [chapter 8 "Frequency Converter Wiring" on page 52](#) and [chapter 8.3.2 "Control Terminals" on page 70](#).

Modbus Function and Message Format

Supported functions

The main function of Modbus is to read and to write parameters. Different function codes decide different operation requests. Modbus functions managed by VFC x615 and their limits are shown in the table below:

Code	Function name	Broadcast	Max. value of N
3 = 0x03	Read N register words	NO	16
6 = 0x06	Write one register word	YES	–
8 = 0x08	Diagnosis	NO	–
16 = 0x10	Write N register words	YES	16
23 = 0x17	Read/write N register words	NO	16

Tab. 12-28: VFC x615 Modbus functions and limits



'Read' and 'Write' are considered from the prospect of the master station.

Modbus message formats are different according to the function codes shown below.

Slave No.	0x03	Address of 1 st word	Number of words	CRC16
		Hi Lo	Hi Lo	Lo Hi

Tab. 12-29: Function 3_Request from the master

Slave No.	0x03	Number of bytes	1 st word value	–	Last word value	CRC16
		Depends on master request	Hi Lo	–	Hi Lo	Lo Hi

Tab. 12-30: Function 3_Response from the slave

Slave No.	0x06	Address of word	Value of word	CRC16
		Hi Lo	Hi Lo	Lo Hi

Tab. 12-31: Function 6_Master request and slave response (in same format)

Slave No.	0x08	Test word 1	Test word 2	CRC16
		Hi Lo	Hi Lo	Lo Hi

Tab. 12-32: Function 8_Master request and slave response (in same format)

Slave No.	0x10	Address of 1 st word	Number of words	Number of bytes	1 st word value	–	Last word value	CRC16
		Hi Lo	Hi Lo		Hi Lo	–	Hi Lo	Lo Hi

Tab. 12-33: Function 16_Request from the master

Slave No.	0x10	Address of 1 st word	Number of words	CRC16
		Hi Lo	Hi Lo	Lo Hi

Tab. 12-34: Function 16_Response from the slave

Slave No.	0x17	Address of 1 st word to be read	Number of words to be read	Address of 1 st word to be written
		Hi Lo	Hi Lo	Hi Lo

Number of words to be written	Number of bytes to be written	Value of 1 st word to be written	–	Value of last word to be written	CRC16
Hi Lo		Hi Lo	–	Hi Lo	Lo Hi

Tab. 12-35: Function 23_Request from the master

Slave No.	0x17	Number of bytes	1 st word value read	–	Last word value read	CRC16
			Hi Lo	–	Hi Lo	Lo Hi

Tab. 12-36: Function 23_Response from the slave

Function example

Function 0x03: Read N register words, range: 1...16

Example: It is necessary to read 2 continuous words starting from communication register 3000H of the slave frequency converter addressed at 01H. The frame structure is described in the tables below.

Message start	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes
Slave address	01H
Modbus function code	03H
Higher byte of start address	30H
Lower byte of start address	00H
Higher byte of data	00H
Lower byte of data	02H
CRC lower byte	CBH
CRC higher byte	0BH
Message end	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes

Tab. 12-37: Function 0x03_Request from RTU master

Message start	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes
Slave address	01H
Modbus function code	03H
Bytes of data	04H
Higher byte of data in register 3000H	00H
Lower byte of data in register 3000H	14H
Higher byte of data in register 3001H	00H
Lower byte of data in register 3001H	02H
CRC lower byte	3BH
CRC higher byte	F6H
Message end	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes

Tab. 12-38: Function 0x03_Response from RTU slave

Function 0x06: Write one register word

⚠ CAUTION**Frequent writing may damage the internal registers!**

- When data is written into the internal registers, there is a limit on the writing times. The register address may be damaged once the writing times is beyond the writing limit. So please avoid frequent writing!
- For details of user writing permission, please see [chapter 19.3.1 "Terminology and Abbreviation in Parameter List" on page 525](#).

Example: Write 0000H to communication register address 3002H of the slave frequency converter with address 01H. The frame structure is described in the tables below:

Message start	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes
Slave address	01H
Modbus function code	06H
Higher byte of write register address	30H
Lower byte of write register address	02H
Higher byte of write data	00H
Lower byte of write data	00H
CRC lower byte	27H
CRC higher byte	0AH
Message end	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes

Tab. 12-39: Function 0x06_Request from RTU master

Message start	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes
Slave address	01H
Modbus function code	06H
Higher byte of write register address	30H
Lower byte of write register address	02H
Higher byte of write data	00H
Lower byte of write data	00H
CRC lower byte	27H
CRC higher byte	0AH
Message end	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes

Tab. 12-40: Function 0x06_Response from RTU slave

Function 0x08: Diagnostics

Example: To test the communication loop of 2 continuous words 1234H and 5678H with frequency converter slave address 01H, the frame structure is described in the tables below:

Message start	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes
Slave address	01H
Modbus function code	08H
Higher byte of sub-function	00H
Lower byte of sub-function	00H
Higher byte of test word 1	12H
Lower byte of test word 1	34H
Higher byte of test word 2	56H
Lower byte of test word 2	78H
CRC lower byte	73H
CRC higher byte	33H
Message end	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes

Tab. 12-41: Function 0x08_Request from RTU master

Message start	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes
Slave address	01H
Modbus function code	08H
Higher byte of sub-function	00H
Lower byte of sub-function	00H
Higher byte of test word 1	12H
Lower byte of test word 1	34H
Higher byte of test word 2	56H
Lower byte of test word 2	78H
CRC lower byte	73H
CRC higher byte	33H
Message end	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes

Tab. 12-42: Function 0x08_Response from RTU slave

Function 0x10: Write N register words, range: 1...16

Example: To modify 2 continuous registers start from 4000H with words 0001H and 0000H with slave frequency converter address 01H. The frame structure is described in the tables below:

Message start	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes
Slave address	01H
Modbus function code	10H
Higher byte of write register start address	40H
Lower byte of write register start address	00H
Higher byte of register number	00H
Lower byte of register number	02H
Bytes of data	04H
Higher byte of data in register 4000H	00H
Lower byte of data in register 4000H	01H
Higher byte of data in register 4001H	00H
Lower byte of data in register 4001H	00H
CRC lower byte	93H
CRC higher byte	ACH
Message end	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes

Tab. 12-43: Function 0x10_Request from RTU master

Message start	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes
Slave address	01H
Modbus function code	10H
Higher byte of write register start address	40H
Lower byte of write register start address	00H
Higher byte of register number	00H
Lower byte of register number	02H
CRC lower byte	54H
CRC higher byte	08H
Message end	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes

Tab. 12-44: Function 0x10_Response from RTU slave

Function 0x17: Read/Write N register words, range: 1...16

Example: To read data in 2 continuous registers starting from address 3000H, write 0001H and 0000H to 2 continuous registers starting from address 4000H. The frame structure is described in the tables below:

Message start	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes
Slave address	01H
Modbus function code	17H
Higher byte of read register start address	30H
Lower byte of read register start address	00H
Higher byte of read register number	00H
Lower byte of read register number	02H
Higher byte of write register start address	40H
Lower byte of write register start address	00H
Higher byte of write register number	00H
Lower byte of write register number	02H
Bytes of data for writing	04H
Higher byte of data in register 4000H	00H
Lower byte of data in register 4000H	01H
Higher byte of data in register 4001H	00H
Lower byte of data in register 4001H	00H
CRC lower byte	E6H
CRC higher byte	B3H
Message end	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes

Tab. 12-45: Function 0x17_Request from RTU master

Message start	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes
Slave address	01H
Modbus function code	17H
Bytes of read register	04H
Higher byte of read register 3000H	00H
Lower byte of read register 3000H	14H
Higher byte of read register 3001H	00H
Lower byte of read register 3001H	02H
CRC lower byte	38H
CRC higher byte	E2H
Message end	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes

Tab. 12-46: Function 0x17_Response from RTU slave

Error code and exception code

If a slave receives the request without a communication error, but cannot handle it, the slave will return an exception response which includes error code and exception code informing the master of the nature of the error. The error code is formed by setting the MSB of the function code to 1 (i.e. function code plus with 0x80, like 0x83, 0x86, 0x90, 0x97), then the exception response has a format shown below.

Slave No.	Error code	Exception code	CRC16
			Lo Hi

Exception codes for VFC x615 frequency converters:

- 1 = Parameter cannot be modify owing to user password locked
- 2 = The function requested is not recognized by the slave, i.e. not equal to 3, 6, 8, 16 or 23
- 3 = The word address indicated in the request do not exist in the slave
- 4 = The word values indicated in the request are not permissible in the slave
- 5 = Parameters cannot be modify in run mode
- 6 = Parameters are read-only that cannot be modified
- 7 = Invalid operation which is decided by the function of frequency converter^(*)
- 9 = EEPROM read/write error
- B = Function code 3, read range exceeds 16



^(*) includes situations listed below:

- Write operations on b0.11 'Parameter copy', U1.00 'Run monitoring display', U1.10 'Stop monitoring display' and C1.01 'Motor parameter tuning', are prohibited.
- Write operations on b0.20 'User password', b0.21 'Manufacture password' and b0.10 'Parameter initialization' only support function 6.
- Multi-function digital input terminals (E1.00...E1.04) writing operation do not permit repeated non-zero value.

Communication Mapping Register Address Distribution

Frequency converter parameter address

Frequency converter parameter registers correspond to the function codes one-to-one. Reading and writing of related function codes can be achieved through reading and writing of the contents in frequency converter parameter registers via Modbus communication. The characteristics and scope of reading and writing function codes are in compliance with the frequency converter function code description. The address of a frequency converter parameter register is composed of a higher byte representing the function code group and a lower byte representing the index in the group. The groups are mapped as follows:

Address high byte	0x00	0x20	0x21	0x22	0x23	0x30	0x31	0x32	0x33	0x34
Group	b0	C0	C1	C2	C3	E0	E1	E2	E3	E4
Address high byte	0x35	0x38	0x39	0x60	0x61	0x68	0x69	0x40	0x41	0x10
Group	E5	E8	E9	H0	H1	H8	H9	U0	U1	d0

Tab. 12-47: Frequency converter parameter registers



Parameters of the monitoring group (Group d0) are always write-protected.

Examples:

- To read out the module temperature (d0.20) of VFC x615 frequency converter, use register address 0x1014 (0x10 = Group d0, index 0x14 = 20).
- To set V/f curve mode (C2.00) of VFC x615 frequency converter, use register address 0x2200 (0x22 = Group C2, index 0).
- Access to a non-existing function code will be acknowledged with exception code 3 (see [chapter "Modbus Function and Message Format" on page 282](#)).

Frequency converter register address

Register	Address
Communication control register	0x7F00
Communication state register	0x7FA0
Additional status register	0x7FA1
STO safety status register	0x7FA2
Fault status register	0x7FB0
Communication frequency setting register	0x7F01
Torque setting register	0x7F02
Torque FWD limitation register	0x7F03
Torque REV limitation register	0x7F04
Speed limitation register	0x7F05

Tab. 12-48: Frequency converter register address

Communication control register (0x7F00)

The address of command word register for communication control is 0x7F00. This register is write-only. The frequency converter is controlled through writing data into the address. The definition of each bit is shown in table below:

bit	Value	Description
15...9	–	Reserved
8	1	Torque control active
	0	Inactive
7	1	Control word active
	0	Inactive
6	1	Stop Acc. / Dec. active (stop the internal Acc. / Dec. ramp generator)
	0	Inactive
5	1	Fault reset active
	0	Inactive
4	1	E-stop active
	0	Inactive
3	1	Stop according to parameter setting
	0	Inactive
2	1	Reverse
	0	Forward
1	1	Jog active (jogging direction determined by bit 2)
	0	Inactive
0	1	Run command active
	0	Inactive

Tab. 12-49: Communication control register (0x7F00)

If the communication frame check is successful (CRC valid), the frequency converter always accepts the content of the control word. All conflicts (e.g. run command and stop command active at the same time) are resolved by the application functionality (Run / Stop generator, jog control...). This assures that the frequency converter will always react in the same manner, independent of the run command source.

Communication state register (0x7FA0)

The frequency converter state can be monitored by reading the register. This register is read-only. The definition of each bit is shown in the table below:

bit	Value	Description
15 ... 8	–	Error code (equals to [E9.05])
7	1	Error
	0	No error
6	1	Stall over current
	0	Normal
5	1	Stall over voltage
	0	Normal
4	1	Decelerating
	0	Not in deceleration
3	1	Accelerating
	0	Not in acceleration
2	1	Jogging
	0	Not in jog
1	1	Running
	0	Stop
0	1	Reverse
	0	Forward

Tab. 12-50: Communication state register (0x7FA0)

Additional status register (0x7FA1)

Additional status register is the extension of main status register(7FA0H), it stores other status information of frequency converter. This register is read-only. The definition of each bit is shown in the table below:

bit	Value	Description
15	1	Error
	0	No error
14	1	Warning
	0	No warning
13	-	Reserved
12	1	Sleep mode
	0	Normal
11	1	Coasting to stop
	0	Not coasting
10	1	Speed tracing
	0	Not tracing
9	1	0 speed
	0	Not 0 speed
8	1	DC braking
	0	Not DC braking
7	1	Converter OK
	0	Converter not OK
6	1	Stall over current
	0	Normal
5	1	Stall over voltage
	0	Normal
4	1	Decelerating
	0	Not in deceleration
3	1	Accelerating
	0	Not in acceleration
2	1	Jogging
	0	Not in jog
1	1	Running
	0	Stop
0	1	Reverse
	0	Forward

Tab. 12-51: Additional status register (0x7FA1)

STO safety status register (0x7FA2)

bit	Value	Description
15...3	-	Reserved
2	1	StO-E
	0	Not in StO-E status
1	1	StO-r
	0	Not in StO-r status
0	1	StO-A
	0	Not in StO-A status

Tab. 12-52: STO safety status register (0x7FA2)**Fault status register (0x7FB0)**

The fault status of frequency converter can be monitored by reading the register. This register is read-only.

bit	HEX	Description
bit 15 . . . bit 0	0	No error
	1	OC-1, overcurrent at constant speed
	2	OC-2, overcurrent during acceleration
	3	OC-3, overcurrent during deceleration
	4	OE-1, overvoltage at constant speed
	5	OE-2, overvoltage during acceleration
	6	OE-3, overvoltage during deceleration
	7	OE-4, overvoltage during stop
	8	UE-1, undervoltage during run
	9	SC, surge current or short circuit
	A	IPH.L, input phase loss
	B	OPH.L, output phase loss
	C	ESS-, soft start error
	14	OL-1, converter overload
	15	OH, converter over temperature
	17	FF, fan failure
	18	Pdr, pump dry
	19	CoL-, command value lost
	1A	StO-r, safe torque off request
	1B	StO-E, safe torque off error
	1E	OL-2, motor overload
	1F	Ot, motor over temperature
	20	t-Er, motor parameter tuning error
	21	AdE-, motor angle detection error
	23	SPE-, speed control loop error
	26	AibE, analog input broken wire detection
	27	EPS-, DC_IN power supply error
	28	dir1, forward running lock error
	29	dir2, reverse running lock error

bit	HEX	Description
bit 15 . . . bit 0	2A	E-St, terminal error signal
	2B	FFE-, firmware version mismatch
	2C	rS-, modbus communication error
	2D	E.Par, parameter settings invalid
	2E	U.Par, unknown parameter restore error
	30	idA-, internal communication error
	31	idP-, internal parameter error
	32	IDE-, converter internal error
	33	OCd-, extension card internal error
	34	Occ, extension card PDOs configuration error
	35	Fdi-, no valid process data
	36	PcE-, remote control communication error
	37	PbrE, parameter backup / restore error
	38	PrEF, parameter restore error after firmware update
	3C	ASF-, application firmware error
	3D	APE1, application error 1
	3E	APE2, application error 2
	3F	APE3, application error 3
	40	APE4, application error 4
	41	APE5, application error 5

Tab. 12-53: Fault status register (0x7FB0)

Communication frequency setting register (0x7F01)

The address of frequency setting register for communication control is 0x7F01. This register is for read and write. When 'First frequency setting source' [E0.00] = '20: Communication', the frequency converter can be set with writing data to this address.

Torque setting register (0x7F02)

The address of torque setting register is 0x7F02. This register is for read and write. When 'Torque reference channel' [C3.41] = '6: Communication', the torque reference channel can be set with writing data to this address.

Torque FWD limitation register (0x7F03)

The address of torque FWD limitation register is 0x7F03. This register is for read and write. When 'Torque limitation reference selection at speed control mode' [C3.47] = '4: Communication', the torque limitation reference can be set with writing data to this address.

Torque REV limitation register (0x7F04)

The address of torque REV limitation register is 0x7F04. This register is for read and write. When 'Torque limitation reference selection at speed control mode' [C3.47] = '4: Communication', the torque limitation reference can be set with writing data to this address.

Speed limitation register (0x7F05)

The address of speed limitation register is 0x7F05. This register is for read and write. When 'Speed limitation reference selection at torque control mode' [C3.48] = '4: Communication', the speed limitation reference can be set with writing data to this address.

Modbus Communication Example

One slave address is 01H. The frequency setting of the frequency converter has been set to 'Given by communication' and the RUN command source is set to 'Inputting commands by communication'. It is required for the motor connected to the frequency converter to run with 50 Hz (forward rotation). The operation can be achieved with function 0x10 (function 16) of the Modbus protocol. The messages of the requests from the master and responses from the slave are shown in table below:

- Example 1: Start 01# frequency converter for forward rotation at frequency of 50.00 Hz (represented by 5,000 internally)

	Slave address	Function code	Start address	Number of address	Bytes of data	Data content	CRC code
Request	0x01	0x10	0x7F00	0x0002	0x04	0x0081 0x1388	0x8AE3
Response	0x01	0x10	0x7F00	0x0002	N/A	N/A	0x581C

- Example 2: Read the output frequency of 01# frequency converter and output velocity

	Slave address	Function code	Start address	Number of address	Bytes of data	Data content	CRC code
Request	0x01	0x03	0x1000	0x0002	N/A	N/A	C0CB
Response	0x01	0x03	N/A	N/A	0x04	0x1388 0x05DC	0x7C54

- Example 3: Stop 01# frequency converter according to the stopping mode with the function code

	Slave address	Function code	Start address	Number of address	Bytes of data	Data content	CRC code
Request	0x01	0x06	0x7F00	N/A	N/A	0x0088	0x9078
Response	0x01	0x06	0x7F00	N/A	N/A	0x0088	0x9078

Special Notes

1. The external computer can not write to function codes b0.11 'Parameter copy', U1.00 'Run monitoring display' and U1.10 'Stop monitoring display'.
2. b0.20 'User password' and b0.10 'Parameter initialization' do not support multiple write including single write in multiple write; Motor nameplate parameters and motor physical data should not be modified simultaneously; Multi-function digital input terminals (E1.00...E0.04) writing operation do not permit repeated non-zero value.
3. If the communication protocol is changed, baud rate, data frame and local address will be restored to factory default.
4. The read response of user password and manufacture password is '0000' in case of external computer reading.
5. The external computer can set, modify or cancel user password, the specific operation is same to the situation when 'Running command source' is from the operating panel.
6. The access to control registers and state registers is not limited by user password.

Communication Networking

Networking

The communication network is shown in figure below, with a PC, a PLC or an external computer as the master and all frequency converters as slaves, which are connected by shielded twisted pair cables. The slave at the end of the network needs a termination resistor with recommended value of $120\ \Omega$, $0.25\ \text{W}$.

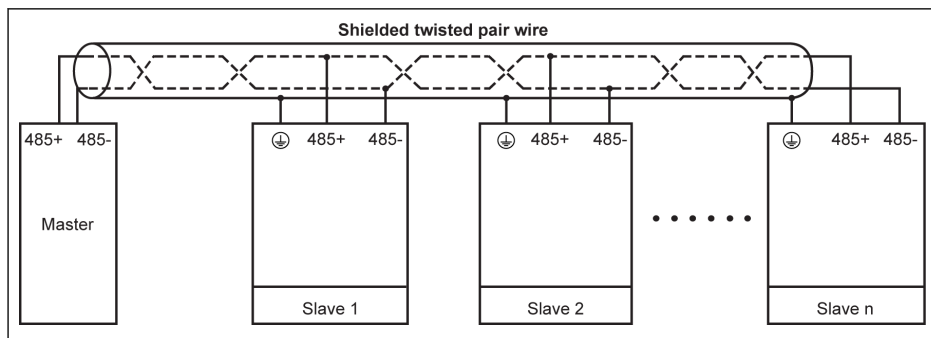


Fig. 12-105: Communication networking



- The maximum length of the communication cable is 300 m.
- The maximum length of the communication cable is 80 m if the number of slaves is less than 5.
- If the Modbus network cannot work successfully, check if a bias resistor has been installed for the master device and make sure that its resistance is not more than $1.5\ \text{k}\Omega$.

WARNING

Cables may only be connected when the frequency converters are switched off!

Recommendations on networking

- Use shielded twisted pair cable to connect RS485 links.
- Modbus cable should be adequately away from power cables (minimum 30 cm).
- Avoid crossing of Modbus cables and power cables and use orthogonal crossing if crossing must be used.
- The shielding layer of cables should be connected to protected ground or to equipment ground if the equipment ground has already been connected to protected ground. Do not directly ground any point of the RS485 network.

- In no circumstance should ground cables constitute a loop.

12.14.2 Communication Selection

This function is about the selection of the Communication Protocol.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E8.00	Communication protocol	0: Modbus 1: Extension card	0	–	–	Stop

The standard product only supports Modbus communication protocol. To use other communication protocols, optional communication cards need to be ordered additionally and parameter E8.00 and other related parameters need to be set accordingly.



For Multi-Ethernet extension card configurations, please refer to documentation R912006860.

12.14.3 Communication Error Reaction

This function defines the detection of the communication disruption and corresponding reaction.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E8.01	Communication error detection time	0.0...60.0 s (0.0: Inactive)	0.0	s	0.1	Stop
E8.02	Communication error protection mode	0: Freewheeling stop 1: Keep running 2: Emergency stop	1	-	-	Stop
E8.03	Communication process data loss behavior	0: Decelerating stop 1: Freewheeling stop 2: Keep running 3: Keep running without warning	0	-	-	Stop

When [E8.01] = 0.0 s, the disruption detection function is inactive.

If the interval between the current and next communication commands exceeds the time defined in [E8.01] 'Communication error detection time', the frequency converter will report a communication error code and act as defined in [E8.02] 'Communication error protection mode':

- **[E8.02] = 0: Freewheeling stop**

The motor freewheels to stop after the communication timeout no matter the settings of parameter E0.50 'Stop mode'.

- **[E8.02] = 1: Keep running**

The motor continues running at the setting frequency, and warning code 'C-dr' will be displayed on the operating panel.

- **[E8.02] = 2: Emergency stop**

The motor decelerate to stop after the communication timeout no matter the settings of parameter E0.56 'Emergency stop action', the deceleration time is E0.57.

E8.03 determines the behavior of the frequency converter when the communication extension card process data lost:

- **[E8.03] = 0: Decelerating stop**

The motor decelerates to stop according to the defined deceleration time when the communication extension card process data lost.

- **[E8.03] = 1: Freewheeling stop**

The motor freewheels to stop after the communication extension card process data lost no matter the settings of parameter E0.50 'Stop mode'.

- **[E8.03] = 2: Keep running without warning**

The motor continues running at the setting frequency, and warning code 'Fdi' will be displayed on the operating panel.

- **[E8.03] = 3: Keep running**

The motor continues running at the setting frequency, and no any warning on the operating panel.

12.14.4 Modbus Settings

Setting the Data Transmission Rate

Data transmission rate refers to the transmission rate of data between the external computer and the frequency converter.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E8.10	Modbus baud rate	0: 1,200 bps 1: 2,400 bps 2: 4,800 bps 3: 9,600 bps 4: 19,200 bps 5: 38,400 bps	3	–	–	Stop

Setting the Data Format

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E8.11	Modbus data format	0: 1 start bit, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, no parity 1: 1 start bit, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, even parity 2: 1 start bit, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, odd parity 3: 1 start bit, 8 data bits, 2 stop bits, no parity	0	–	–	Stop



The data format of the converter must be the same as that of the master station. Otherwise, normal communication is impossible.

Setting the Local Address

In Modbus communication, the maximum number of frequency converters in the network is 247. Each frequency converter must have a unique local address.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E8.12	Modbus local address	1...247	1	–	1	Stop

Setting Command Signal Type

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E8.13	Modbus level / edge sensitivity selection	0: Level sensitive 1: Edge sensitive	1	–	–	Stop

Setting range of E8.13:

E8.13 = 0: Level sensitive

The control word is not a real edge sensitive, master should manually reset the command.

For example:

1. Simulate an error
2. Set bit 5 = 1, the error is reset
3. Simulate an error again
4. Set bit 5 = 1, the error is not reset
5. Master should set bit 5 = 0 firstly, then set bit 5 = 1, the error is reset

E8.13 = 1: Edge sensitive

The control command is reset automatically after the activation.

For example:

1. Simulate an error
2. Set bit 5 = 1, the error is reset
3. Simulate an error again
4. Set bit 5 = 1, the error is not reset

Setting Modbus transmission mode

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E8.14	Modbus transmission mode selection	0: RTU transmission 1: ASCII transmission mode	0	–	–	Stop
E8.15	Modbus ASCII inter-character timeout	1.0...5.0 s	1.0	s	0.1	Stop

E8.15 is used to set the maximum time delay allowed between 2 characters of a single ASCII frame.

12.15 E9: Error Log and Automatic Error Reset

12.15.1 Automatic Error Reset

Automatic error reset function can be used to ensure continuous running without human intervention in the case of occasional errors, such as over current and over voltage during start and running.

Related parameters

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E9.00	Automatic error reset attempts	0..3	0	-	1	Stop
E9.01	Automatic error reset interval	0.1...60.0	10.0	s	0.1	Stop
E9.02	Automatic error reset attempts re-start time	0...65535 0: disabled	0	s	1	Stop

Detailed description

Parameter E9.00 is used to set the allowed maximum times of attempts for automatic reset in case of fault.

When the fault auto reset time is set to 0, there is no auto fault reset function, only manual reset can be done.

Parameter E9.01 is used to set interval time between reset attempts.

Attention: for the hardware critical error SC (short circuit) the internal minimum error reset interval is always minimal 5.0s in cases there [E9.01] is smaller than this value.

Parameter [E9.02] can be used to reset the internal error reset attempts back to the value from [E9.00] in case there are no error events inside this restart time.

In the following case the number of reset attempts is reset to E9.00:

1. 1. The converter is stopped and restarted by a RUN command.
2. 2. The automatic fault reset sequence is interrupted by a power cycle.
3. 3. [E9.02] is set to a value different to 0 and there are no error reset events inside the interval given from this [E9.02] parameter value.

If the error is cleared successfully after some tries, the reset counter is not set back to [E9.00] It keeps its current value. Therefore, if another error happens later on, the number of possible reset attempts already has decreased.

List of errors with automatic error reset capability

Diagnostic Code	Diagnostic Code Name	Error Display	Hint
F5001	Overcurrent at constant speed	OC-1	
F5002	Overcurrent during acceleration	OC-2	

Diagnostic Code	Diagnostic Code Name	Error Display	Hint
F5003	Overcurrent during deceleration	OC-3	
F5004	Overvoltage at constant speed	OE-1	
F5005	Overvoltage during acceleration	OE-2	
F5006	Overvoltage during deceleration	OE-3	
F5007	Overvoltage during stop	OE-4	
F5008	Undervoltage during run	UE-1	
F5009	Surge current or short circuit	SC	
F5010	Input phase loss	IPH.L	* FW > 03V28
F5011	Output phase loss	OPH.L	* FW > 03V28
F5012	Soft start error	ESS-	
F5020	Converter overload	OL-1	
F5021	Converter over temperature	OH	
F5025	Command value lost	CoL-	* FW > 03V28
F5030	Motor overload	OL-2	
F5033	Motor angle detection error	AdE-	* FW > 03V28
F5901	Host communication timed out	FCd-	* FW >= 03V28 removed
F5902	Fieldbus process data configuration erroneous	FPC-	* FW >= 03V28 removed
F5903	RPDO Telegram Loss	FtL-	* FW >= 03V28 removed
F5904	Communication platform initialization failed	FIn-	* FW >= 03V28 removed
F5905	Fieldbus network configuration invalid	FnC-	* FW >= 03V28 removed
F5906	Communication platform critical error	FCE-	* FW >= 03V28 removed
F5907	Communication platform firmware corrupted	FnF-	* FW >= 03V28 removed

Tab. 12-54: List of errors with automatic error reset capability

12.15.2 Error Log

Error log record the error history and detailed error code.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
E9.05	Last error type	–	–	–	–	Read
E9.06	Second last error type	–	–	–	–	Read
E9.07	Third last error type	–	–	–	–	Read
E9.10	Output frequency at last error	–	–	Hz	0.01	Read
E9.11	Setting frequency at last error	–	–	Hz	0.01	Read
E9.12	Output current at last error	–	–	A	0.1	Read
E9.13	Output voltage at last error	–	–	V	1	Read
E9.14	DC-bus voltage at last error	–	–	V	1	Read
E9.15	Power module temperature at last error	–	–	°C	1	Read
E9.50	Last warning type	–	–	–	–	Read
E9.51	Second last warning type	–	–	–	–	Read
E9.52	Third last warning type	–	–	–	–	Read
E9.97	Last error detail	00000...FFFFFF	0	–	–	Read
E9.98	Second last error detail	00000...FFFFFF	0	–	–	Read
E9.99	Third last error detail	00000...FFFFFF	0	–	–	Read

Value range of E9.05...E9.07:

0: No error

1: OC-1, overcurrent at constant speed

2: OC-2, overcurrent during acceleration

3: OC-3, overcurrent during deceleration

4: OE-1, overvoltage at constant speed

5: OE-2, overvoltage during acceleration

6: OE-3, overvoltage during deceleration

8: UE-1, undervoltage during run

9: SC, surge current or short circuit

10: IPH.L, input phase loss

11: OPH.L, output phase loss

12: ESS-, soft start error

20: OL-1, converter overload

21: OH, converter over temperature

23: FF, fan failure

24: Pdr, pump dry

25: CoL-, command value lost
26: StO-r, STO request
27: StO-E, STO error
30: OL-2, motor overload
31: Ot, motor over temperature
32: t-Er, motor parameter tuning error
33: AdE-, motor angle detection error
35: SPE-, speed control loop error
38: AibE, analog input broken wire detection
39: EPS-, DC_IN power supply error
40: dir1, forward running lock error
41: dir2, reverse running lock error
42: E-St, terminal error signal
43: FFE-, firmware version mismatch
44: rS-, Modbus communication error
45: E.Par, parameter settings invalid
46: U.Par, unknown parameter restore error
48: idA-, internal communication error
49: idP-, internal parameter error
50: idE-, converter internal error
51: OCd-, extension card internal error
52: OCC, extension card PDOs configuration error
54: PcE-, remote control communication error
55: PbrE, parameter backup / restore error
56: PrEF, parameter restore error after firmware update
60: ASF-, ASF system error
61: APE1, ASF customer error 1
62: APE2, ASF customer error 2
63: APE3, ASF customer error 3
64: APE4, ASF customer error 4
65: APE5, ASF customer error 5
70: ElbE, Encoder error
71: EPOE, Encoder error
72: R-SC, Encoder error
73: OS-E, Encoder error
901: FCd-, Host communication timed out

902: FPC-, Fieldbus process data configuration erroneous

903: FtL, RPDO Telegram Loss

904: FIn-, Communication platform initialization failed

905: FnC-, Fieldbus network configuration invalid

906: FCE-, Communication platform critical error

907: FnF-, Communication platform firmware corrupted

908: Fdi-, Fieldbus data Invalid



For detailed information about above errors, please see [chapter 13.4 "Error Code" on page 408](#).

Value range of E9.50...E9.52:

Diagnostic code	Description	Display	S-0-0390 contents
6	Pump leakage	PLE	0x000E5006
7	Overvoltage during stop	OE-4	0x000E5007
31	Motor over temperature	Ot	0x000E5031
42	Terminal Error Signal	E-St	0x000E5042
403	Communication disconnection	C-dr	0x000E5403
408	Analog input broken wire detection	Aib-	0x000E5408
409	Fan maintenance period expired	FLE	0x000E5409
410	Communication data exceeds value range	OCi	0x000E5410
411	Under Temperature warning	UH-A	0x000E5411
420	ASF customer warning 1	APF1	0x000E5420
421	ASF customer warning 2	APF2	0x000E5421
422	ASF customer warning 3	APF3	0x000E5422
423	ASF customer warning 4	APF4	0x000E5423
424	ASF customer warning 5	APF5	0x000E5424
430	Unsupported Device Configuration	USdc	0x000E5430
440	Speed limited by maximum Voltage	Sli-	0x000E5440
900	Invalid State Transition	iSt	0x000E5900
903	RPDO Telegram Loss	FtL	0x000E5903
908	Option card process data invalid	Fdi	0x000E5908

Tab. 12-55: List of errors with automatic error reset capability

12.16 F0: ASF Basic Settings

12.16.1 ASF Status

ASF function description

xFC x615s supply the function of ASF (Application Specific Firmware), the frequency converter can load different ASF (such as "Water supply", "Tension control", etc.) based on different applications. This can realize flexible and fast requirement from user.

This function introduce the relevant information of ASF. For detailed information about ASF function and operation, please refer to each ASF Instruction Manual.

ASF Parameter

The range of ASF parameter is F1.00...F5.99, each parameter and its group numbers are defined by ASF instance.

The table below lists the ASF parameters loaded by frequency converter.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default*	Unit	Step	Attri.
F0.01	ASF version	–	0.00	-	-	Read
F0.02	ASF identifier	0x0000 ... 0x0FFF	0x0000	-	-	Read
F0.03	ASF API required version**	–	0.00	-	-	Read
F0.06	ASF trial time left	0...65,535 s	0	-	1	Read
F0.07	ASF API version	–	***	-	-	Read
F0.10	ASF status	0x0000H... 0xFFFFH	0x0000	-	-	Read



- *: The default value depends on the specific ASF function.
- **: API: Application Program Interface.
- ***: The value depends on firmware version of the frequency converter.

Each bit of F0.10 defines the status information of current ASF.

Bit	Definition
15..14	Reserved
13	Error-Stack overflow
12	Error-Runtime timeout
11	Reserved
10	Error-API incompatible
9	Error-Invalid

Bit	Definition
8	Error-Trial time expired
7...3	Reserved
2	ASF authenticated
1	API compatible
0	ASF activated

Tab. 12-56: ASF status bit definition
When the frequency converter loaded an effective and certified ASF, the value of F0.10 is 0x0007.

ASF Management

Download ASF

The ASF can be managed by engineering software tool "ConverterWorks" or "IndraWorks Ds (14V14 or newer)" via USB (serial) connection only.
Open the menu of ASF management on ConverterWorks before loading the ASF, a dialog box is shown as below:

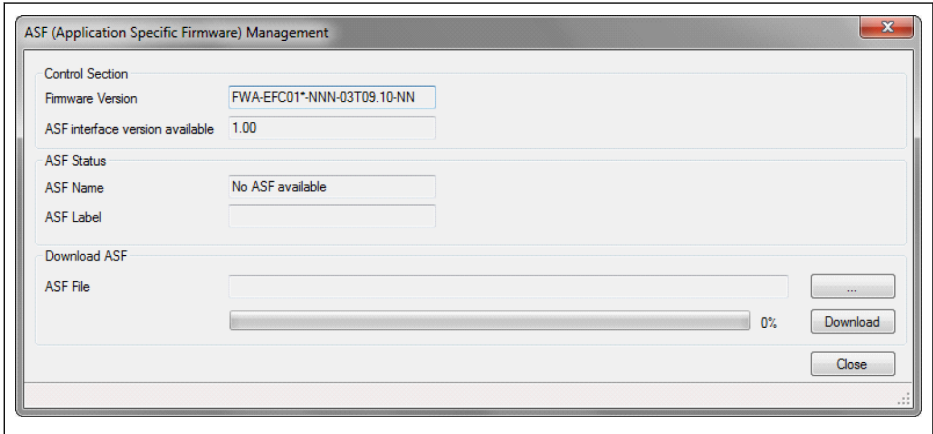


Fig. 12-106: ASF management menu



The first column's information on above figure depends on the frequency converter connected to PC.

Choose the target file in "Download ASF" area, then click "Download".
During the download process, "FUPd-" will be displayed on the LED panel of frequency converter.
After download is completed, the display window will show as follows.

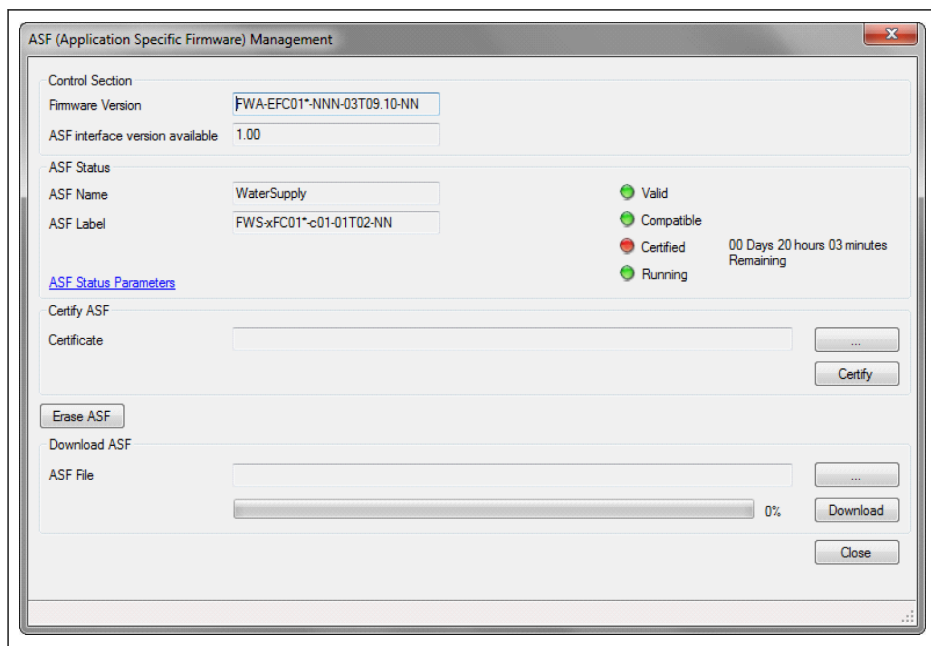


Fig. 12-107: ASF management window

Certify ASF

Choose the target file in "Certify ASF" area, then click "Certify".

When the indicator light on the certified item changes from red to green, it means that the certification is successful.

Erase ASF

Click "Erase ASF" in "ASF Management" window to delete the ASF files from the frequency converter.

ASF Diagnosis

ASF system error

Error code	Display	Description
F8060	ASF-	ASF error

Tab. 12-57: The information of ASF system error
ASF running platform detects the ASF objects and triggers the fault when there have problems. Specific fault causes can query the parameter F0.10 bit fault information.

ASF warning and error

Defined by specific ASF, see each ASF's Instruction Manual for detailed information.

12.16.2 ASF Command Values

This part is about the parameters used by ASF platform and extension card interface.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default*	Unit	Step	Attri.
F0.20	ASF command 1	–	0	-	-	Read
F0.21	ASF command 2	–	0	-	-	Read
F0.22	ASF command 3	–	0	-	-	Read
F0.23	ASF command 4	–	0	-	-	Read
F0.24	ASF command 5	–	0	-	-	Read
F0.25	ASF command 6	–	0	-	-	Read
F0.26	ASF command 7	–	0	-	-	Read
F0.27	ASF command 8	–	0	-	-	Read

For detailed information about the definition and operation, please refer to the Instruction Manual for extension card and specific ASF.

12.17 H0: Extension Card General Settings

12.17.1 Status and Control Words

Extension communication card control word

[H0.00] is the content of the control word that the converter always accepts.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
H0.00	Control word	0x00000...0x0FFFF	0x00000	-	1	Run

For details on control word, see the table below:

bit	Value	Description
15...10	–	Reserved
9	1	Torque control active
	0	Inactive
8	1	Freewheeling stop
	0	Inactive
7	1	Control word active
	0	Inactive
6	1	Stop Acc. / Dec. active (stop the internal Acc. / Dec. ramp generator)
	0	Inactive
5	1	Fault reset active
	0	Inactive
4	1	E-stop active
	0	Inactive
3	1	Stop according to parameter setting
	0	Inactive
2	1	Reverse
	0	Forward
1	1	Jog active (jogging direction determined by bit 2)
	0	Inactive
0	1	Run command active
	0	Inactive

Tab. 12-58: Control word

Status word

[H0.01] will indicate the converter status.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
H0.01	Status word	-	0x00000	-	1	Read

For details on status word, see the table below:

bit	Value	Description
15 ... 8	–	Error code (equals to [E9.05])
7	1	Error
	0	No error
6	1	Stall over current
	0	Normal
5	1	Stall over voltage
	0	Normal
4	1	Decelerating
	0	Not in deceleration
3	1	Accelerating
	0	Not in acceleration
2	1	Jogging
	0	Not in jog
1	1	Running
	0	Stop
0	1	Reverse
	0	Forward

Tab. 12-59: Status word

Extended status word

Extended status word is the extension of main status word, it stores other status information of frequency converter.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
H0.02	Extended status word	-	0x00000	-	1	Read

The definition of each bit is shown in the table below:

bit	Value	Description
15...1	–	Reserved
14	1	Warning
	0	No warning
13...3	–	Reserved
2	1	Converter OK
	0	Converter not OK
1	1	Sleep mode
	0	Normal

bit	Value	Description
0	1	24 V mode
	0	Normal mode

Tab. 12-60: Extended status word**STO safety status word**

STO safety status word is used to monitor STO function state.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
H0.03	STO safety status word	-	0x00000	-	1	Read

The definition of each bit is shown in the table below:

bit	Value	Description
15...3	-	Reserved
2	1	STO-E
	0	Normal
1	1	STO-r
	0	Normal
0	1	STO-A
	0	Normal

Tab. 12-61: Extended status word**Frequency command**

When first or second frequency setting source is '20: Communication', the frequency command value can be set with parameter H0.10.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
H0.10	Frequency command	0.00...655.35	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run

Frequency command is absolute frequency reference, setting value 0.00...655.35 representing 0.00...655.35 Hz.

Torque control reference from fieldbus

H0.12 is used to set torque reference value when [C3.41] = '6: Communication' and when communication protocol [E8.00] = '1: Extension card', setting value 0.0...655.35 representing 0.0...655.35% rated torque.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
H0.12	Torque control reference from fieldbus	0.0...6553.5	0.0	-	0.1	Run
C3.41	Torque reference channel	6: Communication (Modbus 0x7F02/ Fieldbus extension card H0.12)	0	-	-	Stop
E8.00	Communication protocol	1: Extension card	0	-	-	Stop

FWD torque limitation reference from fieldbus

H0.14 is used to set FWD torque limitation reference value when [C3.47] = '4: Communication' and when communication protocol [E8.00] = '1: Extension card', setting value 0.0...6553.5 representing 0.00...6553.5% rated torque.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
H0.14	FWD torque limitation reference from fieldbus	0.0...6553.5	0.0	%	0.1	Run
C3.47	Torque limitation reference selection at speed control mode	4: Communication (Torque FWD limitation register: Modbus 0x7F03/ Fieldbus extension card H0.14) (Torque REV limitation register: Modbus 0x7F04/ Fieldbus extension card H0.15)	0	-	-	Stop
E8.00	Communication protocol	1: Extension card	0	-	-	Stop

REV torque limitation reference from fieldbus

H0.15 is used to set REV torque limitation reference value when [C3.47] = '4: Communication' and when communication protocol [E8.00] = '1: Extension card', setting value 0.0...6553.5 representing 0.00...6553.5% rated torque.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
H0.15	REV torque limitation reference from fieldbus	0.0...6553.5	0.0	%	0.1	Run
C3.47	Torque limitation reference selection at speed control mode	4: Communication (Torque FWD limitation register: Modbus 0x7F03/ Fieldbus extension card H0.14) (Torque REV limitation register: Modbus 0x7F04/ Fieldbus extension card H0.15)	0	-	-	Stop
E8.00	Communication protocol	1: Extension card	0	-	-	Stop

Speed limitation at torque control mode from fieldbus

H0.16 is used to set Speed limitation at torque control mode when [C3.48] = '4: Communication' and when communication protocol [E8.00] = '1: Extension card', setting value 0.00...655.35 representing 0.00...655.35Hz.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
H0.16	Speed limitation at torque control mode from fieldbus	0.00...655.35	0.00	-	0.01	Run
C3.48	Speed limitation reference selection at torque control mode	4: Communication (Speed limitation register: Modbus 0x7F05/Fieldbus extension card H0.16)	0	-	-	Stop
E8.00	Communication protocol	1: Extension card	0	-	-	Stop

Fieldbus voltage command

H0.50 is used to set V/f separation output voltage when [C2.08] = '20: Communication' and when communication protocol [E8.00] = '1: Extension card', setting value 0.00...100.00 representing 0.00...100.00% rated voltage.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
H0.50	Fieldbus voltage command	0.00...100.00 %	0.00	%	0.01	Run
C2.08	V/f separation output voltage source selection	20: Communication (Modbus 0x7F0B/ Fieldbus extension card H0.50)	22	-	-	Stop
E8.00	Communication protocol	1: Extension card	0	-	-	Stop

12.17.2 Extension Card Identification

This part is about the information that be transferred from option card to frequency converter for user checking after the communication between frequency converter and option card established.

Extension card interface version

H0.18 and H0.19 are read only parameters and will display the interface version of the option card used in which slot.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
H0.18	Opt 1 active interface version	-	-	-	0.01	Read
H0.19	Opt 2 active interface version	-	-	-	0.01	Read

Extension card type

H0.20 and H0.30 are read only parameters and will represent which type of card is connected in which slot.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
H0.20	Extension card 1 type	0: None 1: PROFIBUS card 2: CANopen card	-	-	0.01	Read
H0.30	Extension card 2 type	8: I/O card 9: Relay card 10: IO plus card	-	-	0.01	Read

Extension card firmware version

H0.23 and H0.33 are read only parameters and will display the firmware version of the option card used in which slot.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
H0.23	Extension card 1 firmware version	-	-	-	0.01	Read
H0.33	Extension card 2 firmware version	-	-	-	0.01	Read

12.18 H1: PROFIBUS Settings

12.18.1 PROFIBUS Basic Settings

This function is used to set parameter or read parameters when use PROFIBUS communication extension card.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
H1.00	PROFIBUS local address	0...126	1	-	1	Stop
H1.01	Present baud rate	0: None 1: 9.6 kbps 2: 19.2 kbps 3: 45.45 kbps 4: 93.75 kbps 5: 187.5 kbps 6: 500 kbps 7: 1,500 kbps 8: 3,000 kbps 9: 6,000 kbps 10: 12,000 kbps	-	-	-	Read
H1.02	Present telegram type	1: PP01 2: PP02 3: PP03 4: PP04 5: PP05 6: PP06 7: PP07 8: PP08	-	-	-	Read

- H1.00 'PROFIBUS local address' is unique station address definition and needs to be set as equal to master configuration.
- H1.01 'Present baud rate' will display auto-detected baud rate.
- H1.02 'Present telegram type' indicates telegram type selected for communication network.
- Both H1.01 and H1.02 will be automatically checked after communication between master and frequency converter established successfully.

12.18.2 PROFIBUS Card LED

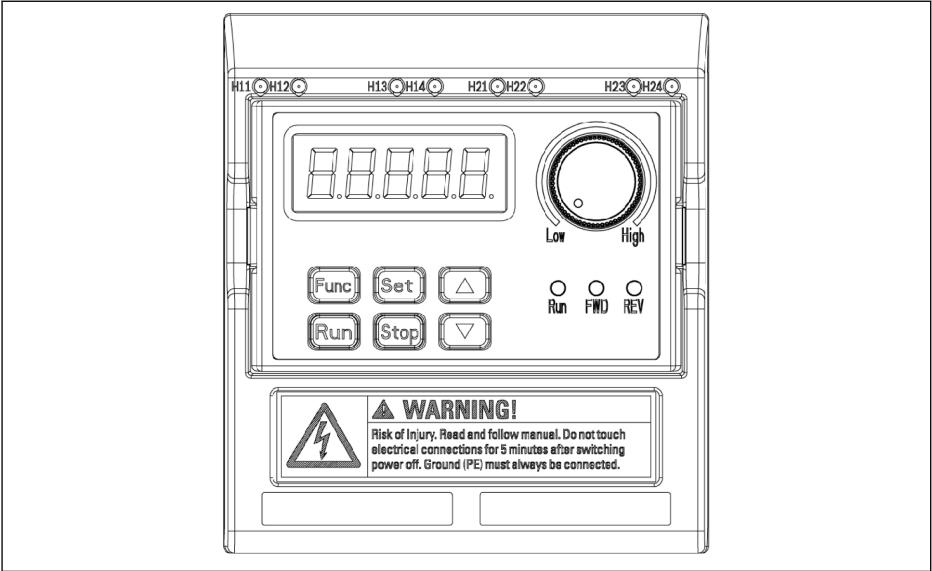


Fig. 12-108: PROFIBUS card LED

LED	Color	Function	Status	Description
H11/H21 [Ⓢ]	Green	PROFIBUS card configuration status	Fast blinking 0.4 s per cycle	Data exchanging
			ON	Communication established PROFIBUS card successfully parameterized and configured => Everything OK
H12/H22 [Ⓢ]	Red	PROFIBUS card error indication	OFF	PROFIBUS card OK
			Slow Blinking 1 s per cycle	PROFIBUS card error

Tab. 12-62: PROFIBUS card LED



[Ⓢ]:

- H11 and H12 are available when the PROFIBUS card is installed on the left card slot
- H21 and H22 are available when the PROFIBUS card is installed on the right card slot

12.18.3 PROFIBUS Output PZD Setting

This function defines the configuration of output PZD word which received by frequency converter.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
H1.10	Output PZD 1	0: Not used	1	-	-	Stop
H1.11	Output PZD 2	1: Control word	2	-	-	Stop
H1.12	Output PZD 3	2: Frequency com-	0	-	-	Stop
H1.13	Output PZD 4	mand	0	-	-	Stop
H1.14	Output PZD 5	3: Empty PZD	0	-	-	Stop
H1.15	Output PZD 6	4: ASF command 1	0	-	-	Stop
H1.16	Output PZD 7	5: ASF command 2	0	-	-	Stop
H1.17	Output PZD 8	6: ASF command 3	0	-	-	Stop
H1.18	Output PZD 9	7: ASF command 4	0	-	-	Stop
H1.19	Output PZD 10	8: ASF command 5 9: ASF command 6 10: ASF command 7 11: ASF command 8 12: Torque com- mand 13: Forward torque limit 14: Reverse torque limit 15: Speed limit in torque mode 16: DO1/relay1 output values (see parameter E2.20) 17: AO1 value in percentage (see parameter E2.28) 18: EDO values (see parameter H8.23) 19: EAO value in percentage (see parameter H8.28) 20: Relay card out- put values (see pa- rameter H9.10) 21: V/f separation voltage command in percentage (see parameter H0.50)	0	-	-	Stop

Output PZD 1...Output PZD 10 are the process data containers for data transferring from PROFIBUS master to slave.

12.18.4 Input PZD Setting

This function defines the configuration of input PZD word which sent by frequency converter.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
H1.30	Input PZD 1	0: Not used 1: Status word 2: Extended status word 3: Empty PZD 100: d0.00 (Output frequency) 101...199: d0.01...d0.99 (Monitoring values)	1	-	-	Stop
H1.31	Input PZD 2		100	-	-	Stop
H1.32	Input PZD 3		0	-	-	Stop
H1.33	Input PZD 4		0	-	-	Stop
H1.34	Input PZD 5		0	-	-	Stop
H1.35	Input PZD 6		0	-	-	Stop
H1.36	Input PZD 7		0	-	-	Stop
H1.37	Input PZD 8		0	-	-	Stop
H1.38	Input PZD 9		0	-	-	Stop
H1.39	Input PZD 10		0	-	-	Stop

Input PZD 1...Input PZD 10 are the process data containers for data transferring from PROFIBUS slave to master.

12.18.5 PROFIBUS Protocol

Protocol Description

PROFIBUS is an open serial communication standard, which enables data exchange among various automation control devices. PROFIBUS mainly includes three types: PROFIBUS-FMS (Fieldbus Message Specifications), PROFIBUS-DP (Distributed Peripheral Equipment) and PROFIBUS-PA (Process Automation). Frequency Converter VFCx615 supports PROFIBUS-DP Protocol.

PROFIBUS is widely used in various industries such as manufacturing automation and process automation, building, transportation, electric power, etc. Through PROFIBUS, automation equipments from different manufacturers can be easily connected into the same network for data exchange. The frame structure of data information in PROFIBUS network is shown in table below.

Protocol frame	User data	Protocol frame
(header)	(control message/status message)	(end)

Tab. 12-63: PROFIBUS frame format
Physical transmission medium for PROFIBUS is twisted-pair cable (RS-485 standard). Maximum length of bus cable is within the scope of 100...1,200 m, depending on the set transmission rate. When no repeater is used, 32 nodes at maximum can be connected to the same PROFIBUS network; if a repeater is used, nodes connected to the network may be increased to 126. In PROFIBUS communication, the master is usually a programmable logic controller, which is able to select the nodes responsive to commands from the master.



PROFIBUS protocol is described in details in standard EN 50170.

PROFIBUS Function

The PROFIBUS DP communication network is able to realize the following functions:

- Sending control commands to the frequency converter (such as start, stop, jog, etc.).
- Sending messages (e.g. setting frequency) to the frequency converter.
- Reading operating status message from the frequency converter (such as run, rotation direction, rotation speed, error message, etc.).
- Reading or modifying frequency converter parameters.
- Resetting the frequency converter in case of error.

Requirements for PROFIBUS Link Cable

Cables used in PROFIBUS are shielded twisted pair cables. The shielding is able to improve electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) ability. Unshielded twisted pair cable may be used if there is less electromagnetic interference (EMI). Impedance of the cable should be within 100...200 Ω . Cable capacity (among conductors) should be < 60 pF/m, and conductor cross section should be ≥ 0.22 (24 AWG). Two kinds of cables are used for PROFIBUS with detail definitions stated in table below.

Cable data	Type A	Type B
Impedance	135...165 Ω (f = 3...20 MHz)	100...130 Ω (f > 100 kHz)
Capacity	< 30 pF/m	< 60 pF/m
Resistance	$\leq 110 \Omega/\text{km}$	$\leq 110 \Omega/\text{km}$
Conductor cross section	≥ 0.34 (22 AWG)	≥ 0.22 (24 AWG)

Tab. 12-64: Type of PROFIBUS cable



Standard Siemens PROFIBUS cable is (MLFB) 6XV1830-0EH10 (Type A), and connector is 6ES7972-0BA12-0XA0.

Relationship between Communication Rate and Cables

Relationship between communication rate and cable length is described in table below.

Baud rate	Maximum length for each cable in [m] (Type A)	Maximum length for each cable in [m] (Type B)
9.6...93.75 kbps	1,000	1,000
187.5 kbps	1000	600
500 kbps	400	200
1.5 Mbps	200	200
3...12 Mbps	100	100

Tab. 12-65: Relationship between communication rate and cable length

EMC Measures

The following EMC measures need to be taken in order to improve the stability of PROFIBUS communication network:

- The shielding layer of the communication cables must be well grounded at all stations; a large area is required for the connection of the shielding layer to obtain a low impedance.
- A certain wiring distance (≥ 20 cm) must be kept between the communication cables and the power cables.
- Communication cables and power cables must be orthogonal in case of crossing.
- All stations in the network must be grounded to the same grounding network.

Periodical Data Communication

PPO telegram type

PROFIBUS-DP defines data structure for periodical data communication as PPO (the Parameter Process data Object). Frequency Converter VFCx615 supports 8 PPO telegram types shown in figure below. PPO message is divided into two data areas in terms of transmission data contents:

Parameter area (PKW area): read or write a parameter of a slave.

Process data area (PZD area): including control word and set frequency, etc. (data flow from master to slave), or status word, actual output frequency and other status monitoring values of slave (data flow from slave to master). For detailed descriptions of PKW parameter area and PZD process data area, please refer to descriptions below.

Output	ID	IND	VALUE	CW	REF	PZD3	PZD4	PZD5	PZD6	PZD7	PZD8	PZD9	PZD10
Input	ID	IND	VALUE	SW	ACT	PZD3	PZD4	PZD5	PZD6	PZD7	PZD8	PZD9	PZD10
PKW				PZD									
PPO1													
PPO2													
PPO3													
PPO4													
PPO5													
PPO6													
PPO7													
PPO8													

Output Master output
Input Master input
ID Parameter identifier
IND Parameter index mark
VALUE Parameter value

CW Control word
SW Status word
REF Reference / Setting frequency
ACT Actual output frequency

Fig. 12-109: PPO telegram type

PKW parameter area

PKW parameter area description

This data area is composed of ID, IND, VALUE_high and VALUE_low, as shown in figure below. They are used to read or modify the parameter of a parameter of a frequency converter, but only one parameter can be read or modified each time. When master sends request and slave responds, bit definition for each specific word in PKW area is shown in the tables below. If a frequency converter fails to execute PKW area request command, an error code will be returned to the master in VALUE_low. Refer to [tab. 12-68 "PKW area error codes" on page 335](#) for details.

PKW Area			
ID	IND	VALUE_high	VALUE_low
1 st WORD	2 nd WORD	3 rd WORD	4 th WORD

Fig. 12-110: PKW area data format

Request data frame in PKW area

Word	Identifier	bit	Value	Description
1 st	ID	15...8	00H	Reserved
		7...0	00H	No request
			01H	Read
			02H	Write
2 nd	IND	15...8	xxH	Group No. for parameter
		7...0	xxH	Index No. of function code within the group
3 rd	VALUE_high	15...0	00H	Reserved
4 th	VALUE_low	15...0	xxxxH	For a read request: Not used For a write request: Parameter value

Tab. 12-66: Request data frame in PKW area_from master to slave

Response data frame in PKW area

Word	Identifier	bit	Value	Description
1 st	ID	15...8	00H	Reserved
		7...0	00H	No request
			01H	Successful read
			02H	Successful write
			07H	Error
2 nd	IND	15...8	xxH	Group No. for parameter
		7...0	xxH	Index No. of function code within the group
3 rd	VALUE_high	15...0	00H	Reserved
4 th	VALUE_low	15...0	xxxxH	For a successful request: Parameter value Read or write error: Error code For no request situation: 0

Tab. 12-67: Response data frame in PKW area_from slave to master

Error message after execution failure in PKW area

Error code	Meaning	Reason
1	Password locked	User password is locked
2	Invalid command code	Command codes (bit 7...bit 0 of ID) are not 0, 1 or 2.
3	Invalid parameter address	Invalid function group or index number of the function group, or insufficient access/rights
4	Invalid parameter value	Data to write out of range
5	Forbid write in running mode	Frequency converter is running
6	Parameter read-only	Parameter are read-only, can not be written
7	Invalid operation	Function code does not support write or multiple write via external computer

Tab. 12-68: PKW area error codes**Example of parameter operation in PKW area****Example description**

In applications, the master and the frequency converters communicate with messages in PPO structure. Among the 8 PPOs stated in [fig. 12-109 "PPO telegram type" on page 333](#), PPO1, PPO2 and PPO5 apply both PKW area and PZD area. In following examples, PKW area data frames are taken from complete PPO message to describe its request and response data frames.

The following examples are all based on Frequency Converter VFC5615 and PROFIBUS card.

Example 1

Reading value of parameter E0.26 'Acceleration time'. 0x30 is the parameter group, 0x1A is the index No. of the function code within the parameter group, then request and response data frames in PKW area are shown in table below:

	ID	IND	VALUE_high	VALUE_low
Request data frame of PKW area	0x0001	0x301A	0x0000	0x0000
Response data frame of PKW area	0x0001	0x301A	0x0000	0x0032

Tab. 12-69: Example 1_request and response data frames of PKW area

Example 2

Modifying value of parameter E0.26 'Acceleration time'. 0x30 is the parameter group, 0x1A is the index No. of the function code within the parameter group. If the modifying value is 0x0064, then request and response data frames in PKW area are shown in table below:

	ID	IND	VALUE_high	VALUE_low
Request data frame of PKW area	0x0002	0x301A	0x0000	0x0064
Response data frame of PKW area	0x0002	0x301A	0x0000	0x0064

Tab. 12-70: Example 2_request and response data frames of PKW area

Example 3

Modifying value of parameter E0.26 'Acceleration time'. 0x30 is the parameter group, 0x1A is the index No. of the function code within the parameter group. If the modifying value is 0xFFFF, then request and response data frames in PKW area are shown in table below:

	ID	IND	VALUE_high	VALUE_low
Request data frame of PKW area	0x0002	0x301A	0x0000	0xFFFF
Response data frame of PKW area	0x0007	0x301A	0x0000	0x0064

Tab. 12-71: Example 3_request and response data frames of PKW area

PZD process data area**PZD process data area description**

The data in PZD process data area can be configured freely for periodical data exchange between the master and slaves. The request telegram type for sending message from master to slaves is decided by H1.30...H1.39; the request telegram type for returning message response from slaves to the master is decided by H1.30...H1.39 (number of PZD is decided by PPO telegram type). See parameters in group H1 [chapter 19.3.6 "Group H: Extension Card Parameters" on page 559](#).

For details on control word, status word and extended status word see the tables below:

bit	Value	Description
15...10	–	Reserved
9	1	Torque control active
	0	Inactive
8	1	Freewheeling stop
	0	Inactive
7	1	Control word active
	0	Inactive
6	1	Stop Acc. / Dec. active (stop the internal Acc. / Dec. ramp generator)
	0	Inactive
5	1	Fault reset active
	0	Inactive
4	1	E-stop active
	0	Inactive
3	1	Stop according to parameter setting
	0	Inactive
2	1	Reverse
	0	Forward
1	1	Jog active (jogging direction determined by bit 2)
	0	Inactive
0	1	Run command active
	0	Inactive

Tab. 12-72: Control word

bit	Value	Description
15 ... 8	–	Error code (equals to [E9.05])
7	1	Error
	0	No error
6	1	Stall over current
	0	Normal
5	1	Stall over voltage
	0	Normal
4	1	Decelerating
	0	Not in deceleration
3	1	Accelerating
	0	Not in acceleration
2	1	Jogging
	0	Not in jog
1	1	Running
	0	Stop
0	1	Reverse
	0	Forward

Tab. 12-73: Status word

bit	Value	Description
15...1	–	Reserved
0	1	24 V mode
	0	Normal mode

Tab. 12-74: Extended status word
 For details on parameter addresses, see [chapter 12.14.1 "Modbus Protocol"](#) on [page 280](#).

Examples for operation of PZD process data area

Example 1

The master communicates with the slave via PPO4, see [fig. 12-109 "PPO telegram type" on page 333](#).

If we need to start frequency converter for forward rotation at 50.00 Hz (0x1388). When the parameters in group H1 are kept as defaults, complete PPO request and response messages are shown in table below.

	PZD1	PZD2	PZD3	PZD4	PZD5	PZD6
PPO request message	CW	REF	0x0000	0x0000	0x0000	0x0000
	0x0081	0x1388				
PPO response message	SW	ACT	0x0000	0x0000	0x0000	0x0000
	0xxx02	0x1388				

Tab. 12-75: Example 1 for PZD process data area_request and response messages of PPO



The higher byte of the status word is the latest error code (0x00 means no error).

Example 2

When the frequency converter forward runs at 50 Hz, to stop the frequency converter as parameter settings, please refer to example 1.

	PZD1	PZD2	PZD3	PZD4	PZD5	PZD6
PPO request message	CW	REF	0x0000	0x0000	0x0000	0x0000
	0x0088	0x1388				
PPO response message	SW	ACT	0x0000	0x0000	0x0000	0x0000
	0xxx00	0x0000				

Tab. 12-76: Example 2 for PZD process data area_request and response messages of PPO

Communication parameter configuration

Communication related parameter settings

Parameter	Name	Parameter settings
E0.00	First frequency setting source	20: Communication
E0.01	First run command source	2: Communication
E0.02	Second frequency setting source	20: Communication
E0.03	Second run command source	2: Communication
E8.00	Communication protocol	1: Extension card
E8.03	Communication process data loss behavior	Depends on parameter setting ^①
H0.12	Torque control reference from fieldbus	6: Communication
H0.14	FWD torque limitation reference from fieldbus	4: Communication
H0.15	REV torque limitation reference from fieldbus	4: Communication
H0.16	Speed limitation at torque control mode from fieldbus	4: Communication
H1.00	PROFIBUS local address	Depends on parameter setting ^①
H1.01	Present baud rate	(Read only)
H1.02	Present telegram type	

Parameter	Name	Parameter settings
H1.10	Output PZD 1	Depends on parameter setting ^①
H1.11	Output PZD 2	
H1.12	Output PZD 3	
H1.13	Output PZD 4	
H1.14	Output PZD 5	
H1.15	Output PZD 6	
H1.16	Output PZD 7	
H1.17	Output PZD 8	
H1.18	Output PZD 9	
H1.19	Output PZD 10	
H1.30	Input PZD 1	
H1.31	Input PZD 2	
H1.32	Input PZD 3	
H1.33	Input PZD 4	
H1.34	Input PZD 5	
H1.35	Input PZD 6	
H1.36	Input PZD 7	
H1.37	Input PZD 8	
H1.38	Input PZD 9	
H1.39	Input PZD 10	

Tab. 12-77: PROFIBUS-DP communication parameters



①: See [fig. 12-109 "PPO telegram type"](#) on page 333 for details.

In the operation controlled by communication, if the frequency converter is stopped by the **Stop** key on the operating panel, the frequency converter stops responding to the control commands by communication. To enable the control by communication, re-power the frequency converter or send **Stop** command to the frequency converter by communication.

Parameter configuration of master

For master related parameter configuration, refer to descriptions for master. The address configured for slave in the master should be consistent with the parameter address configured for the slave. Communication baud rate and PPO telegram type are determined by the master.

GSD file

Users may log on the website of the company at www.boschrexroth.com to download or contact sales personnel to obtain the GSD file BRFC0112.GSD. For

installation and PROFIBUS system configuration method, please refer to respective instructions of system configuration software.



The GSD file adapts to the PROFIBUS master which supports GSD revision 2 or above.

12.19 H2: CANopen Card Parameters

12.19.1 General Introduction

CANopen is a high-level communication protocol which is based on CAN (Controller Area Network) bus. As one of fieldbus commonly used in the industrial control field, CANopen can realize the interconnection of multiple industrial devices. CANopen adopts Open Systems Interconnection (OSI) model and implements media access control and physical signal transmission on basis of CAN technology. Its design is based on three sub-protocols, i.e. DS102 CAN physical layer for industrial applications, DS 301 CANopen communication profile for industrial systems and DSP 402 device profile for drives and motion control. CANopen operates in master-slave structure or distributed control structure which is based on peer-to-peer communication. Up to 127 slave nodes can be supported. CANopen card of the slave node is powered from frequency converter, and all slave nodes are connected to the same bus. CANopen defines corresponding configuration files for devices in specific classes. For other devices, a specific class must be defined to ensure the compatibility with CANopen system.

12.19.2 LED Status Introduction

The CiA-303-3 provides a standardized way for state indication of a CANopen device. There is an error LED and a run LED. The run LED is green and indicates the CANopen state. The error LED is red and shows errors of the physical layer.

LED	State	Color	Description
ERROR LED	No error	● Off	The device is in working condition.
	Warning limit reached	✱ Single flash	At least one of the error counters of the CAN controller has reached or exceeded the warning limit. (CAN Passive Error)
	Error control event	✱✱ Double flash	A guard event (NMT slave or NMT master) or a Heartbeat event has occurred.
	Bus off	✱ Red light on	The CAN controller is bus-off.

LED	State	Color	Description
RUN LED	OFF	 Off	The CANopen controller is in “OFF” state.
	NMT stopped	 Single flash	The device is in NMT STOPPED state.
	NMT pre-operational	 Blinking green	The device is in NMT PRE-OPERATIONAL state.
	NMT operational	 Green light on	The device is in NMT OPERATIONAL state.

Tab. 12-78: Description of various LED states

12.19.3 Converter Configuration

Overview

Communication with the frequency converter in CANopen is achieved via Service Data Objects (SDOs), Process Data Objects (PDOs) and Network Management (NMT).

Users can download the EDS file through the following steps:

1. Click on <http://www.boschrexroth.com/dcc>.
2. Choose “Frequency converter -> VFC 3610 (or VFC 5610)” from the navigation bar on left side of the operation interface.
3. Choose “Download area” tab from right side of the interface.
4. Click on “EDS_XFCX610.ZIP” to download the EDS file.

COB-Identifiers

Each communication object has a unique identity (COB-ID) comprising the function code and the node ID (node address) shown as follows.

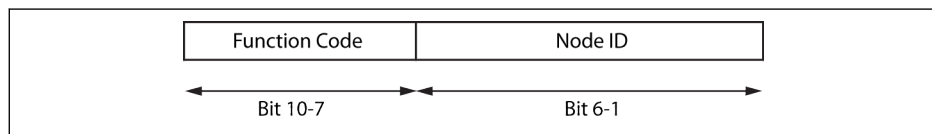


Fig. 12-111: COB-ID

Object Dictionary

The object dictionary is essentially a grouping of objects accessible via the network in an ordered predefined fashion. Each object within the object dictionary is addressed using a 16-bit index and an 8-bit sub-index. The object dictionary contains collection of all the data items which have an influence on the behaviour of the application objects, the communication objects and the state machine used on this device.

Index range (Hex)	Object group
1000h...1FFFh	Communication profile
2000h...5FFFh	Vendor specific objects
6000h...9FFFh	Standard device profiles

Tab. 12-79: CANopen object groups

The table below gives an overview of the objects prescribed for CANopen:

Object	Index	Name
General objects	1000h	Device type
	1001h	Error register
	1002h	Manufacturer status register
	1008h	Manufacturer device name
	1009h	Manufacturer hardware version
	100Ah	Manufacturer software version
	1010h	Store parameter field
	1011h	Restore default parameters
	1018h	Identity object
Error control protocol	100Ch	Guard time
	100Dh	Life time factor
	1014h	COB-ID EMCY
	1015h	Inhibit time emergency
	1016h	Heartbeat consumer entries
	1017h	Producer heartbeat time
	1029h	Error behaviour
SDO	1200h	Server SDO parameter 1

Object	Index	Name
PDO objects	1400h	Receive PDO communication parameter 1
	1401h	Receive PDO communication parameter 2
	1402h	Receive PDO communication parameter 3
	1403h	Receive PDO communication parameter 4
	1600h	Receive PDO mapping parameter 1
	1601h	Receive PDO mapping parameter 2
	1602h	Receive PDO mapping parameter 3
	1603h	Receive PDO mapping parameter 4
	1800h	Transmit PDO communication parameter 1
	1801h	Transmit PDO communication parameter 2
	1802h	Transmit PDO communication parameter 3
	1803h	Transmit PDO communication parameter 4
	1A00h	Transmit PDO mapping parameter 1
	1A01h	Transmit PDO mapping parameter 2
	1A02h	Transmit PDO mapping parameter 3
	1A03h	Transmit PDO mapping parameter 4
Manufacturer specific objects	2000h...3000h	Function code mapping
	4000h...5FFFh	Reserved for future enhancements
Device profiles	6000h...9FFFh	Used for CANopen drive profile CiA-402

Tab. 12-80: Object dictionary

For CANopen drive profile CiA-402 velocity mode, the following objects are supported:

Device profile segment	603Fh	Error code
	6040h	Control word
	6041h	Status word
	6042h	Target velocity
	6043h	vl Target velocity
	6044h	vl Velocity demand
	6046h	vl Velocity actual value
	6048h	vl Velocity min max amount
	6049h	vl Velocity acceleration
	604Dh	vl Velocity deceleration
	6060h	vl Pole number (needed for conversion velocity vs. output frequency)
	6061h	Modes of operation display

Tab. 12-81: CANopen drive profile CiA-402 velocity mode objects

Let H.L be the High and Low byte, respectively of the numerical representation of a function code, where H is the simple decimal interpretation of the hexadecimal encoding of the function class.

Example: Frequency converter class “d” is encoded by 0x10. The simple decimal interpretation of “0x10” then is “10”. (Hint: this simple trick closes the unused gap in frequency converter class encoding between 0x0A and 0x0F in order to get all frequency converters mapped into CANopen index manufacturer parameters ranged between 0x2000 and 0x5FFF.)

Then the index of the corresponding “Manufacturer specific objects” is: $I = 0x2000 + H \times 100 + L$.

Function code Yx.z, where $Y \in \{b,d,C,E,U,F,H\}$, $x \in \{0\dots9\}$, $z \in \{0\dots99\}$

That means:

Function code $\rightarrow$ H.L range (DEC) $\rightarrow$ FC index (DEC) $\rightarrow$ CAN index (HEX)

$bx.z \rightarrow \{00\dots09\}.\{0\dots99\} \rightarrow \{0000\dots0999\} \rightarrow \{0x2000\dots0x23E7\}$

$dx.z \rightarrow \{10\dots19\}.\{0\dots99\} \rightarrow \{1000\dots1999\} \rightarrow \{0x23E8\dots0x27CF\}$

$Cx.z \rightarrow \{20\dots29\}.\{0\dots99\} \rightarrow \{2000\dots2999\} \rightarrow \{0x27D0\dots0x2BB7\}$

$Ex.z \rightarrow \{30\dots39\}.\{0\dots99\} \rightarrow \{3000\dots3999\} \rightarrow \{0x2BB8\dots0x2F9F\}$

$Ux.z \rightarrow \{40\dots49\}.\{0\dots99\} \rightarrow \{4000\dots4999\} \rightarrow \{0x2FA0\dots0x3387\}$

$Fx.z \rightarrow \{50\dots59\}.\{0\dots99\} \rightarrow \{5000\dots5999\} \rightarrow \{0x3388\dots0x376F\}$

$Hx.z \rightarrow \{60\dots69\}.\{0\dots99\} \rightarrow \{6000\dots6999\} \rightarrow \{0x3770\dots0x3B57\}$

Manufacturer specific objects (2000h...3FFFh)

All function codes (16 bit) can be reached through the manufacturer specific objects. The structure of the manufacturer specific objects is as follows:

Sub-index	Description
1	Access to data (parameter set 0)
2...8	Reserved (parameter set 1...7)
9	Reserved (parameter set 1...7)
10	Index of the list pointer
11	List element to which the element 10 points (only in case of parameters in the list)
12...18	Reserved (for parameter sets)
21	Parameter name
22...28	Reserved (for parameter sets)
31	Parameter attribute
32...38	Reserved (for parameter sets)
41	Parameter unit
41...48	Reserved (for parameter sets)
51	Minimum value of the parameter

Sub-index	Description
52...58	Reserved (for parameter sets)
61	Maximum value of the parameter
62...68	Reserved (for parameter sets)
71	Maximum length of the parameters in the list
72...78	Reserved (for parameter sets)
81	Actual length of the parameter in the list
82...88	Reserved (for parameter sets)

Tab. 12-82: Manufacturer specific objects

As evident from the table, with the help of the sub-index, besides the date (sub-index 1), even other information (minimum value, maximum value ...) of the function codes can be read out.

List access

The complete list of a list parameter can be read or written via the access to the operating date of the parameter.

To access individual elements in the list, there is an option to set a list index (sub-index 10), and then to access the respective list element of the list index via sub-index 11 (up to sub-index 18). For every access via sub-index 11 (up to sub-index 18), the list index is incremented by one element. With this, in case of multiple access to sub-index 11 (up to sub-index 18), a related section of a list is processed.

The list index is reset to the first element if one of the actions listed below occurs:

- Change in the parameter
- Abort of the connection

Therefore the list index should be set for each list element access which does not start from the first element.

If the length of the list has to be changed, this can be corrected by changing the actual length of the list parameter (sub-indices 81...88). The maximum list length can be read out using the sub-indices 71...78.

The parameter value is stored if writing to the last element occurs.

In case of failure of the control voltage, the changes are discarded.

Process Data Objects (PDO)

PDOs represent real-time process data with high priority. It is only possible if node is in “operational” state.

The CANopen option card features four sets of predefined PDOs:

- The first set of PDOs is automatically enabled when CiA-402 drive profile is active and it is fixed (static) mapping:
 - One received PDO (RPDO1), is used to control (Control word) the drive.
 - One transmitted PDO (TPDO1), is used to monitor (Status word) the drive.



- The TPDO1 with transmission type of 255 shall only be triggered when the mapped drive status word is changing (event), other mapped objects shall not cause a PDO transmission.
- The TPDO1 with transmission type of 0 shall be transmitted after the occurrence of the SYNC but acyclic (not periodically), i.e. only if the drive status word is changed (event) before the occurrence of SYNC.

-
- The second set of PDOs (PDO2 for CiA-402 drive profile) includes: The second set of PDOs is initially disabled and the user has to enable it. The default mapping configuration is for supporting CiA-402 velocity mode.
 - One received PDO (RPDO2), is used to control the drive (Control word and velocity reference). In addition, it can be configured to include two additional objects/parameters. Control word and velocity reference can also be replaced with any two other objects which have write access rights via PDO.
 - One transmitted PDO (TPDO2), is used to monitor the drive (Status word and velocity actual value). In addition, it can be configured to include two additional objects which have read access via PDO. Status word and velocity actual value can also be replaced with any two other objects which have read access rights via PDO.
 - The third set of PDOs (PDO3 for Rexroth drive profile) includes: The default mapping configuration enables the drive to be commanded by frequency input and Rexroth drive control word.
 - One received PDO (RPDO3), is used to control the drive (Control word and frequency command). In addition, it can be configured to include two additional objects/parameters. Control word and frequency command can also be replaced with any two other objects which have write access rights via PDO.
 - One transmitted PDO (TPDO3), is used to monitor the drive (Status word and actual output frequency). In addition, it can be configured to include two additional objects which have read access via PDO. Status word and actual output frequency can also be replaced with any two other objects which have read access rights via PDO.

- The fourth set of PDOs are initially disabled and no default mapping configuration is done. And the PDO information is freely deployed by the user.



- For TPDO2 with transmission type of 255 no internal profile specific event is defined for triggering PDO transmission. So for this transmission type of 255/254 (asynchronous) only event timer will trigger PDO transmission.
 - PDO2 does not support transmission type of 0 (synchronous acyclic).
-

Process Data Objects (PDO) Configuration

The following configuration shall be executed.

- PDO1 mapping is static and hence it cannot be changed.
- The default PDO mapping configuration is shown as below for Rexroth drive profile.

RPDO No.	Mapping object index	Mapping object name	Comment
1	0x6040	Control word	Controls the CiA-402 state machine
2	0x6040 0x6042	Control word Target velocity (vI)	Controls the state machine and the nominal speed (vI)
3	0x3770 0x377A	Drive control word Frequency command	Controls the drive system state machine and setting frequency
4	0x0000	-	-
TPDO No.	Mapping object index	Mapping object name	Comment
1	0x6041	Status word	Shows the drive status
2	0x6041 0x6044	Status word vI control effort	Shows status and the current speed (vI)
3	0x3771 0x23EA	Drive status word Output frequency	Shows the drive status and the current output frequency
4	0x0000	-	-

Tab. 12-83: PDO communication parameter structure for CiA-402 profile

Index	Sub	Name	Default value
0x1400	0	Number of entries	5
	1	COB-ID used by PDO	0x80000200 + Node-ID**
	2	Transmission type	255
	3	Inhibit time (not implemented)	0
	4	Reserved	-
	5	Event timer	0
0x1600	0	Number of mapped objects	1
	1	Control word	0x60400010

Tab. 12-84: RPDO1



** : When CiA-402 is enabled, the RPDO1 is enabled, so COB-ID gets changed to 0x80000200 + Node-ID. RPDO1 is disabled in Rexroth Profile. If enabled then it's erroneous.

Index	Sub	Name	Default value
0x1401	0	Number of entries	5
	1	COB-ID used by PDO	0x80000300 + Node-ID
	2	Transmission type	255
	3	Inhibit time (not implemented)	0
	4	Reserved	-
	5	Event timer	0
0x1601	0	Number of mapped objects	2
	1	Control word	0x60400010
	2	Target velocity (vl)	0x60420010

Tab. 12-85: RPDO2

Index	Sub	Name	Default value
0x1402	0	Number of entries	5
	1	COB-ID used by PDO	0x00000400 + Node-ID
	2	Transmission type	255
	3	Inhibit time (not implemented)	0
	4	Reserved	-
	5	Event timer	0
0x1602	0	Number of mapped objects	2
	1	Drive control word	0x37700010
	2	Frequency command	0x377A0010

Tab. 12-86: RPDO3

Index	Sub	Name	Default value
0x1404	0	Number of entries	5
	1	COB-ID used by PDO	0x80000500 + Node-ID
	2	Transmission type	255
	3	Inhibit time (not implemented)	0
	4	Reserved	-
	5	Event timer	0
0x1604	0	Number of mapped objects	0
	1...4	-	0x00000000

Tab. 12-87: RPDO4

Index	Sub	Name	Default value
0x1800	0	Number of entries	5
	1	COB-ID used by PDO	0x00000180 + Node-ID**
	2	Transmission type	255
	3	Inhibit time	50 (100us)
	4	Reserved	-
	5	Event timer	100 (1ms)
0x1A00	0	Number of mapped objects	1
	1	Status word	0x60400010

Tab. 12-88: TPDO1



** : When CiA-402 is enabled, the TPDO1 is enabled, so COB-ID gets changed to 0x00000180 + Node-ID. TPDO1 is disabled in Rexroth Profile. If enabled then it's erroneous.

Index	Sub	Name	Default value
0x1801	0	Number of entries	5
	1	COB-ID used by PDO	0x80000280 + Node-ID
	2	Transmission type	255
	3	Inhibit time	50 (100us)
	4	Reserved	-
	5	Event timer	100 (1ms)
0x1A01	0	Number of mapped objects	2
	1	Status word	0x60410010
	2	vl control effort	0x60440010

Tab. 12-89: TPDO2

Index	Sub	Name	Default value
0x1802	0	Number of entries	5
	1	COB-ID used by PDO	0x00000380 + Node-ID
	2	Transmission type	255
	3	Inhibit time	50 (100us)
	4	Reserved	-
	5	Event timer	100 (1ms)
0x1A02	0	Number of mapped objects	2
	1	Drive status word	0x37710010
	2	Output frequency	0x23EA0010

Tab. 12-90: TPDO3

Index	Sub	Name	Default value
0x1805	0	Number of entries	5
	1	COB-ID used by PDO	0x80000480 + Node-ID
	2	Transmission type	255
	3	Inhibit time	50 (100us)
	4	Reserved	-
	5	Event timer	100 (1ms)
0x1A05	0	Number of mapped objects	0
	1...4	-	0x00000000

Tab. 12-91: TPDO4

1. PDO mapping configuration is not supported in NMT operational state. PDO mapping has to be done in NMT pre-operation state only. If PDO configuration is done in operational state, then CANopen option card automatically enters into pre-operation state.
2. [b8.61]: Field bus option card producer list defines all those parameters which can be mapped to TPDO.
3. [b8.62]: Field bus option card consumer list defines all those parameters which can be mapped to RPDO.

Service Data Objects (SDO)

SDO telegrams are used for configuration and setup.

The SDO services listed below are supported:

- **Initiate SDO Download** for writing maximum 4 byte data in the VFCx615, also for initiating the writing of more than 4 byte data in the VFCx615 (the data length is determined during "Initiate" process).
- **Download SDO Segment** for transmitting a fragment with data in the VFCx615 Initiate SDO.
- **Upload** for transmitting maximum 4 byte data from VFCx615 to the master, also for initiating the transmission of more than 4 byte data from VFCx615 to the master (VFCx615 informs master the length of the response data).
- **Upload SDO Segment** for transmitting a fragment with data from the VFCx615 to the master.
- **Abort SDO Transfer** for reporting errors and to abort SDO accesses.

SDO abort code	Description
05040000h	SDO protocol timed out
05040001h	Client/server command specifier not valid or unknown
05040005h	Out of memory
06010001h	Attempt to read a write only object
06010002h	Attempt to write a read only object
06020000h	Object does not exist in the object dictionary
06040041h	Object cannot be mapped to the PDO
06040042h	The number and length of the objects to be mapped would exceed PDO length
06040043h	General parameter incompatibility reason
06060000h	Access failed due to an hardware error
06070010h	Data type does not match, length of service parameter does not match
06090011h	Sub-index does not exist
06090030h	Value range of parameter exceeded (only for write access)
06090031h	Value of parameter written too high
06090032h	Value of parameter written too low
060A0023h	No resources available
08000000h	General error
08000020h	Data cannot be transferred or stored to the application
08000022h	Data cannot be transferred or stored to the application because of the present device state
08000024h	No data available

Tab. 12-92: SDO abort codes

Network Management Objects (NMT)

NMT functions monitor the network stability and include synchronization, detection of faults and emergency message transmission.

The NMT state machine determines the behaviour of the communication function.

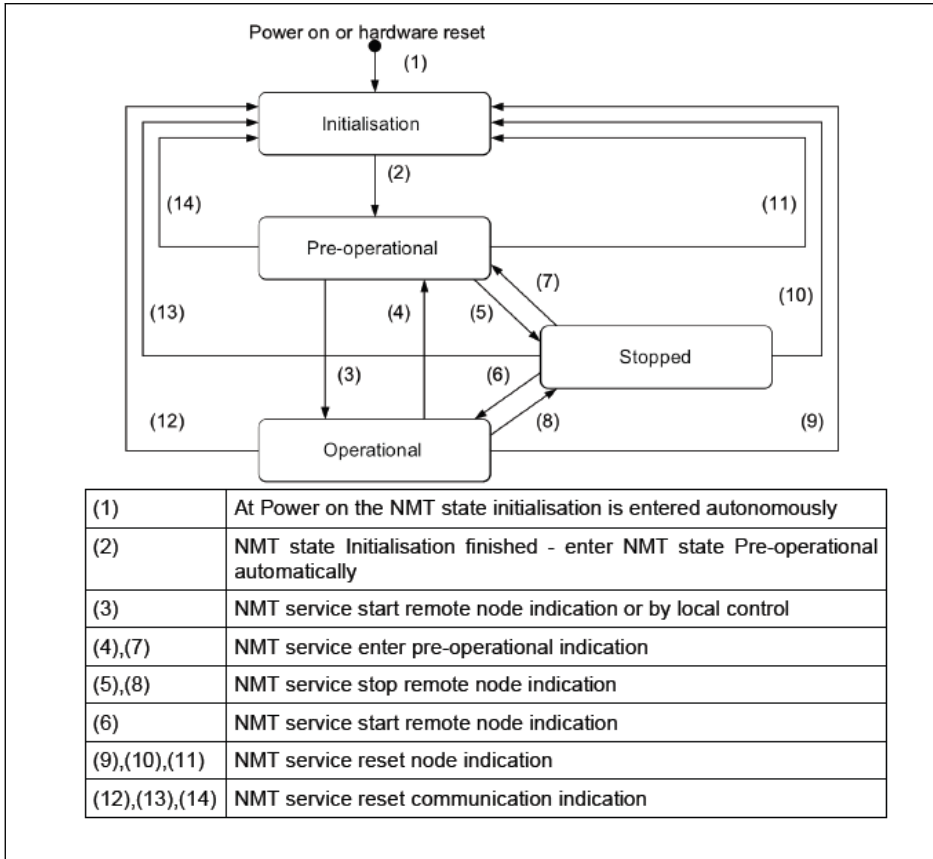


Fig. 12-112: NMT state diagram of CANopen device

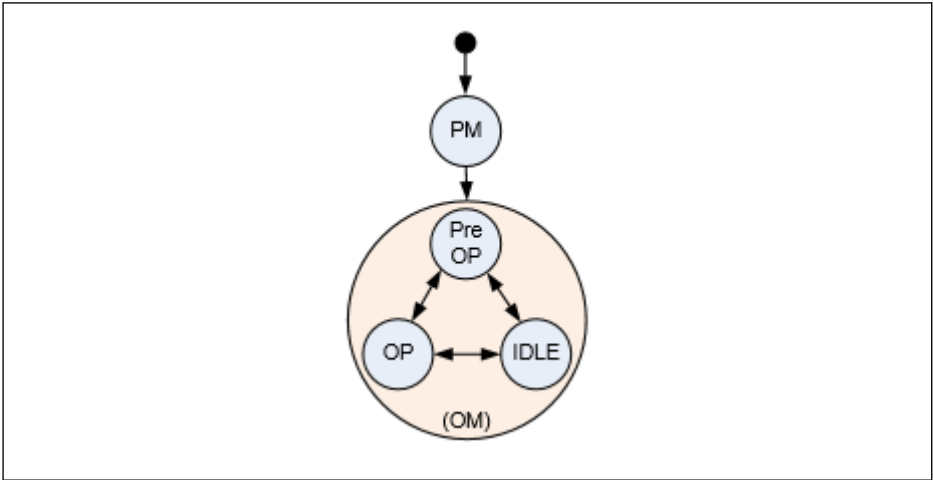


Fig. 12-113: Option card communication states and transitions

State	Description
PM	Parameterization mode (no exchange of process data)
Pre-OP	Pre-operation mode, however, no exchange of process data
OP	Operation mode, exchange of process data, process data is valid
IDLE	Operation mode, exchange of process data, process data is invalid

Tab. 12-93: Option card communication states description



- The communication status between option card and host system is transferred cyclically.
- The coupling between option card and NMT state machine is defined in the table below.

NMT – state	Option card state
Pre-OP / STOPPED	Pre-OP
OP	OP / IDLE IDLE state is entered on two cases: 1. Field-bus Data is Invalid (CAN is in ERROR PASSIVE, BUS OFF or INIT state and NMT is in OP state). 2. IDLE state is entered whenever the PDO configuration is invalid.

Tab. 12-94: Option card communication states description

Emergency Service (EMCY)

When an error occurs or is cleared, an EMCY telegram is transmitted. The EMCY telegram transports 8-byte data.

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Error code	Error register	Manufacturer specific bytes					
Object: 0x603F This object provides the error code of the last error occurred in the drive device.	Object: 0x1001 The error register is a field of 8 bits, each for a certain error type. If an error occurs the bit has to be set.	[b6.91] Least 2 significant bytes			[b6.91] Least 3 significant bytes		
Error code = 0xFF00 (for all manufacturer specific) Error code -> CiA 301/402 specific error codes	Bit meaning 0: Generic error 1: Current 2: Voltage 3: Temperature 4: Communication error (overrun, error state) 5: Device profile specific 6: Reserved 7: Manufacturer specific	E.g. If [b6.91] = 0xF5001 Man_fact[3] = 0x01 Man_fact[4] = 0x50			Man_fact[5] = 0x01 Man_fact[6] = 0x50 Man_fact[7] = 0x0F		

Tab. 12-95: Error telegram

- Emergency telegram is triggered whenever a critical error is detected in either option card or error condition occurs in Host.
- EMCY Frame with error code 0x8120 is sent when CAN is in error passive state.
- EMCY Frame with error code 0x8140 is sent after CAN recovers from BUS-OFF error condition.
- Supported CiA-301 and CiA-402 error codes:

No Error	0x0000
Generic error	0x1000
Generic communication error	0x8100
CAN overrun	0x8110
CAN in passive error	0x8120
Heart beat or node guarding error	0x8130
Protocol error	0x8200
CAN recovered from bus-off	0x8140
Continuous over current (device output side)	0x2310

Continuous over current no.1	0x2311
2312h continuous over current no.2	0x2312
Continuous over current no.3	0x2313
DC link over-voltage	0x3210
Over-voltage no. 1	0x3211
Over-voltage no. 2	0x3212
DC link under-voltage	0x3220
Over-voltage no. 1	0x3211
Over-voltage no. 2	0x3212
DC link under-voltage	0x3220
Short circuit (device internal)	0x2250
Phase failure	0x3130
Load error	0x3230
Excess temperature drive	0x4310
Too low temperature drive	0x4320
Parameter error	0x6320
Any other manufacturer specific error	0xFF00
Any other manufacturer specific warning	0xFF01

Tab. 12-96: CiA-301 and CiA-402 error codes

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Error code	Error register	Manufacturer Specific Bytes (last occurred error diagnostic code)					
0x0000	Object: 0x1001	[b6.91] Least 2 significant bytes			[b6.91] Least 3 significant bytes		

Tab. 12-97: Error-cleared telegram

Synchronisation Service (SYNC)

Overview

SYNC object is used to provide synchronous modes of communication of the CANopen slaves.



- PDO1 supports synchronous cyclic and synchronous acyclic modes.
 - PDO2, PDO3 and PDO4 support only synchronous cyclic modes.
-

Error Control Services

The error control services are used to detect failures within a CAN-based network.

The CANopen option card supports the following error control protocols:

1. Heartbeat object
2. Node guarding object



- Either one of the error control protocol i.e. heartbeat or node guarding can be enabled at a time.
 - Whenever failures are detected an error “FnC-” (Network Setup Error) is set and an EMCY telegram is sent.
-

Non-Volatile Storage

The following objects are implemented:

1. 0x1010: Store Parameter Field
2. 0x1011: Restore Default Parameter



- Saving the contents of object (parameter) data value happens whenever it is written and the already saved data value is different. Saving of objects in EEPROM is handled.
 - Only communication and device profile objects of CANopen option card parameters are restored to default values upon command to object 0x1011.
 - Manufacturer specific parameter/objects are not restored to default values upon command to object 0x1011.
 - The following CANopen option card parameters are not restored to default values upon command to object 0x1011:
 - [H2.00] – Node Address
 - [H2.01] – CAN Baudrate
 - [H2.02] – CANopen Device Profile Selection
 - [H2.98] – CANopen Termination Resistor Switch
-

Device Profile

Overview

1. Communication profile:

The communication profile of xFC01 CANopen option card is based on:

- Physical layer is as per CAN 2.0A standards.
- The CANopenfi specification CiA-301 (Version: 4.2.0).

2. Function profile:

The functional profile of xFC01 CANopen option card complies with:

- "Device profile for drives and motion control" (DSP-402 V2.0, velocity mode).
- Bosch Rexroth VFCx615 drive profile.

Profile Selection Option: For controlling the drive two profiles are provided. The parameter [H2.02] is defined for profile selection. The two profiles are:

0. Rexroth Drive Profile

1. CiA-402 Drive Profile

Rexroth Drive Profile

Rexroth Drive Profile: Set the parameter [H2.02] to 0 and activate Rexroth profile; the CANopen option card automatically disables RPDO1 and TPDO1.

Bit	Value	Description
15...8	-	Reserved
7	1	Active
	0	Control word inactive
6	1	Stop acceleration/deceleration active (stop the internal acc/dec ramp generator)
	0	Inactive
5	1	Fault reset active
	0	Inactive
4	1	E-stop active
	0	Inactive
3	1	Stop according to parameter setting
	0	Inactive
2	1	Reverse
	0	Forward
1	1	Jog active (jogging direction determined by bit 2)
	0	Inactive
0	1	Run command active
	0	Inactive

Tab. 12-98: VFCx615 drive control word

Bit	Value	Description
15...8	-	Fault code (equal to [E9.05])
7	1	Fault
	0	No fault
6	1	Stall over current
	0	Normal
5	1	Stall over voltage
	0	Normal
4	1	Decelerating
	0	Not in deceleration
3	1	Accelerating
	0	Not in acceleration

Bit	Value	Description
2	1	Jogging
	0	Not in jog
1	1	Running
	0	Stop
0	1	Reverse
	0	Forward

Tab. 12-99: VFCx615 drive status word

CiA-402 Drive Profile

Set the parameter [H2.02] to 1 and activate CiA-402 Drive Profile; the CANopen option card automatically enables RPDO1 and TPDO1.



After device profile selection option is changed to CiA-402 the CANopen master should send NMT reset application command.

Device control:

The device control function block controls all functions of the drive (drive function and power section). It is divided into:

- Device control of the state machine.
- Operation mode function.

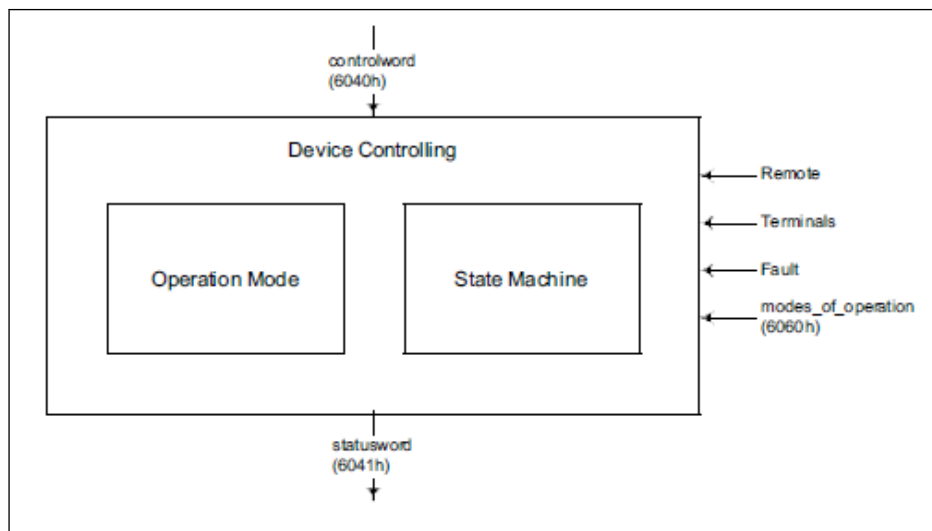


Fig. 12-114: Device control

The state of the drive can be controlled by the control word.

The state of the drive is shown in the status word.

Remote mode:

In remote mode the device is controlled directly from the CANopen network by PDO and SDO.

The state machine is controlled externally by the control word and external signals.

The write access to the control word is controlled by the optional hardware signal "Remote".

The state machine is also controlled by internal signals like faults and modes of operation.

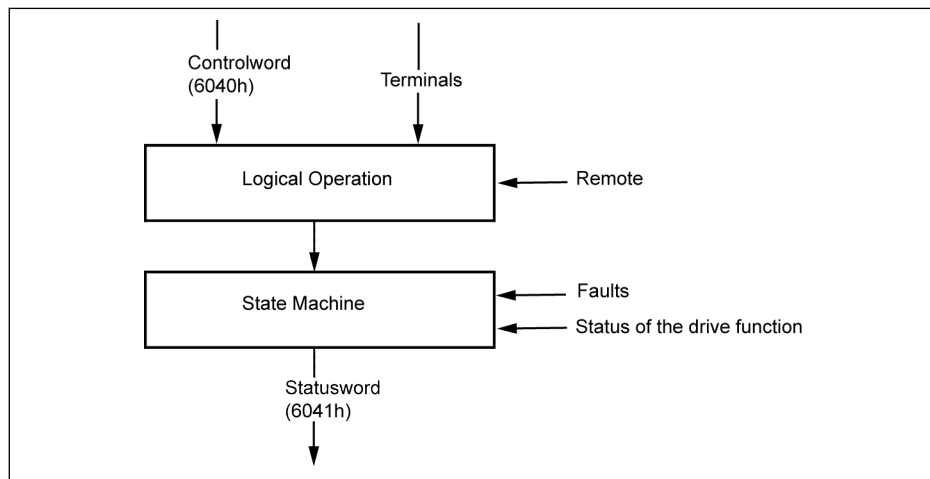


Fig. 12-115: Remote mode

From VFCx615 drive's perspective, when the Run command source is from communication and the communication protocol is CANopen then remote mode is enabled. This remote mode is reflected in the status word: Remote Bit (set when active).

[E0.01]: First run command source

[E0.02]: Second run command source

[E8.00]: Communication protocol

CiA-402 State Machine:

The state machine describes the device status and the possible control sequence of the drive. A single state represents a special internal or external behaviour. The state of the drive also determines which commands are accepted. States may be changed using the control word and/or according to internal events. The current state can be read using the status word. The state machine describes the state machine of the device with respect to control of the power electronics as a result of user commands and internal drive faults.

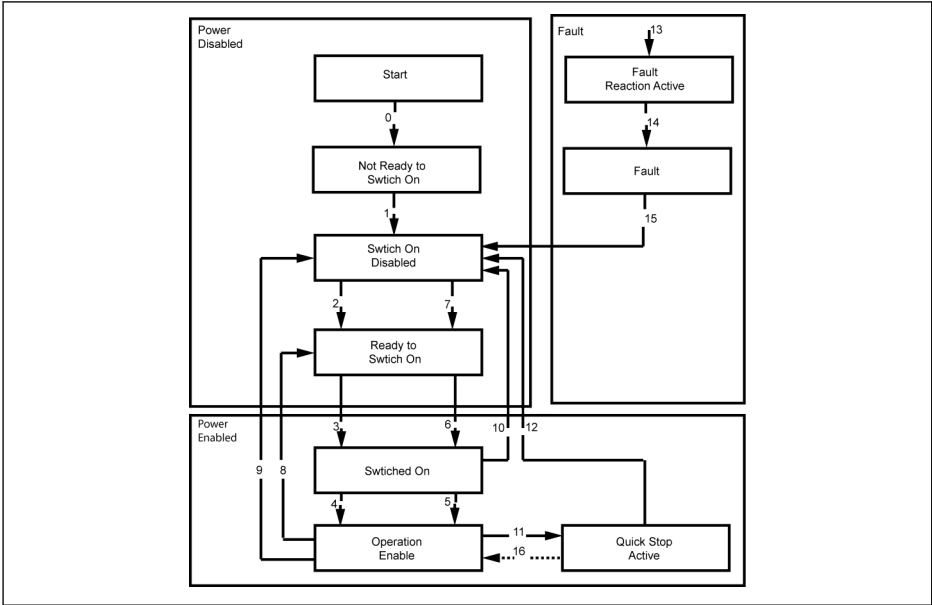


Fig. 12-116: CiA-402 state machine

Note:

- Some of the CiA-402 states cannot be directly mapped to drive's internal system state machine. More-over direct control of the drive's power section by option card is not feasible. The states defined in the CiA-402 state machine are simplified and mapped as follows.

CiA-402 state	Drive status
Not ready to switch on	Initialization phase
Switch on disabled / Ready to switch on / Switched on	Stop
Operation enable	Run
Quick stop active	Run -> Stop transition
Fault reaction active / Fault	When error is set

Tab. 12-100: The state mapping of CiA-402 state machine

- Quick stop object option code (0x605A) is not implemented.
- Transition 16 is not supported.
- Upon reception of Quick stop command the drive automatically transits (12) to "Switch On Disabled" state when the drive stops.
- Illegal state transition request is handled as follows:

In order to control the drive, the state transitions have to be done in a proper sequence. If the requested state transition is not appropriate (as defined in the state chart) then it is termed as “Illegal transition”.

When this occurs, suitable handling or indication will be given to the user/master.

Examples:

- > Trying to directly move to “Operation Enabled” from “Switch On Disabled”.
- > Giving fault reset command in “Operation Enabled” state.

SDO Access:

If SDO is used to control the drive, then on occurrence of an illegal transition, the control word is rejected with abort code 0609 0030, “Invalid value for parameter”. The drive state is not affected.

PDO Access:

If RPDO is used to control the drive, then on occurrence of an illegal transition the drive state is not affected, but the following indication is given:

1. Warning is set and this is indicated on panel by displaying “ISt” (Invalid State Transition) and also in the CiA-Statusword warning bit (7) is set.
2. Emergency telegram is sent with error code 0x8200(protocol error).
3. The warning will be cleared only when the CANopen master gives a new valid state transition command(CiA-Controlword) either via SDO or PDO.

0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Error code Object: 0x603F	Error register Object: 0x1001	Manufacturer Specific Bytes					
0x8200 (Protocol error)	0x21	[b6.91] 0x5900		[b6.91] 0xE5900			

Tab. 12-101: CiA-Statusword warning bit

CiA-402 Controlword:

Object 6040h: Control word

The control word consists of bits for:

- The controlling of the state
- The controlling of operating modes
- Manufacturer specific options

Bit No.	Functionality	Description
0	Switch on	Active
1	Enable voltage	Active
2	Quick stop	Active
3	Enable operation	Active

Bit No.	Functionality	Description
4	Operation mode specific	Inactive (No need to consider on bit)
5	Operation mode specific	Inactive (No need to consider on bit)
6	Operation mode specific	Inactive (No need to consider on bit)
7	Fault reset	Active on Rising edge 0->1
8	Halt	Active
9	Reserved	Reserved (No need to consider on bit)
10	Reserved	Reserved (No need to consider on bit)
11	Manufacturer specific	Reserved (No need to consider on bit)
12	Manufacturer specific	Reserved (No need to consider on bit)
13	Manufacturer specific	Reserved (No need to consider on bit)
14	Manufacturer specific	Reserved (No need to consider on bit)
15	Manufacturer specific	Reserved (No need to consider on bit)

Tab. 12-102: Definition of control word bits

Device control commands are triggered by the following bit patterns in the control word:

Command	Bit of the control word					Transitions
	Fault reset	Enable operation	Quick stop	Enable voltage	Switch on	
Shutdown	0	X	1	1	0	2, 6, 8
Switch on	0	0	1	1	1	3*
Switch on	0	1	1	1	1	3**
Disable voltage	0	X	X	X	X	7, 9, 10, 12
Quick stop	0	X	0	1	X	7, 10, 11
Disable operation	0	0	1	1	1	5
Enable operation	0	1	1	1	1	4, 16
Fault reset		X	X	X	X	15

Tab. 12-103: Device control commands

Halt-Bit (8): Drive stops when halt bit is set and enters “Switch on Disabled State”.

CiA-402 Statusword:

Object 6041h: status word

The status word indicates the current state of the drive. No bits are latched. The status word consists of bits for:

- The current state of the drive
- The operating state of the mode
- Manufacturer specific options

Bit No.	Functionality	Description
0	Ready to switch on	Active
1	Switched on	Active
2	Operation enabled	Active
3	Fault	Active
4	Voltage enabled	Active
5	Quick stop	Active
6	Switch on disabled	Active
7	Warning	Active
8	Manufacturer specific	Set to 0
9	Remote	Active
10	Target reached	Defined as drive transient* status
11	Internal limit active	Active
12	Operation mode specific	Set to 0
13	Operation mode specific	Set to 0
14	Manufacturer specific	Set to 0
15	Manufacturer specific	Set to 0

Tab. 12-104: Definition of status word bits

Value (Binary)	State
xxxx xxxx x0xx 0000	Not ready to switch on
xxxx xxxx x1xx 0000	Switch on disabled
xxxx xxxx x01x 0001	Ready to switch on
xxxx xxxx x01x 0011	Switched on
xxxx xxxx x01x 0111	Operation enabled
xxxx xxxx x00x 0111	Quick stop active
xxxx xxxx x0xx 1111	Fault reaction active
xxxx xxxx x0xx 1000	Fault

Tab. 12-105: Device state bits

Warning Bit (7):

Drive warnings are indicated on CiA-402 status word Bit-7. No emergency telegram is triggered for warning conditions detected from the Host. In case of

warnings the Object 0x603F contains the warning code. If the warning is signaled from the Host then the corresponding error code object's (0x603F) data value is 0xFF01.

Target Reached Bit (10):

This bit detects whether drive is in transient* status or not. Target reached bit is set when the target velocity is reached and this is determined by checking the acceleration and deceleration status of the drive. An internal delay of 30ms is taken before validating and setting this bit in the CiA-Statusword. This is required because drive does not accelerate immediately after RUN command is issued. Approximately 8ms delay time is required for enabling the power-section and entering into RUN state.

Simple Velocity Mode:

Velocity mode is composed of the following sub-functions:

- Reference calculation
- Factor function, Reverse factor function
- Percentage function, Reverse percentage function
- Pole number function, Reverse pole number function
- Velocity limit function
- Velocity motor limit function
- Ramp function
- Ramp min function
- Closed open loop control function

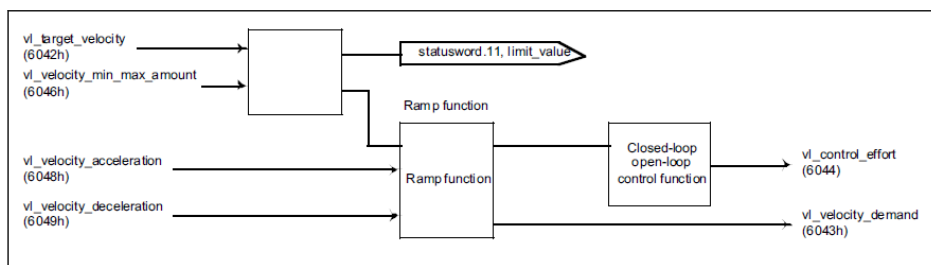


Fig. 12-117: Velocity mode with mandatory objects only



- **Rotation direction** is changed with positive and negative values of object 0x6042:

Target velocity in RPM. The range of velocity command is from: -32768 RPM to +32767 RPM.

- In velocity mode: Acceleration is defined as: $\frac{\Delta \text{Speed}}{\Delta \text{Time}}$

Whenever Delta speed or time changes, [E0.26] will be calculated and updated in the control board.

$$[E0.26] = \frac{[E0.08] \times \Delta \text{Time} \times 120}{\Delta \text{Speed} \times \text{Poles}}$$

Unit of acceleration is RPM/s.

- In velocity mode: Deceleration is defined as: $\frac{\Delta \text{Speed}}{\Delta \text{Time}}$

Whenever Delta speed or time changes, [E0.27] will be calculated and updated in the control board.

$$[E0.27] = \frac{[E0.08] \times \Delta \text{Time} \times 120}{\Delta \text{Speed} \times \text{Poles}}$$

[E0.08] -> Maximum output frequency

Unit of deceleration is RPM/s.

Parameter dependency relation in CiA-402 velocity mode profile:

When CiA-402 drive profile is selected, a watch-list of parameters is prepared in the CANopen option card. So when these watch-list parameters are modified, then the associated dependent parameters are calculated and written back to Host (Control board) by CANopen option card automatically.

Main parameter (Watch list)	Associated dependent parameters and drive profile objects
[C1.11]: Motor Poles	1. [E0.26]: Acceleration Time 2. [E0.27]: Deceleration Time 3. [E0.10]: Output Frequency Low Limit* 4. [E0.09]: Output Frequency High Limit*
[E0.08]: Maximum Frequency	1. [E0.26]: Acceleration Time 2. [E0.27]: Deceleration Time 3. 0x6046: vl Velocity Min Max amount
[E0.09]: Output Frequency High Limit	0x6046-02: vl Velocity Max amount
[E0.10]: Output Frequency Low Limit	0x6046-01: vl Velocity Min amount
[E0.26]: Acceleration Time	Not writable when CiA-402 Profile is Active and NMT is in Operational State
[E0.27]: Deceleration Time	Not writable when CiA-402 Profile is Active and NMT is in Operational State

Tab. 12-106: List of dependent parameters



*: The Low and High limits of frequency are calculated based on the velocity limits as defined in the object 0x6046 : vl Velocity Min Max amount

- When node is in NMT operational state, it is not possible to write parameters [E0.26] and [E0.27] directly by Converter Works/SDO (“Protected by others” error is thrown).
- When node is in NMT pre-operation state, it is possible to write parameters [E0.26] and [E0.27] directly by Converter Works/SDO; but the moment the NMT state transits from pre-operation to operation, the calculated acceleration/deceleration times based on the objects 0x6048 and 0x6049 are written back to [E0.26] and [E0.27].
- If motor poles [C1.11] or maximum frequency [E0.08] parameter is changed when node is in operational state then the dependent parameters are re-calculated and updated automatically.

Related Communication Parameters

Parameter	Name	Modify	Function	Value
E0.00	First frequency setting source	Stop	Setting frequency selection source	20: Communication
E0.01	First run command source	Stop	Run command selection source	2: Communication
E8.00	Communication protocol	Stop	Field bus protocol selection	0: Modbus* 1: Option card
E8.03	Communication process data loss behaviour	Stop	Selecting the drive behaviour when the CANopen node switches to Pre-Op during RUN	0: Decelerating stop 1: Freewheeling stop 2: Keep running
H0.00	Control word	Run	VFCx615 drive control word	-
H0.01	Status word	Read	VFCx615 Drive Status Word	-
H0.10	Frequency command	Run	Setting frequency	0...400 Hz (0...65535) Default: 0
H0.20	Option card 1 type	Read	Shows the option card type in slot 1 detected by frequency converter	0: Inactive* 1: PROFIBUS card 2: CANopen card 3: Multi-Ethernet card 8: I/O card 9: Relay card
H0.21	Option card1 hardware label	Read	-	-
H0.22	Option card1 firmware string	Read	-	-
H0.23	Option card 2 Type	Read	Shows the option card type detected in slot 2 by frequency converter	0: Inactive* 1: PROFIBUS card 2: CANopen card 3: Multi-Ethernet card 8: I/O card 9: Relay card
H0.24	Option card2 hardware label	Read	-	-
H0.25	Option card2 firmware string	Read	-	-

Tab. 12-107: Definition of status word bits



* : Factory default

CANopen Option Card Parameters

Parameter	Mapped object in MO/CO/DPO	Name	Modify	Function	Value
H2.00	MO: 0x3838	CANopen address	Stop	Selects the address for CANopen Node	1...127 Default: 1
H2.01	MO: 0x3839	CAN baudrate	Stop	Sets the speed of CANopen communication	0...6 Default: 3 0: 10 kbits/s 1: 20 kbits/s 2: 50 kbits/s 3: 125 kbits/s 4: 250 kbits/s 5: 500 kbits/s 6: 1 Mbit/s
H2.02	MO: 0x383A	CANopen device profile selection	Stop	To switch between different drive profiles	0...1 Default: 0-> Rexroth Drive Profile 1-> CiA- 402 Drive Profile
H2.98	MO: 0x389A	CANopen termination resistor switch	Stop	Selects the state of the termination resistor	0:Disabled (Default) 1: Enabled

Tab. 12-108: CANopen option card parameters



MO: Manufacturer Objects

12.20 H8: IO&IO Plus Card Parameters

12.20.1 IO & IO Plus Card Analog Input Configuration

This function is implemented to configure the external analog input EAI1 and EAI2, which is provided in IO and IO plus extension card.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
H8.05	EAI1 input mode	0: 0...20 mA 1: 4...20 mA 2: 0...10 V 3: 0...5 V 4: 2...10 V 5: -10...10 V	0	–	–	Stop
H8.06	EAI1 input polarity setting	0: Polarity inactive 1: Polarity active without direction control 2: Polarity active with direction control 3: Combination direction control	1	–	–	Stop
H8.07	EAI1 dead zone filter value	0.0...30.0 %	0.0	%	0.1	Run
H8.09	EAI1 filter time	0.000...2.000	0.100	s	0.001	Run
H8.10	EAI1 gain	0.00...10.00	1.00	-	0.01	Run
H8.15	EAI1 curve minimum	-120.0%... [H8.17]	0.0	%	0.1	Run
H8.16	EAI1 curve minimum value	-[E0.09]...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
H8.17	EAI1 curve maximum	[H8.15]...120.0 %	100.0	%	0.1	Run
H8.18	EAI1 curve maximum value	-[E0.09]...[E0.09] Hz	50.00	Hz	0.01	Run
H8.30	EAI2 input mode	0: 0...20 mA 1: 4...20 mA 2: 0...10 V 3: 0...5 V 4: 2...10 V 5: -10...10 V	0	–	–	Stop

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
H8.31	EAI2 input polarity setting	0: Polarity inactive 1: Polarity active without direction control 2: Polarity active with direction control 3. Combination direction control	1	–	–	Stop
H8.32	EAI2 filter time	0.000...2.000	0.100	s	0.001	Run
H8.33	EAI2 gain	0.00...10.00	1.00	-	0.01	Run
H8.34	EAI2 curve minimum	-120.0 %... [H8.36]	0.0	%	0.1	Run
H8.35	EAI2 curve minimum value	-[E0.09]...[E0.09]	0.00	Hz	0.01	Run
H8.36	EAI2 curve maximum	[H8.34]...120.0 %	100.0	%	0.1	Run
H8.37	EAI2 curve maximum value	-[E0.09]...[E0.09]	50.00	Hz	0.01	Run
H8.38	EAI2 dead zone filter value	0.0...30.0 %	0.0	%	0.1	Run

Except for an additional option of '-10...10 V', EAI1 / EAI2 is the same as AI1 and AI2.

In order to use '-10...10 V', set [H8.05] (or [H8.30])= '-10...10 V' firstly.

Unlike other analog inputs, EAI1 / EAI2 will not have multiple curve selection. There are dedicated curves defined for EAI1 and EAI2. Parameters H8.15...H8.18 defines EAI1 curve, parameters H8.34...H8.37 defines EAI2 curve. Both the curve functionalities are similar, hence all the below descriptions mentioned are applicable to both curves.

H8.06 'EAI1 input polarity setting' (or H8.31 'EAI2 input polarity setting') defines how the input polarity information can be used for operation.

- **[H8.06] / [H8.31] = 0: Polarity inactive**

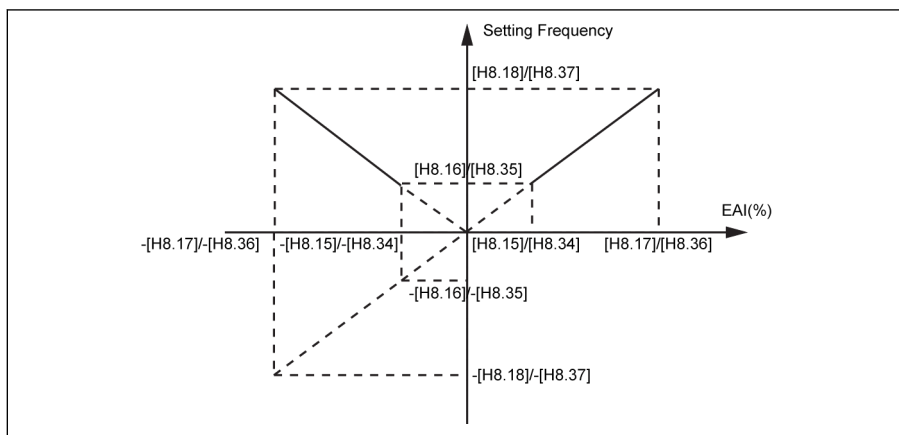


Fig. 12-118: Polarity inactive

- Setting frequency will be always positive irrespective of H8.16 / H8.18 parameter setting.
- Direction control is not active in this mode, which means even if negative frequency command is generated it will result in FWD direction only.
- When frequency source combination is used, the setting frequency from EAI will be only positive, and can be used in the addition and subtraction operation.

● **[H8.06] / [H8.31] = 1: Polarity active without direction control**

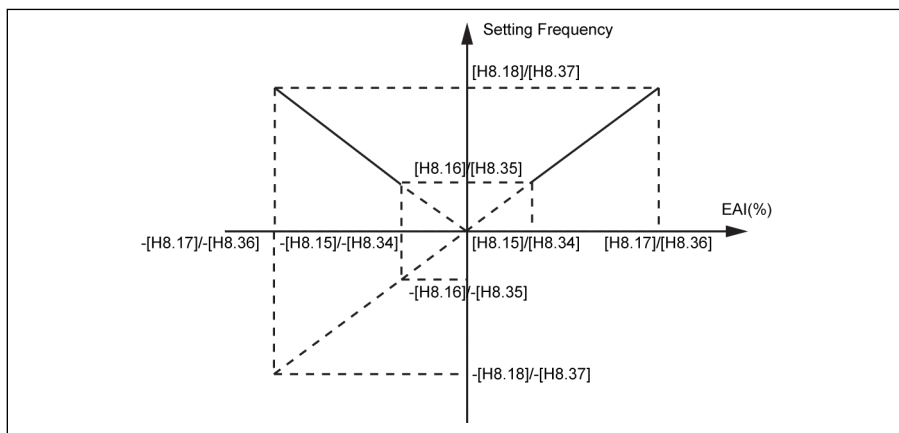
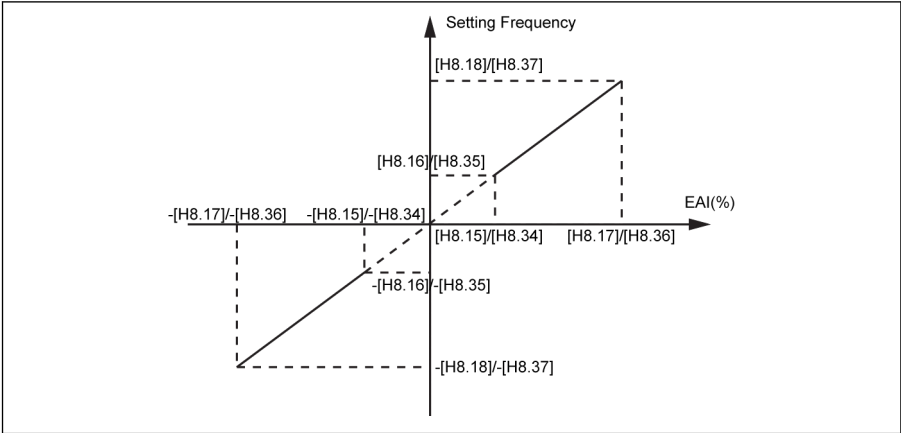


Fig. 12-119: Polarity active without direction control

- When frequency source combination is NOT used, the setting frequency will still be positive value even with negative EAI1 / EAI2 input, like the absolute value, and rotation direction will not be influenced by negative EAI1 / EAI2 input.

- When frequency source combination is used, the setting frequency from EAI1 / EAI2 can be positive / negative, and be used in the addition and subtraction operation.
- [H8.06] / [H8.31] = 2: Polarity active with direction control**



- Fig. 12-120:** Polarity active with direction control
- Direction control is active in this mode, which means negative frequency command will result in REV direction and positive frequency command will result in FWD direction.
 - Frequency source combination operation cannot be enabled. As direction control from EAI is active.
 - EAI1 / EAI2 as direction control has a higher priority than actual panel and terminal setting. For example, the terminal control is giving a FWD signal, but during the running process, the EAI1 / EAI2 's input is becoming negative, then the final direction would be changed to negative. If the command is from panel, then U1.00 will be inactive if polarity is used to control the direction. And the priorities of all other existing direction command sources (Ex: Simple PLC, Multi-Speed Control) if it is higher than panel and terminal setting then it remains higher than priority of EAI1 / EAI2 direction command also.
 - [H8.06] / [H8.31] = 3: Combination of EAI and Run command**
- This option will enable direction combination of EAI polarity and active run command source (Panel, DI, except communication as run command source)

E0.01/E0.03=0: run command is panel		
H8.05/H8.31=3: Combination of EAI and Run command		
U0.00 decides original direction set	Polarity of EA1	Direction
FWD	+	FWD
REV	+	REV

FWD	-	REV
REV	-	FWD

E0.01/E0.03=1: run command is digital input		
H8.05/H8.31=3: Combination of EAI and Run command		
DI decides original direction set	Polarity of EA1	Direction
FWD	+	FWD
REV	+	REV
FWD	-	REV
REV	-	FWD

Example for EAI1, when H8.05 = 5:

1. H8.06 = 0, H8.15 = -100.0, H8.16 = 0.0, H8.17 = 100.0, H8.18 = 50.0

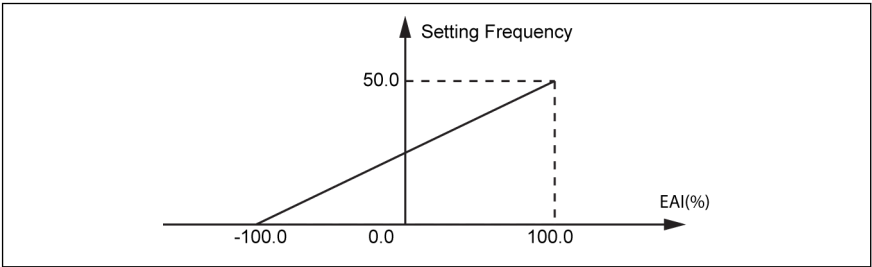


Fig. 12-121: EAI1 example 1

2. H8.06 = 1, H8.15 = -100.0, H8.16 = -50.0, H8.17 = 100.0, H8.18 = 50.0

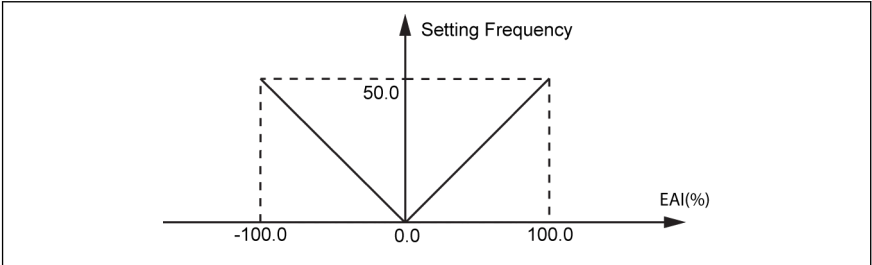


Fig. 12-122: EAI1 example 2

3. H8.06 = 2, H8.15 = -100.0, H8.16 = -50.0, H8.17 = 100.0, H8.18 = 50.0

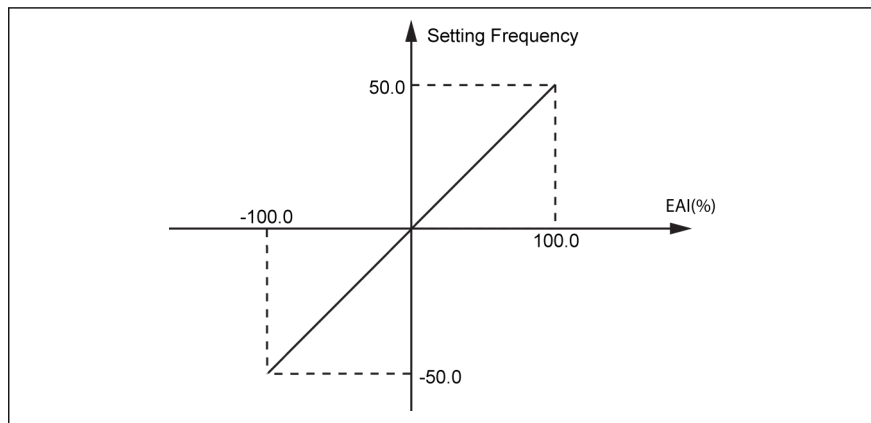


Fig. 12-123: EAI1 example 3

Frequency setting source combination with polarity of EAI1 / EAI2

- When H8.06 / H8.31 'EAI input polarity setting' is set to '0' or '1', and frequency source combination is selected, then the negative value of EAI1 / EAI2 will be treated normally.

E.g: 5 V from AI1 and -2 V from EAI1, then the combination result will be 7 V with subtraction operation, and 3V with addition operation.

- When frequency source combination function is selected (either addition or subtraction), the H8.06 / H8.31 'EAI input polarity setting' will be limited to '1' or '0', and the combination result will always be limited to 0.00...[E0.09] Hz. When frequency combination is selected (addition / subtraction), then if polarity with direction control is already enabled (H8.06 / H8.31 = 2) 'PrSE' will be displayed.



When [H8.05] = '5: -10...10 V' and [H8.06] / [H8.31] = '2: Polarity active with direction control', the priority of direction command from EAI1 / EAI2 is

- higher than the direction command from communication or digital inputs
- lower than the direction command from simple PLC or Multi-Speed

Dead zone filter for external analog input -10 ...+10 V

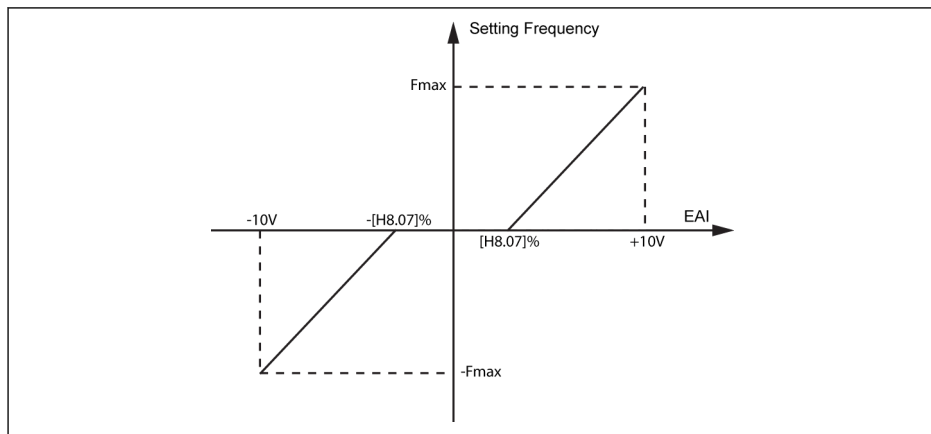


Fig. 12-124: Dead zone filter for external analog input

If $[H8.05] / [H8.30] = 5$, parameter $H8.07 / H8.38$ can be used to define the forward and reverse rotation dead zone of the motor, i.e. the range for treating input signals as zero, as shown in the above figure. For example, if $[H8.07] / [H8.38] = 10.0\%$ when $[H8.05] / [H8.30] = 5$, analog input signals within the range of $-1...+1\text{ V}$ will be treated as zero, $1...10\text{ V}$ corresponds to 0 Hz to maximum frequency, $-1...-10\text{ V}$ corresponds to 0 Hz to minus maximum frequency. The dead zone range is $-1...+1\text{ V}$ in this case.

Dead zone filter will be active only for $-10...+10\text{ V}$ mode when polarity control for that channel is enabled. i.e., when $H8.05 / H8.30 = 5$ and $H8.06 / H8.31 = 1$ or 2 . And when dead zone filter is active, curve mode configurations will be inactive.



IO & IO plus card analog input status are monitored by parameter $d0.33$ 'I/O card EAI1 input' or $d0.34$ 'I/O card EAI2 input'.

12.20.2 IO & IO Plus Card Analog output Configuration

The EAO analog output terminal may output voltage or current signals based on some system variables with adjustable gain setting.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
H8.25	EAO output mode	0: 0...10 V 1: 0...20 mA 2: -10...10 V (only for IO plus card) 3 : 2....10V 4 : 4.....20mA	0	–	–	Run
H8.26	EAO output selection	0: Output frequency 1: Set frequency 2: Output current 4: Output voltage 5: Output power 6: AI1 analog input 7: AI2 analog input 8: EAI1 analog input 9: EAI2 analog input 11: Motor temperature sensor power 12: Parameter setting from communication 13: Setting torque 14: Output torque	0	–	–	Run
H8.27	EAO gain	0.00...10.00	1.00	–	0.01	Run
H8.28	EAO value in percentage from extension card fieldbus communication	0.00...100.00%	0.00	%	0.01	Stop
H8.39	EAO curve minimum	-100.0 %...[H8.41]	0.0	%	0.1	Run
H8.40	EAO curve minimum value	-100.0...100.0 %	0.00	%	0.01	Run
H8.41	EAO curve maximum	[H8.39]...100.0 %	100.0	%	0.1	Run
H8.42	EAO curve maximum value	-100.0...100.0 %	100.0	%	0.1	Run

Analog Output Configuration step:

● Step 1: Set EAO output mode

H8.25 is for AO1 output mode selection, when IO plus card is connected, then H8.25 can be set to '2: -10 V...+10 V' mode. Depending upon the configuration of H8.26, EAO will be in '-10 V...+10 V' range.

For example: If H8.26 = 0 (output frequency), then

0...50 Hz (FWD): 0...+10 V

0...50 Hz (REV): 0...-10 V

● Step 2: Select EAO output signal

Setting range of H8.26:

H8.26 = 0: Output frequency	Represents the actual output frequency between 0.00...[E0.08] Hz.
H8.26 = 1: Setting frequency	Represents the setting frequency between 0.00...[E0.08] Hz.
H8.26 = 2: Output current	Represents the 0...2 x [rated current].
H8.26 = 4: Output voltage	Represents 0...1.2 x [rated voltage], which is defined by parameter E2.40.
H8.26 = 5: Output power	Represents 0...1.2 x [rated power].
H8.26 = 6: AI1 Analog input	Represents AI1 input value.
H8.26 = 7: AI2 Analog input	Represents AI2 input value.
H8.26 = 8: EAI1 analog input	Represents EAI1 analog input value from IO or I/O plus card.
H8.26 = 9: EAI2 analog input	Represents EAI2 analog input value from I/O plus card.
H8.26 = 11: Motor temperature sensor power supply	Provides current source for motor temperature sensor, see chapter 12.3.7 "Motor Thermal Sensor Selection" on page 159 .
H8.26 = 12: Parameter setting from communication	- For modbus mode, the output is defined by register 0x7F07, the value range of register is 0.00 %...100.00 % (It means percentage of maximum analog output value). - For other fieldbus mode, the output is defined by parameter H8.28.
H8.26 = 13: Setting torque	Represents range of setting torque selected using C3.42 and C3.43.
H8.26 = 14: Output torque	Represents range of output torque selected using C3.42 and C3.43.

● Step 3: Set AO1 filter time and output curve

EAO curve for H8.25 = 0 & 1:

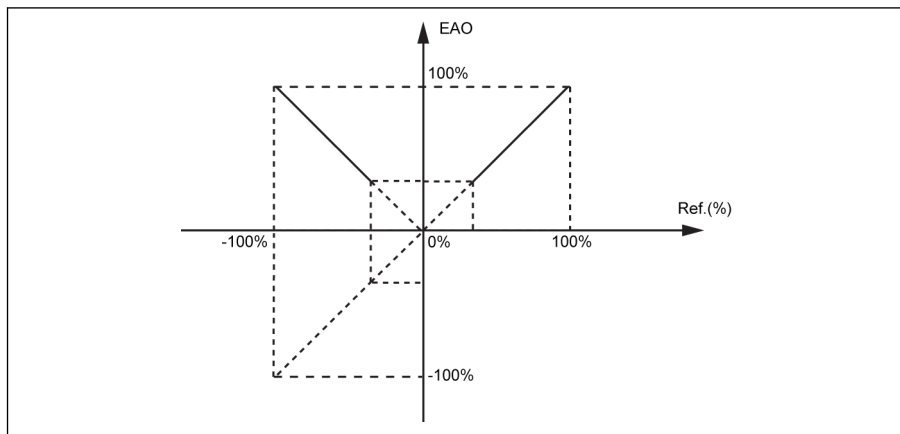


Fig. 12-125: EAO curve 1

EAO curve for H8.25 = 2:

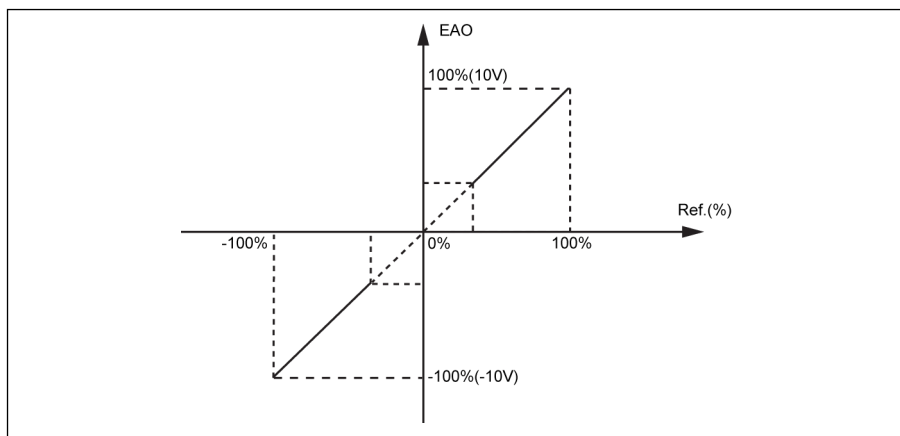


Fig. 12-126: EAO curve 2



- EAO analog output status is monitored by parameter d0.37 'I/O card EAO output'.
- Since mode 2 for H8.25 is valid only for IO plus card, when back-up is done with H8.25 = 2 and if restore is done with IO card, then 'E.par' would be displayed since mode 2 is not applicable for IO card.

12.20.3 IO & IO Plus Card Digital Input Configuration

This function defines 5 multi-function digital inputs with PNP and NPN wiring.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
H8.00	EX1 input	1...52	0	–	–	Stop
H8.01	EX2 input		0	–	–	Stop
H8.02	EX3 input		0	–	–	Stop
H8.03	EX4 input		0	–	–	Stop
H8.04	EX5 input		0	–	–	Stop

Setting range of H8.00...H8.04:

- **0: Inactive**
No function assigned.
- **1: Multi-speed control input 1**
- **2: Multi-speed control input 2**
- **3: Multi-speed control input 3**
- **4: Multi-speed control input 4**
16 multi-speeds are available by combination of 4 terminals, details see [chapter 12.11 "E3: Multi-Speed and Simple PLC" on page 254](#).
- **10: Acceleration / deceleration time 1 activation**
- **11: Acceleration / deceleration time 2 activation**
- **12: Acceleration / deceleration time 3 activation**
Used to switch between 8 groups of acceleration / deceleration time, details see [chapter 12.11 "E3: Multi-Speed and Simple PLC" on page 254](#).
- **15: Freewheeling stop activation**
'Freewheeling stop activation' generates a stop command and forces the frequency converter to freewheel to stop regardless of the stopping mode configured by E0.50.
- **16: Stop DC-braking activation**
This function is used when stopping mode is set with [E0.50] = '0: Decelerating stop', details see [chapter 12.8.9 "Stop Mode Configuration" on page 208](#).
- **20: Frequency Up command**
- **21: Frequency Down command**
- **22: Up / Down command reset**
Used to change the output frequency, details see [chapter 12.9.3 "Digital Input Frequency Change Function" on page 231](#).
- **23: Torque / speed control switch**
Used to switch between torque control mode and speed control mode. If the defined switch is open, speed control mode is selected; If the defined switch is closed, torque control mode is selected.

- **25: 3-wire control**

Used for the 3-wire control mode, details see [chapter 12.9.2 "2- and 3-Wire Control" on page 226](#).

- **26: Simple PLC stop**

- **27: Simple PLC pause**

Used for the simple PLC to stop and pause a PLC cycle, details see [chapter 12.11 "E3: Multi-Speed and Simple PLC" on page 254](#).

- **30: Second frequency setting source activation**

Used for switching to the second frequency setting source, details see [chapter 12.8.1 "Frequency Setting Source" on page 189](#).

- **31: Second run command source activation**

Used for switching to the second run command source, details see [chapter 12.8.2 "Run Command Source" on page 194](#).

- **32: Error signal N.O. contact input**

- **33: Error signal N.C. contact input**

Used for receive error signal from external sources. The frequency converter stops once an external error signal is active and the error code 'E-St' will be displayed on the operating panel if one X1...X5 or EX1...EX5 input is defined as either 'Error signal N.O. contact input' or 'Error signal N.C. contact input'.

- **32: Error signal N.O. contact input**

- If the defined switch is closed, the external error signal is active.
 - If the defined switch is open, the external error signal is inactive.

- **33: Error signal N.C. contact input**

- If the defined switch is open, the external error signal is active.
 - If the defined switch is closed, the external error signal is inactive.

The converter will stop when the external error signal is active, and the stop mode is defined by E0.56 'Emergency stop action', please see [chapter 12.8.9 "Stop Mode Configuration" on page 208](#) for the detailed information.

Example:

Set [E1.00] = '32: Error signal N.O. contact input' **or**

Set [E1.01] = '33: Error signal N.C. contact input'

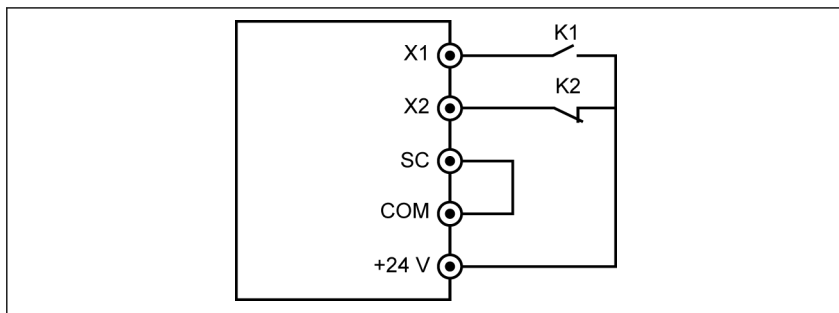


Fig. 12-127: Error signal 1

The frequency converter stops and indicates error code 'E-St' if K1 is closed.

Or the frequency converter stops and indicates error code 'E-St' if K2 is open.

- **34: Error reset**

Used for error reset operation. The error reset input can be defined with one digital input. This function works in the same manner as the panel error reset function does, which allows remote error reset. 'Error reset signal' is edge sensitive.

- **35: Forward running (FWD)**

- **36: Reverse running (REV)**

Used for Run / Stop command control, details see [chapter 12.8.2 "Run Command Source" on page 194](#).

- **37: Forward jog**

- **38: Reverse jog**

See [chapter 12.8.13 "Jog Function" on page 215](#).

- **39: Counter input**

- **40: Counter reset**

See [chapter 12.10.6 "Pulse Counter Function" on page 252](#).

- **41: PID deactivation**

See [chapter 12.12 "E4: PID Control" on page 268](#).

- **46: User parameter set selection**

Used to switch between two sets of parameters, details see [chapter 12.1.4 "Parameter Set Switch" on page 116](#).

- **48: Motor overheating error N.O. contact input**

- **49: Motor overheating error N.C. contact input**

Used for receive motor overheating error signal from external sources. The frequency converter stops once an external motor overheating error signal is active and the error code 'Ot' will be displayed on the operating panel if one

of X1...X5 or EX1...EX5 input is defined as either 'Motor overheating error N.O. contact input' or 'Motor overheating error N.C. contact input'.

– **48: Motor overheating error N.O. contact input**

- If the defined switch is closed, the motor overheating error signal is active.
- If the defined switch is open, the motor overheating error signal is inactive.

– **49: Motor overheating error N.C. contact input**

- If the defined switch is open, the motor overheating error signal is active.
- If the defined switch is closed, the motor overheating error signal is inactive.

Example:

Set [E1.00] = '48: Motor overheating error N.O. contact input' **or**

Set [E1.01] = '49: Motor overheating error N.C. contact input'

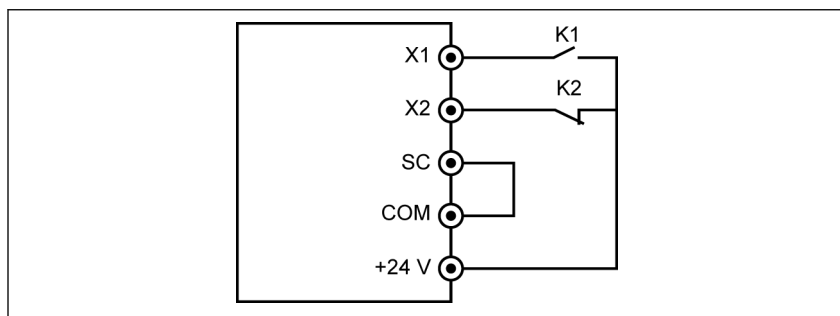


Fig. 12-128: Error signal 2

The frequency converter stops and indicates error code 'Ot' if K1 is closed.

Or the frequency converter stops and indicates error code 'Ot' if K2 is open.

- **50: Motor overheating warning N.O. contact input**
- **51: Motor overheating warning N.C. contact input**

Used for receive motor overheating warning signal from external sources. Warning code 'Ot' will be displayed on the operating panel if one of X1...X5 or EX1...EX5 input is defined as either 'Motor overheating warning N.O. contact input' or 'Motor overheating warning N.C. contact input'.

– **50: Motor overheating warning N.O. contact input**

- If the defined switch is closed, the motor overheating warning signal is active.
- If the defined switch is open, the motor overheating warning signal is inactive.

– **51: Motor overheating warning N.C. contact input**

- If the defined switch is open, the motor overheating warning signal is active.
- If the defined switch is closed, the motor overheating warning signal is inactive.

Example:

Set [E1.00] = '50: Motor overheating warning N.O. contact input' **or**

Set [E1.01] = '51: Motor overheating warning N.C. contact input'

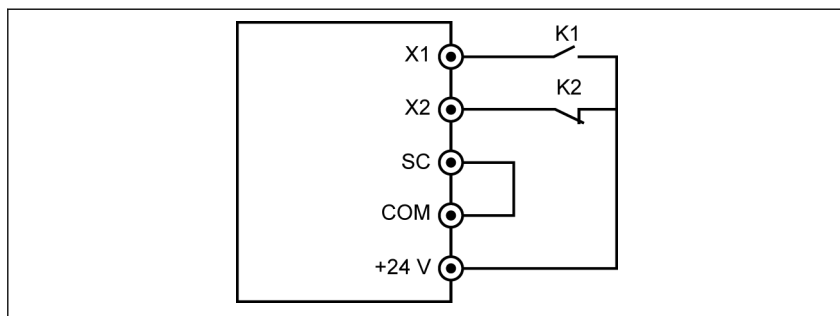


Fig. 12-129: Error signal 2

The frequency indicates warning code 'Ot' if K1 is closed.

Or the frequency converter indicates warning code 'Ot' if K2 is open.

– **52: Jog with Run Command Direction**



I/O card digital input status is monitored by parameter d0.43 'I/O card digital input'.

12.20.4 IO & IO Plus Card Digital Output Configuration

This function defines the IO and IO plus extension card open collector output for system state monitoring.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
H8.20	EDO1 output selection	0...25	1	–	–	Stop
H8.22	EDO2 output selection		1	–	–	Stop
H8.23	Extended digital output value from extension card fieldbus communication	Bit0: EDO1 (IO / IO plus card) Bit1: EDO2 (IO plus card) Bit8: Erelay (IO card)	0	–	–	Stop

Setting range of H8.20, H8.22:

- **0: Converter ready**

After power on, when no error happens, no run command, output active indicates that the converter is ready for running.

- **1: Converter running**

The output is active when the frequency converter is running and has frequency output (including 0.00 Hz).

- **2: Converter DC-braking**

The output is active when the converter is in the DC braking process at starting or stopping process. See [chapter 12.8.7 "Start Mode Configuration" on page 202](#) and [chapter 12.8.9 "Stop Mode Configuration" on page 208](#).

- **3: Converter running at zero speed**

The output is active when the frequency converter is running at zero speed.



There is no output for this selection during dead zone time of rotation direction change.

- **4: Speed arrival**

This function is used to detect the difference between the output frequency and the set frequency. The indicative signals are outputted when the difference between the output frequency and the set frequency is within the range set in [E2.70], see [chapter 12.10.5 "Frequency Detection Function" on page 250](#).

- **5: Frequency level detection signal (FDT1)**

- **6: Frequency level detection signal (FDT2)**

See [chapter 12.10.5 "Frequency Detection Function" on page 250](#).

- **7: Simple PLC stage complete**

- **8: Simple PLC cycle complete**

See [chapter 12.11 "E3: Multi-Speed and Simple PLC" on page 254](#).

- **10: Converter undervoltage**

The output is active when DC-bus voltage is lower than 230 VDC (1P 200 VAC models) / 430 VDC (3P 400 VAC models). The output will be inactive when DC-bus voltage resumes and becomes stable.

In addition, this digital output will be activated by any soft start error.

- **11: Converter overload pre-warning**

See [chapter 12.2.12 "Converter Overload Pre-Warning" on page 139](#).

- **12: Motor overload pre-warning**

See [chapter 12.3.6 "Motor Overload Pre-Warning" on page 157](#).

- **13: Converter stop by external error**

This signal is activated when the error "E.-St" is generated and deactivated when this error is reset. See [chapter 12.9.1 "Digital Input Configuration" on page 221](#) when digital input is set to '32: Error signal N.O. contact input' and '33: Error signal N.C. contact input'.

- **14: Converter error**

The output is active when an error occurs, inactive when the error is reset.

- **15: Converter OK**

The output is inactive when the frequency converter is powered off or encounters error / warning.

The output is active when the frequency converter is powered on but not running, or the frequency converter is running without error / warning.

- **16: Counter target value arrival**

- **17: Counter middle value arrival**

See [chapter 12.10.6 "Pulse Counter Function" on page 252](#).

- **18: PID reference engineering value arrival**

Used for PID function, see [chapter 12.12 "E4: PID Control" on page 268](#).

- **20: Torque control mode**

The output is active when the frequency converter is in torque control mode.

The output is inactive when the frequency converter is not in torque control mode.

- **21: Parameter setting from communication**

For modbus mode,

- The output of EDO1 is defined by bit0 of register 0x7F09. When bit0 is '0', open collector is opened; when bit0 is '1', open collector is closed.
- The output of EDO2 is defined by bit1 of register 0x7F09. When bit1 is '0', open collector is opened; when bit1 is '1', open collector is closed.

For other fieldbus mode,

- The output of EDO1 is defined by bit0 of H8.23. When bit0 is '0', open collector is opened; when bit0 is '1', open collector is closed.

- The output of EDO2 is defined by bit1 of H8.23. When bit1 is '0', open collector is opened; when bit1 is '1', open collector is closed.

- **25: Converter error or warning**

The output is active when the frequency converter encounters error / warning.

The output is inactive when the frequency converter without error / warning.



- Digital output status is monitored by parameter d0.47 'I/O card EDO1 output' and d0.48 'I/O card EDO2 output'.
 - EDO2 is only for IO plus card.
-

12.20.5 IO Card Relay Output Configuration

This function defines the IO extension card extended relay output for system state monitoring.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
H8.21	Extended relay output selection	0...25	1	–	–	Stop
H8.23	Extended digital output value from extension card fieldbus communication	Bit0: EDO1 (IO / IO plus card) Bit1: EDO2 (IO plus card) Bit8: Erelay (IO card)	0	–	–	Stop

Setting range of H8.21:

- **0: Converter ready**

After power on, when no error happens, no run command, output active indicates that the converter is ready for running.

- **1: Converter running**

The output is active when the frequency converter is running and has frequency output (including 0.00 Hz).

- **2: Converter DC-braking**

The output is active when the converter is in the DC braking process at starting or stopping process. See [chapter 12.8.7 "Start Mode Configuration" on page 202](#) and [chapter 12.8.9 "Stop Mode Configuration" on page 208](#).

- **3: Converter running at zero speed**

The output is active when the frequency converter is running at zero speed.



There is no output for this selection during dead zone time of rotation direction change.

- **4: Speed arrival**

This function is used to detect the difference between the output frequency and the set frequency. The indicative signals are outputted when the difference between the output frequency and the set frequency is within the range set in [E2.70], see [chapter 12.10.5 "Frequency Detection Function" on page 250](#).

- **5: Frequency level detection signal (FDT1)**

- **6: Frequency level detection signal (FDT2)**

See [chapter 12.10.5 "Frequency Detection Function" on page 250](#).

- **7: Simple PLC stage complete**

- **8: Simple PLC cycle complete**

See [chapter 12.11 "E3: Multi-Speed and Simple PLC" on page 254](#).

- **10: Converter undervoltage**

The output is active when DC-bus voltage is lower than 230 VDC (1P 200 VAC models) / 430 VDC (3P 400 VAC models). The output will be inactive when DC-bus voltage resumes and becomes stable.

In addition, this digital output will be activated by any soft start error.

- **11: Converter overload pre-warning**

See [chapter 12.2.12 "Converter Overload Pre-Warning" on page 139](#).

- **12: Motor overload pre-warning**

See [chapter 12.3.6 "Motor Overload Pre-Warning" on page 157](#).

- **13: Converter stop by external error**

This signal is activated when the error "E-St" is generated and deactivated when this error is reset. See [chapter 12.9.1 "Digital Input Configuration" on page 221](#) when digital input is set to '32: Error signal N.O. contact input' and '33: Error signal N.C. contact input'.

- **14: Converter error**

The output is active when an error occurs, inactive when the error is reset.

- **15: Converter OK**

The output is inactive when the frequency converter is powered off or encounters error / warning.

The output is active when the frequency converter is powered on but not running, or the frequency converter is running without error / warning.

- **16: Counter target value arrival**

- **17: Counter middle value arrival**

See [chapter 12.10.6 "Pulse Counter Function" on page 252](#).

- **18: PID reference engineering value arrival**

Used for PID function, see [chapter 12.12 "E4: PID Control" on page 268](#).

- **20: Torque control mode**

The output is active when the frequency converter is in torque control mode.

The output is inactive when the frequency converter is not in torque control mode.

- **21: Parameter setting from communication**

- For modbus mode, the output extended relay is defined by bit8 of register 0x7F09. When bit8 is '0', ETb_ETa is opened; when bit8 is '1', ETb_ETa is closed.

- For other fieldbus mode, the output of extended relay is defined by bit8 of H8.23. When bit8 is '0', ETb_ETa is opened; when bit8 is '1', ETb_ETa is closed.

- **25: Converter error or warning**

The output is active when the frequency converter encounters error / warning.

The output is inactive when the frequency converter without error / warning.



IO card relay output status is monitored by parameter d0.60 'Relay output'.

12.20.6 I/O & I/O plus card diagnosis

This function is used to perform the self-test function of I/O & I/O plus card.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.	Device
H8.87	I/O card output channel diagnosis	0: Inactive 1: EAO diagnosis 2: EDO diagnosis ERO diagnosis/EDO2 diagnosis All output diagnosis	0	-	-	Stop	xFCx610

Setting range of H8.87:

- **0: Inactive**

The test is complete. All outputs are restored to default settings.

- **1: EAO diagnosis**

The analog output of I/O & I/O plus card outputs 10 V.

- **2: EDO diagnosis**

For I/O card, the open collector output of I/O card will have "Logic 1(High)" output state.

For I/O plus card, the open collector output 1 of I/O plus card will have "Logic 1(High)" output state.

- **3: ERO diagnosis/EDO2 diagnosis**

For I/O card, the relay output of I/O card is closed.

For I/O plus card, the open collector output 2 of I/O plus card will have "Logic 1(High)" output state.

- **4: All output diagnosis**

EAO, ERO, EDO are all tested with the above methods.

12.21 H9: Relay Card Parameters

12.21.1 Relay Card Output Configuration

This function defines the 4 relays output in relay extension card for system state monitoring.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
H9.00	Extended relay 1 output selection	0...25	0	–	–	Stop
H9.01	Extended relay 2 output selection		0	–	–	Stop
H9.02	Extended relay 3 output selection		0	–	–	Stop
H9.03	Extended relay 4 output selection		0	–	–	Stop
H9.10	Relay output setting value	Relay1 is defined by bit0, when bit0 is '0', R1b_R1a is opened; when bit0 is '1', R1b_R1a is closed Relay2 is defined by bit1, when bit1 is '0', R2b_R2a is opened; when bit1 is '1', R2b_R2a is closed Relay3 is defined by bit2, when bit2 is '0', R3b_R3a is opened; when bit2 is '1', R3b_R3a is closed Relay4 is defined by bit3, when bit3 is '0', R4b_R4a is opened; when bit3 is '1', R4b_R4a is closed	0	–	–	Run
H9.97	Relay card output channel diagnosis	0: Inactive 1: Relay1 diagnosis 2: Relay2 diagnosis 3: Relay3 diagnosis 4: Relay4 diagnosis 5: All output diagnosis	0	–	–	Stop

Setting range of H9.00...H9.03:

- 0: Converter ready

After power on, when no error happens, no run command, output active indicates that the converter is ready for running.

- **1: Converter running**

The output is active when the frequency converter is running and has frequency output (including 0.00 Hz).

- **2: Converter DC-braking**

The output is active when the converter is in the DC braking process at starting or stopping process. See [chapter 12.8.7 "Start Mode Configuration" on page 202](#) and [chapter 12.8.9 "Stop Mode Configuration" on page 208](#).

- **3: Converter running at zero speed**

The output is active when the frequency converter is running at zero speed.



There is no output for this selection during dead zone time of rotation direction change.

- **4: Speed arrival**

This function is used to detect the difference between the output frequency and the set frequency. The indicative signals are outputted when the difference between the output frequency and the set frequency is within the range set in [E2.70], see [chapter 12.10.5 "Frequency Detection Function" on page 250](#).

- **5: Frequency level detection signal (FDT1)**

- **6: Frequency level detection signal (FDT2)**

See [chapter 12.10.5 "Frequency Detection Function" on page 250](#).

- **7: Simple PLC stage complete**

- **8: Simple PLC cycle complete**

See [chapter 12.11 "E3: Multi-Speed and Simple PLC" on page 254](#).

- **10: Converter undervoltage**

The output is active when DC-bus voltage is lower than 230 VDC (1P 200 VAC models) / 430 VDC (3P 400 VAC models). The output will be inactive when DC-bus voltage resumes and becomes stable.

In addition, this digital output will be activated by any soft start error.

- **11: Converter overload pre-warning**

See [chapter 12.2.12 "Converter Overload Pre-Warning" on page 139](#).

- **12: Motor overload pre-warning**

See [chapter 12.3.6 "Motor Overload Pre-Warning" on page 157](#).

- **13: Converter stop by external error**

This signal is activated when the error "E-St" is generated and deactivated when this error is reset. See [chapter 12.9.1 "Digital Input Configuration" on page 221](#) when digital input is set to '32: Error signal N.O. contact input' and '33: Error signal N.C. contact input'.

- **14: Converter error**

The output is active when an error occurs, inactive when the error is reset.

- **15: Converter OK**

The output is inactive when the frequency converter is powered off or encounters error / warning.

The output is active when the frequency converter is powered on but not running, or the frequency converter is running without error / warning.

- **16: Counter target value arrival**

- **17: Counter middle value arrival**

See [chapter 12.10.6 "Pulse Counter Function" on page 252.](#)

- **18: PID reference engineering value arrival**

Used for PID function, see [chapter 12.12 "E4: PID Control" on page 268.](#)

- **20: Torque control mode**

The output is active when the frequency converter is in torque control mode.

The output is inactive when the frequency converter is not in torque control mode.

- **21: Parameter setting from communication**

For modbus mode,

- The output of parameter H9.00 is defined by bit0 of register 0x7F0A. When bit0 is '0', R1b_R1a is opened; when bit0 is '1', R1b_R1a is closed.
- The output of parameter H9.01 is defined by bit1 of register 0x7F0A. When bit1 is '0', R2b_R2a is opened; when bit1 is '1', R2b_R2a is closed.
- The output of parameter H9.02 is defined by bit2 of register 0x7F0A. When bit2 is '0', R3b_R3a is opened; when bit2 is '1', R3b_R3a is closed.
- The output of parameter H9.03 is defined by bit3 of register 0x7F0A. When bit3 is '0', R4b_R4a is opened; when bit3 is '1', R4b_R4a is closed.

For other fieldbus mode, the output is defined by parameter H9.10.

- **25: Converter error or warning**

The output is active when the frequency converter encounters error / warning.

The output is inactive when the frequency converter without error / warning.

H9.97 is used to perform the self-test function of relay card:

H9.97 = 0: Inactive	All relays are restored to default settings.
H9.97 = 1: Relay1 diagnosis	Relay1 is closed.
H9.97 = 2: Relay2 diagnosis	Relay2 is closed.
H9.97 = 3: Relay3 diagnosis	Relay3 is closed.

H9.97 = 4: Relay4 diagnosis	Relay4 is closed.
H9.97 = 5: All output diagnosis	All relays are closed.

12.22 U0: General Panel Parameters

This function contains the basic panel parameters.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
U0.00	Direction control by panel	0: Forward 1: Reverse	0	–	–	Run
U0.01	Stop button control	0: Active only for panel control 1: Valid for all control methods	1	–	–	Run
U0.99	Panel firmware version	0.00...655.35	–	–	0.01	Read

Direction control via operation panel

The actual direction is controlled by the configuration of parameter [U0.00] 'Direction control by panel' and [E0.17] 'Direction control', see [chapter 12.8.5 "Direction Control" on page 198](#).

Stop command via panel <Stop> button

U0.01 'Stop button control' is used to define the function of <Stop> button on the operating panel:

- 0: Stop command is active only for panel control
- 1: Stop command is Valid for all control methods

Panel board FW version

The Panel board FW version U0.99 is a number of the format **vv.rr**

- **vv** firmware version number
- **rr** firmware release number

Example: 2.03

This parameter is usable outside engineering tool to get FW version info over the panel or field bus.

12.23 U1: LED Panel Parameters

This function contains the LED panel parameters.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
U1.00	Run monitoring display	0...99	0	–	–	Run
U1.10	Stop monitoring display		2	–	–	Run

Setting range of U1.00, U1.10:

0: Output frequency; 1: Actual speed
 2: Setting frequency; 3: Setting speed
 4: User-defined setting speed; 5: User-defined actual speed
 9: V/f separation setting voltage; 10: Output voltage; 11: Output current
 12: Output power; 13: DC-bus voltage
 14: Energy saving counter kWh; 15: Energy saving counter MWh
 16: Output torque; 17: Setting torque
 20: Power module temperature; 21: Actual carrier frequency
 23: Power stage running time; 30: AI1 input
 31: AI2 input; 33: I/O card EAI1 input; 34: I/O card EAI2 input
 35: AO1 output; 37: I/O card EAO output
 40: Digital input 1; 43: I/O card digital input
 45: DO1 output; 47: I/O card EDO1 output; 48: I/O card EDO2 output
 50: Pulse input frequency; 55: Pulse output frequency
 60: Relay output; 62: I/O card relay output
 63: Relay card output; 70: PID reference engineering value
 71: PID feedback engineering value; 80: ASF Display00
 81: ASF Display01; 82: ASF Display02
 83: ASF Display03; 84: ASF Display04
 85: ASF Display05; 86: ASF Display06
 87: ASF Display07; 88: ASF Display08; 89: ASF Display09
 98: High resolution output current; 99: Firmware version

12.24 U2: LCD Panel Parameters

This function contains the LCD panel parameters.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Unit	Step	Attri.
U2.01	Backlight mode setting	0: Energy saving 1: Always on	1	–	–	Run
U2.02	Panel lock setting	0: Unlock 1: Lock	0	–	–	Run
U2.03	Remote / Local setting	0: Remote 1: Local	0	–	–	Stop
U2.04	Language selection	0: English 1: Chinese 2: Germany 3: French 4: Russian 5: Spanish 6: Portugal 7: Italian 8: Korean	0	–	–	Stop
U2.09	Permanent monitoring	0...99	0	–	–	Run
U2.10	Run monitoring items 1		0	–	–	Run
U2.20	Stop monitoring items 1		0	–	–	Run
U2.11	Run monitoring items 2	0...100	2	–	–	Run
U2.12	Run monitoring items 3		11	–	–	Run
U2.13	Run monitoring items 4		13	–	–	Run
U2.14	Run monitoring items 5		16	–	–	Run
U2.15	Run monitoring items 6		17	–	–	Run
U2.21	Stop monitoring items 2		2	–	–	Run
U2.22	Stop monitoring items 3		11	–	–	Run
U2.23	Stop monitoring items 4		13	–	–	Run
U2.24	Stop monitoring items 5		16	–	–	Run
U2.25	Stop monitoring items 6		17	–	–	Run

Setting range of U2.09...U2.25:

0: Actual output frequency; 1: Actual speed

2: Setting frequency; 3: Setting speed

4: User-defined setting speed; 5: User-defined output speed

9: V/f separation setting voltage; 10: Output voltage; 11: Output current

12: Output power; 13: DC-bus voltage
 14: Energy saving counter kWh; 15: Energy saving counter MWh
 16: Output torque; 17: Setting torque
 20: Power module temperature; 21: Actual carrier frequency
 23: Power stage running time; 30: AI1 input
 31: AI2 input; 33: I/O card EAI1 input; 34: I/O card EAI2 input
 35: AO1 output; 37: I/O card EAO output
 40: Digital input 1; 43: I/O card digital input
 45: DO1 output; 47: I/O card EDO1 output; 48: I/O card EDO2 output
 50: Pulse input frequency; 55: Pulse output frequency
 60: Relay output; 62: I/O card relay output
 63: Relay card output; 70: PID reference engineering value
 71: PID feedback engineering value; 80: ASF Display00
 81: ASF Display01; 82: ASF Display02
 83: ASF Display03; 84: ASF Display04
 85: ASF Display05; 86: ASF Display06
 87: ASF Display07; 88: ASF Display08
 89: ASF Display09; 98: High resolution output current
 99: Firmware version; 100: Inactive

13 Diagnosis

13.1 Display of LED Characters

Character	A	b	C	d	E	F	H	I	L
Display									
Character	n	O	o	P	r	S	t	U	-
Display									

Tab. 13-1: Display of LED characters

13.2 Status Code

Code	Description
8.8.8.8.8.	Displayed at power on, detecting the operating panel
000000000000	During parameter backup...
P.oFF	Displayed only at power down / drop in stop state
tUnE	Motor parameter tuning

Code	Description
PSLP	PID sleeping
StO-A	Safe torque off enabled
PAr1	Parameter Set change from Set2 to Set1
PAr2	Parameter Set change from Set1 to Set2
S.Err	Parameter change blocked
PrSE	Parameter setting contradiction, parameter password protected

13.3 Warning Code

Code	Description
PLE	Pump leakage
OE-4	Overvoltage during stop
Ot	Motor over temperature
E-St	Terminal Error Signal
C-dr	Communication disconnection
Aib-	Analog input broken wire detection
FLE	Fan maintenance period expired
OCi	Communication data exceeds value range
UH-A	Under Temperature warning
APF1-APF5	ASF customer warning 1
	ASF customer warning 2
	ASF customer warning 3
	ASF customer warning 4
	ASF customer warning 5
USdc	UnSupported Device Configuration
Sli-	Speed limited by maximum Voltage
iSt	Invalid State Transition
FtL	RPDO Telegram Loss
Fdi	Option card process data invalid

13.4 Error Code

13.4.1 Error 1 (OC-1), Error 2 (OC-2), Error 3 (OC-3) : Overcurrent

Possible reason	Solution
The motor has been damaged due to overheating or the motor insulation is damaged	Check the insulation resistance. If it is damaged, replace the motor.
Magnetic contactor (MC) on the output side of the drive has turned on or off	Set up the operation sequence so that the MC is not tripped while the drive is outputting current
Drive fails to operate properly due to interference	Review the possible solutions provided for handling interference, check the section on handling interference and the control circuit lines, main circuit lines, and ground wiring
One of the motor cables has shorted out or there is a grounding problem	- Check the motor cables, remove the short circuit and power the drive back up - Check the resistance between the motor cables and the ground terminal, replace damaged cables
The control mode and motor do not match	Check which control mode the drive is set to (C0.00) - For SM, set C0.00 = 1, 2 - For ASM, set C0.00 = 0, 1, 2
Excessively short acceleration/deceleration time	Increase acceleration time (E0.26)/deceleration time (E0.27)
Excessive start-up frequency	Reduce start frequency (E0.36)
Excessive load rotation inertia or impact	Increase acceleration time (E0.26), reduce sudden load change
Running command active while motor is coasting	Restart after motor stop or start with speed capture (E0.35)
Wrong setting of user-defined V/f curve parameters	Adjust setting of user-defined V/f curve parameters
Wrong motor parameters setting	- Check motor nameplate parameters - Motor parameters retuning
Excessive torque boost	Reduce torque boost setting (C2.21, C2.22)
Phase-phase or line-to-ground short circuit	Check if phase-phase or line-to-ground short circuit, if short circuit exists, then the transistor is damaged, please contact service
Excessive overexcitation braking factor	Reduce [E0.55]
Load change in run mode	Reduce occurrence and scale of change
Low mains voltage	Check input power supply
The motor cable is too long	- Decrease the carrier frequency (C0.05) - Use a frequency converter with larger power

13.4.2 Error 4 (OE-1), Error 5 (OE-2), Error 6 (OE-3) : Overvoltage

Possible reason	Solution
Surge voltage from power supply	Check input power supply
Motor to earth short circuit causes DC-bus capacitors overcharged	Check motor connection
Direct start during motor running	Restart after motor stop or start with speed capture (E0.35)
Excessively short acceleration time	Increase acceleration time (E0.26) or use S-curve (E0.25, E0.28, E0.29)
Wrong setting of speed tracing parameters	Adjust setting of speed tracing parameters(E0.42, E0.43)
Encoder cable is disconnected or wiring is wrong	Check the wiring of encoder
Deceleration time is too short	● Increase deceleration time(E0.27) ● Add braking resistor

13.4.3 Error 8 (UE-1): Undervoltage during Run

Possible reason	Solution
Power failure during running	● Check if the main circuit drive input power is disconnected or wired incorrectly ● Check if one of the drive input power wiring terminals is loose ● Check the voltage from the drive input power ● Check if the power has been interrupted
The soft start relay or contactor is damaged	Cycle power on and power off the drive and see if the fault reoccurs, if the problem continues, replace either the control board or the converter. For instructions on replacing the control board, please contact service.

13.4.4 Error 9 (SC): Surge Current or Short Circuit

Possible reason	Solution
Multiple motors are driven by one frequency converter in V/f mode	Increase capacity of frequency converter or decrease number of motors
Surge current	Increase the acceleration time (E0.26), reduce the overexcitation braking factor (E0.55)
Drive fails to operate properly due to interference	Review the list of possible solutions provided for controlling interference, review the section on handling interference and check the control circuit lines, main circuit lines, and ground wiring

13.4.5 Error 10 (IPH.L): Input Phase Loss

Possible reason	Solution
Abnormal, omitted or broken connections of frequency converter power supply	Check power supply connections, remove omitted or broken connections
Broken fuse	Check fuse
Imbalance in the three phases of input power supply	Check if the imbalance situation exceeds converter withstand capability
Wiring of input power supply is not fastened	Check if the input wiring is reliable
Main circuit capacitor deterioration	Contact with service

13.4.6 Error 11 (OPH.L): Output Phase Loss

Possible reason	Solution
Abnormal, omitted or broken connections of frequency converter outputs	Check the connections of frequency converter outputs, remove omitted or broken connections
Imbalance in the three phases of outputs	Check if the transistor is damaged

13.4.7 Error 12 (ESS-): Soft Start Error

Possible reason	Solution
Power failure	Check the input power supply
Input phase loss occurs during start-up (3 phase)	Remove the input phase loss

13.4.8 Error 20 (OL-1): Converter Overload

Possible reason	Solution
Long time overload	Reduce overload time, reduce load
Wrong settings of V/f curve parameters	Adjust settings of V/f curve parameters
Overload happens at lower speed	● Reduce load at lower speed ● Reduce the carrier frequency (C0.05) ● Use a frequency converter with larger power
Excessive load, excessive short Acc. / Dec. time or cycle	● Adjust load, acceleration/deceleration time or cycle ● Use a frequency converter with larger power
Low mains voltage	Check input power supply
Excessive torque compensation	Reduce torque compensation setting (C2.21, C2.22)
Excessive overexcitation braking factor	Reduce [E0.55]

Possible reason	Solution
Input phase loss	Check the power supply for phase loss
Acceleration/deceleration or cycle times are too short	Increase the settings for acceleration/deceleration or cycle times
The capacity of frequency converter is too small	Replace the frequency converter with a larger model
Wrong setting of speed tracing parameters	Adjust setting of speed tracing parameters(E0.42, E0.43)
Temperature is too high	• Check if the environment temperature is too high • Check if the fan is work normally

13.4.9 Error 21 (OH): Converter over Temperature

Possible reason	Solution
Frequency converter (heat sink) temperature is higher than max. allowable temperature Max. allowable temperature: • 0.4...90kW: 95 °C • 110...315kW: 100 °C	• Check the temperature surrounding the drive – Improve the air circulation within the enclosure panel – Install a fan or air conditioner to cool the surrounding area – Remove anything near the drive that might be producing excessive heat • Load is too heavy – Reduce load if necessary – Reduce carrier frequency (C0.05) • Temperature detection circuit error, contact with service

13.4.10 Error 23 (FF): Fan Failure

Possible reason	Solution
Fan defect	• Check if the fan is blocked, clear the fan or replace it • Fan control circuit error, replace the circuit board or converter, contact with service

13.4.11 Error 24 (Pdr): Pump Dry

Possible reason	Solution
PID feedback is excessively low while converter is running at output frequency high limit	- Check if the feedback signal is valid - If the PID control is used for controlling a water pump, check if the pump is running without water

13.4.12 Error 25 (CoL): Command Value Lost

Possible reason	Solution
Panel potentiometer frequency setting command value los	- Check if the panel is installed stably, Reinstall the panel - Check if the extended line for the panel is broken, replace the extended line for the panel - The panel is broken, contact with service

13.4.13 Error 30 (OL-2): Motor Overload

Possible reason	Solution
Motor locked	Prevent motor lock
Normal motor runs long time with large load at low speed	- Increase frequency converter output frequency - Reduce load - Use variable frequency motor or set zero speed load (C1.76) to a higher value - Set correct motor thermal model protection time constant (C1.74)
Low mains voltage	Check input power supply
Wrong settings of V/f curve related parameters	Adjust settings of V/f curve related parameters
Excessive sudden load change	Check load
Wrong input of rated motor current	Correct rated motor current in (C1.07)
Multiple motors are driven by one frequency converter	Connect only one motor to the frequency converter
Excessive overexcitation braking factor	Reduce [E0.55]
Wrong motor protection parameter settings	Adjust settings of C1.74, C1.75 and C1.76 according to actual motor situations
Output current imbalance due to input phase loss	Check if input phase loss

13.4.14 Error 31 (Ot): Motor over Temperature

Possible reason	Solution
Excessive load or bad cooling	● Check load ● Provide a better cooling condition
Temperature sensor defect	Check the motor temperature sensor feedback signal
Wrong motor protection parameter settings	Different motor with different maximum temperature, set motor protection parameters according to actual protection circuits (C1.72, C1.73, C1.74)

13.4.15 Error 32 (t-Er): Motor Parameter Tuning Error

Possible reason	Solution
Motor power and frequency converter power do not match	Motor power has to match with frequency converter power
Wrong setting of motor parameters	Correct motor parameters setting according to motor name-plate
No connection of converter and motor	Check motor cable connections

13.4.16 Error 33 (AdE-): Motor Angle Detection Error

Possible reason	Solution
Internal error occurs during motor angle detection	● Check the motor wiring ● Check if output phase loss ● Check if the motor is blocked ● Adjust the value of [C3.50] and [C3.51] ● The converter can not receive the encoder signal – Check the encoder card – Check the wiring between the converter and encoder – Check the encoder

13.4.17 Error 35 (SPE-): Speed Control Loop Error

Possible reason	Solution
The speed loop difference is outside [C3.26] over a time of [C3.25]	• Set appropriate C3.25 and C3.26 according to actual working condition • Check motor nameplate parameters(C1 group) • Check if the torque limitation level is too low • Motor control loop parameters error – Motor parameter tuning – Set relevant C3 group parameters according to actual working condition

13.4.18 Error 38 (AibE): Analog Input Broken Wire Detection

Possible reason	Solution
Analog input wire is disconnected	• Check the setting of analog input broken wire protection E1.61 • The converter not receive analog input signal – Check the wiring of AI1, AI2, EAI1 and EAI2 – Check analog input signal source – Analog input port broken, replace the control board or converter, contact with service

13.4.19 Error 39 (EPS-): DC_IN Power Supply Error

Possible reason	Solution
DC_IN power supply voltage is out of range 20...28 V	• Check the voltage supply on DC_IN terminal and make sure the voltage is within the range of 20...28 V Control board detection circuit of 24V is broken, replace the control board or converter, contact with service

13.4.20 Error 40 (dir1): Forward Running Lock Error

Possible reason	Solution
Direction control [E0.17] = '1: Forward only'	Correct the parameter setting
Direction command is reverse	

13.4.21 Error 41 (dir2): Reverse Running Lock Error

Possible reason	Solution
Direction control [E0.17] = '2: Reverse only' Direction command is forward	Correct the parameter setting

13.4.22 Error 42 (E-St): Terminal Error Signal

Possible reason	Solution
External error caused by input signals via external terminals	Check external terminals status
Wrong wiring / setting of multi-function external terminals	Ensure the right external signals have been connected correctly to the right multi-function external terminals which are assigned for external error input ([E1.00]...[E1.04] = 32, 33)
Converter stop caused by E-Stop active command via Modbus communication	Check the stop command via Modbus communication (0X0088: stop according to parameter setting; 0X0090: E-stop active). If converter receives 0X0090, E-St will be displayed

13.4.23 Error 43 (FFE-): Firmware Version Mismatch

Possible reason	Solution
Operating panel may be placed to the frequency converter with older/newer firmware	Use the panel that firmware is compatible with the converter firmware
Extension card may be installed to the frequency converter with older/newer firmware	Update firmware of the extension card or converter
Converter firmware is not support the used extension card	Update the converter firmware

13.4.24 Error 44 (rS-): Modbus Communication Error

Possible reason	Solution
Modbus communication disconnection	- Check communication error detection parameters E8.01 and E8.02 - Check the device communication wiring - Check status of communication target

13.4.25 Error 45 (E.Par): Parameter Settings Invalid

Possible reason	Solution
Parameter settings are invalid after firm-ware update or extension card removed or parameter copy	• Check parameter group '-EP-' and modify the parameter values appeared in '-EP-' • Initialize all parameters

13.4.26 Error 46 (U.Par): Unknown Parameter Restore Error

Possible reason	Solution
If one or more parameters in the backup were not found in the device, they will be skipped during parameter restore	Check the differences between the different firmware versions

13.4.27 Error 48 (idA-): Internal Communication Error

Possible reason	Solution
Internal error caused by communication	• Check if there is interference 1. Check the ground wiring 2. Check if there is strong interference source around the device • Converter internal circuit board connection is loosen due to vibration • Contact with service

13.4.28 Error 49 (idP-): Internal Parameter Error

Possible reason	Solution
Internal error caused by parameter handling	• Hint to check fan, Fan total running time(C0.51) exceeds 30000 hours – Check the Fan works normally or not – Update to latest version firmware and set C0.53=1 • Check if there is interference – Check the ground wiring – Check if there is strong interference source around the device • Contact with service

13.4.29 Error 50 (idE-): Converter Internal Error

Possible reason	Solution
Internal error occurs	● If E9.05=50, E9.97=53/54, then external analog input mode is not match with the parameter setting, check E1.35, E1.40, H8.05 and H8.30 setting ● If E9.05=50, E9.97=0xA0, then firmware version of the control board is incompatible with the power board, update the control board and power board to the same firmware version ● If E9.05=50, E9.97=6/35, then MCU is in protection mode – Check the ground wiring – Check if there is strong interference source around the device ● If E9.05=50, E9.97=52, then power control board power source failure – Check the ground wiring – Check if there is strong interference source around the device – Power control board error, replace power control board or converter, contact with service ● Contact with service

13.4.30 Error 51 (OCd-): Extension Card Internal Error

Possible reason	Solution
Extension card was successfully detected by the device at startup, but the communication failed afterwards	● Check if there is interference – Check the ground wiring – Check if there is strong interference source around the device ● Check if the extension card is installed reliably ● Contact with service

13.4.31 Error 52 (OCc): Extension Card PDOs Configuration Error

Possible reason	Solution
Internal communication error between communication card and converter control board	● Update firmware version ● Contact with service

13.4.32 Error 53 (Fdi-): No Valid Process Data

Possible reason	Solution
No valid process data is received from remote communication server, the remote communication server may be turned off	Check remote communication server
Communication protocol configured incorrectly	- Check whether the communication card is not inserted - Check whether the communication protocol is configured correctly

13.4.33 Error 54 (PcE-): Remote Control Communication Error

Possible reason	Solution
Error if communication to IndraWorks Ds/ConverterWorks is lost during remote control	- Check communication status between frequency converter and IndraWorks Ds/ConverterWorks - Contact with service

13.4.34 Error 55 (PbrE): Parameter Backup / Restore Error

Possible reason	Solution
Error occurs during parameter backup/restore process	- Parameter backup/restore process is interrupted, restart backup/restore process - Converter firmware version which is back up is incompatible with the version which is restored

13.4.35 Error 56 (PrEF): Parameter Restore Error after Firmware Update

Possible reason	Solution
Error occurs if parameter settings cannot be restored after firmware update	Parameters recover failed after firmware update from low version to high version Reset the error, set customer parameters again after initialization

13.4.36 Error 60 (ASF-): Application Firmware Error

Possible reason	Solution
Error message if the application firmware was not loaded correctly or trial use is over	● Currently converter firmware is not support this application firmware – Reload the application firmware version which is supported by the converter – Update the converter firmware to the version which support this application firmware ● The application firmware is not certificated, certificate this application firmware

13.4.37 Error 61...65 (APE1...APE5): Application Error

Possible reason	Solution
Application error	Error which can be thrown by the application, description in application manual

13.5 Error Handling

13.5.1 Restarting after Power Loss

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
E0.45	Power loss restart mode	0: Inactive 1: Active for panel control 2: Active only for 2-wire control	0	–	Stop
E0.46	Power loss restart delay	0.0...10.0	1.0	0.1	Stop

[E0.45] decides the restart behavior after power loss:

If option 1 is selected, then converter will run automatically when AC power resumes, if the run command source is set to 'panel'.

If option 2 is selected, then converter will run automatically when AC power resumes, if the run command source is set to 'multi-function digital input'.

The power loss restart procedure will be performed after [E0.46] 'Power loss restart delay'.



- If the frequency converter was running in 3-wire mode before power loss, the restart of the frequency converter is decided by the status of this 3-wire terminal after power on.
- If the power loss was caused by power supply interference, an error code 'UE-1' will be displayed on the operating panel in undervoltage situation, and the frequency converter will not restart automatically after power on even setting [E0.45] is 'Active'.
- If the run command is from communication, the frequency converter **ONLY** restarts after sending a stop command first and then sending a run command by communication.
- When E0.45 select "1" or "2", if the power supply of frequency converter and the error "UE-1" recover within the time of [E9.01], the frequency converter will restart; if the error "UE-1" always exists during the time of [E9.01], the frequency converter will not restart.

13.5.2 Automatic Error Reset

Automatic error reset function is used to ensure continuous running without human intervention in the case of occasional errors, such as overcurrent or overvoltage at start or in the run mode. This function can be activated by setting [E9.00] $\neq 0$.

When an error occurs, the frequency converter stops the output and the related error code is displayed at the same time. The system remains in idle mode for delay time [E9.01]. Then the error will automatically be reset and a run command will be generated to restart the frequency converter. This sequence will be performed [E9.00] times. If the error still exists, the frequency converter remains in idle mode and no longer performs automatic restart attempts. In this case, a manual error reset is required to resume the operation.

Automatic error reset is valid for the following errors: OC-1, OC-2, OC-3, OE-1, OE-2, OE-3, OE-4, OL-1, OL-2, UE-1*, E-St, OH and UH.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
E9.00	Automatic error reset attempts	0...3 (0: Inactive)	0	–	Stop
E9.01	Automatic error reset interval	0.1...60.0 s	10.0	0.1	Stop
E9.02	Automatic error reset attempts restart time	0...65,535	0	1	Stop

Parameter E9.02 can be used to reset the internal error reset attempts back to the value from [E9.00] in case there are no error events inside this restart time. The number of reset attempts is reset to [E9.00] when E9.02 is set to a value different to 0 and there are no error reset events inside the interval given from the value of parameter E9.02.



*:

1. If [E9.00] $\neq 0$ and [E0.45] = 0, every time error 'UE-1' resets, the remaining times of automatic reset would decrease.
2. If [E9.00] $\neq 0$ and [E0.45] $\neq 0$, then reset time of error "UE-1" is without limitation.
3. If [E9.00] = 0 and [E0.45] $\neq 0$, then reset time of error "UE-1" is without limitation.

13.5.3 Error Reset by Digital Input

The error reset input can be defined with one digital input. This function works in the same manner as the panel error reset function does, which allows remote error reset. 'Error reset' is edge sensitive.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
E1.00	X1 input	34: Error reset	0	–	Stop
E1.01	X2 input		0	–	Stop
E1.02	X3 input		0	–	Stop
E1.03	X4 input		0	–	Stop
E1.04	X5 input		0	–	Stop
H8.00	EX1 input		0	–	Stop
H8.01	EX2 input		0	–	Stop
H8.02	EX3 input		0	–	Stop
H8.03	EX4 input		0	–	Stop

Set the respective parameter of any digital input as '34: Error reset'. For wiring diagram, please refer to [chapter "Digital input NPN / PNP wiring" on page 73](#).

14 Communication

14.1 Brief Introduction

VFC x615 frequency converters provide standard RS485 communication interface to realize the communication between the master and slaves via Modbus protocol. With the help of a PC, a PLC or an external computer a 'single master / multiple slaves' network control can be realized (setting of frequency control command and running frequency, modification of parameters, monitoring of frequency converter running status and error messages) to address the specific requirements of applications.



User parameters of the frequency converter can be written via communication interface for 150,000 times.

14.2 Basic Communication Settings

14.2.1 Selection of the Communication Protocol

The standard product only supports Modbus communication protocol. To use other communication protocols, optional communication cards need to be ordered additionally and parameter E8.00 and other related parameters need to be set accordingly.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
E8.00	Communication protocol	0: Modbus 1: Extension card	0	–	Stop

14.2.2 Setting the Data Transmission Rate

Data transmission rate refers to the transmission rate of data between the external computer and the frequency converter.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
E8.10	Modbus baud rate	0: 1,200 bps 1: 2,400 bps 2: 4,800 bps 3: 9,600 bps 4: 19,200 bps 5: 38,400 bps	3	–	Stop

14.2.3 Setting the Data Format

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
E8.11	Modbus data format	0...3	0	–	Stop

- 0: 1 start bit, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, no parity
- 1: 1 start bit, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, even parity
- 2: 1 start bit, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, odd parity
- 3: 1 start bit, 8 data bits, 2 stop bits, no parity



The data format of the converter must be the same as that of the master station. Otherwise, normal communication is impossible.

14.2.4 Setting the Local Address

In Modbus communication, the maximum number of frequency converters in the network is 247. Each frequency converter must have a unique local address.

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
E8.12	Modbus local address	1...247	1	1	Stop

14.2.5 Setting Command Signal Type

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
E8.13	Modbus level / edge sensitivity selection	0: Level sensitive 1: Edge sensitive	1	–	Stop

Level sensitive (default situation): The control word is not a real edge sensitive, master should manually reset the command.

For example:

1. Simulate an error
2. Set bit 5 = 1, the error is reset
3. Simulate an error again
4. Set bit 5 = 1, the error is not reset
5. Master should set bit 5 = 0 firstly, then set bit 5 = 1, the error is reset

Edge sensitive (selectable): The control command is reset automatically after the activation.

For example:

1. Simulate an error
2. Set bit 5 = 1, the error is reset
3. Simulate an error again
4. Set bit 5 = 1, the error is reset

14.2.6 Communication Disruption and Response

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
E8.01	Communication error detection time	0.0...60.0 s (0.0: Inactive)	0.0	0.1	Stop
E8.02	Communication error protection mode	0, 1	1	–	Stop

- When [E8.01] = 0.0 s, the disruption detection function is inactive.
- If the interval between the current and next communication commands exceeds the time defined in [E8.01] 'Communication error detection time', the frequency converter will reports a communication error code and act as defined in [E8.02] 'Communication error protection mode':
 - [E8.02] = 0: Freewheeling stop
The motor freewheels to stop after the communication timeout no matter the settings of parameter E0.50 'Stop mode'.
 - [E8.02] = 1: Keep running
The motor continues running at the setting frequency, and warning code 'C-dr' will be displayed on the operating panel.

14.3 Modbus Protocol

14.3.1 Protocol Description

Brief introduction

- Modbus is a master / slave protocol. Only one device may send commands in the network at a particular time.
- The master station manages message exchange by polling the slave stations. Unless being approved by the master station, no slave station may send message. In case of an error during data exchange, if no response is received, the master station will query the slave stations absent from the polling.
- If a slave station is unable to recognize a message from the master station, an exception response will be sent to the master station.
- Slave stations cannot communicate with each other but through the master's software which reads data from one slave station and sends them to another. There are two types of dialogs between the master station and the slave stations:
 - The master station sends a request to a slave station and waits for its response.
 - The master station sends a request to all slave stations and does not wait for their response (broadcasting).

Transmission

The transmission is of RTU (Remote Terminal Unit) mode with frames containing no message header or end mark. A typical RTU frame format is shown below:

Slave address	Function code	Data	CRC
1 byte	1 byte	0...252 byte(s)	CRC low CRC high

Tab. 14-1: Typical RTU frame format



- Data are transmitted in binary codes.
- CRC: Cyclic redundancy code.

- The address 0 is reserved as broadcast address.
- All slave nodes must recognize the broadcast address for writing function (no need of reply).
- The master node has no specific address, only the slave nodes must have addresses (1...247).

For RTU transmission mode, four types of character format are shown below:

- 1 start bit, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, no parity
- 1 start bit, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, even parity
- 1 start bit, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, odd parity
- 1 start bit, 8 data bits, 2 stop bits, no parity

The character or byte is sent in the following sequence (from left to right):

<-Least significant bit (LSB)					Most significant bit (MSB)->					
Start	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	Stop	-
Start	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	Even	Stop
Start	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	Odd	Stop
Start	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	Stop	Stop

Tab. 14-2: RTU transmission mode

Message frames are separated by a silent interval of at least 3.5 characters' time. The entire frame must be transmitted as a continuous stream of bytes. If the interval of two separated frames is less than 3.5 characters' time, then the slave address of second frame will be treated as the part of first frame by mistake, due to the confusion of the frames, the CRC check will fail and lead to communication fault. If a silent interval of more than 1.5 characters' time occurs between two bytes, the message frame is regarded incomplete and discarded by the receiver.

14.3.2 Modbus Interface

The Modbus communication is via RS485 interface, see descriptions on RS485+ and RS485- in [chapter 8.1 "Wiring Diagram" on page 52](#) and [chapter 8.3.2 "Control Terminals" on page 70](#).

14.3.3 Modbus Function and Message Format

Supported functions

The main function of Modbus is to read and to write parameters. Different function codes decide different operation requests. Modbus functions managed by VFC x615 and their limits are shown in the table below:

Code	Function name	Broadcast	Max. value of N
3 = 0x03	Read N register words	NO	16
6 = 0x06	Write one register word	YES	–
8 = 0x08	Diagnosis	NO	–
16 = 0x10	Write N register words	YES	16
23 = 0x17	Read/write N register words	NO	16

Tab. 14-3: VFC x615 Modbus functions and limits



'Read' and 'Write' are considered from the prospect of the master station.

Modbus message formats are different according to the function codes shown below.

Slave No.	0x03	Address of 1 st word	Number of words	CRC16
		Hi Lo	Hi Lo	Lo Hi

Tab. 14-4: Function 3_Request from the master

Slave No.	0x03	Number of bytes	1 st word value	–	Last word value	CRC16
		Depends on master request	Hi Lo	–	Hi Lo	Lo Hi

Tab. 14-5: Function 3_Response from the slave

Slave No.	0x06	Address of word	Value of word	CRC16
		Hi Lo	Hi Lo	Lo Hi

Tab. 14-6: Function 6_Master request and slave response (in same format)

Slave No.	0x08	Test word 1	Test word 2	CRC16
		Hi Lo	Hi Lo	Lo Hi

Tab. 14-7: Function 8_Master request and slave response (in same format)

Slave No.	0x10	Address of 1 st word	Number of words	Number of bytes	1 st word value	–	Last word value	CRC16
		Hi Lo	Hi Lo		Hi Lo	–	Hi Lo	Lo Hi

Tab. 14-8: Function 16_Request from the master

Slave No.	0x10	Address of 1 st word	Number of words	CRC16
		Hi Lo	Hi Lo	Lo Hi

Tab. 14-9: Function 16_Response from the slave

Slave No.	0x17	Address of 1 st word to be read	Number of words to be read	Address of 1 st word to be written
		Hi Lo	Hi Lo	Hi Lo

Number of words to be written	Number of bytes to be written	Value of 1 st word to be written	–	Value of last word to be written	CRC16
Hi Lo		Hi Lo	–	Hi Lo	Lo Hi

Tab. 14-10: Function 23_Request from the master

Slave No.	0x17	Number of bytes	1 st word value read	–	Last word value read	CRC16
			Hi Lo	–	Hi Lo	Lo Hi

Tab. 14-11: Function 23_Response from the slave

Function example

Function 0x03: Read N register words, range: 1...16

Example: It is necessary to read 2 continuous words starting from communication register 3000H of the slave frequency converter addressed at 01H. The frame structure is described in the tables below.

Message start	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes
Slave address	01H
Modbus function code	03H
Higher byte of start address	30H
Lower byte of start address	00H
Higher byte of data	00H
Lower byte of data	02H
CRC lower byte	CBH
CRC higher byte	0BH
Message end	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes

Tab. 14-12: Function 0x03_Request from RTU master

Message start	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes
Slave address	01H
Modbus function code	03H
Bytes of data	04H
Higher byte of data in register 3000H	00H
Lower byte of data in register 3000H	14H
Higher byte of data in register 3001H	00H
Lower byte of data in register 3001H	02H
CRC lower byte	3BH
CRC higher byte	F6H
Message end	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes

Tab. 14-13: Function 0x03_Response from RTU slave

Function 0x06: Write one register word

⚠ CAUTION**Frequent writing may damage the internal registers!**

- When data is written into the internal registers, there is a limit on the writing times. The register address may be damaged once the writing times is beyond the writing limit. So please avoid frequent writing!
- For details of user writing permission, please see [chapter 19.3.1 "Terminology and Abbreviation in Parameter List" on page 525](#).

Example: Write 0000H to communication register address 3002H of the slave frequency converter with address 01H. The frame structure is described in the tables below:

Message start	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes
Slave address	01H
Modbus function code	06H
Higher byte of write register address	30H
Lower byte of write register address	02H
Higher byte of write data	00H
Lower byte of write data	00H
CRC lower byte	27H
CRC higher byte	0AH
Message end	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes

Tab. 14-14: Function 0x06_Request from RTU master

Message start	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes
Slave address	01H
Modbus function code	06H
Higher byte of write register address	30H
Lower byte of write register address	02H
Higher byte of write data	00H
Lower byte of write data	00H
CRC lower byte	27H
CRC higher byte	0AH
Message end	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes

Tab. 14-15: Function 0x06_Response from RTU slave

Function 0x08: Diagnostics

Example: To test the communication loop of 2 continuous words 1234H and 5678H with frequency converter slave address 01H, the frame structure is described in the tables below:

Message start	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes
Slave address	01H
Modbus function code	08H
Higher byte of sub-function	00H
Lower byte of sub-function	00H
Higher byte of test word 1	12H
Lower byte of test word 1	34H
Higher byte of test word 2	56H
Lower byte of test word 2	78H
CRC lower byte	73H
CRC higher byte	33H
Message end	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes

Tab. 14-16: Function 0x08_Request from RTU master

Message start	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes
Slave address	01H
Modbus function code	08H
Higher byte of sub-function	00H
Lower byte of sub-function	00H
Higher byte of test word 1	12H
Lower byte of test word 1	34H
Higher byte of test word 2	56H
Lower byte of test word 2	78H
CRC lower byte	73H
CRC higher byte	33H
Message end	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes

Tab. 14-17: Function 0x08_Response from RTU slave

Function 0x10: Write N register words, range: 1...16

Example: To modify 2 continuous registers start from 4000H with words 0001H and 0000H with slave frequency converter address 01H. The frame structure is described in the tables below:

Message start	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes
Slave address	01H
Modbus function code	10H
Higher byte of write register start address	40H
Lower byte of write register start address	00H
Higher byte of register number	00H
Lower byte of register number	02H
Bytes of data	04H
Higher byte of data in register 4000H	00H
Lower byte of data in register 4000H	01H
Higher byte of data in register 4001H	00H
Lower byte of data in register 4001H	00H
CRC lower byte	93H
CRC higher byte	ACH
Message end	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes

Tab. 14-18: Function 0x10_Request from RTU master

Message start	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes
Slave address	01H
Modbus function code	10H
Higher byte of write register start address	40H
Lower byte of write register start address	00H
Higher byte of register number	00H
Lower byte of register number	02H
CRC lower byte	54H
CRC higher byte	08H
Message end	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes

Tab. 14-19: Function 0x10_Response from RTU slave

Function 0x17: Read/Write N register words, range: 1...16

Example: To read data in 2 continuous registers starting from address 3000H, write 0001H and 0000H to 2 continuous registers starting from address 4000H. The frame structure is described in the tables below:

Message start	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes
Slave address	01H
Modbus function code	17H
Higher byte of read register start address	30H
Lower byte of read register start address	00H
Higher byte of read register number	00H
Lower byte of read register number	02H
Higher byte of write register start address	40H
Lower byte of write register start address	00H
Higher byte of write register number	00H
Lower byte of write register number	02H
Bytes of data for writing	04H
Higher byte of data in register 4000H	00H
Lower byte of data in register 4000H	01H
Higher byte of data in register 4001H	00H
Lower byte of data in register 4001H	00H
CRC lower byte	E6H
CRC higher byte	B3H
Message end	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes

Tab. 14-20: Function 0x17_Request from RTU master

Message start	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes
Slave address	01H
Modbus function code	17H
Bytes of read register	04H
Higher byte of read register 3000H	00H
Lower byte of read register 3000H	14H
Higher byte of read register 3001H	00H
Lower byte of read register 3001H	02H
CRC lower byte	38H
CRC higher byte	E2H
Message end	Transmission time for 3.5 bytes

Tab. 14-21: Function 0x17_Response from RTU slave

Error code and exception code

If a slave receives the request without a communication error, but cannot handle it, the slave will return an exception response which includes error code and exception code informing the master of the nature of the error. The error code is formed by setting the MSB of the function code to 1 (i.e. function code plus with 0x80, like 0x83, 0x86, 0x90, 0x97), then the exception response has a format shown below.

Slave No.	Error code	Exception code	CRC16
			Lo Hi

Exception codes for VFC x615 frequency converters:

- 1 = Parameter cannot be modify owing to user password locked
- 2 = The function requested is not recognized by the slave, i.e. not equal to 3, 6, 8, 16 or 23
- 3 = The word address indicated in the request do not exist in the slave
- 4 = The word values indicated in the request are not permissible in the slave
- 5 = Parameters cannot be modify in run mode
- 6 = Parameters are read-only that cannot be modified
- 7 = Invalid operation which is decided by the function of frequency converter^(*)
- 9 = EEPROM read/write error
- B = Function code 3, read range exceeds 16



^(*) includes situations listed below:

- Write operations on b0.11 'Parameter copy', U1.00 'Running monitoring display', U1.10 'Stop monitoring display' and C1.01 'Motor parameter tuning', are prohibited.
- Write operations on b0.20 'User password', b0.21 'Manufacture password' and b0.10 'Parameter initialization' only support function 6.
- Multi-function digital input terminals (E1.00...E1.04) writing operation do not permit repeated non-zero value.

14.3.4 Communication Mapping Register Address Distribution

Frequency converter parameter address

Frequency converter parameter registers correspond to the function codes one-to-one. Reading and writing of related function codes can be achieved through reading and writing of the contents in frequency converter parameter registers via Modbus communication. The characteristics and scope of reading and writing function codes are in compliance with the frequency converter function code description. The address of a frequency converter parameter register is composed of a higher byte representing the function code group and a lower byte representing the index in the group. The groups are mapped as follows:

Address high byte	0x00	0x20	0x21	0x22	0x23	0x30	0x31	0x32	0x33	0x34
Group	b0	C0	C1	C2	C3	E0	E1	E2	E3	E4
Address high byte	0x35	0x38	0x39	0x60	0x61	0x68	0x69	0x40	0x41	0x10
Group	E5	E8	E9	H0	H1	H8	H9	U0	U1	d0

Tab. 14-22: Frequency converter parameter registers



Parameters of the monitoring group (Group d0) are always write-protected.

Examples:

To read out the module temperature (d0.20) of VFC x615 frequency converter, use register address 0x1014 (0x10 = Group d0, index 0x14 = 20).

To set V/f curve mode (C2.00) of VFC x615 frequency converter, use register address 0x2200 (0x22 = Group C2, index 0).

Access to a non-existing function code will be acknowledged with exception code 3 (see [chapter 14.3.3 "Modbus Function and Message Format" on page 428](#)).

Frequency converter register address

Register	Address
Communication control register	0x7F00
Communication state register	0x7FA0
Additional status register	0x7FA1
Fault status register	0x7FB0
Communication frequency setting register	0x7F01
Torque setting register	0x7F02
Torque FWD limitation register	0x7F03
Torque REV limitation register	0x7F04
Speed limitation register	0x7F05

Tab. 14-23: Frequency converter register address

Communication control register (0x7F00)

The address of command word register for communication control is 0x7F00. This register is write-only. The frequency converter is controlled through writing data into the address. The definition of each bit is shown in table below:

bit	Value	Description
15...8	–	Reserved
7	1	Control word active
	0	Inactive
6	1	Stop Acc. / Dec. active (stop the internal Acc. / Dec. ramp generator)
	0	Inactive
5	1	Fault reset active
	0	Inactive
4	1	E-stop active
	0	Inactive
3	1	Stop according to parameter setting
	0	Inactive
2	1	Reverse
	0	Forward
1	1	Jog active (jogging direction determined by bit 2)
	0	Inactive
0	1	Run command active
	0	Inactive

Tab. 14-24: Communication control register (0x7F00)

If the communication frame check is successful (CRC valid), the frequency converter always accepts the content of the control word. All conflicts (e.g. run command and stop command active at the same time) are resolved by the application functionality (Run / Stop generator, jog control...). This assures that the frequency converter will always react in the same manner, independent of the run command source.

Communication state register (0x7FA0)

The frequency converter state can be monitored by reading the register. This register is read-only. The definition of each bit is shown in the table below:

bit	Value	Description
15 ... 8	–	Error code (equals to [E9.05])
7	1	Error
	0	No error
6	1	Stall over current
	0	Normal
5	1	Stall over voltage
	0	Normal
4	1	Decelerating
	0	Not in deceleration
3	1	Accelerating
	0	Not in acceleration
2	1	Jogging
	0	Not in jog
1	1	Running
	0	Stop
0	1	Reverse
	0	Forward

Tab. 14-25: Communication state register (0x7FA0)

Additional status register (0x7FA1)

Additional status register is the extension of main status register(7FA0H), it stores other status information of frequency converter. This register is read-only. The definition of each bit is shown in the table below:

bit	Value	Description
15	1	Error
	0	No error
14	-	Reserved
13	-	Reserved
12	-	Reserved
11	1	Coasting to stop
	0	Not coasting
10	1	Speed tracing
	0	Not tracing
9	1	0 speed
	0	Not 0 speed
8	1	DC braking
	0	Not DC braking
7	-	Reserved
6	1	Stall over current
	0	Normal
5	1	Stall over voltage
	0	Normal
4	1	Decelerating
	0	Not in deceleration
3	1	Accelerating
	0	Not in acceleration
2	1	Jogging
	0	Not in jog
1	1	Running
	0	Stop
0	1	Reverse
	0	Forward

Tab. 14-26: Additional status register (0x7FA1)

Fault status register (0x7FB0)

The fault status of frequency converter can be monitored by reading the register. This register is read-only.

bit	HEX	Description
bit 15 . . . bit 0	0	No error
	1	OC-1, overcurrent at constant speed
	2	OC-2, overcurrent during acceleration
	3	OC-3, overcurrent during deceleration
	4	OE-1, overvoltage at constant speed
	5	OE-2, overvoltage during acceleration
	6	OE-3, overvoltage during deceleration
	7	OE-4, overvoltage during stop
	8	UE-1, undervoltage during run
	9	SC, surge current or short circuit
	A	IPH.L, input phase loss
	B	OPH.L, output phase loss
	C	ESS-, soft start error
	14	OL-1, converter overload
	15	OH, converter over temperature
	17	FF, fan failure
	18	Pdr, pump dry
	19	CoL-, command value lost
	1A	StO-r, safe torque off error
	1B	StO-E, safe torque off hardware error
	1E	OL-2, motor overload
	1F	Ot, motor over temperature
	20	t-Er, motor parameter tuning error
	21	AdE-, synchronous motor angle detection error
	26	AibE, analog input broken wire detection
	27	EPS-, DC_IN power supply error
	28	dir1, forward running lock error
	29	dir2, reverse running lock error

bit	HEX	Description
bit 15 . . . bit 0	2A	E-St, terminal error signal
	2B	FFE-, firmware version mismatch
	2C	rS-, modbus communication error
	2D	E.Par, parameter settings invalid
	2E	U.Par, unknown parameter restore error
	30	idA-, internal communication error
	31	idP-, internal parameter error
	32	IDE-, converter internal error
	33	OCd-, extension card internal error
	34	Occ, extension card PDOs configuration error
	35	Fdi-, no valid process data
	36	PcE-, remote control communication error
	37	PbrE, parameter backup / restore error
	38	PrEF, parameter restore error after firmware update
	3C	ASF-, application firmware error
	3D	APE1, application error 1
	3E	APE2, application error 2
	3F	APE3, application error 3
	40	APE4, application error 4
	41	APE5, application error 5

Tab. 14-27: Fault status register (0x7FB0)

Communication frequency setting register (0x7F01)

The address of frequency setting register for communication control is 0x7F01. This register is for read and write. When 'First frequency setting source' [E0.00] = '20: Communication', the frequency converter can be set with writing data to this address.

Torque setting register (0x7F02)

The address of torque setting register is 0x7F02. This register is for read and write. When 'Torque reference channel' [C3.41] = '6: Communication', the torque reference channel can be set with writing data to this address.

Torque FWD limitation register (0x7F03)

The address of torque FWD limitation register is 0x7F03. This register is for read and write. When 'Torque limitation reference selection at speed control mode' [C3.47] = '4: Communication', the torque limitation reference can be set with writing data to this address.

Torque REV limitation register (0x7F04)

The address of torque REV limitation register is 0x7F04. This register is for read and write. When 'Torque limitation reference selection at speed control mode' [C3.47] = '4: Communication', the torque limitation reference can be set with writing data to this address.

Speed limitation register (0x7F05)

The address of speed limitation register is 0x7F05. This register is for read and write. When 'Speed limitation reference selection at torque control mode' [C3.48] = '4: Communication', the speed limitation reference can be set with writing data to this address.

14.3.5 Modbus Communication Example

One slave address is 01H. The frequency setting of the frequency converter has been set to 'Given by communication' and the RUN command source is set to 'Inputting commands by communication'. It is required for the motor connected to the frequency converter to run with 50 Hz (forward rotation). The operation can be achieved with function 0x10 (function 16) of the Modbus protocol. The messages of the requests from the master and responses from the slave are shown in table below:

- Example 1: Start 01# frequency converter for forward rotation at frequency of 50.00 Hz (represented by 5,000 internally)

	Slave address	Function code	Start address	Number of address	Bytes of data	Data content	CRC code
Request	0x01	0x10	0x7F00	0x0002	0x04	0x0081 0x1388	0x8AE3
Response	0x01	0x10	0x7F00	0x0002	N/A	N/A	0x581C

- Example 2: Read the output frequency of 01# frequency converter and output velocity

	Slave address	Function code	Start address	Number of address	Bytes of data	Data content	CRC code
Request	0x01	0x03	0x1000	0x0002	N/A	N/A	C0CB
Response	0x01	0x03	N/A	N/A	0x04	0x1388 0x05DC	0x7C54

- Example 3: Stop 01# frequency converter according to the stopping mode with the function code

	Slave address	Function code	Start address	Number of address	Bytes of data	Data content	CRC code
Request	0x01	0x06	0x7F00	N/A	N/A	0x0088	0x9078
Response	0x01	0x06	0x7F00	N/A	N/A	0x0088	0x9078

14.3.6 Special Notes

1. The external computer can not write to function codes b0.11 'Parameter copy', U1.00 'running monitoring display' and U1.10 'Stop monitoring display'.
2. b0.20 'User password' and b0.10 'Parameter initialization' do not support multiple write including single write in multiple write; Motor nameplate parameters and motor physical data should not be modified simultaneously; Multi-function digital input terminals (E1.00...E0.04) writing operation do not permit repeated non-zero value.
3. If the communication protocol is changed, baud rate, data frame and local address will be restored to factory default.
4. The read response of user password and manufacture password is '0000' in case of external computer reading.
5. The external computer can set, modify or cancel user password, the specific operation is same to the situation when 'Running command source' is from the operating panel.
6. The access to control registers and state registers is not limited by user password.

14.3.7 Communication Networking

Networking

The communication network is shown in figure below, with a PC, a PLC or an external computer as the master and all frequency converters as slaves, which are connected by shielded twisted pair cables. The slave at the end of the network needs a termination resistor with recommended value of 120 Ω , 0.25 W.

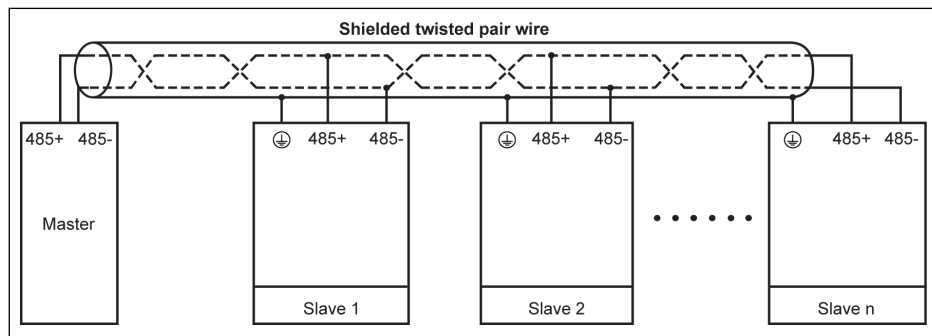


Fig. 14-1: Communication networking



- The maximum length of the communication cable is 300 m.
- The maximum length of the communication cable is 80 m if the number of slaves is less than 5.
- If the Modbus network cannot work successfully, check if a bias resistor has been installed for the master device and make sure that its resistance is not more than 1.5 k Ω .

WARNING

Cables may only be connected when the frequency converters are switched off!

Recommendations on networking

- Use shielded twisted pair cable to connect RS485 links.
- Modbus cable should be adequately away from power cables (minimum 30 cm).
- Avoid crossing of Modbus cables and power cables and use orthogonal crossing if crossing must be used.
- The shielding layer of cables should be connected to protected ground or to equipment ground if the equipment ground has already been connected to protected ground. Do not directly ground any point of the RS485 network.
- In no circumstance should ground cables constitute a loop.

14.4 PROFIBUS Protocol

14.4.1 Protocol Description

PROFIBUS is an open serial communication standard, which enables data exchange among various automation control devices. PROFIBUS mainly includes three types: PROFIBUS-FMS (Fieldbus Message Specifications), PROFIBUS-DP (Distributed Peripheral Equipment) and PROFIBUS-PA (Process Automation). Frequency Converter VFC x615 supports PROFIBUS-DP protocol.

PROFIBUS is widely used in various industries such as manufacturing automation and process automation, building, transportation, electric power, etc. Through PROFIBUS, automation equipments from different manufacturers can be easily connected into the same network for data exchange. The frame structure of data information in PROFIBUS network is shown in table below.

Protocol frame (header)	User data (control message/status message)	Protocol frame (end)
----------------------------	---	-------------------------

Tab. 14-28: PROFIBUS frame format

Physical transmission medium for PROFIBUS is twisted-pair cable (RS-485 standard). Maximum length of bus cable is within the scope of 100...1,200 m, depending on the set transmission rate. When no repeater is used, 32 nodes at maximum can be connected to the same PROFIBUS network; if a repeater is used, nodes connected to the network may be increased to 126. In PROFIBUS communication, the master is usually a programmable logic controller, which is able to select the nodes responsive to commands from the master.



PROFIBUS protocol is described in details in standard EN 50170.

14.4.2 PROFIBUS Function

The PROFIBUS DP communication network is able to realize the following functions:

- Sending control commands to the frequency converter (such as start, stop, jog, etc.).
- Sending messages (e.g. setting frequency) to the frequency converter.
- Reading operating status message from the frequency converter (such as run, rotation direction, rotation speed, error message, etc.).
- Reading or modifying frequency converter parameters.
- Resetting the frequency converter in case of error.

14.4.3 Requirements for PROFIBUS Link

Cables used in PROFIBUS are shielded twisted pair cables. The shielding is able to improve electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) ability. Unshielded twisted pair cable may be used if there is less electromagnetic interference (EMI). Impedance of the cable should be within 100...200 Ω. Cable capacity (among conductors) should be < 60 pF/m, and conductor cross section should be ≥ 0.22 (24 AWG). Two kinds of cables are used for PROFIBUS with detail definitions stated in table below.

Cable data	Type A	Type B
Impedance	135...165 Ω (f = 3...20 MHz)	100...130 Ω (f > 100 kHz)
Capacity	< 30 pF/m	< 60 pF/m
Resistance	≤ 110 Ω/km	≤ 110 Ω/km
Conductor cross section	≥ 0.34 (22 AWG)	≥ 0.22 (24 AWG)

Tab. 14-29: Type of PROFIBUS cable



Standard Siemens PROFIBUS cable is (MLFB) 6XV1830-0EH10 (Type A), and connector is 6ES7972-0BA12-0XA0.

14.4.4 Relationship between Communication Rate and Cables

Relationship between communication rate and cable length is described in table below.

Baud rate	Maximum length for each cable in [m] (Type A)	Maximum length for each cable in [m] (Type B)
9.6...93.75 kbps	1,000	1,000
187.5 kbps	1000	600
500 kbps	400	200
1.5 Mbps	200	200
3...12 Mbps	100	100

Tab. 14-30: Relationship between communication rate and cable length

14.4.5 EMC Measures

The following EMC measures need to be taken in order to improve the stability of PROFIBUS communication network:

- The shielding layer of the communication cables must be well grounded at all stations; a large area is required for the connection of the shielding layer to obtain a low impedance.
- A certain wiring distance (≥ 20 cm) must be kept between the communication cables and the power cables.
- Communication cables and power cables must be orthogonal in case of crossing.
- All stations in the network must be grounded to the same grounding network.

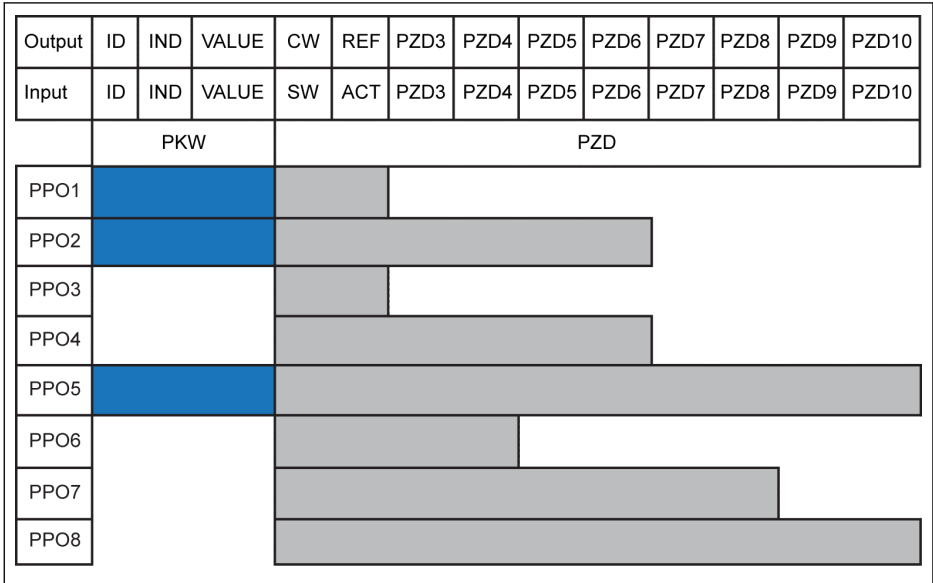
14.4.6 Periodical Data Communication

PPO telegram type

PROFIBUS-DP defines data structure for periodical data communication as PPO (the Parameter Process data Object). Frequency Converter VFC x615 supports 8 PPO telegram types shown in figure below. PPO message is divided into two data areas in terms of transmission data contents:

Parameter area (PKW area): read or write a parameter of a slave.

Process data area (PZD area): including control word and set frequency, etc. (data flow from master to slave), or status word, actual output frequency and other status monitoring values of slave (data flow from slave to master). For detailed descriptions of PKW parameter area and PZD process data area, please refer to descriptions follow.



Output Master output
Input Master input
ID Parameter identifier
IND Parameter index mark
VALUE Parameter value

CW Control word
SW Status word
REF Reference / Setting frequency
ACT Actual output frequency

Fig. 14-2: PPO telegram type

PKW parameter area

PKW parameter area description

This data area is composed of ID, IND, VALUE_high and VALUE_low, as shown in figure below. They are used to read or modify the parameter of a parameter of a frequency converter, but only one parameter can be read or modified each time. When master sends request and slave responds, bit definition for each specific word in PKW area is shown in the tables below. If a frequency converter fails to execute PKW area request command, an error code will be returned to the master in VALUE_low. Refer to [tab. 14-33 "PKW area error codes" on page 452](#) for details.

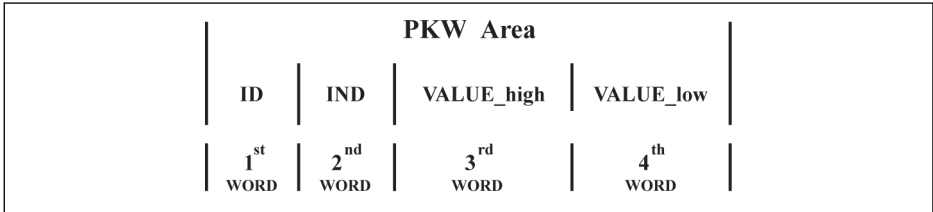


Fig. 14-3: PKW area data format

Request data frame in PKW area

Word	Identifier	bit	Value	Description
1 st	ID	15...8	00H	Reserved
		7...0	00H	No request
			01H	Read
			02H	Write
2 nd	IND	15...8	xxH	Group No. for parameter
		7...0	xxH	Index No. of function code within the group
3 rd	VALUE_high	15...0	00H	Reserved
4 th	VALUE_low	15...0	xxxxH	For a read request: Not used For a write request: Parameter value

Tab. 14-31: Request data frame in PKW area_from master to slave

Response data frame in PKW area

Word	Identifier	bit	Value	Description
1 st	ID	15...8	00H	Reserved
		7...0	00H	No request
			01H	Successful read
			02H	Successful write
			07H	Error
2 nd	IND	15...8	xxH	Group No. for parameter
		7...0	xxH	Index No. of function code within the group
3 rd	VALUE_high	15...0	00H	Reserved
4 th	VALUE_low	15...0	xxxxH	For a successful request: Parameter value Read or write error: Error code For no request situation: 0

Tab. 14-32: Response data frame in PKW area_from slave to master

Error message after execution failure in PKW area

Error code	Meaning	Reason
1	Password locked	User password is locked
2	Invalid command code	Command codes (bit 7...bit 0 of ID) are not 0, 1 or 2
3	Invalid parameter address	Invalid function group or index number of the function group, or insufficient access/rights
4	Invalid parameter value	Data to write out of range
5	Forbid write in running mode	Frequency converter is running
6	Parameter read-only	Parameter are read-only, can not be written
7	Invalid operation	Function code does not support write or multiple write via external computer

Tab. 14-33: PKW area error codes

Example of parameter operation in PKW area

Example description

In applications, the master and the frequency converters communicate with messages in PPO structure. Among the 8 PPOs stated in [fig. 14-2 "PPO telegram type" on page 450](#), PPO1, PPO2 and PPO5 apply both PKW area and PZD area. In following examples, PKW area data frames are taken from complete PPO message to describe its request and response data frames.

The following examples are all based on Frequency Converter VFC 5615 and PROFIBUS card.

Example 1

Reading value of parameter E0.26 'Acceleration time'. 0x30 is the parameter group, 0x1A is the index No. of the function code within the parameter group, then request and response data frames in PKW area are shown in table below:

	ID	IND	VALUE_high	VALUE_low
Request data frame of PKW area	0x0001	0x301A	0x0000	0x0000
Response data frame of PKW area	0x0001	0x301A	0x0000	0x0032

Tab. 14-34: Example 1_request and response data frames of PKW area

Example 2

Modifying value of parameter E0.26 'Acceleration time'. 0x30 is the parameter group, 0x1A is the index No. of the function code within the parameter group. If the modifying value is 0x0064, then request and response data frames in PKW area are shown in table below:

	ID	IND	VALUE_high	VALUE_low
Request data frame of PKW area	0x0002	0x301A	0x0000	0x0064
Response data frame of PKW area	0x0002	0x301A	0x0000	0x0064

Tab. 14-35: Example 2_request and response data frames of PKW area

Example 3

Modifying value of parameter E0.26 'Acceleration time'. 0x30 is the parameter group, 0x1A is the index No. of the function code within the parameter group. If the modifying value is 0xFFFF, then request and response data frames in PKW area are shown in table below:

	ID	IND	VALUE_high	VALUE_low
Request data frame of PKW area	0x0002	0x301A	0x0000	0xFFFF
Response data frame of PKW area	0x0007	0x301A	0x0000	0x0064

Tab. 14-36: Example 3_request and response data frames of PKW area

PZD process data area

PZD process data area description

The data in PZD process data area can be configured freely for periodical data exchange between the master and slaves. The request telegram type for sending message from master to slaves is decided by H1.30...H1.39; the request telegram type for returning message response from slaves to the master is decided by H1.30...H1.39 (number of PZD is decided by PPO telegram type). See parameters in group H1 [chapter "H1: PROFIBUS card parameters" on page 560](#).

For details on control word, status word and extended status word see the tables below:

bit	Value	Description
15...10	–	Reserved
9	1	Torque control active
	0	Inactive
8	1	Freewheeling stop
	0	Inactive

bit	Value	Description
7	1	Control word active
	0	Inactive
6	1	Stop Acc. / Dec. active (stop the internal Acc. / Dec. ramp generator)
	0	Inactive
5	1	Fault reset active
	0	Inactive
4	1	E-stop active
	0	Inactive
3	1	Stop according to parameter setting
	0	Inactive
2	1	Reverse
	0	Forward
1	1	Jog active (jogging direction determined by bit 2)
	0	Inactive
0	1	Run command active
	0	Inactive

Tab. 14-37: Control word

bit	Value	Description
15 ... 8	–	Error code (equals to [E9.05])
7	1	Error
	0	No error
6	1	Stall over current
	0	Normal
5	1	Stall over voltage
	0	Normal
4	1	Decelerating
	0	Not in deceleration
3	1	Accelerating
	0	Not in acceleration
2	1	Jogging
	0	Not in jog
1	1	Running
	0	Stop

bit	Value	Description
0	1	Reverse
	0	Forward

Tab. 14-38: Status word

bit	Value	Description
15...1	–	Reserved
0	1	24 V mode
	0	Normal mode

Tab. 14-39: Extended status word

For details on parameter addresses, see [chapter 14.3 "Modbus Protocol"](#) on [page 426](#).

Examples for operation of PZD process data area

Example 1

The master communicates with the slave via PPO4, see [fig. 14-2 "PPO telegram type" on page 450](#).

If we need to start frequency converter for forward rotation at 50.00 Hz (0x1388). When the parameters in group H1 are kept as defaults, complete PPO request and response messages are shown in table below.

	PZD1	PZD2	PZD3	PZD4	PZD5	PZD6
PPO request message	CW	REF	0x0000	0x0000	0x0000	0x0000
	0x0081	0x1388				
PPO response message	SW	ACT	0x0000	0x0000	0x0000	0x0000
	0xxx02	0x1388				

Tab. 14-40: Example 1 for PZD process data area_request and response messages of PPO



The higher byte of the status word is the latest error code (0x00 means no error).

Example 2

When the frequency converter forward runs at 50 Hz, to stop the frequency converter as parameter settings, please refer to example 1.

	PZD1	PZD2	PZD3	PZD4	PZD5	PZD6
PPO request message	CW	REF	0x0000	0x0000	0x0000	0x0000
	0x0088	0x1388				
PPO response message	SW	ACT	0x0000	0x0000	0x0000	0x0000
	0xxx00	0x0000				

Tab. 14-41: Example 2 for PZD process data area_request and response messages of PPO

14.4.7 Communication parameter configuration

Communication related parameter settings

Parameter	Name	Parameter settings
E0.00	First frequency setting source	20: Communication
E0.01	First run command source	2: Communication
E0.02	Second frequency setting source	20: Communication
E0.03	Second run command source	2: Communication
E8.00	Communication protocol	1: Extension card
E8.03	Communication process data loss behavior	Depends on parameter setting ^①
H0.12	Torque control reference from fieldbus	6: Communication
H0.14	FWD torque limitation reference from fieldbus	4: Communication
H0.15	REV torque limitation reference from fieldbus	4: Communication
H0.16	Speed limitation at torque control mode from fieldbus	4: Communication
H1.00	PROFIBUS local address	Depends on parameter setting ^①
H1.01	Present baud rate	(Read only)
H1.02	Present telegram type	

Parameter	Name	Parameter settings
H1.10	Output PZD 1	Depends on parameter setting ^①
H1.11	Output PZD 2	
H1.12	Output PZD 3	
H1.13	Output PZD 4	
H1.14	Output PZD 5	
H1.15	Output PZD 6	
H1.16	Output PZD 7	
H1.17	Output PZD 8	
H1.18	Output PZD 9	
H1.19	Output PZD 10	
H1.30	Input PZD 1	
H1.31	Input PZD 2	
H1.32	Input PZD 3	
H1.33	Input PZD 4	
H1.34	Input PZD 5	
H1.35	Input PZD 6	
H1.36	Input PZD 7	
H1.37	Input PZD 8	
H1.38	Input PZD 9	
H1.39	Input PZD 10	

Tab. 14-42: PROFIBUS-DP communication parameters



①: See [chapter "H1: PROFIBUS card parameters" on page 560](#) for details.

In the operation controlled by communication, if the frequency converter is stopped by the **Stop** key on the operating panel, the frequency converter stops responding to the control commands by communication. To enable the control by communication, re-power the frequency converter or send **Stop** command to the frequency converter by communication.

Parameter configuration of master

For master related parameter configuration, refer to descriptions for master. The address configured for slave in the master should be consistent with the parameter address configured for the slave. Communication baud rate and PPO telegram type are determined by the master.

GSD file

Users may log on the website of the company at www.boschrexroth.com to download or contact sales personnel to obtain the GSD file BRFC0112.GSD. For installation and PROFIBUS system configuration method, please refer to respective instructions of system configuration software.



The GSD file adapts to the PROFIBUS master which supports GSD revision 2 or above.

15 Accessories

15.1 Optional Accessories

Optional accessory	Type	Descriptions
Operating panel:		
- LED panel	FPCC02.1-VANN-7P-NNNN	–
- LCD panel	FPCC02.1-VANN-LP-NNNN	–
- Dust cover	FPCC02.1-VANN-NN-NNNN	–
Panel mounting plate	FEAM02.1-VA-NN-NNNN	Cabinet mounting
Communication cable for cabinet control	FRKS0002/002,0	2 m
	FRKS0002/003,0	3 m
	FRKS0002/005,0	5 m
Extension card module	FEAE02.1-VA-NNNN	–
I/O module:		
- I/O card	FEAE04.1-IO1-NNNN	–
- Relay card	FEAE04.1-IO2-NNNN	–
- I/O plus card	FEAE04.1-IO3-NNNN	–
Communication module:		
- PROFIBUS card	FEAE03.1-PB-NNNN	–
- CANopen card	FEAE03.1-CO-NNNN	–
Brake Chopper	FEAE07.1-VA1-NNNN	–
	FEAE07.1-VA2-NNNN	–
Plug-in connector for control section	FEAE05.1-B2-NNNN	For control terminals
External mains EMC filter	FCAF01.1A-A□□□-E-□□□□-□-0□-NNNN	See Appendix II
External brake resistor^①	–	See Appendix II

Optional accessory	Type	Descriptions
Shielding connector	FEAM03.2-001-NN-NNNN	For B, C, D housing
	FEAM03.2-002-NN-NNNN	For E, F, G housing
	FEAM03.2-003-NN-NNNN	For H housing
	FEAM03.2-004-NN-NNNN	For I, J housing
	FEAM03.2-005-NN-NNNN	For K housing
	FEAM03.2-006-NN-NNNN	For L housing

Tab. 15-1: Optional accessories



- For definition of model and type in the following sub-chapters, see [chapter 19.2 "Appendix II: Type Coding" on page 518](#).
- ①: The external brake resistor is not provided as the accessory, only technical data is listed for type selection.

15.2 Operating Panel

For details on operating panel, see [chapter 10 "Operating Panel and Dust Cover" on page 97](#).

15.3 Panel Mounting Plate

15.3.1 Function Description

With the operating panel mounted at the control cabinet, the user can operate and control the frequency converter from the outside of the control cabinet conveniently. To realize this function, the user needs order the panel mounting plate and its accessories additionally.

15.3.2 Recommended Opening Dimensions at Control Cabinet

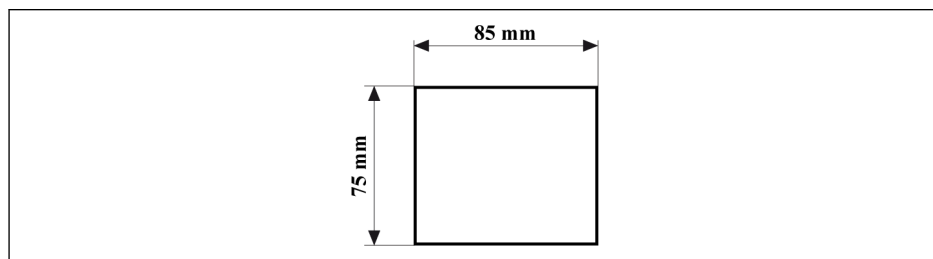


Fig. 15-1: Recommended opening dimensions at control cabinet

15.3.3 Mounting the Plate and the Operating Panel

Step 1

Push the mounting plate into the opening at the control cabinet:

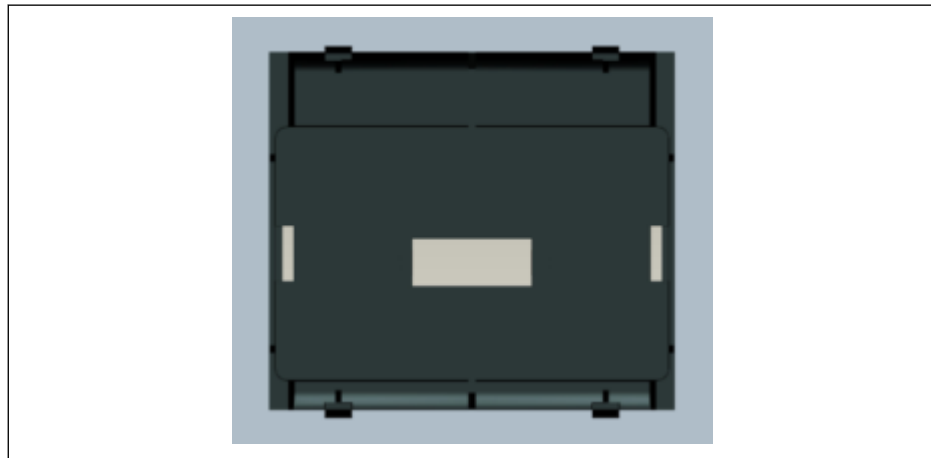


Fig. 15-2: Push the mounting plate into the opening (back view)

Step 2

Fix the mounting plate with a metal bar and 2 M4x8 screws:

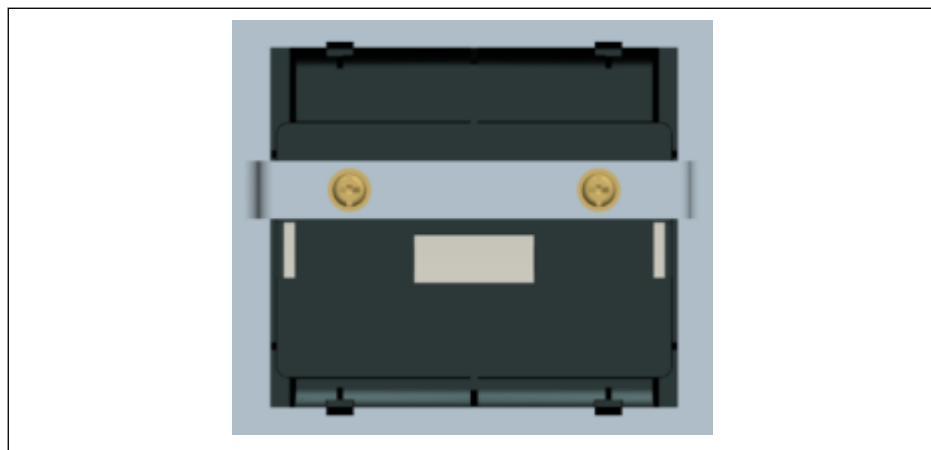


Fig. 15-3: Fix the mounting plate (back view)

Step 3

Push the operating panel in the direction perpendicular to the mounting plate:



Fig. 15-4: Mount the operating panel (front view)

Step 4

Connect the operating panel to the frequency converter with the connection cable and fix the cable connector on the mounting plate with 2 M3x10 screws:

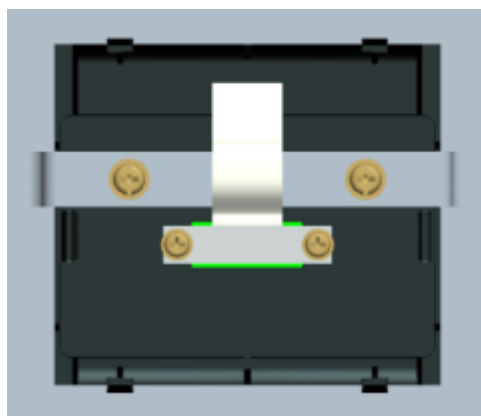


Fig. 15-5: Connect and fix the cable (back view)

15.4 Communication Cable for Control Cabinet

2 m long cable FRKS0002/002,0, 3 m long cable FRKS0002/003,0 or 5 m long cable FRKS0002/005,0 can be used for the connection of the operating panel.

15.5 Extension Card Module

15.5.1 Dimensions of Extension Card Module

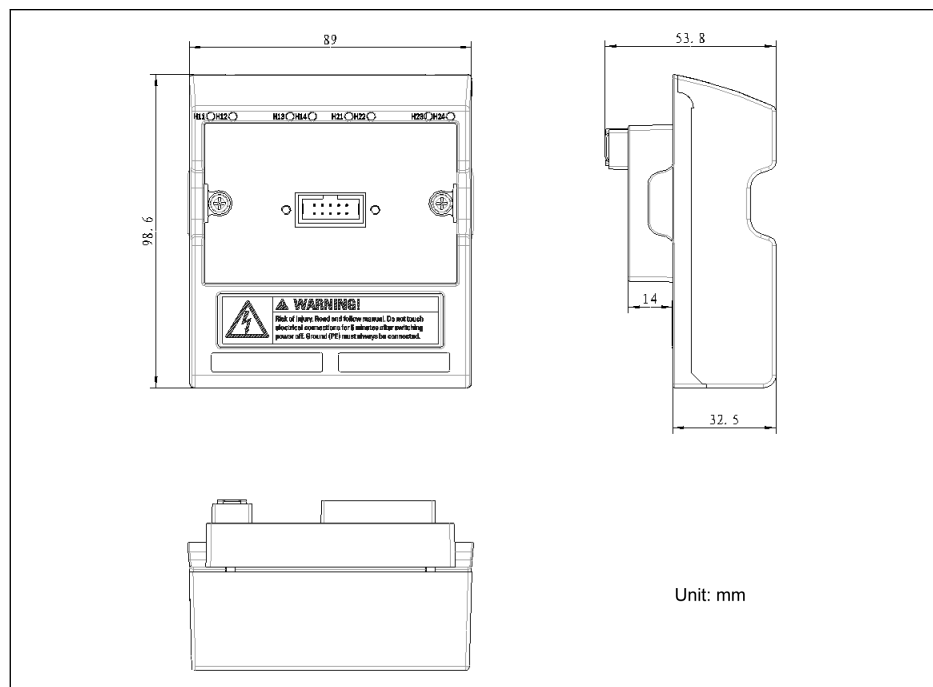


Fig. 15-6: Dimensions of Extension Card Module

15.5.2 Extension Card Module Mounting

NOTICE

Please make sure the power supply has been switched off before mounting the extension card module onto the frequency converter.

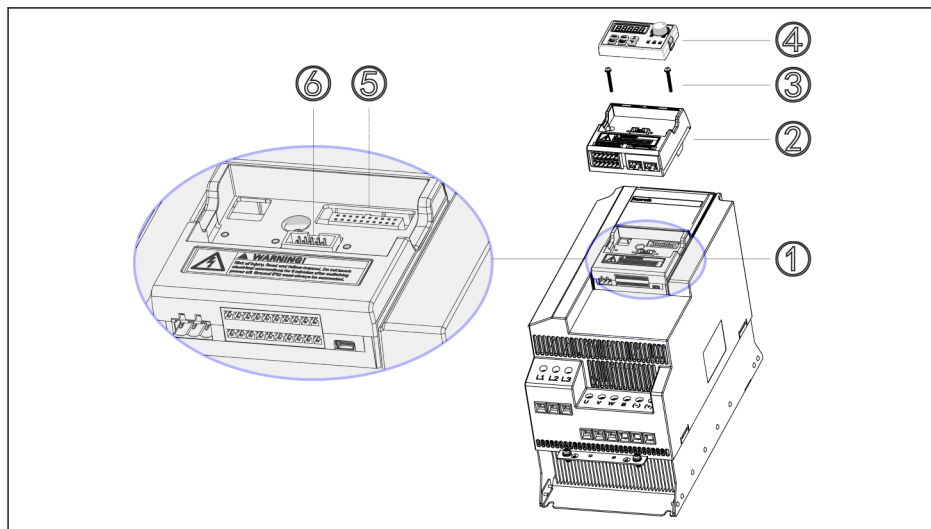


Fig. 15-7: Extension card module mounting

1. Remove operating panel ④ from Control & Terminal module ①.
2. Mount extension card module with extension cards ② into Control & Terminal module ①.
3. Tighten two screws ③(screw torque to 0.4 Nm) to fix carrier for option modules ② in Control & Terminal module ①.
4. Push operating panel ④ into carrier for option modules ②.



⑤: Control & Terminal module connector

⑥: Connector for operating panel

15.5.3 Extension Module Mounting



CAUTION

Risk of device damage!

Do not mount the extension card when frequency converter is powered on, otherwise it will cause damage to the extension card.

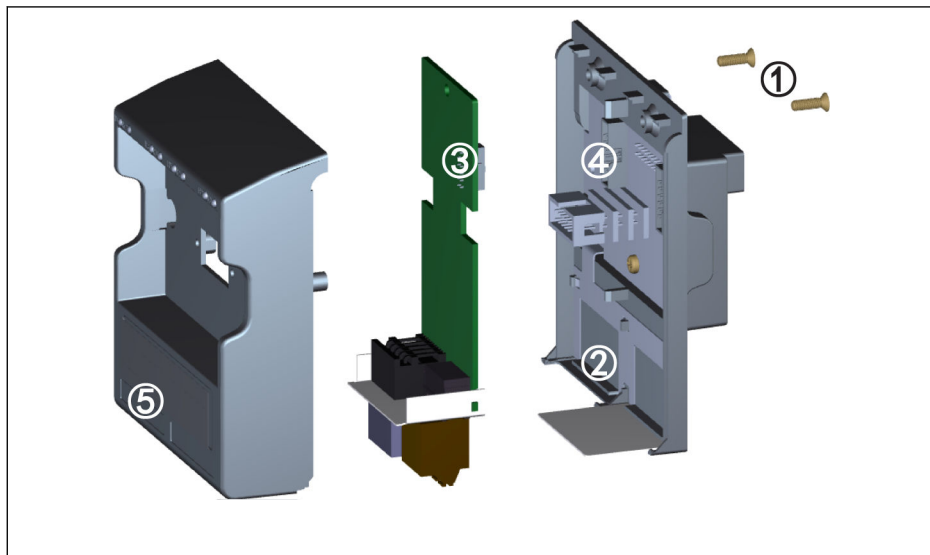


Fig. 15-8: Extension module mounting

1. Remove 2-M3 screws ① on back of the extension card module.
2. Remove the front cover of the extension card module.
3. Insert one extension card into the card slot with the metal plate beside the extension card terminals placed in ②.
4. Push the extension card to achieve a stable connection of connector ③ (on the back side of the extension card) with connector ④ (on the extension card module).
5. Mount the front cover of the extension card module.
6. Tighten 2-M3 screws ① of the extension card module.
7. Attach an appropriate terminal label on the label indentation ⑤ located at the lower section of the front cover. Terminal labels for various extension cards are delivered together with each extension card.

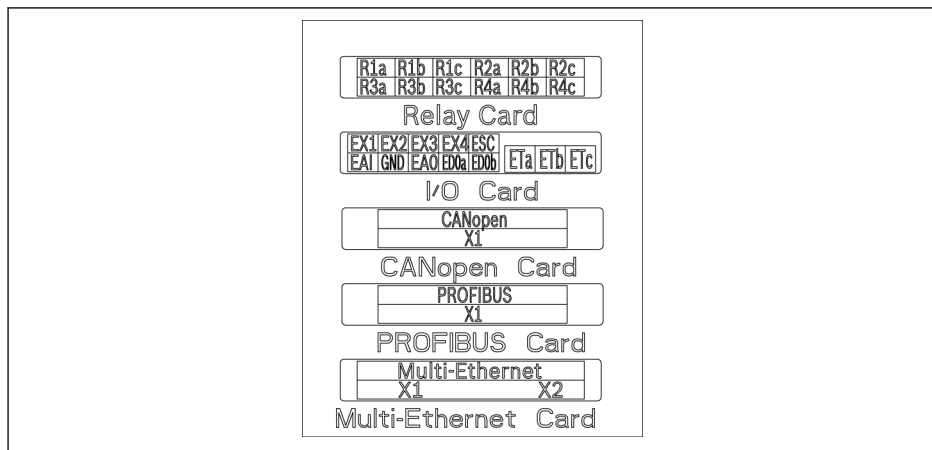


Fig. 15-9: Terminal labels of extension cards

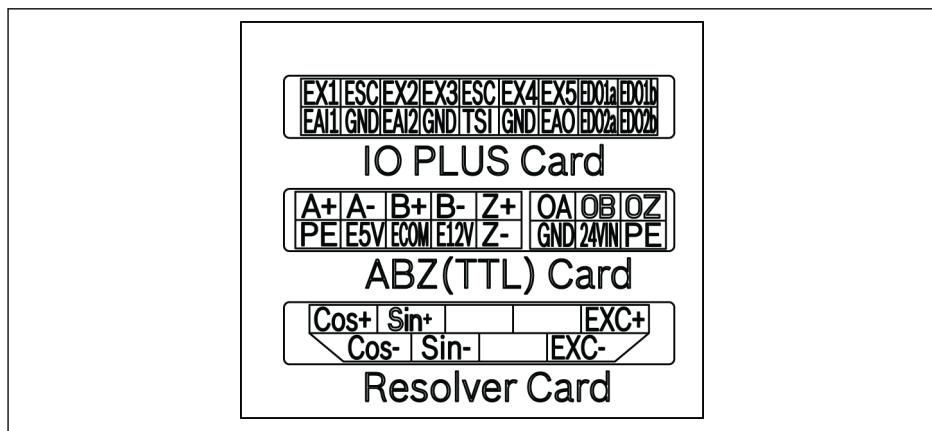


Fig. 15-10: Terminal labels of extension cards



- Maximum two extension cards can be mounted in one extension card module.
- Extension cards in the two card slots **CANNOT** be the same.
- **ONLY ONE** type of communication card can be mounted in one extension card module.
- MEP card **ONLY** for VFCx615 series. TTL and Resolver card **ONLY** for VFC5615 series.

15.6 I/O Module

15.6.1 I/O Card

I/O card terminals label



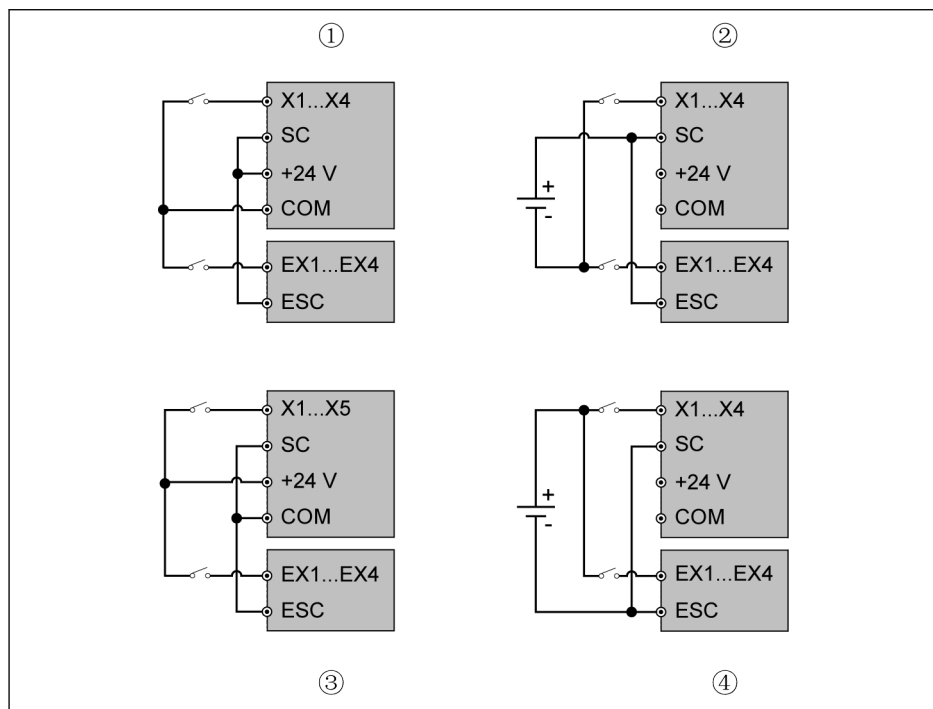
Fig. 15-11: I/O card terminals label

I/O card terminals descriptions

Terminal	Signal requirement	Description
EX1...EX4	Multi-function digital inputs: 24 VDC, 8 mA / 12 VDC, 4 mA with opto-electric couplers	See Group H8
ESC	–	Isolation opto-electric couplers shared connection
EAI	Voltage input range: -10...10 V* Voltage input impedance: > 20 kΩ Resolution: 1/1,000 Current input range: 0/4...20 mA Current input impedance: < 500 Ω Resolution: 1/1,000	The power supply is +5 V and +10 V from the frequency converter See Group H8
GND	–	Analog terminals shared connection, isolated from ESC
EAO	Voltage output range: 0...10 V Voltage output load impedance: > 2 kΩ Current output range: 0...20 mA Current output load impedance: < 500 Ω	See Group H8
EDOa, EDOb	Open collector output: Max. 30 VDC, 50 mA	See Group H8 ESC is reference
ETa, ETc	Rated capacity of relay outputs:	See Group H8
ETb	250 VAC, 3 A; 30 VDC, 3 A	ETb is the relay outputs shared connection

* For -10 V input, external power supply must be provided. A frequency converter **ONLY** provides +5 V and +10 V

I/O card terminals wiring

**Fig. 15-12:** I/O card terminals wiring

- ①: NPN with internal power supply
- ②: NPN with external power supply
- ③: PNP with internal power supply
- ④: PNP with external power supply



X1...X5, SC, +24 V, COM are control terminals of the frequency converter, EX1...EX4, ESC are control terminals of the I/O card.

15.6.2 Relay Card

Relay card terminals label

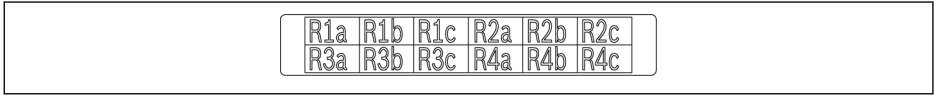


Fig. 15-13: Relay card terminals label

Relay card terminals descriptions

Terminal	Signal requirement	Description
R1a, R1c, R1b	Rated capacity: 250 VAC, 3 A 30 VDC, 3 A	See Group H9 R1b, R2b, R3b, R4b are relay outputs shared connections
R2a, R2c, R2b		
R3a, R3c, R3b		
R4a, R4c, R4b		

Relay card terminals wiring

For details on relay terminals wiring, see [chapter "Relay output terminals" on page 75](#).

15.6.3 I/O Plus Card

Terminals Mapping

EX1	ESC	EX2	EX3	ESC	EX4	EX5	EDO1a	EDO1b
EAI1	GND	EAI2	GND	TSI	GND	EOA	EDO2a	EDO2b

Fig. 15-14: Terminals Mapping

Terminals Description

Terminal	Signal function	Description
EX1...EX5	Multi-function digital inputs: 24 VDC, 8 mA / 12 VDC, 4 mA with optocouplers isolation	See parameter group H8
ESC	-	Isolation optocouplers shared connection

Terminal	Signal function	Description
EAI1 / EAI2	Analog voltage / current inputs Voltage input range: -10...10 V* Input impedance: > 20 k Ω Resolution: 1/1,000 Current input range: 0/4...20 mA Input impedance: < 500 Ω Resolution: 1/1,000	The power supply is +5 V and +10 V from the frequency converter See parameter group H8
TSI	Supported sensor types: KTY 84/130, PT100, PT1000, TDK G1551_8320 (NTC)	GND is reference
GND	-	Analog terminals shared connection, isolated from ESC
EAO	Analog voltage / current outputs Voltage output range: -10...10 V Output load impedance: > 500 Ω Current output range: 0...20 mA Output load impedance: < 500 Ω	See parameter group H8
EDO1a, EDO1b, EDO2a, EDO2b	Open collector output: Max. 30 VDC, 500 mA	See parameter group H8

* For -10 V input, external power supply must be provided. A frequency converter **ONLY** provides +5 V and +10 V

Wiring

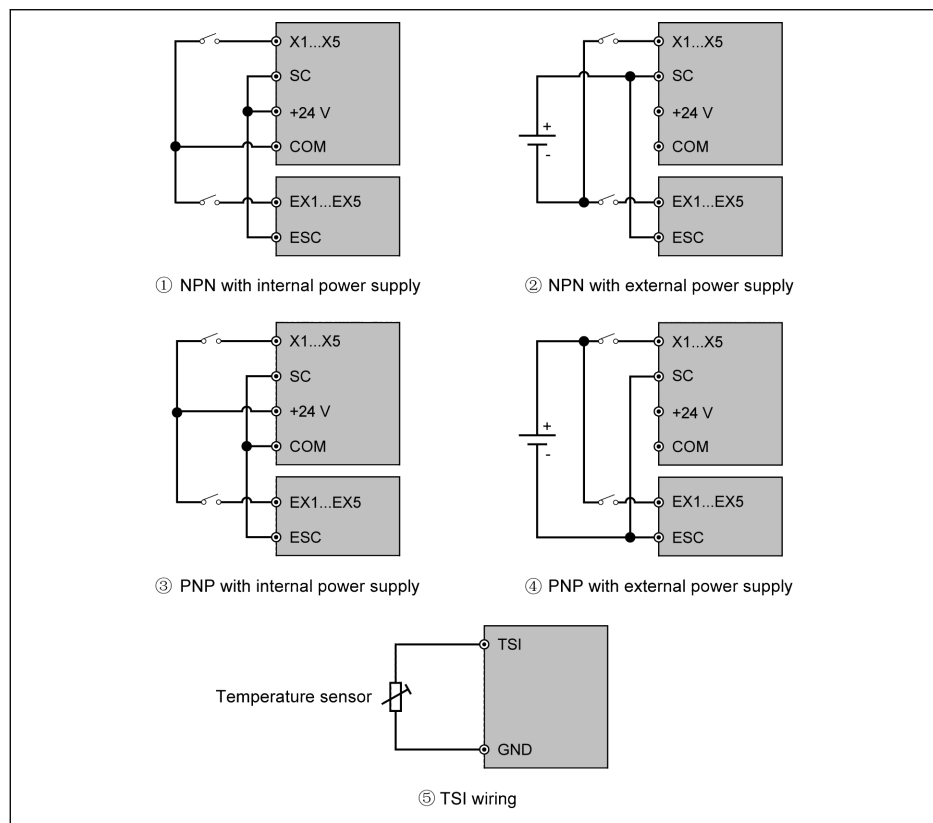


Fig. 15-15: I/O Plus Card Wiring



X1...X5, SC, +24V, and COM are control terminals of frequency converter.

EX1...EX4, ESC are control terminals of I/O Plus Card.

15.7 Communication Module

15.7.1 PROFIBUS Interface

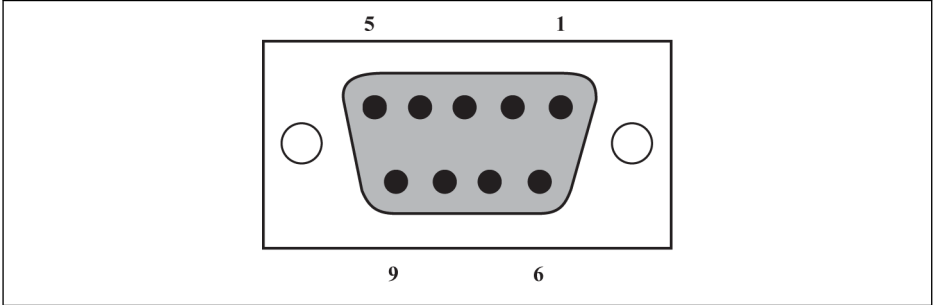


Fig. 15-16: PROFIBUS DB9 interface

Pin	Terminal sign	Terminal name	Function description
1	NC	–	Reserved
2	NC	–	Reserved
3	PROFIBUS_B	PROFIBUS terminal_B	PROFIBUS data cable B
4	RTS	Request for signal sending	–
5	GND	Power-	–
6	Vcc	Power+	–
7	NC	–	Reserved
8	PROFIBUS_A	PROFIBUS terminal_A	PROFIBUS data cable A
9	NC	–	Reserved

Tab. 15-2: Pin definition of PROFIBUS DB9 interface

15.7.2 PROFIBUS Card LED

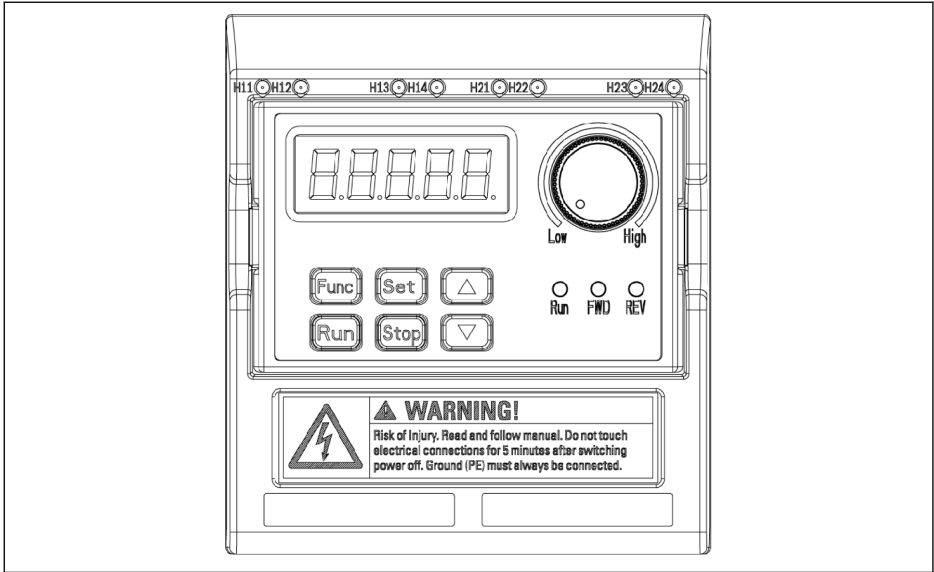


Fig. 15-17: PROFIBUS card LED

LED	Color	Function	Status	Description
H11/H21①	Green	PROFIBUS card configuration status	Fast blinking 0.4 s per cycle	Data exchanging
			ON	Communication established PROFIBUS card successfully parameterized and configured => Everything OK
H12/H22①	Red	PROFIBUS card error indication	OFF	PROFIBUS card OK
			Slow Blinking 1 s per cycle	PROFIBUS card error

Tab. 15-3: PROFIBUS card LED

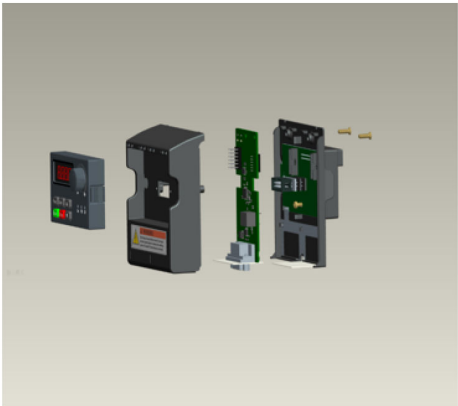


①:

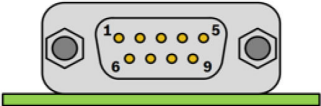
- H11 and H12 are available when the PROFIBUS card is installed on the left card slot
- H21 and H22 are available when the PROFIBUS card is installed on the right card slot

15.7.3 CANopen Card

Interface Introduction



Pins of the DB9 connectors



Connector Pin Description 

Pin #	Signal	Description
1	---	Reserved
2	CAN_L	CAN_L Bus line (dominant low)
3	CAN_V-	External bus power GND
4	---	Reserved
5	Earth	CAN cable shield
6	CAN_V-	External bus power GND
7	CAN_H	CAN_H Bus line (dominant high)
8	---	Reserved
9	---	Reserved
10	Earth	CAN cable shield

Fig. 15-18: Interface data

Cable and Connection

Please select CANopen cable type in accordance with the following instructions.

Baudrate	Max. cable length	Resistance [mΩ/m]	Cable cross section [mm²/AWG]	Termination resistor
1,000 kbps	25m	<70	0.25...0.34 / AWG23...AWG22	120 Ω
500 kbps	100 m	< 60	0.34...0.6 / AWG22...AWG20	
250 kbps	250 m	< 40	0.5...0.6 / AWG20	
125 kbps	500 m			
50 kbps	1,000 m	< 26	0.75...0.8 / AWG18	
20 kbps	1,000 m			
10 kbps	1,000 m			

Tab. 15-4: Cable data

It is not suitable to connect frequency converter with “flat cable” and other unscreened cable types. With regards to the connection of the cable screen, it is recommended to connect to the ground at both ends of the cable at every CANopen slave node. Low impedance ground connection of high frequency screen is very important. This can be achieved by connecting to the ground with a cable clamp or a conductive cable device, such as converter shielding kit.

15.8 Plug-in Connector for Control Section

The plug-in connector kit (FEAE05.1-B2-NNNN) is used for the wiring of control terminals. This kit contains the following two sub-components.

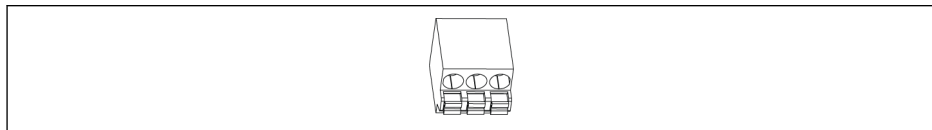


Fig. 15-19: Relay terminal connector

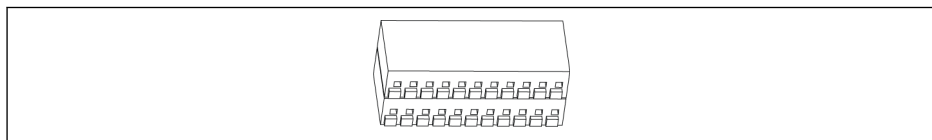


Fig. 15-20: IO terminal connector

For the connection diagram of control terminal connector and frequency converter, see [fig. 8-11 "Control circuit terminals" on page 70](#).

15.9 External Mains EMC Filter

15.9.1 External Mains EMC Filter Type

VFC x615 model	External mains EMC filter type
0K40-1P2	FCAF01.1A-A050-E-0010-N-03-NNNN (0010-N-03)
0K75-1P2	
1K50-1P2	FCAF01.1A-A050-E-0020-N-03-NNNN (0020-N-03)
2K20-1P2	FCAF01.1A-A050-E-0025-N-03-NNNN (0025-N-03)
0K40-3P4	FCAF01.1A-A050-E-0008-A-05-NNNN (0008-A-05)
0K75-3P4	
1K50-3P4	
2K20-3P4	
3K00-3P4	FCAF01.1A-A050-E-0020-N-05-NNNN (0020-N-05)
4K00-3P4	
5K50-3P4	FCAF01.1A-A050-E-0036-A-05-NNNN (0036-A-05)
7K50-3P4	
11K0-3P4	
15K0-3P4	FCAF01.1A-A050-E-0050-A-05-NNNN (0050-A-05)
18K5-3P4	
22K0-3P4	FCAF01.1A-A050-E-0066-A-05-NNNN (0066-A-05)
30K0-3P4	FCAF01.1A-A050-E-0090-A-05-NNNN (0090-A-05)

VFC x615 model	External mains EMC filter type
37K0-3P4	FCAF01.1A-A100-E-0120-A-05-NNNN (0120-A-05)
45K0-3P4	
55K0-3P4	FCAF01.1A-A100-E-0250-N-05-NNNN (0250-N-05)
75K0-3P4	
90K0-3P4	FCAF01.1A-A100-E-0320-N-05-NNNN (0320-N-05)
110K-3P4	
132K-3P4	FCAF01.1A-A100-E-0400-N-05-NNNN (0400-N-05)
160K-3P4	
185K-3P4	
200K-3P4	
220K-3P4	FCAF01.1A-A150-E-0600-N-05-NNNN (0600-N-05)
250K-3P4	
280K-3P4	
315K-3P4	
355K-3P4	FCAF01.1A-A150-E-01000-N-05-NNNN (01000-N-05)
400K-3P4	FCAF01.1A-A150-E-01000-N-05-NNNN (01000-N-05)

Tab. 15-5: External mains EMC filter type



- Only mount the external mains EMC filter FCAF vertically. Keep at least 80 mm above the top and below the bottom of the external mains EMC filter free from mounted parts.
- For EMC performance with the external mains EMC filter, see [chapter 6.2.3 "Maximum Length of Motor Cables" on page 35](#).

15.9.2 Technical Data

Dimensions

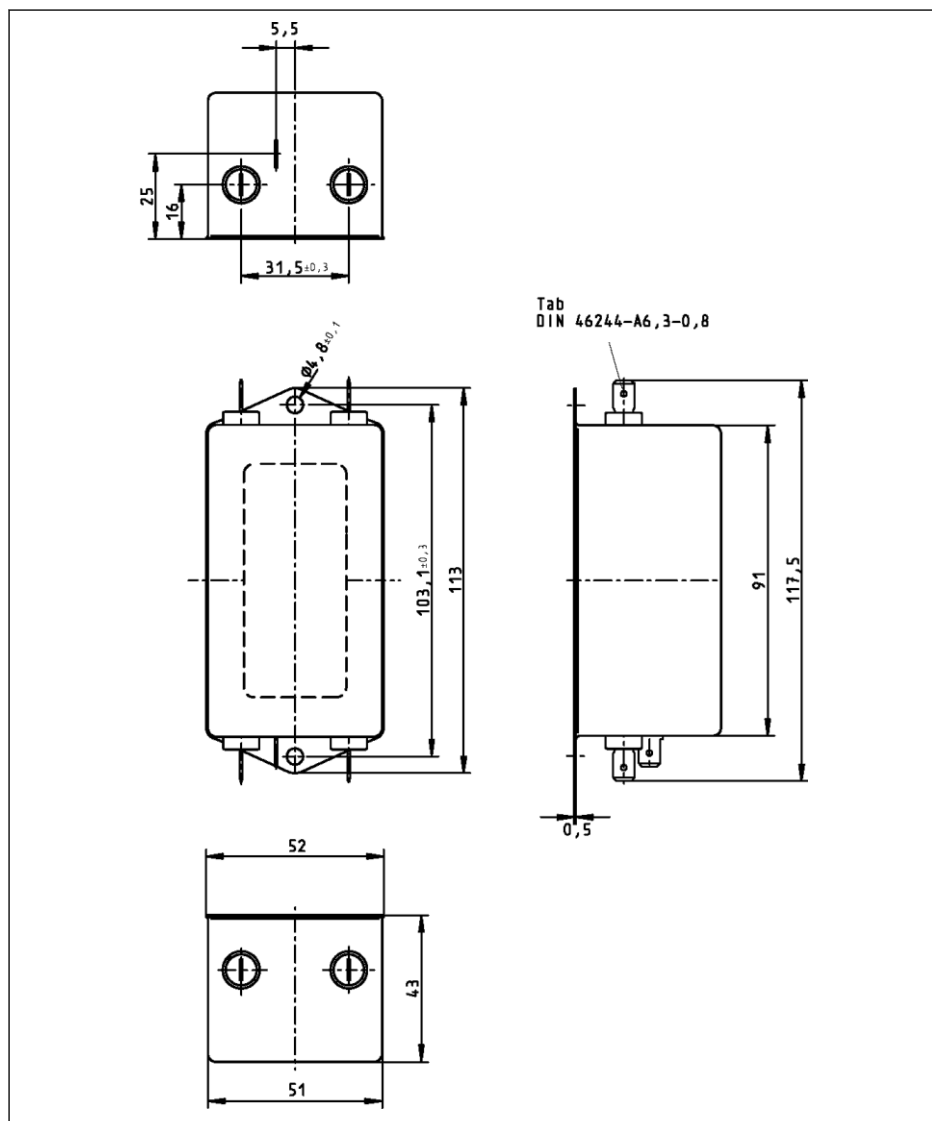


Fig. 15-21: 0010-N-03

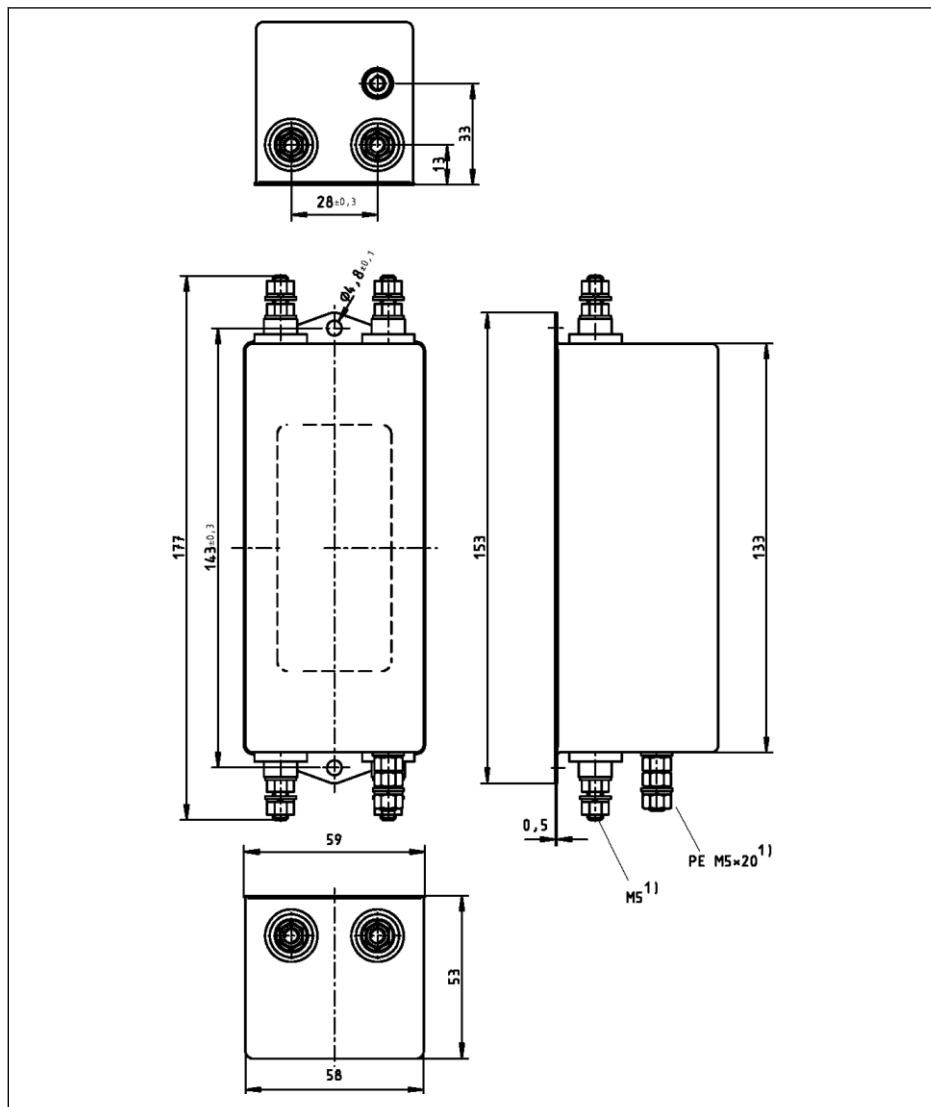


Fig. 15-22: 0020-N-03, 0025-N-03

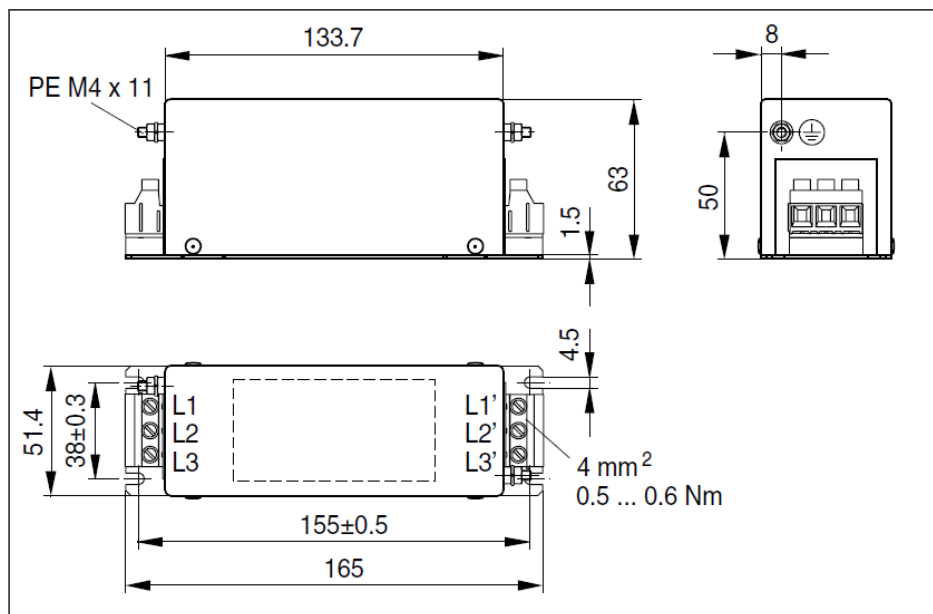


Fig. 15-23: 0008-A-05

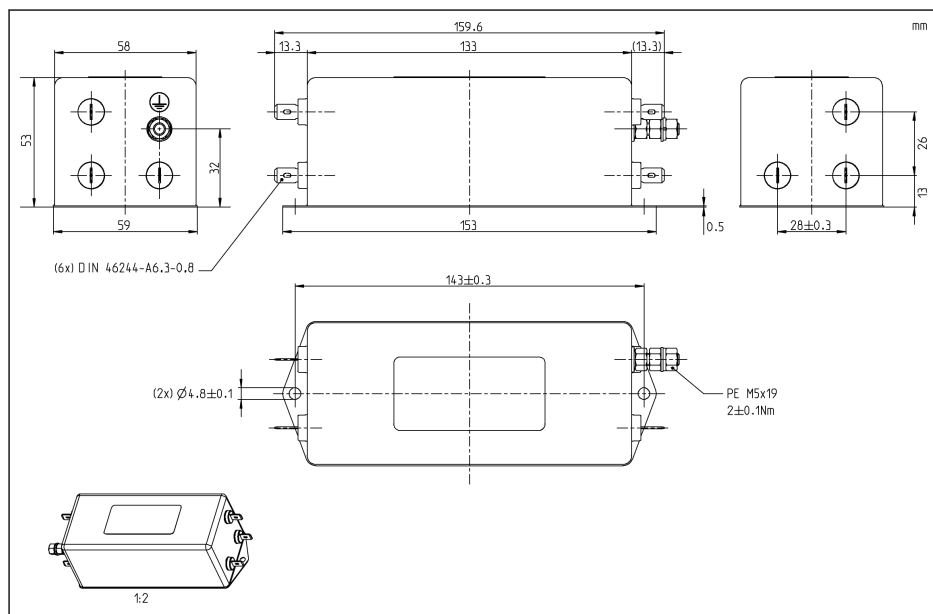


Fig. 15-24: 0020-N-05

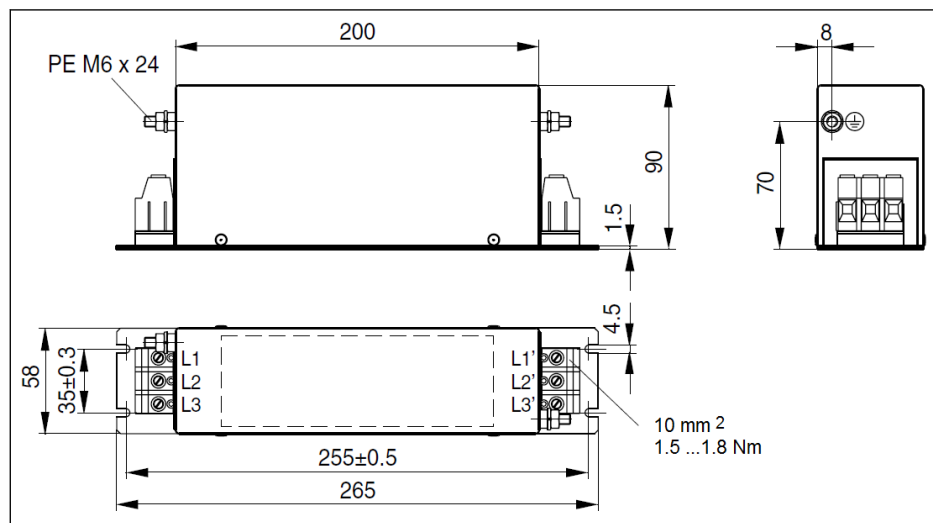


Fig. 15-25: 0036-A-05, 0050-A-05

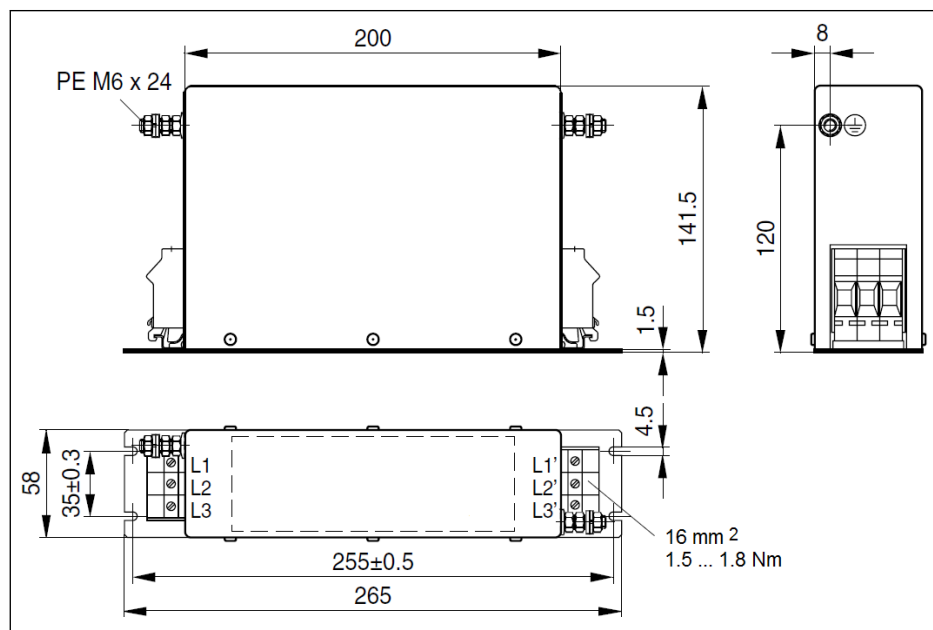


Fig. 15-26: 0066-A-05

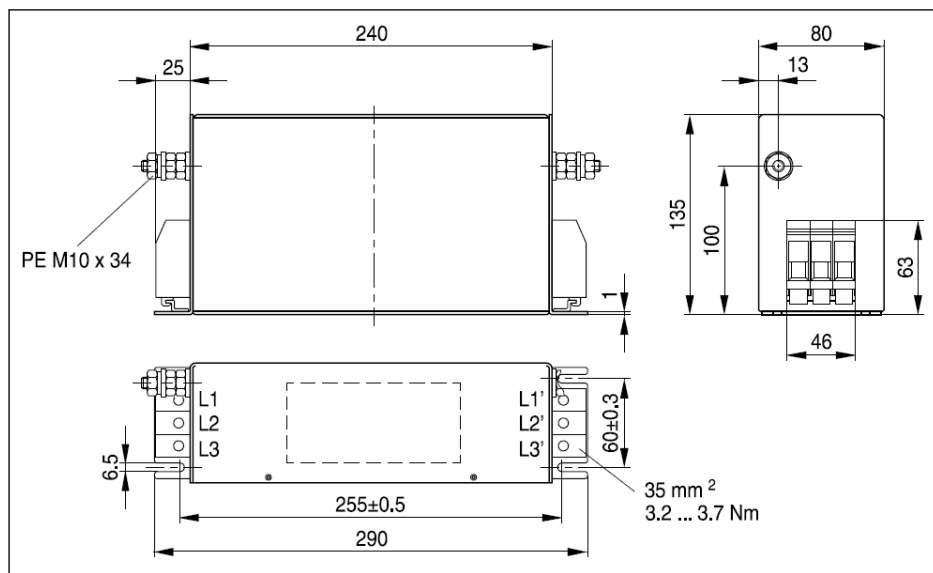


Fig. 15-27: 0090-A-05

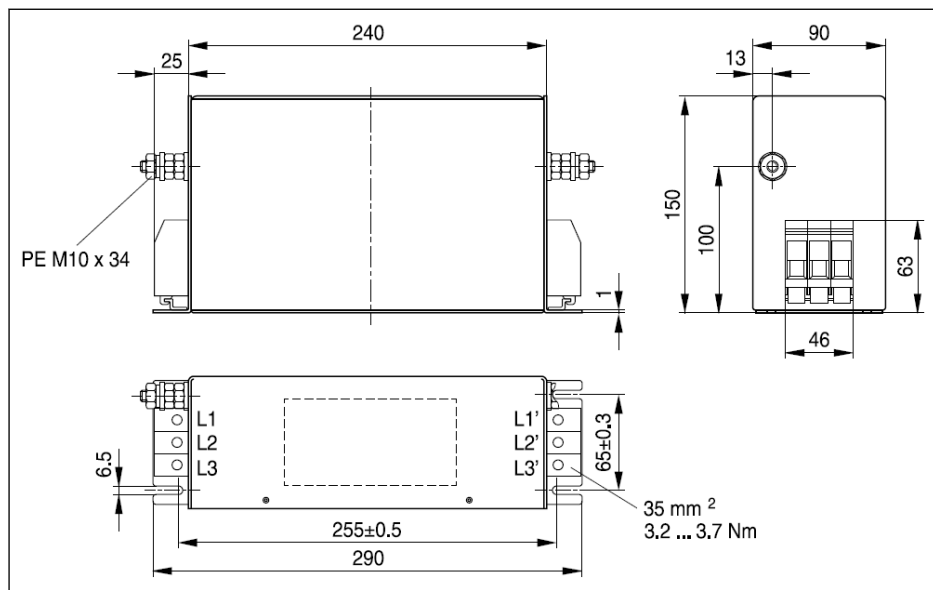
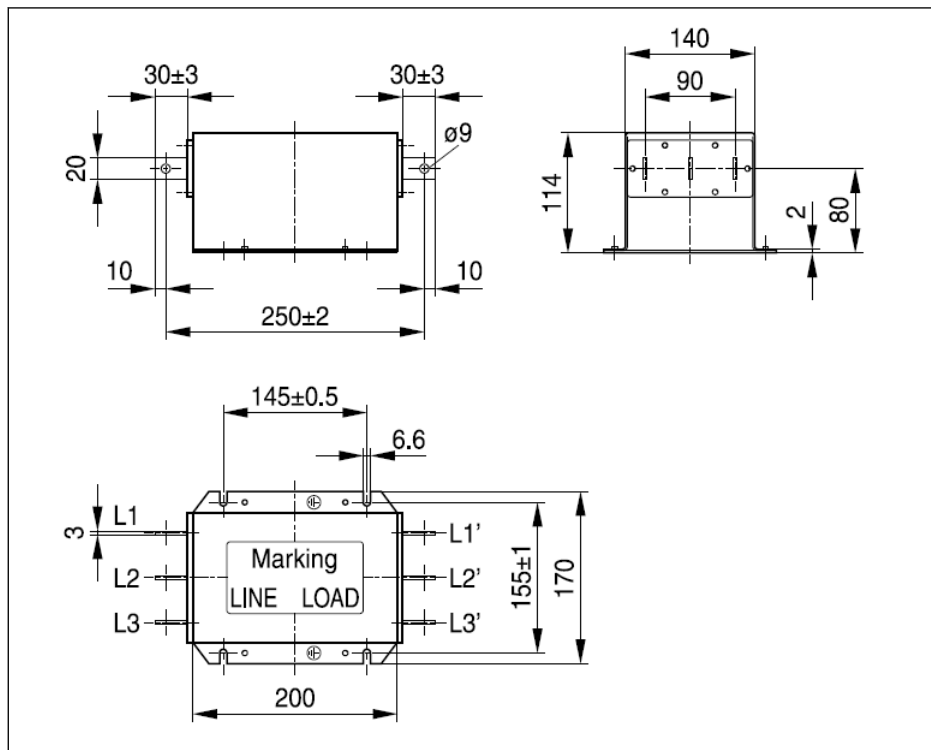


Fig. 15-28: 0120-A-05

**Fig. 15-29:** O250-N-05

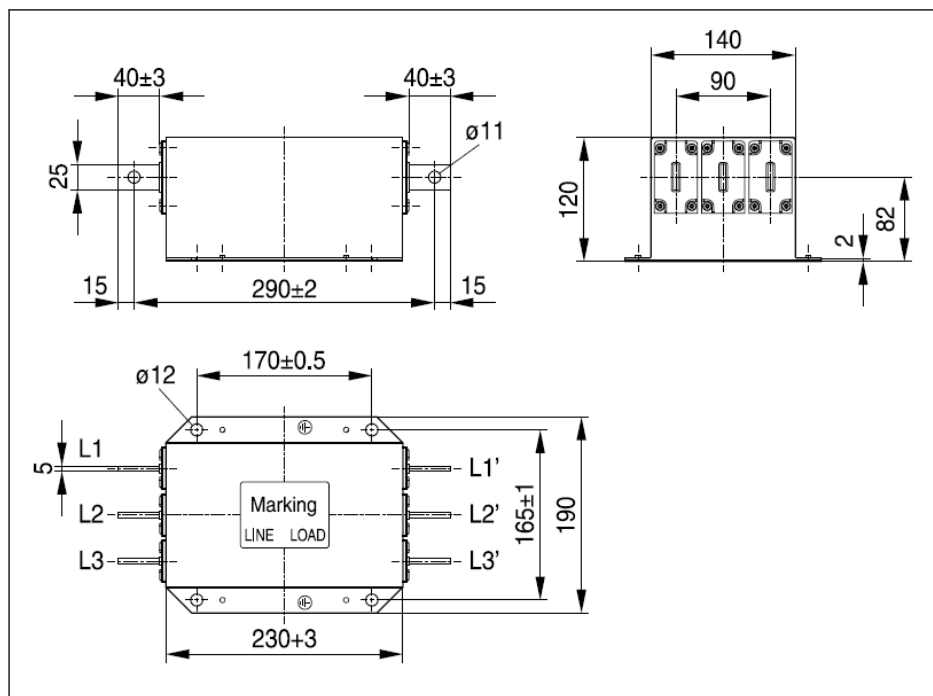


Fig. 15-30: 0320-N-05, 0400-N-05

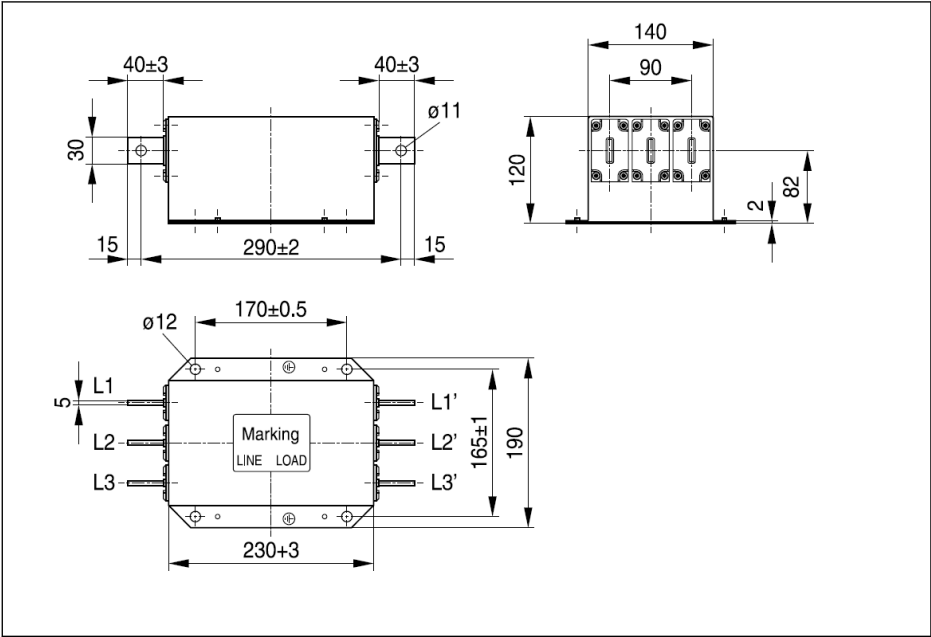


Fig. 15-31: 0600-N-05

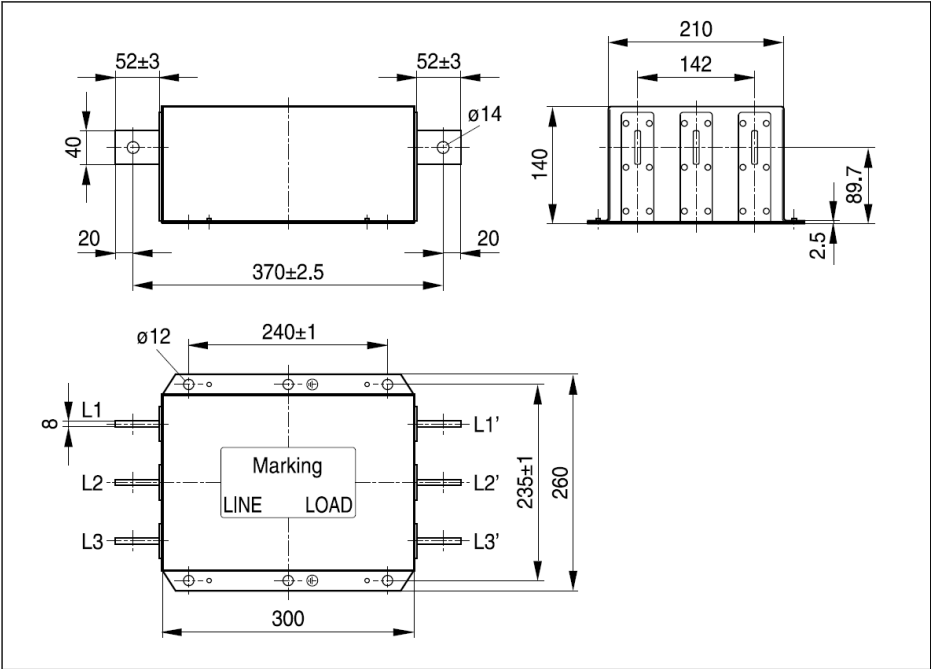


Fig. 15-32: 01000-N-05

Electric data

Electric data of EMC filter for 1P 200 VAC models



When using EMC filters in **mains grounded via outer conductor**, use an isolating transformer between mains and EMC filter.

Description	Symbol	Unit	0010-N-03	0020-N-03	0025-N-03
Degree of protection according to IEC 60529	–	–	IP 20		
Listing according to UL standard (UL)	–	–	UL 1283		
Listing according to CSA standard (UL)	–	–	C22.2 No.8		
Mass (weight)	m	kg	0.42	0.86	0.87
Mains voltage at TN-S, TN-C, TT mains	U_{LN}	V	200...240		

Description	Symbol	Unit	0010- N-03	0020- N-03	0025- N-03
Mains voltage at Corner- grounded-Delta mains	U_{LN}	V	Not allowed		
Mains voltage at IT mains	U_{LN}	V	Not allowed		
Tolerance U_{LN} (UL)	–	–	-10...+10 %		
Input frequency (UL)	f_{LN}	Hz	50...60		
Nominal current	I_{L_cont}	A	10	20	25
Calculation of leakage current	I_{leak}	mA	< 0.5	< 3.5	< 3.5
Required wire size according to IEC 60364-5-52; at I_{L_cont}	A_{LN}	mm ²	2	3.5	5.3

Tab. 15-6: 1P 200 VAC electric data

Electric data of EMC filter for 3P 380 VAC models

Description	Symbol	Unit	0008-A-05	0020-N-05	0036-A-05	0050-A-05	0066-A-05	0090-A-05
Degree of protection according to IEC 60529	–	–	IP 20					
Listing according to UL standard (UL)	–	–	UL 1283					
Listing according to CSA standard (UL)	–	–	C22.2 No.8					
Mass (weight)	m	kg	0.58	0.75	1.75	1.75	2.70	4.20
Mains voltage at TN-S, TN-C, TT mains	U _{LN}	V	380...480					
Mains voltage at Corner-grounded-Delta mains	U _{LN}	V	Not allowed					
Mains voltage at IT mains	U _{LN}	V	Not allowed					
Tolerance U _{LN} (UL)	–	–	-15...+10 %					
Input frequency (UL)	f _{LN}	Hz	50...60					
Nominal current	I _{L_cont}	A	8	20	36	50	66	90
Calculation of leakage current	I _{leak}	mA	4.1	3.1	4.7	4.7	4.7	5
Required wire size according to IEC 60364-5-52; at I _{L_cont}	A _{LN}	mm ²	4	5	10	10	16	35

Tab. 15-7: 3P 380 VAC electric data

Description	Symbol	Unit	0120-A-05	0250-N-05	0320-N-05	0400-N-05	0600-N-05	01000-N-05
Degree of protection according to IEC 60529	–	–	IP 20					
Listing according to UL standard (UL)	–	–	UL 1283					
Listing according to CSA standard (UL)	–	–	C22.2 No.8					
Mass (weight)	m	kg	4.90	5.00	7.20	7.50	7.8	18.5
Mains voltage at TN-S, TN-C, TT mains	U _{LN}	V	380...480					
Mains voltage at Corner-grounded-Delta mains	U _{LN}	V	Not allowed					

Description	Symbol	Unit	0120- A-05	0250- N-05	0320- N-05	0400- N-05	0600- N-05	01000- N-05
Mains voltage at IT mains	U_{LN}	V	Not allowed					
Tolerance U_{LN} (UL)	–	–	-15...+10 %					
Input frequency (UL)	f_{LN}	Hz	50...60					
Nominal current	I_{L_cont}	A	120	250	320	400	600	1000
Calculation of leakage current	I_{leak}	mA	5	14	14	14	14	14
Required wire size according to IEC 60364-5-52; at I_{L_cont}	A_{LN}	mm ²	35	70	120	240.0 / 120.0* 2	95.0*4	

Tab. 15-8: 3P 380 VAC electric data

15.10 External Brake Resistor

15.10.1 Braking Ratio

Brake resistors with different power ratings are available to dissipate braking energy when the frequency converter is in generator mode.

The tables below list the optimal combination of frequency converter, brake resistor and the number of components required to operate one frequency converter with respect to a given moderating ratio OT.

$$OT = \frac{T_b}{T_c} * 100\%$$

OT (On Time percentage)
Tb

Braking ratio
Braking time

Tc

Engineering cycle
time in application

Fig. 15-33: Braking ratio

15.10.2 Brake Resistor Type for Braking Ratio of 10 %

The recommended brake chopper and brake resistor listed below are for default braking voltage, ED = 10 % and braking torque is 100%.

Converter model		Brake resistor					Brake chopper	
		Type	Speci- fica- tion	Num ber	Max. braking ON time [s]	Max. braking energy [KWs]	Type	Num ber
1P 200 VAC	0K40	FCAR01.1W0060-N400R0-B-03-NNNN	400Ω/ 60W	1	12	7.1424	-	-
	0K75	FCAR01.1W0100-N190R0-B-03-NNNN	190Ω/ 100W	1	12	11.904	-	-
	1K50	FCAR01.1W0200-N095R0-B-03-NNNN	95Ω/ 200W	1	12	23.808	-	-
	2K20	FCAR01.1W0300-N065R0-B-03-NNNN	65Ω/ 300W	1	12	35.712	-	-

Tab. 15-9: Brake resistor type for braking ratio of 10 % for 1P 200 VAC

Converter model		Brake resistor					Brake chopper	
		Type	Speci- fica- tion	Num ber	Max. braking ON time [s]	Max. braking energy [KWs]	Type	Num ber
3P 380 VAC	OK40	FCAR01.1W0080-N750RO- B-05-NNNN	750Ω /80W	1	12	9.5232	-	-
	OK75	FCAR01.1W0080-N750RO- B-05-NNNN	750Ω /80W	1	12	9.5232	-	-
	1K50	FCAR01.1W0260-N400RO- B-05-NNNN	400Ω/ 260W	1	12	30.950 4	-	-
	2K20	FCAR01.1W0260-N250RO- B-05-NNNN	250Ω/ 260W	1	12	30.950 4	-	-
	3K00	FCAR01.1W0390-N150RO- B-05-NNNN	150Ω/ 390W	1	12	46.425 6	-	-
	4K00	FCAR01.1W0390-N150RO- B-05-NNNN	150Ω/ 390W	1	12	46.425 6	-	-
	5K50	FCAR01.1W0780-N075RO- A-05-NNNN	75Ω/ 780W	1	12	112.32	-	-
	7K50	FCAR01.1W0780-N075RO- A-05-NNNN	75Ω/ 780W	1	12	112.32	-	-
	11K0	FCAR01.1W0780-N075RO- A-05-NNNN	75Ω/ 780W	1	12	112.32	-	-
	15K0	FCAR01.1W1K56-N040RO- A-05-NNNN	40Ω/ 1,560 W	1	12	224.64	-	-
	18K5	FCAR01.1W1K56-N040RO- A-05-NNNN	40Ω/ 1,560 W	1	12	224.64	-	-
	22K0	FCAR01.1W04K8-N032RO- A-05-NNNN	32Ω/ 4,800 W	1	12	506.88	-	-
	30K0	FCAR01.1W3K50-N018R9- A-05-NNNN	18.9Ω / 3,500 W	1	12	369.6	-	-
	37K0	FCAR01.1W4K00-N016RO- A-05-NNNN	16Ω/ 4,000 W	1	10	352	FEAE07.1- VA1-NNN	1
	45K0	FCAR01.1W4K00-N016RO- A-05-NNNN	16Ω/ 4,000 W	1	10	352	FEAE07.1- VA1-NNN	1
	55K0	FCAR01.1W6K50-N010RO- A-05-NNNN	10Ω/ 6,500 W	1	10	572	FEAE07.1- VA1-NNN	1

Tab. 15-10: Brake resistor type and braking ratio of 10 % for 3P 380 VAC (OK40-55K0)

Converter model		Brake resistor					Brake chopper	
		Type	Speci- fication	Num ber	Max. braking ON time [s]	Max. braking energy [KWs]	Type	Num ber
3P 380 VAC	75K0	FCAR01.1W6K50-N010R0-A-05-NNNN	10 Ω/ 6,500 W	1	10	572	FEAE07.1- VA1-NNN	1
	90K0	FCAR01.1W10K0-N006R0-A-05-NNNN	6Ω/ 10,00 0W	1	10	880	FEAE07.1- VA2-NNN	1
	110K	FCAR01.1W10K0-N006R0-A-05-NNNN	6Ω/ 10,00 0W	1	10	880	FEAE07.1- VA2-NNN	1
	132K	FCAR01.1W12K0-N008R0-A-05-NNNN	8Ω/ 12,00 0W	2	10	2112	FEAE07.1- VA1-NNN	2
	160K	FCAR01.1W12K0-N008R0-A-05-NNNN	8Ω/ 12,00 0W	2	10	2112	FEAE07.1- VA2-NNN	2
	185K	FCAR01.1W12K0-N008R0-A-05-NNNN	8Ω/ 12,00 0W	2	10	2112	FEAE07.1- VA2-NNN	2
	200K	FCAR01.1W12K0-N008R0-A-05-NNNN	8Ω/ 12,00 0W	3	10	2112	FEAE07.1- VA2-NNN	3
	220K	FCAR01.1W12K0-N008R0-A-05-NNNN	8Ω/ 12,00 0W	3	10	2112	FEAE07.1- VA2-NNN	3
	250K	FCAR01.1W12K0-N008R0-A-05-NNNN	8Ω/ 12,00 0W	3	10	2112	FEAE07.1- VA2-NNN	3
	280K	FCAR01.1W12K0-N008R0-A-05-NNNN	8Ω/ 12,00 0W	3	10	2112	FEAE07.1- VA2-NNN	3
	315K	FCAR01.1W12K0-N008R0-A-05-NNNN	8Ω/ 12,00 0W	4	-	2112	FEAE07.1- VA2-NNN	4
	355K	FCAR01.1W12K0-N008R0-A-05-NNNN	8Ω/ 12,00 0W	4	-	2112	FEAE07.1- VA2-NNN	4
	400K	FCAR01.1W12K0-N008R0-A-05-NNNN	8Ω/ 12,00 0W	4	-	2112	FEAE07.1- VA2-NNN	4

Tab. 15-11: Brake resistor type for braking ratio of 10 % for 3P 380 VAC (75K0-400K)



Models 37K0 and up require an external brake chopper module, see documentation R912007235 for details.

15.10.3 Brake Resistor Type for Braking Ratio of 20 %

The recommended brake chopper and brake resistor listed below are for default braking voltage, ED = 20 % and braking torque is 100%.

Converter model		Brake resistor				
		Type	Specifica- tion	Num- ber	Max. braking ON time [s]	Max. braking energy [KWs]
1P 200 VAC	0K40	FCAR01.1W0100-N400R0-B-03-NNNN	400 Ω / 100 W	1	12	8.64
	0K75	FCAR01.1W0200-N190R0-B-03-NNNN	190 Ω / 200 W	1	12	17.28
	1K50	FCAR01.1W0400-N095R0-B-03-NNNN	95 Ω / 400 W	1	12	34.56
	2K20	FCAR01.1W0500-N065R0-B-03-NNNN	65 Ω / 500 W	1	12	43.20

Converter model		Brake resistor				
		Type	Specification	Number	Max. braking ON time [s]	Max. braking energy [KWs]
3P 380 VAC	0K40	FCAR01.1W0150-N750R0-B-05-NNNN	750 Ω / 150 W	1	12	12.96
	0K75	FCAR01.1W0150-N750R0-B-05-NNNN	750 Ω / 150 W	1	12	12.96
	1K50	FCAR01.1W0520-N350R0-A-05-NNNN	350 Ω / 520 W	1	12	51.92
	2K20	FCAR01.1W0520-N230R0-A-05-NNNN	230 Ω / 520 W	1	12	51.92
	3K00	FCAR01.1W0780-N140R0-A-05-NNNN	140 Ω / 780 W	1	12	77.88
	4K00	FCAR01.1W0780-N140R0-A-05-NNNN	140 Ω / 780 W	1	12	77.88
	5K50	FCAR01.1W1K56-N070R0-A-05-NNNN	70 Ω / 1,560 W	1	12	155.75
	7K50	FCAR01.1W1K56-N070R0-A-05-NNNN	70 Ω / 1,560 W	1	12	155.75
	11K0	FCAR01.1W1K56-N070R0-A-05-NNNN	70 Ω / 1,560 W	1	12	155.75
	15K0	FCAR01.1W02K0-N047R0-A-05-NNNN	47 Ω / 2,000 W	1	12	199.68
	18K5	FCAR01.1W03K0-N034R0-A-05-NNNN	34 Ω / 3,000 W	1	12	201.60
	22K0	FCAR01.1W10K0-N028R0-A-05-NNNN	28 Ω / 10,000 W	1	12	672.00
	30K0	FCAR01.1W10K0-N028R0-A-05-NNNN	28 Ω / 10,000 W	1	12	672.00

Tab. 15-12: Brake resistor type for braking ratio of 20 %

15.10.4 Brake Resistor Dimensions

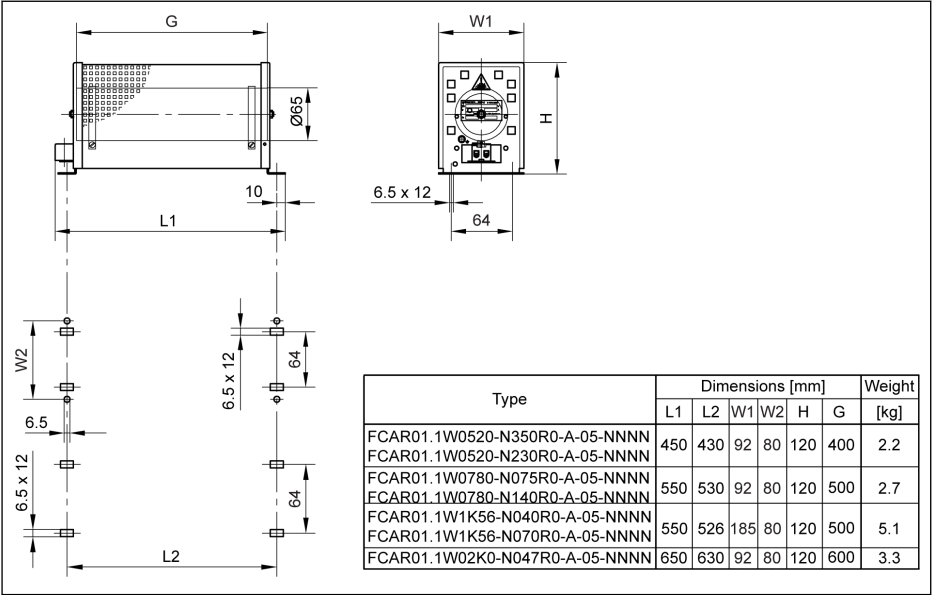


Fig. 15-34: Brake resistor dimensions_1

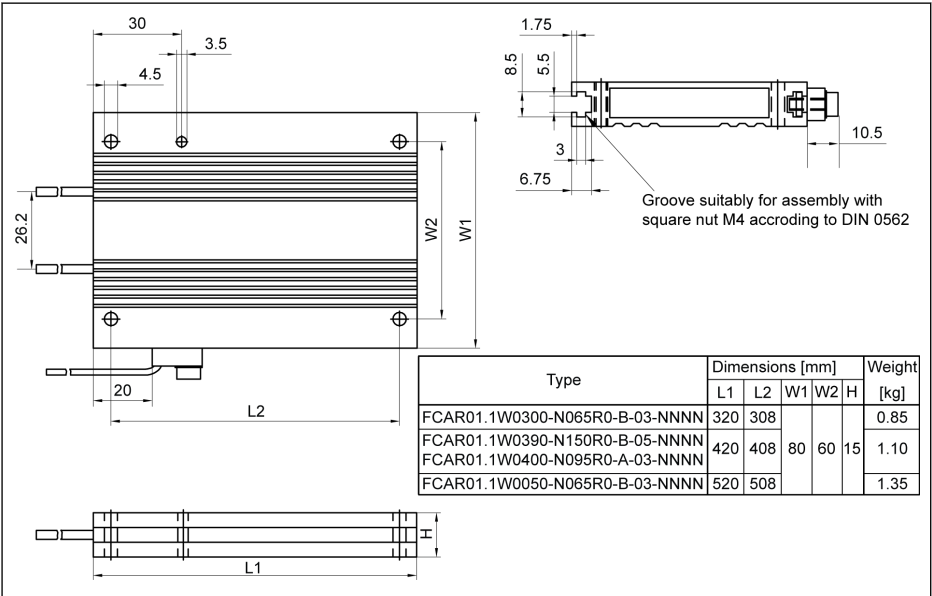


Fig. 15-35: Brake resistor dimensions_2

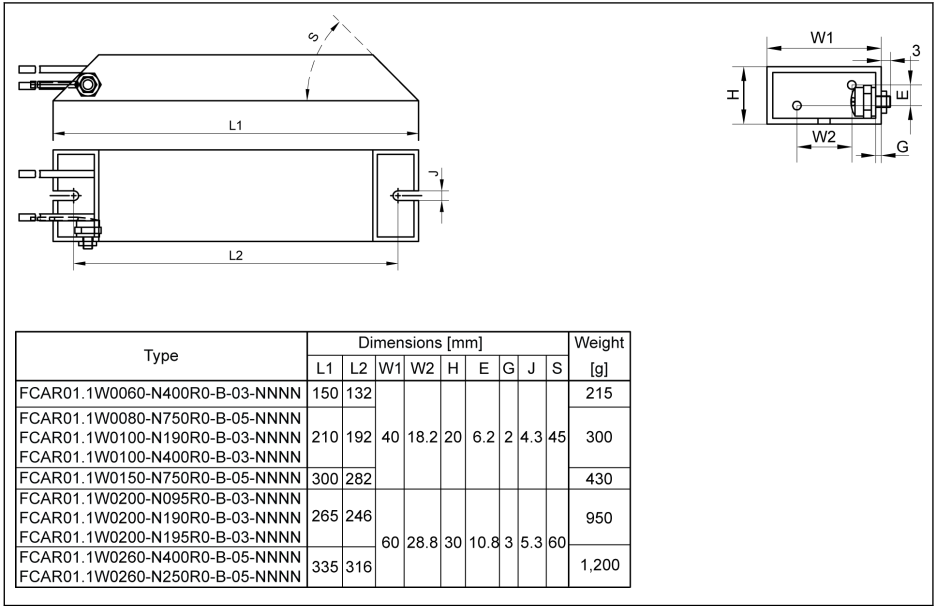


Fig. 15-36: Brake resistor dimensions_3

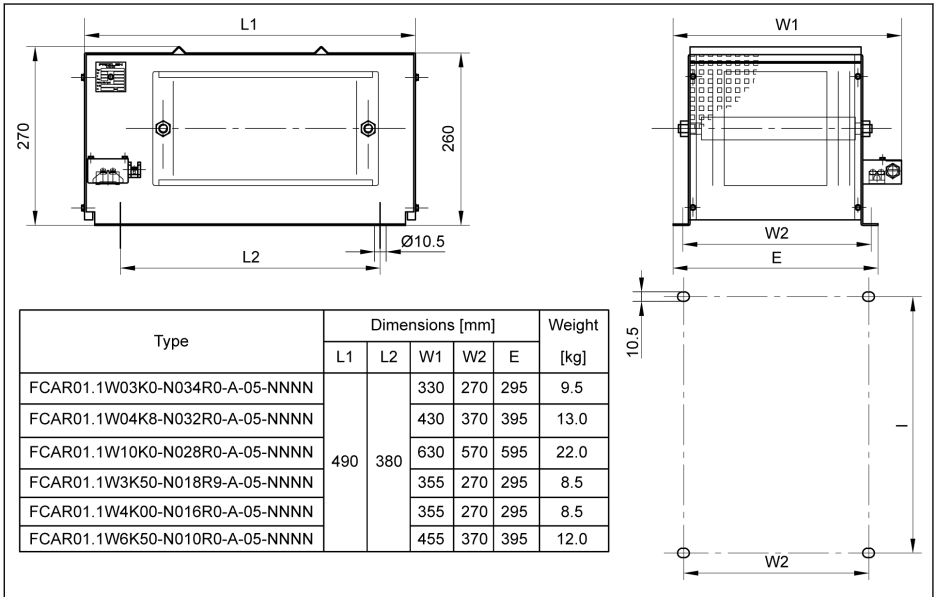


Fig. 15-37: Brake resistor dimensions_4

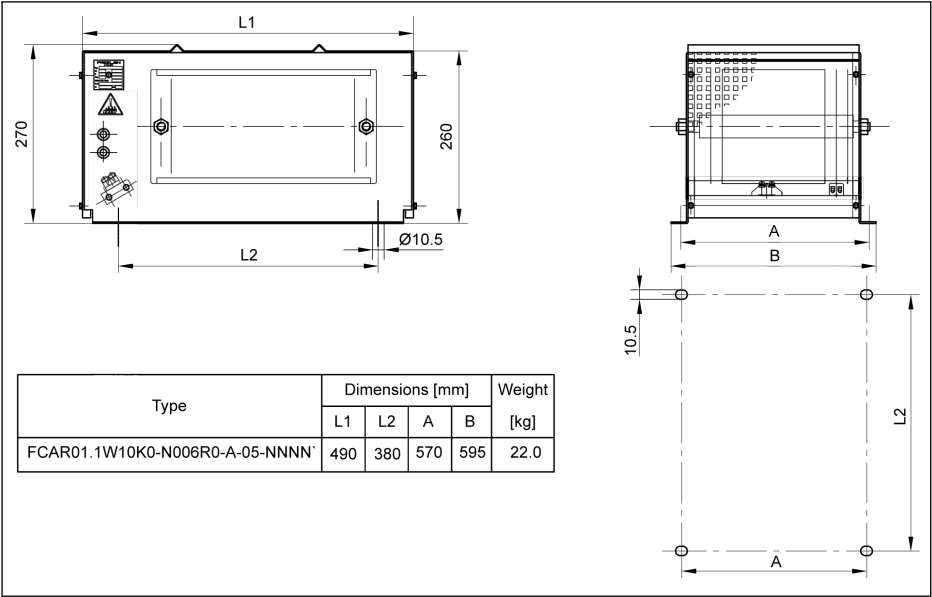


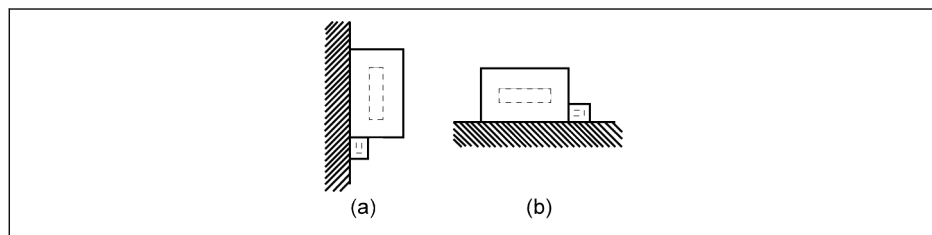
Fig. 15-38: Brake resistor dimensions_5

15.10.5 Installation of Brake Resistor

The given typical power values are valid for 100% duty cycle factor (DCF) (continuous dissipation) under the following conditions:

- Temperature rise of 200 K at the surface of fixed resistor enclosures (degree of protection > IP00)
- Temperature rise of 300 K at the surface of fixed resistor elements (degree of protection IP00)
- Unhindered access of cooling air
- Unhindered diverting of warmed up air (mind a minimum separation distance of approx. 200 mm to neighbouring components / walls and of approx. 300 mm to components above / ceiling)

The allowable mounting directions are shown as below:



(a) On vertical surfaces, terminals at the bottom

(b) On horizontal surfaces

Fig. 15-39: Mounting direction of brake resistor

15.11 Shielding Connector

The shielding layer of shielded cables must be reliably connected to the shielding terminals of the frequency converter. Accessories (connector and screws) for shielded cable connection are available for the connection convenience.

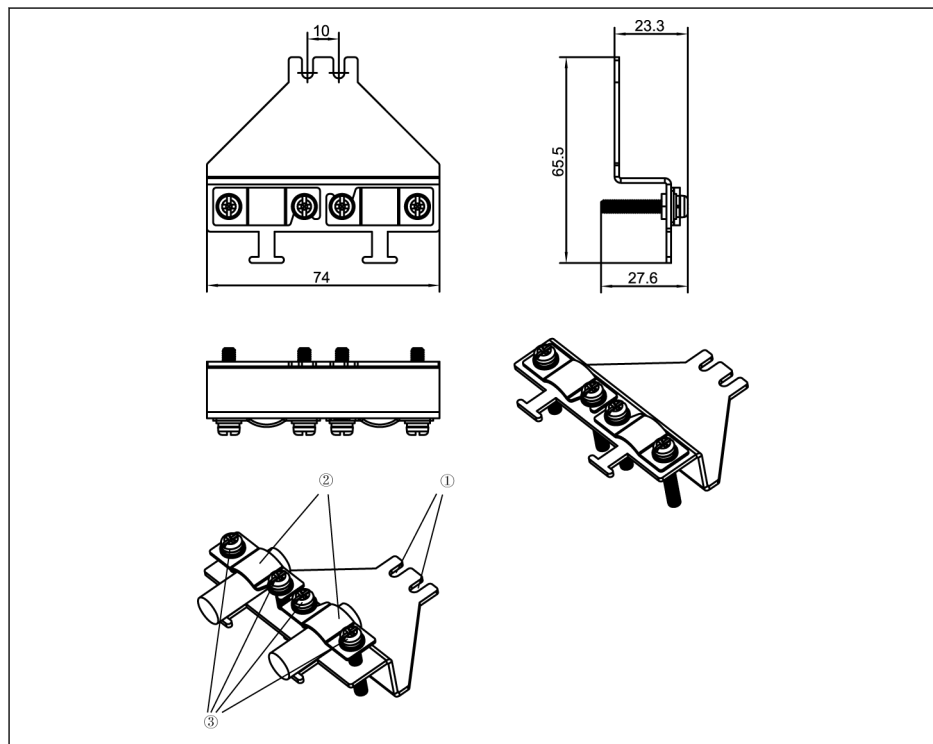


Fig. 15-40: Shielded cable connection with accessories for 0K40...4K00 (FEAM03.2-001-NN-NNNN)

Connection steps

Step 1: Place holes ① of the connector on the two screw holes inside of symbols $\oplus$ and tighten two screws.

Step 2: Insert the shielded cables through component ② of the connector with the shielding layer reliable contact with the metal.

Step 3: Tighten four screws of the accessories.

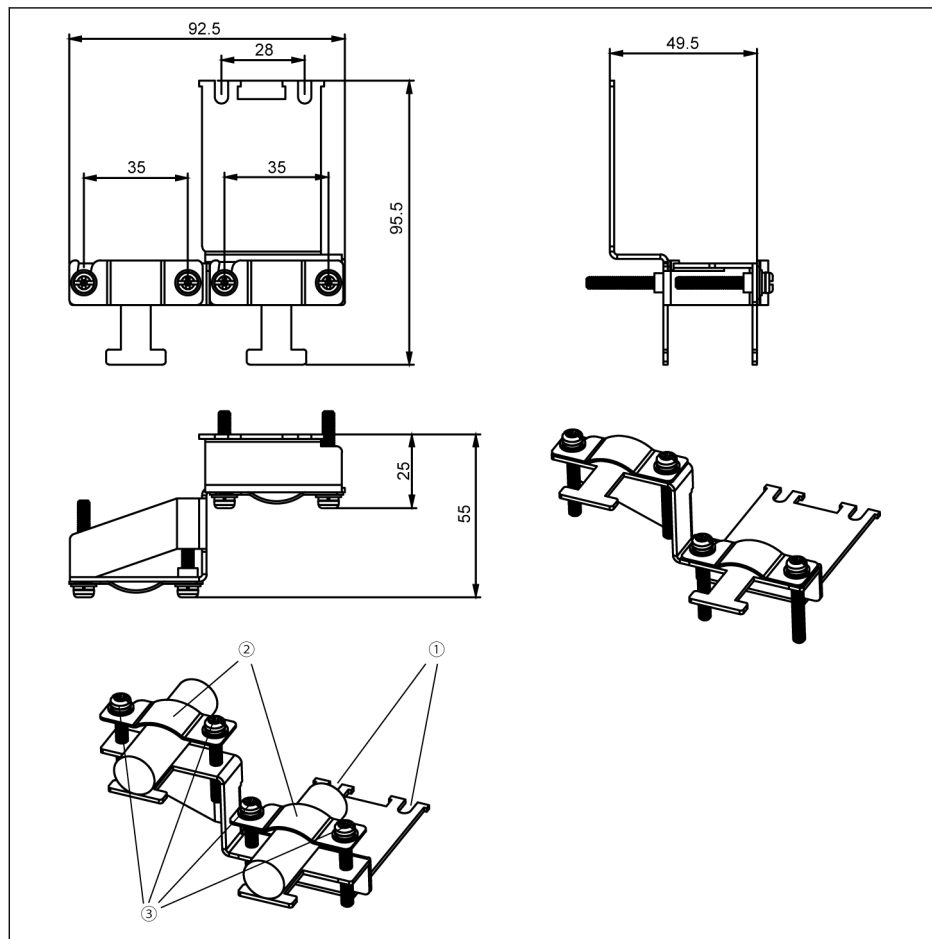


Fig. 15-41: Shielded cable connection with accessories for 5K50...30K0 (FEAM03.2-002-NN-NNNN)

Connection steps

Step 1: Place holes ① of the connector on the two screw holes inside of symbols $\oplus$ and tighten two screws.

Step 2: Insert the shielded cables through component ② of the connector with the shielding layer reliable contact with the metal.

Step 3: Tighten four screws of the accessories.

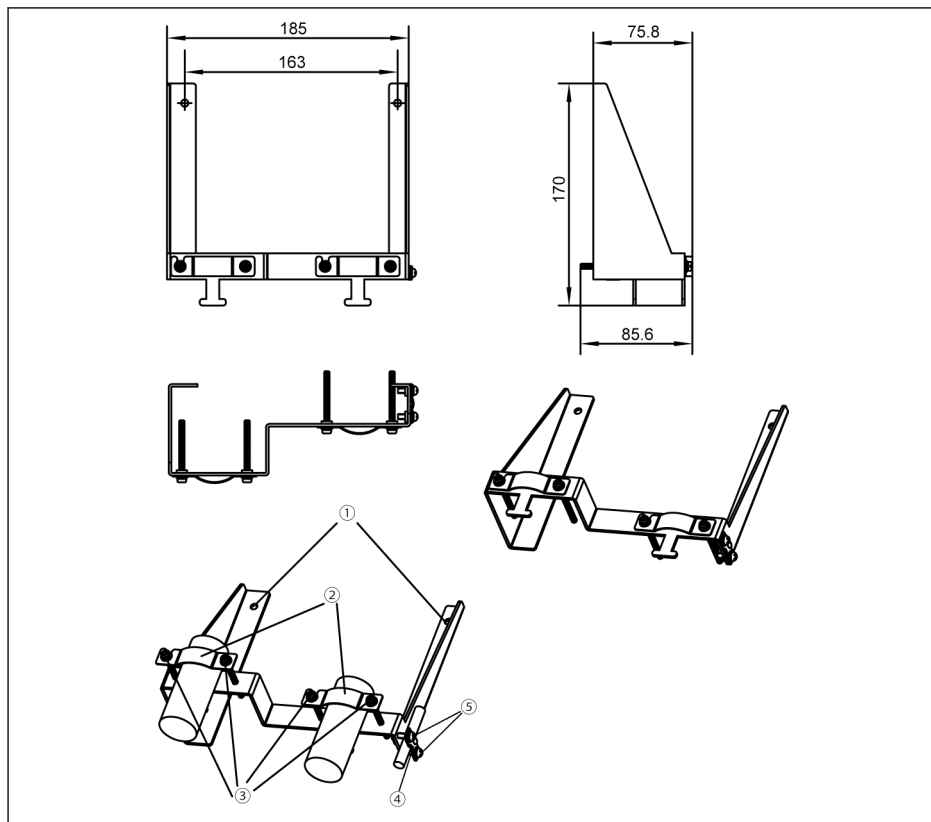


Fig. 15-42: Shielded cable connection with accessories for 37K0...45K0 (FEAM03.2-003-NN-NNNN)

Connection steps

Step 1: Place holes ① of the connector on the two screw holes outside of symbols $\perp$ and tighten two screws.

Step 2: Insert the shielded cables through component ② of the connector with the shielding layer reliable contact with the metal.

Step 3: Tighten four screws of the accessories.

Step 4 (Optional): Insert the STO shielded cable through component ④ of the connector with the shielding layer reliable contact with the metal.

Step 5 (Optional): Tighten two screws of the accessories.

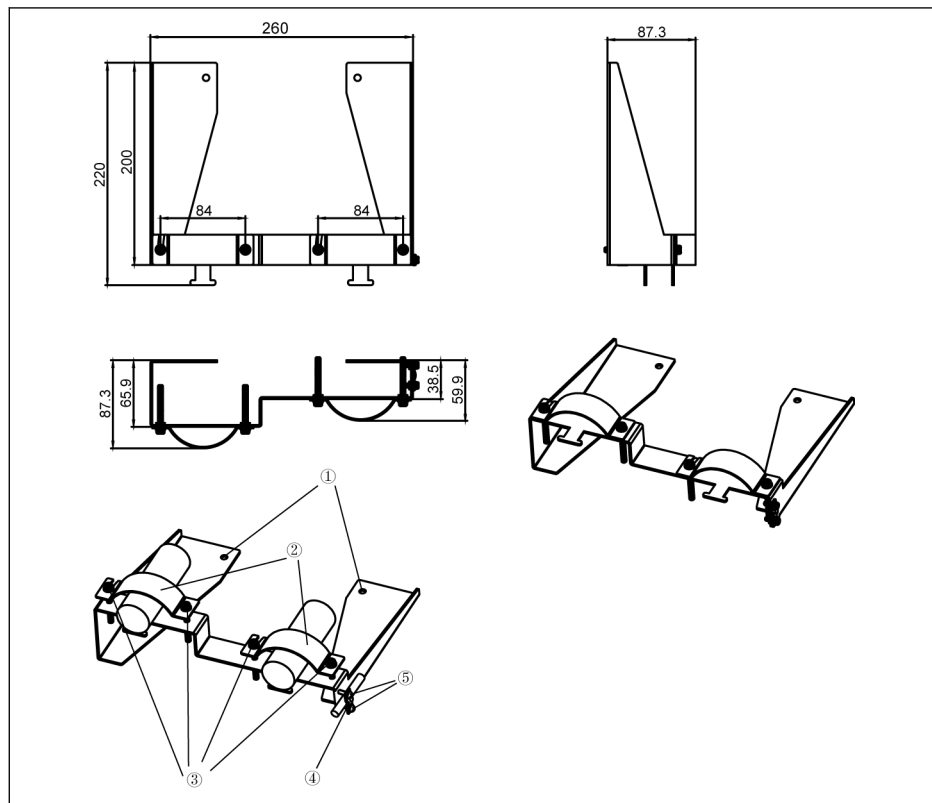


Fig. 15-43: Shielded cable connection with accessories for 55K0...110K (FEAM03.2-004-NN-NNNN)

Connection steps

Step 1: Place holes ① of the connector on the two screw holes outside of symbols $\ominus$ and tighten two screws.

Step 2: Insert the shielded cables through component ② of the connector with the shielding layer reliable contact with the metal.

Step 3: Tighten four screws of the accessories.

Step 4 (Optional): Insert the STO shielded cable through component ④ of the connector with the shielding layer reliable contact with the metal.

Step 5 (Optional): Tighten two screws of the accessories.

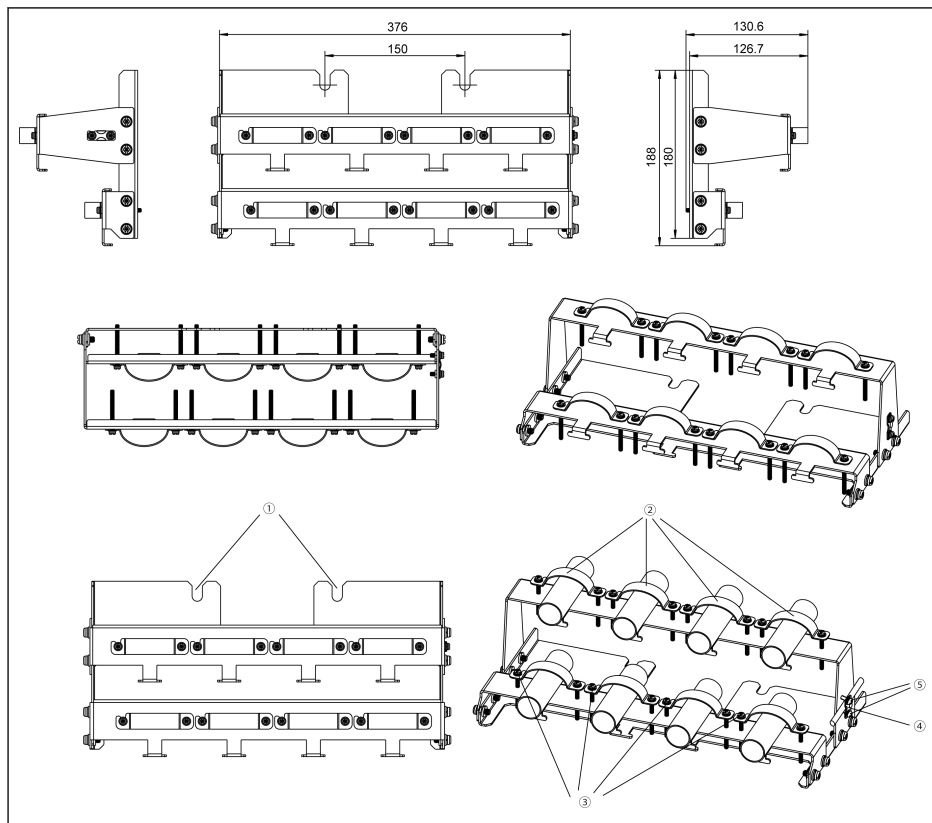


Fig. 15-44: Shielded cable connection with accessories for 132K...160K (FEAM03.2-005-NN-NNNN)

Connection steps

Step 1: Place holes ① of the connector on the two screw holes outside of symbols $\perp$ and tighten two screws.

Step 2: Insert the shielded cables through component ② of the connector with the shielding layer reliable contact with the metal.



When double cables are used, put double cables in one clamp.

Step 3: Tighten sixteen screws of the accessories.

Step 4 (Optional): Insert the STO shielded cable through component ④ of the connector with the shielding layer reliable contact with the metal.

Step 5 (Optional): Tighten two screws of the accessories.

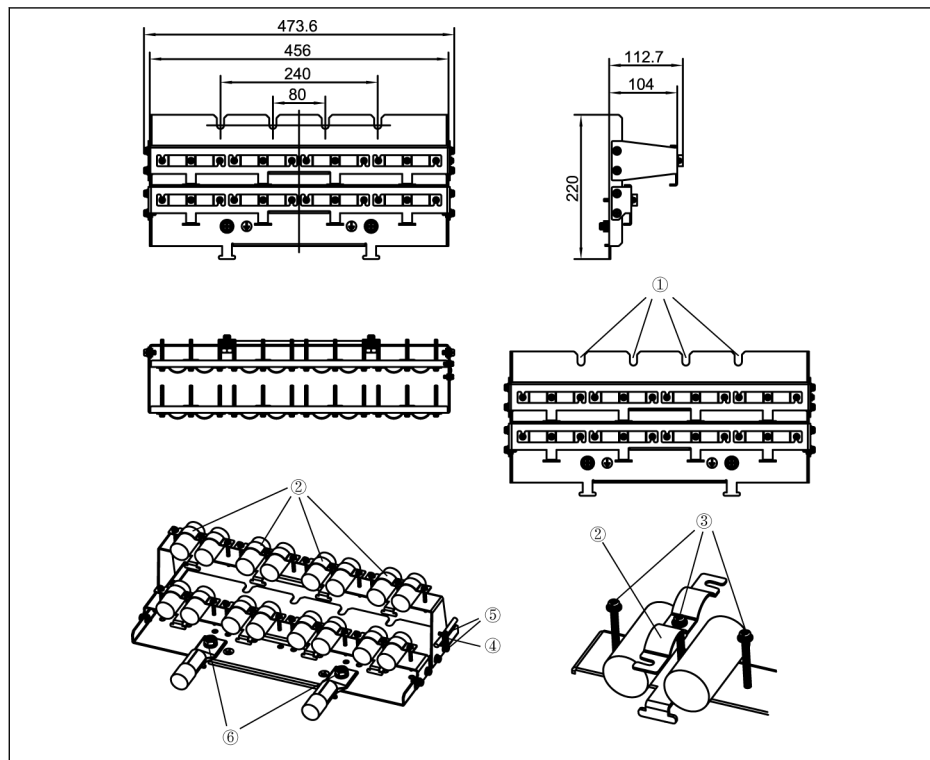


Fig. 15-45: Shielded cable connection with accessories for 185K...200K (FEAM03.2-006-NN-NNNN)

Connection steps

Step 1: Place holes ① of the connector on the four screw holes at the bottom of frequency converter and tighten four screws.

Step 2: Insert the shielded cables through component ② of the connector with the shielding layer reliable contact with the metal.

Step 3: Tighten twenty-four screws of the accessories.

Step 4 (Optional): Insert the STO shielded cable through component ④ of the connector with the shielding layer reliable contact with the metal.

Step 5 (Optional): Tighten two screws of the accessories.

Step 6: Connect the grounding cable to component ⑥.

16 Maintenance

16.1 Safety Instructions

**WARNING**

High electric voltage! Risk of death or severe bodily injury by electric shock!

- Only those trained and qualified to work with or on electric equipment are permitted to operate, maintain and repair this equipment.
 - Do not operate electric equipment at any time, even for brief measurements or tests, if the equipment grounding conductor is not permanently connected to the mounting points of the components provided for this purpose.
 - Before working with electric parts with voltage potentials higher than 50 V, the device must be disconnected from the mains voltage. Ensure that the mains voltage is not reconnected.
 - In the frequency converters, capacitors are used in the DC-bus as energy stores. Energy stores maintain their energy even when the supply voltage has been cut off. Frequency converters have been dimensioned in such a way that after the supply voltage was cut off, the voltage value falls below 50 V within a discharging time of a maximum of 10 minutes.
-

16.2 Daily Inspection

Please conduct daily inspection as indicated in the table below in order to prolong the life cycle of frequency converters.

Inspection category	Inspection item	Inspection criteria	Inspection result
Ambient conditions	Temperature	-10...55 °C (no frost or condensation)	
	Relative humidity	≤ 90 % (no condensation)	
	Dust, water and leakage	No heavy dust or sign of leakage (visual inspection)	
	Gas	No harmful, flammable gas or strange smell	
	Sound	No strange sound	
	Panel display	No error code	
	Others	No direct sunlight, no oil or corrosive substances around	
Converter	Status	Running stably, the outlet temperature is normal	
	Fan	No blockage or contamination	
	Terminal, screw	Wiring is correct, screw fastening without loosening	
Motor	Sound, vibration	No strange sound, no abnormal vibration	
	Temperature, color	No abnormal temperature and discoloration	

Tab. 16-1: Daily inspection list

16.3 Periodic Inspection

In addition to daily inspection, periodic inspection of frequency converters is also necessary. The inspection cycle should be less than 6 months. For operation details, please see table below:

Inspection category	Inspection item	Inspection criteria	Solution
Power supply	Voltage	Specified in nameplate	1P: 200...240 VAC (-10 % / +10 %) 3P: 380...480 VAC (-15 % / +10 %)
Power cable	Power cable	No color change or damage	Replace cable
Signal line	Signal line		Replace signal line
Terminal connection	Crimp terminal and cable / line	No loose connection	Tighten crimp and terminal screw
	Crimp terminal and terminal block		
Frequency converter	Visual appearance	No deformation	Contact with service
	Fan	No color change or deformation	Replace fan
		No blockage or contamination	Eliminate blockage and clean fan
	Cooling system (radiator, inlet, outlet)	No blockage or foreign matters	Eliminate blockage and clear foreign matters
	Printed circuit board	No dust or oil contamination No discoloration or deformation	Clean printed circuit board
	Electrolytic capacitor	No leakage, color change, crack or expansion with safety valve shut down	Replace capacitor (must be operated by service engineers)
Accessories	IGBT module	no dust, cotton or oil around the module Module without discoloration, bulge or crack	Clear foreign matters or replace module
	Connection	No loose connection	Tighten terminal screw
	Cable	No color change or damage	Replace cable

Tab. 16-2: Periodic inspection list

16.4 Expired replacement

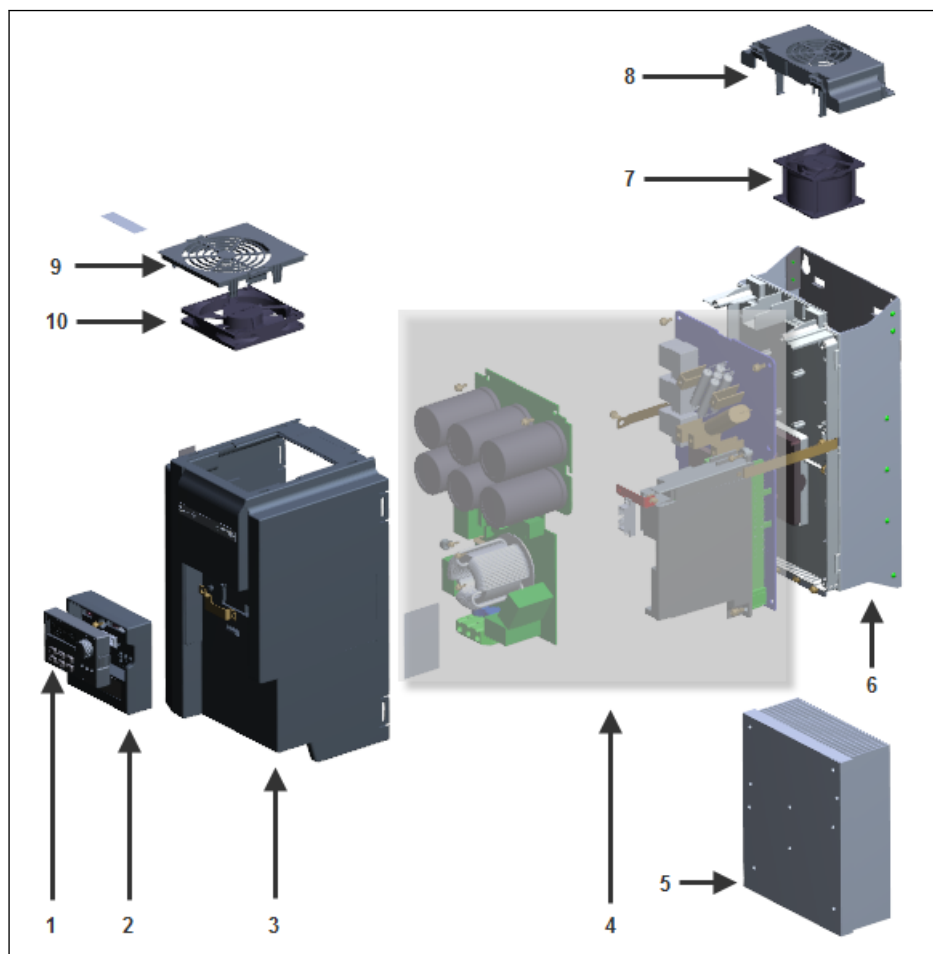
All electronic devices or equipment has certain service life, extended use will cause damage or change properties of devices, and even cause personal injury and property damage. Therefore, it is necessary to replace the device in time.

Item	Replacement criteria
Fan	Replace the cooling fan that running time exceed thirty thousand hours

Tab. 16-3: Device replacement

16.5 Removable Components Maintenance

16.5.1 Construction Overview



- 1 Operating panel
- 2 I/O interface adapter
- 3 Housing / Frame
- 4 Internal components
- 5 Heat sink / Radiator

- 6 Heat sink mounting plate
- 7 Back fan / Fan for heat sink
- 8 Back fan cover
- 9 Front fan cover
- 10 Front fan / Fan for internal components

Fig. 16-1: Construction overview

16.5.2 Disassembly of the Operating Panel

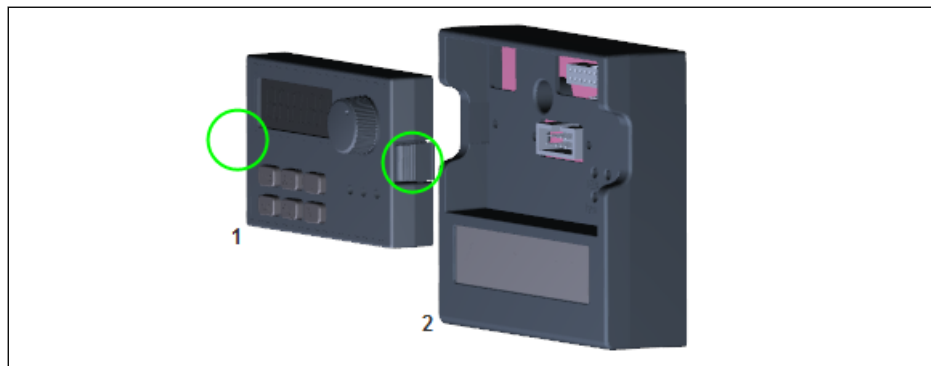


Fig. 16-2: Disassembly of operating panel

- Step 1: Press two buckles as circles indicating in the above figure
- Step 2: Hold component 1 and pull it out horizontally from component 2

16.5.3 Disassembly of Fans

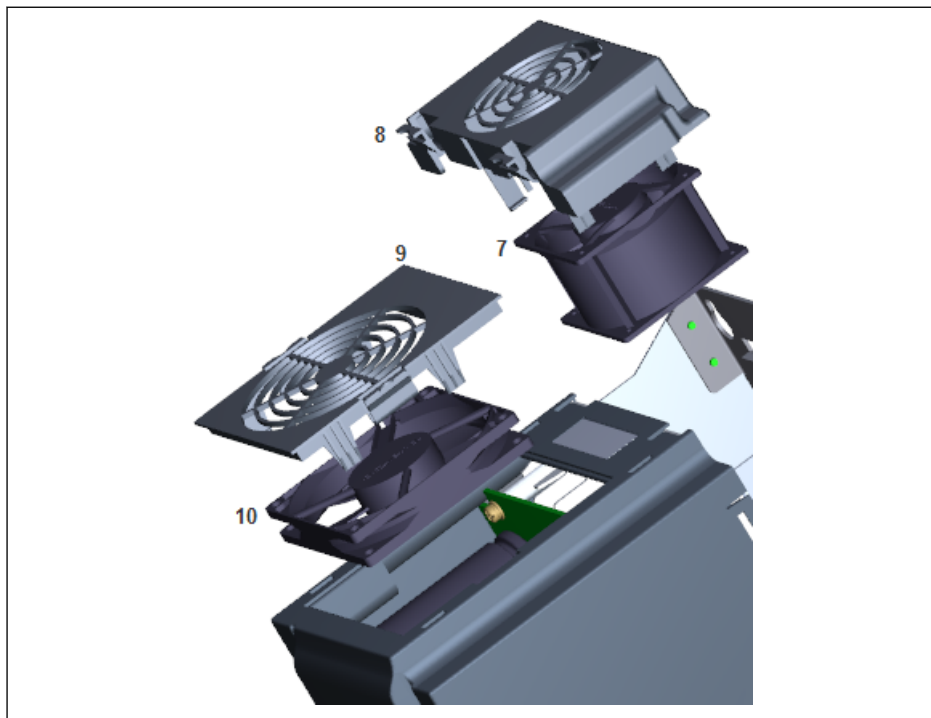


Fig. 16-3: Disassembly of fan

- Step 1: Press the buckle(s) on component 8 or 9 in the above figure
- Step 2: Hold component 8 or 9 and lift it up
- Step 3: Pull out component 7 or 10 slowly
- Step 4: Disconnect the cable connector of component 7 or 10

17 Service and support

Our worldwide service network provides an optimized and efficient support. Our experts offer you advice and assistance should you have any queries. You can contact us **24/7**.

Service Germany

Our technology-oriented Competence Center in Lohr, Germany, is responsible for all your service-related queries for electric drive and controls.

Contact the **Service Hotline** and **Service Helpdesk** under:

Phone:	+49 9352 40 5060
Fax:	+49 9352 18 4941
E-mail:	service.svc@boschrexroth.de
Internet:	http://www.boschrexroth.com

Additional information on service, repair (e.g. delivery addresses) and training can be found on our internet sites.

Service worldwide

Outside Germany, please contact your local service office first. For hotline numbers, refer to the sales office addresses on the internet.

Preparing information

To be able to help you more quickly and efficiently, please have the following information ready:

- Detailed description of malfunction and circumstances
- Type plate specifications of the affected products, in particular type codes and serial numbers
- Your contact data (phone and fax number as well as your e-mail address)

18 Environmental protection and disposal

18.1 Environmental protection

Production processes

The products are manufactured in energy- and resource-optimized production processes which allow re-using and recycling the resulting waste. We regularly try to replace pollutant-loaded raw materials and supplies by more environment-friendly alternatives.

No release of hazardous substances

Our products do not contain any hazardous substances which may be released in case of appropriate use. Normally, our products will not have any negative influences on the environment.

Significant components

Significant components of our products are:

Electronic devices

- Steel
- Aluminum
- Copper
- Plastics
- Electronic components

Motors

- Steel / Stainless steel
- Aluminum
- Copper
- Brass
- Magnetic materials
- Elektronic components

18.2 Disposal

Return of products

Our products can be returned to us for disposal free of charge. However, this requires that the products be free from oil, grease or other dirt.

Furthermore, the products returned for disposal may not contain any undue foreign material or foreign components.

Deliver the products "free domicile" to the following address:

Bosch Rexroth AG
Electric Drives and Controls
Buergermeister-Dr.-Nebel-Straße 2
97816 Lohr am Main, Germany

Packaging

Packaging materials consist of cardboard, wood and polystyrene. They can be recycled anywhere without any problem.

For ecological reasons, please refrain from returning the empty packages to us.

Batteries and accumulators

Batteries and accumulators can be labeled with this symbol.



The symbol indicating "separate collection" for all batteries and accumulators is the crossed-out wheeled bin.

End users in the EU are legally bound to return used batteries and accumulators. Outside the validity of the EU Directive 2006/66/EC, the particularly applicable regulations must be followed.

Batteries and accumulators can contain hazardous substances which can harm the environment or people's health when improperly stored or disposed of.

After use, the batteries or accumulators contained in Rexroth products must be properly disposed of according to the country-specific collection systems.

Recycling

Most of the products can be recycled due to their high content of metal. In order to recycle the metal in the best possible way, the products must be disassembled into individual assemblies.

Metals contained in electric and electronic assemblies can also be recycled by means of special separation processes.

Plastic parts of the products may contain flame retardants. These plastic parts are labeled according to EN ISO 1043. They have to be recycled separately or disposed of according to the applicable legal provisions.

19 Appendix

19.1 Appendix I: Abbreviations

- VFC x615: Frequency Converter VFC 3615 or VFC 5615
- FPCC: Operating panel
- FEAM: Panel mounting plate
- FRKS: Communication cable for control cabinet
- FEAE: Accessories, electric
 - Extension card module
 - I/O module
 - Communication module
 - Plug-in connector for control section
 - Brake chopper module
- FCAF: External mains EMC filter
- FCAR: External brake resistor

- FEAM: Shielding connector

19.2.1 Frequency Converter Type Coding

Fig. 19-1: Frequency converter type coding

19.2.2 Operating Panel Type Coding

Short text Column	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	2	
Example:	F	P	C	C	0	2	.	1	-	V	A	N	N	-	7	P	-	N	N	N
Product																				
FPCC..... = FPCC																				
Line																				
02..... = 02																				
Design																				
1..... = 1																				
Version																				
VFC..... = V																				
EFC..... = E																				
Degree of protection																				
IP 20..... = A																				
Customer design																				
None..... = NN																				
Display																				
7-segment display with potentiometer..... = 7P																				
Standard LCD display with potentiometer..... = LP																				
None (with dust cover)..... = NN																				
Other design																				
None..... = NNNN																				

Fig. 19-2: Operating panel type coding

19.2.3 Panel Mounting Plate Type Coding

Short text column	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Example:	F	E	A	M	0	2	.	1	-	V	A	-	N	N	-	N	N	N
Product																		
VFC / EFC accessories.....																		
Design																		
LED panel mounting plate.....																		
Series																		
1.....																		
Version																		
EFC (middle gray RAL 7046).....																		
VFC (RAL 9011).....																		
Degree of protection																		
IP 20.....																		
Customer design																		
None.....																		
Other design																		
None.....																		

Fig. 19-3: Panel mounting plate type coding

19.2.4 Communication Cable for Control Cabinet Type Coding

Short text	Column	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4
Example:		F	R	K	S	0	0	0	2	/	0	0	2	,	0

Product
Communication cable, for cabinet
.....FRKS

Cable number
2..... = 0002

Length
2 m..... = 002,0
3 m..... = 003,0
5 m..... = 005,0

Fig. 19-4: Communication cable for control cabinet type coding

19.2.5 Extension Accessories Type Coding

Short text	Column	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
Example:		F	E	A	E	0	2	.	1	-	V	A	-	N	N	N	N

Product
Accessory, electric..= FEAE

Variant
Extension card module..... = 02

Line
1..... = 1

Version
EFC..... = E
VFC..... = V

Degrees of protection
IP 20..... = A
IP 54..... = E

Other design
None..... = NNNN

Note:
1) Slot1 = xxNN (from bottom left slot)
Slot2 = NNxx (from bottom right slot)

		Slot 2									
		ET	PB	CN	I1	I2	I3	E1	E2	NN	
Slot 1	ET	-	-	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	
	PB	-	-	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	
	CN	-	-	-	0	0	0	0	0	0	
	I1	-	-	-	-	0	-	0	0	0	
	I2	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	0	0	
	I3	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	0	
	E1	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0	0	
E2	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0		
NN	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	0		

Fig. 19-5: Extension card module type coding

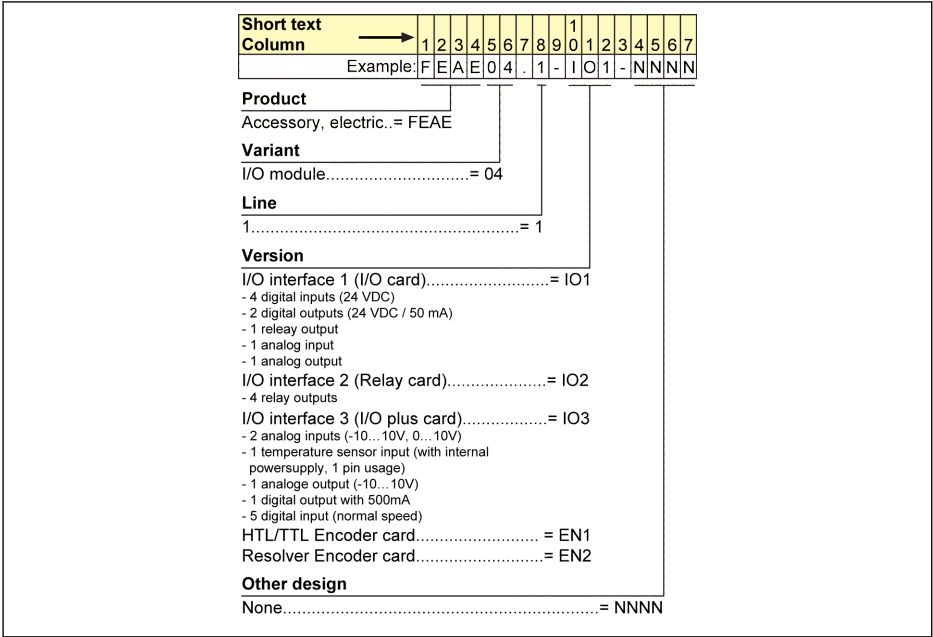


Fig. 19-6: I/O module type coding

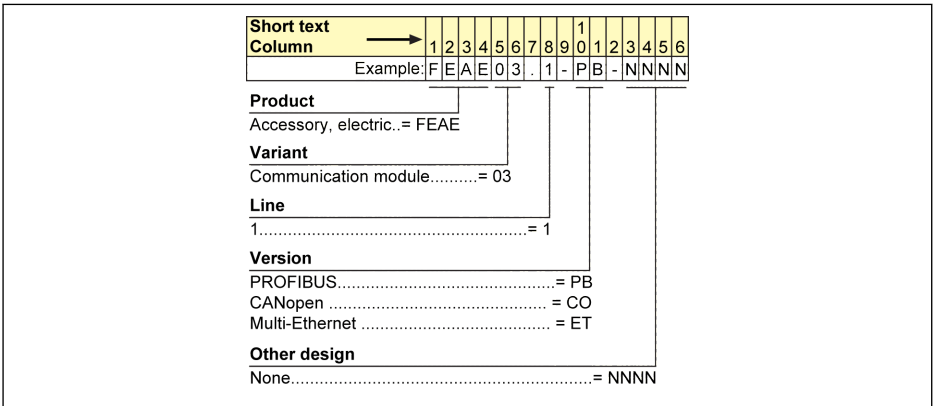


Fig. 19-7: Communication module type coding

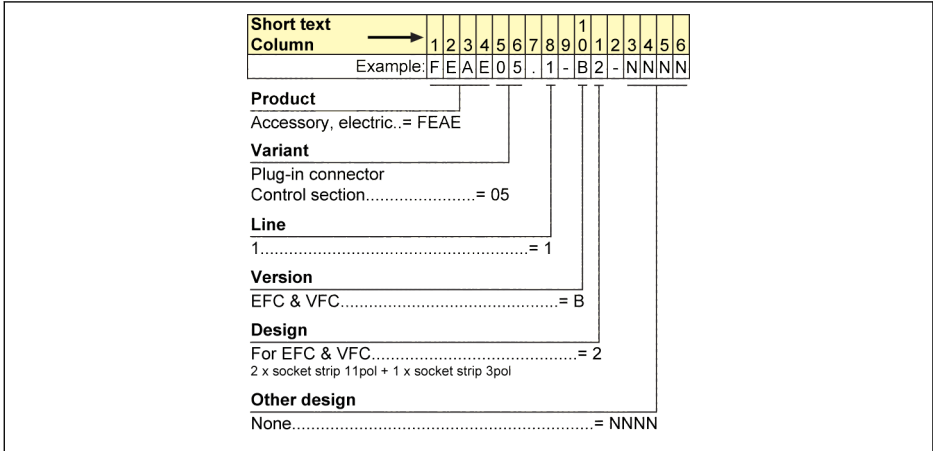


Fig. 19-8: Plug-in connector for control section type coding

19.2.6 External EMC Filter Type Coding

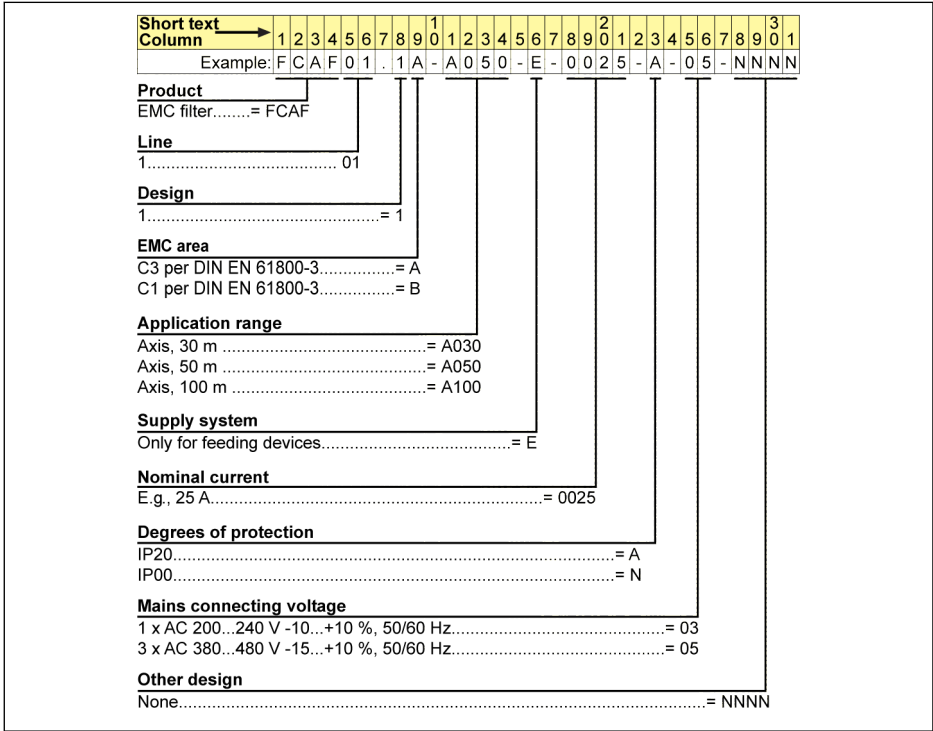


Fig. 19-9: External EMC filter type coding

19.2.7 External Brake Resistor Type Coding

Short text	1										2										3									
Column	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
Example:	F	C	A	R	0	1	.	1	W	1	K	5	6	-	N	0	7	0	R	0	-	A	-	0	5	-	N	N	N	N
Product																														
Brake resistor.....	= FCAR																													
Line																														
01.....	= 01																													
Design																														
1.....	= 1																													
Cooling																														
Air cooling.....	= W																													
Rated power																														
E.g., 1.56 kW.....	= 1K56																													
Additional option																														
None.....	= N																													
Resistance																														
E.g., 70 Ω.....	= 070R0																													
Degrees of protection																														
IP 20	= A																													
IP 40	= B																													
DC-bus nominal voltage																														
320 VDC.....	= 03																													
560 VDC.....	= 05																													
Other design																														
None.....	= NNNN																													

Fig. 19-10: External brake resistor type coding

19.2.8 Shielding Connector Type Coding

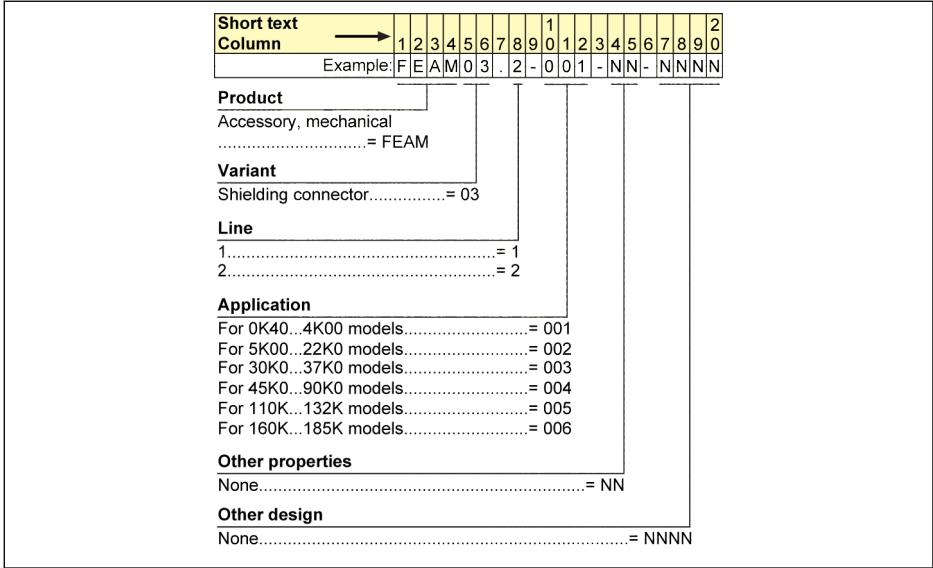


Fig. 19-11: Shielding connector type coding

19.3 Appendix III: Parameter List

19.3.1 Terminology and Abbreviation in Parameter List

- **Code:** Function / parameter code, written in bx.xx, Cx.xx, Ex.xx, Hx.xx, Ux.xx, dx.xx
- **Name:** Parameter name
- **Default:** Factory default
- **Min.:** Minimum setting step
- **Attri.:** Parameter attribute
 - **Run:** Parameter setting can be modified when the converter is in run or stop status.
 - **Stop:** Parameter setting can only be modified when the converter is in stop status.
 - **Read:** Parameter setting is read-only and cannot be modified.
- **DOM:** Depends on model
- **[bx.xx], [Cx.xx], [Ex.xx], [Hx.xx], [Ux.xx], [dx.xx]:** Function / parameter values

19.3.2 Group b: System Parameters

b0: Basic system parameters

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
b0.00	Access authority setting	0: Basic parameters 1: Standard parameters 2: Advanced parameters 3: Start-up parameters 4: Modified parameters	0	–	Run
b0.09	Parameter initialization setting	1: Base device and non fieldbus options 2: Fieldbus options 3: Base device, non fieldbus and fieldbus options	1	–	Stop
b0.10	Parameter initialization	0: Inactive 1: Restore to default settings 2: Clear error and warning record	0	–	Stop
b0.11	Parameter copy	0: Inactive 1: Backup parameters to panel 2: Restore parameters from panel	0	–	Stop
b0.12	Parameter set selection	0: Parameter set 1 active 1: Parameter set 2 active	0	–	Stop
b0.20	User password	0...65,535	0	1	Run
b0.21	Manufacturer password	0...65,535	0	1	Run
b0.22	Device frequency mode ^①	0: Low frequency mode 1: High frequency mode	1	–	Stop



^①: This parameter applies only to 2 KHz model.

19.3.3 Group C: Power Parameters

C0: Power control parameters

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
C0.00	Control mode (VFC 5615 only)	0: V/f control 1: Sensorless vector control 1: Sensor vector control (VFC 5615 only)	0	–	Stop
C0.01	Normal / Heavy duty setting ^①	0: ND (Normal duty) 1: HD (Heavy duty)	1	–	Stop
C0.05	Carrier frequency	0K40...30K0 : 1...15 kHz 37K0...110K : 1...12 kHz 132K...400K: 1...6kHz	0K40...110K : 4k 132K...400K : 2k	1	Run
C0.06	Carrier frequency automatic adjustment	0: Inactive 1: Active 2: Fixed carrier frequency	1	–	Stop
C0.07	PWM mode	0: SVPWM 1: SVPWM with over-modulation 2: DPWM 3: DPWM with over-modulation	DOM	–	Run
C0.08	DPWM switchover frequency upper limit	8.00...400.00 Hz	12.00	0.01	Run
C0.10	Automatic voltage stabilization	0: Always active 1: Always inactive 2: Inactive only during deceleration	0	1	Stop
C0.11	Automatic voltage stabilization reference voltage	1P 200 VAC: 180...264 V	220	1	Stop
		3P 380 VAC: 323...528 V	380		

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
C0.15	Brake chopper start voltage ^②	1P 200 VAC: 300...390 V	385	1	Stop
		3P 380 VAC: 600...785 V	770		
C0.16	Brake chopper duty cycle ^②	1...100 %	100	1	Stop
C0.23	Overvoltage suppression adjustment gain	0.00...10.00	1.00	0.01	Run
C0.24	Stall overvoltage hysteresis voltage	0...100 V	1P 200 VAC: 30	1	Stop
			3P 380 VAC: 50		
C0.25	Overvoltage prevention mode	0...4	3	–	Stop
C0.26	Stall overvoltage prevention level	1P 200 VAC: 300...390 V	385	1	Stop
		3P 380 VAC: 600...785 V	770		
C0.27	Stall overcurrent prevention level ^③	20.0 %...[C2.42]	150.0	0.1	Stop
C0.28	Phase loss protection mode	0...3	3	–	Run
C0.29	Converter overload pre-warning level	20.0...200.0 %	110.0	0.1	Stop
C0.30	Converter overload pre-warning delay	0.0...20.0 s	2.0	0.1	Stop
C0.40	Power loss ride-through mode	0: Inactive 1: Output disabled 2: Regain kinetic energy 3: Regain kinetic energy, decelerate to stop 4: Regain kinetic energy, decelerate no stop	0	–	Stop
C0.41	Power loss ride-through recovery delay	0.10...30.00 s	0.50	0.01	Stop
C0.42	Power loss ride-through action voltage	1P 200 VAC: 216...366 V	240	1	Stop
		3P 380 VAC: 406...739 V	440		

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
C0.43	Power loss ride-through recovery voltage	1P 200 VAC: 223...373 V	250	1	Stop
		3P 380 VAC: 413...746 V	450		
C0.44	Power loss ride-through deceleration to stop time	0.1...6,000.0 s	5.0	0.1	Stop
C0.45	Power loss ride-through control voltage	1P 200VAC: 226...373 V	250	1	Stop
		3P 400VAC: 416...746 V	450		
C0.46	Power loss ride-through Limit voltage	1P 200VAC: 233...373 V	280	1	Stop
		3P 400VAC: 423...746 V	500		
C0.47	Power loss ride-through switch frequency	0.00...400.00 Hz	5.00	0.01	Stop
C0.48	Power loss ride-through frequency deceleration rate	0...100 Hz/s	10	1	Stop
C0.50	Fan control	0: Automatically controlled 1: Always on 2: On when converter run	0	–	Run
C0.51	Fan total running time	0...65,535 h	0	1	Read
C0.52	Fan maintenance time	0...65,535 h (0: Inactive)	0	1	Stop
C0.53	Fan total running time reset	0: Inactive 1: Active Reset to '0' after action is executed	0	–	Run

①: this parameter is only available with 3P 380 VAC models of 5K50 and above.

②: the parameters are only available with models of 30K0 and below.

③: percentage of frequency converter rated current.

Setting range of C0.25:

0: Both disabled

1: Stall overvoltage protection enabled, resistor braking disabled

- 2: Stall overvoltage protection disabled, resistor braking enabled
- 3: Stall overvoltage protection enabled, resistor braking enabled
- 4: Reciprocating load mode

Setting range of C0.28:

- 0: Both input and output phase loss protection active
- 1: Only input phase loss protection active
- 2: Only output phase loss protection active
- 3: Both input and output phase loss protection inactive

C1: Motor and system parameters

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
C1.00	Motor type	0: Asynchronous motor 1: Synchronous motor (only for VFC5615)	0	–	Stop
C1.01	Motor parameter tuning	0: Inactive 1: Static auto-tuning 2: Rotational auto-tuning ^①	0	–	Stop
C1.02	Expert mode	0: Standard mode 1: Expert mode	0	–	Stop
C1.03	Synchronous machine type	0 : SPM 1 : IPM	0	–	Stop
C1.05	Motor rated power	0.1...1,000.0 kW	DOM	0.1	Stop
C1.06	Motor rated voltage	0...480 V	DOM	1	Stop
C1.07	Motor rated current	0.01...655.00 A (0.4...45 kW)	DOM	0.01	Stop
		0.1...6550.0 A (55 kW and above)		0.1	
C1.08	Motor rated frequency	5.00...400.00 Hz	50.00	0.01	Stop
C1.09	Motor rated speed	1...60,000 rpm	DOM	1	Stop
C1.10	Motor rated power factor	0.00...0.99 ^②	0.00	0.01	Stop
C1.11	Motor poles ^①	2...256	4	1	Stop
C1.12	Motor rated slip frequency	0.00...60.00 Hz	DOM	0.01	Stop
C1.13	Motor inertia mantissa ^①	1...5,000	DOM	1	Stop
C1.14	Motor inertia exponent ^①	0...7	DOM	1	Stop
C1.15	Torque constant	0.01...200.00 mH	DOM	0.01	Stop
C1.16	Back emf voltage constant	0.0...6550.0 V/1000 min ⁻¹	0.0	0.1	Read
C1.17	Motor rated torque	0.0...6553.5 N.m	DOM	0.1	Read
C1.20	Motor no-load current	0.00...[C1.07] A (0.4...45 kW)	DOM	0.01	Stop
		0.0...[C1.07] A (55 kW and above)		0.1	
C1.21	Stator resistance	0.00...50.00 Ω (0.4...45 kW)	DOM	0.01	Stop
		0.000...50.000 Ω (55 kW and above)		0.001	

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
C1.22	Rotor resistance	0.00...50.00 Ω (0.4...45 kW)	DOM	0.01	Stop
		0.000...50.000 Ω (90 kW and above)		0.001	
C1.23	Leakage inductance	0.00...600.00 mH	DOM	0.01	Stop
C1.24	Mutual inductance	0.0...6,000.0 mH	DOM	0.1	Stop
C1.25	Rotor leakage inductance	0.00...600.00	DOM	0.01	Stop
C1.26	d Axial inductance	0.00...600.00	机型	0.01	Stop
C1.27	q Axial inductance	0.00...600.00	机型	0.01	Stop
C1.69	Motor thermal model protection setting	0: Inactive 1: Reserve 2: Current monitoring active	0	–	Stop
C1.70	Motor overload pre-warning level	100.0...250.0 %	100.0	0.1	Run
C1.71	Motor overload pre-warning delay	0.0...20.0 s	2.0	0.1	Run
C1.72	Motor thermal sensor type	0: KTY84/130; 1: PTC/ SNM-150; 2: PT100 3: PT1000; 4: TDK G1551_8320 (NTC)	0	–	Stop
C1.73	Motor thermal sensor protection level	0.0...10.0 V	2.0	0.1	Stop
C1.74	Motor thermal model protection time constant	0.0...400.0 min	DOM	0.1	Stop
C1.75	Low speed derating frequency	0.10...300.00 Hz	25.00	0.01	Run
C1.76	Zero speed load	25.0...100.0 %	25.0	0.1	Run
C1.77	Motor Temperature Sensor Matching Resistor	1...6000 Ω	150	1	Stop
C1.78	Motor temperature protection threshold	50...170°C	150	1	Run



Ⓢ: **ONLY** for VFC5615, and motor load must be decoupled before rotational auto-tuning.

Ⓢ: 0.00: Automatically identified; 0.01...0.99: Power factor setting.

C2: V/f control parameters

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
C2.00	V/f curve mode	0: Linear 1: Square 2: User-defined 3: V/f separation	0	–	Stop
C2.01	V/f frequency 1	0.00...[C2.03] Hz	0.00	0.01	Stop
C2.02	V/f voltage 1 ^①	0.0...120.0 %	0.0	0.1	Stop
C2.03	V/f frequency 2	[C2.01]...[C2.05] Hz	0.00	0.01	Stop
C2.04	V/f voltage 2 ^①	0.0...120.0 %	0.0	0.1	Stop
C2.05	V/f frequency 3	[C2.03]...[E0.08] Hz	50.00	0.01	Stop
C2.06	V/f voltage 3 ^①	0.0...120.0 %	100.0	0.1	Stop
C2.07	Slip compensation factor	0...200 %	0	1	Run
C2.08	V/f separation output voltage source selection	0: Panel potentiometer 1: Panel button setting 2: AI1 analog input 10: X5 pulse input 20: Communication (Modbus 0x7F0B/Fieldbus extension card H0.50) 22: Digital setting 23: Voltage PID control	22	–	Stop
C2.09	V/f separation output voltage digital setting	0.00...100.00 %	0.00	0.01	Run
C2.10	V/f separation output voltage acceleration time	0.0...6,000.0 s	0.0	0.1	Run
C2.11	V/f separation output voltage deceleration time	0.0...6,000.0 s	0.0	0.1	Run
C2.12	V/f separation stop mode selection	0: Voltage and frequency decelerates independently 1: Voltage decelerates to zero, then frequency decelerates to zero	0	–	Run
C2.13	V/f separation boost factor	0.00...100.00	0.00	0.01	Run
C2.20	0 Hz output mode	0: No output 1: Standard	1	1	Stop

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
C2.21	Torque boost setting	0.0 %: Automatic boost 0.1...20.0 %: Manual boost	DOM	0.1	Run
C2.22	Automatic torque boost factor	0...320 %	50	1	Run
C2.23	Heavy load stabilization setting	0: Inactive 1: Active	1	–	Run
C2.24	Light load oscillation damping factor	0...5,000 %	0.4~110kW: 300	1	Run
			132kW and above: 100		
C2.25	Light load oscillation damping filter factor	10...2,000 %	0.4~110kW: 30	1	Run
			132kW and above: 50		
C2.40	Current limitation mode	0: Always inactive 1: Inactive at constant speed 2: Active at constant speed	2	–	Stop
C2.42	Current limitation level ^②	[C0.27]...250 %	150	1	Stop
C2.43	Current limitation proportional gain	0.000...10.000	DOM	0.001	Stop
C2.44	Current limitation integral time	0.001...10.000	DOM	0.001	Stop

①: percentage of motor rated voltage [C1.06].

②: percentage of frequency converter rated current.

C3: Vector control parameters

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
C3.00	Speed loop proportional gain 1	0.00...655.35	DOM	0.01	Run
C3.01	Speed loop integral time 1	0.01...655.35 ms	DOM	0.01	Run
C3.02	Speed loop proportional gain 2	0.00...655.35	DOM	–	Run
C3.03	Speed loop integral time 2	0.00...655.35 ms	DOM	–	Run
C3.04	Speed observer harmonics damping factor	0.10...20.00	0.66	0.01	Stop
C3.05	Current loop proportional gain	0.1...1,000.0	DOM	0.1	Run
C3.06	Current loop integral time	0.01...655.35 ms	DOM	0.01	Run
C3.10	Speed loop switching frequency 1	0.00...[C3.11]	4.00	0.01	Stop
C3.11	Speed loop switching frequency 2	[C3.10]...[C1.08]	6.00	0.01	Stop
C3.12	Speed observer modFe	0: mode 1 1: mode 2	0	-	Stop
C3.13	Speed observer mode 2 gain	1...10	1	1	Run
C3.15	Weak magnetic region excitation current Id filtering	1 ... 65535	6553	1	Run
C3.16	Weak magnetic area bus voltage Ddc utilization rate	1 ... 1024	973	1	Run
C3.20	Low speed torque limitation	1...200 %	100	1	Stop
C3.21	Encoder speed filter time	0...100.0	2.0	0.1	Stop
C3.22	Encoder commutation offset	0.0...360.0	360.0	0.1	Stop
C3.25	Speed monitor timeout	0.0...6553.5 s	5.0	0.1	Stop
C3.26	Speed monitor max. speed difference	0.00...655.35 Hz	10.00	0.01	Stop
C3.30	Maximum fieldweakening current factor for SM	1...95 %	75	1	Run
C3.38	Forward frequency limitation at torque control mode	0.00...[E0.09]	50.00	0.01	Run
C3.39	Reverse frequency limitation at torque control mode	0.00...[E0.09]	50.00	0.01	Run

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
C3.40	Torque control mode	0: Activated by digital inputs 1: Always active 2: Communication (Bit 8 of Modbus 0x7F00) (Bit 9 of extension card H0.00)	0	–	Stop
C3.41	Torque reference channel	0: AI1 analog input 1: AI2 analog input 2: Panel potentiometer 3: EAI1 analog input 4: Pulse input via DI5 5: Parameter setting C3.46 6: Communication (Modbus 0x7F02/Fieldbus extension card H0.12) 7: EAI2 analog input	0	–	Stop
C3.42	Torque reference minimum value ^①	0.0 %...[C3.43]	0.0	0.1	Run
C3.43	Torque reference maximum value ^①	[C3.42]...200.0 %	150.0	0.1	Run
C3.44	Torque positive limit ^①	0.0...200.0 %	150.0	0.1	Run
C3.45	Torque negative limit ^①	0.0...200.0 %	150.0	0.1	Run
C3.46	Digital torque reference setting	0.0...200.0	150.0	0.1	Run

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
C3.47	Torque limitation reference selection at speed control mode	0: Parameter C3.44 and C3.45 1: AI1 (0.0...200.0 %) 2: AI2 (0.0...200.0 %) 3: EAI1 analog input 4: Communication (Torque FWD limitation register: Modbus 0x7F03/Fieldbus extension card H0.14) (Torque REV limitation register: Modbus 0x7F04/Fieldbus extension card H0.15) 5: EAI2 analog input	0	-	Stop
C3.48	Speed limitation reference selection at torque control mode	0: Parameter C3.38 and C3.39 1: AI1 2: AI2 3: EAI1 analog input 4: Communication (Speed limitation register: Modbus 0x7F05/Fieldbus extension card H0.16) 5: EAI2 analog input	0	-	Stop
C3.49	Torque command ramp	0.0...5.0 s	0.0	0.1	Stop
C3.50	Initial angle detection current	50...150 % ^②	80	1	Stop
C3.51	Initial angle detection mode	0: No detection 1: Detection when first power on 2: Detection at every running	2	-	Stop
C3.52	SVC regulation area lower frequency	0.00...600.00 Hz	DOM	0.01	Stop
C3.53	SVC regulation area upper frequency	0.00...600.00 Hz	DOM	0.01	Stop

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
C3.54	SVC dampfactor enhance upper frequency	DOM	DOM	0.01	Stop
C3.55	SVC dampfactor enhance coefficient	1...20	1	1	Stop

①: percentage of motor rated torque.

②: percentage of motor rated current.



All parameters in Group C3 are **ONLY** for VFC5615.

19.3.4 Group E: Function Control Parameters

E0: Set point and control parameters

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
E0.00	First frequency setting source	0...21	0	–	Stop
E0.01	First run command source	0...2	0	–	Stop
E0.02	Second frequency setting source	0...21	2	–	Stop
E0.03	Second run command source	0...2	1	–	Stop
E0.04	Frequency setting source combination	0...6	0	–	Stop
E0.06	Digital setting frequency saving mode	0...4	0	–	Stop
E0.07	Digital setting frequency	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	50.00	0.01	Run
E0.08	Maximum output frequency	50.00...400.00 Hz	50.00	0.01	Stop
E0.09	Output frequency high limit	[E0.10]...[E0.08] Hz	50.00	0.01	Run
E0.10	Output frequency low limit	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	0.01	Run
E0.11	Reverse running frequency	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	0.01	Stop
E0.15	Low speed running setting	0: Run with 0.00 Hz 1: Run with low limit frequency	0	–	Stop
E0.16	Low speed frequency hysteresis	0.00...[E0.10] Hz	0.00	0.01	Stop
E0.17	Direction control	0: Forward / Reverse 1: Forward only 2: Reverse only 3: Swap default direction	0	–	Stop
E0.18	Direction change dead time	0.0...60.0 s	1.0	0.1	Stop
E0.25	Acceleration / deceleration curve mode	0: Linear mode 1: S-curve	0	–	Stop
E0.26	Acceleration time	0.1...6,000.0 s	DOM	0.1	Run
E0.27	Deceleration time	0.1...6,000.0 s	DOM	0.1	Run
E0.28	S-curve starting phase factor	0.0...40.0 %	20.0	0.1	Stop
E0.29	S-curve stopping phase factor	0.0...40.0 %	20.0	0.1	Stop
E0.35	Start mode	0: Start directly 1: DC-braking before start 2: Start with speed tracing 3: Automatic start / stop according to setting frequency	0	–	Stop

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
E0.36	Start frequency	0.00...50.00 Hz	0.05	0.01	Stop
E0.37	Start frequency holding time	0.0...20.0 s	0.0	0.1	Stop
E0.38	Start DC-braking time	0.0...20.0 s (0.0: Inactive)	0.0	0.1	Stop
E0.39	Start DC-braking current ^①	0.0...150.0 %	0.0	0.1	Stop
E0.41	Automatic start / stop frequency threshold	0.01...[E0.09] Hz	16.00	0.01	Stop
E0.42	Speed tracing voltage recovery ratio	0...20	10	1	Stop
E0.43	Speed tracing deceleration time	0.5...20.0 s	2.0	0.1	Stop
E0.45	Power loss restart mode	0: Inactive 1: Active for panel control 2: Active for digital input control	0	–	Stop
E0.46	Power loss restart delay	0.0...10.0 s	1.0	0.1	Stop
E0.47	Run command priority	0: High priority 1: Low priority	0	–	Stop
E0.50	Stop mode	0: Decelerating stop 1: Freewheeling stop 1 2: Freewheeling stop 2	0	–	Stop
E0.51	Stop DC-braking waiting time	0.00...100.00s	0.00	0.01	Stop
E0.52	Stop DC-braking initial frequency	0.00...50.00 Hz	0.00	0.01	Stop
E0.53	Stop DC-braking time	0.0...20.0 s (0.0: Inactive)	0.0	0.1	Stop
E0.54	Stop DC-braking current ^①	0.0...150.0 %	0.0	0.1	Stop
E0.55	Overexcitation braking factor	1.00...2.00	1.10	0.01	Run
E0.56	Emergency stop action	0: Freewheeling stop 1: Decelerating stop	0	–	Stop
E0.57	Emergency stop deceleration time	0.1...6,000.0 s	5.0	0.1	Run
E0.60	Jog frequency	0.00...[E0.08] Hz	5.00	0.01	Run
E0.61	Jog acceleration time	0.1...6,000.0 s	5.0	0.1	Run
E0.62	Jog deceleration time	0.1...6,000.0 s	5.0	0.1	Run
E0.70	Skip frequency 1	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	0.01	Stop
E0.71	Skip frequency 2	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	0.01	Stop
E0.72	Skip frequency 3	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	0.01	Stop

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
E0.73	Skip frequency range	0.00...30.00 Hz	0.00	0.01	Stop
E0.74	Skip window acceleration factor	1...100	1	1	Stop

①: percentage of frequency converter rated current.

Setting range of E0.00, E0.02:

0: Panel potentiometer

1: Panel button setting

2: AI1 analog input

3: AI2 analog input

4: EAI1 analog input

5: EAI2 analog input

10: X5 pulse input

11: Digital input Up / Down command

20: Communication

21: Multi-speed settings

Setting range of E0.01, E0.03:

0: Panel

1: Multi-function digital input

2: Communication

Setting range of E0.04:

0: No combination

1: First frequency setting + second frequency setting

2: First frequency setting - second frequency setting

3: First frequency setting x second frequency setting

4: Bigger one of 2 sources

5: Smaller one of 2 sources

6: Valid which channel is non-zero

Setting range of E0.06:

0: Not saved when powered off or stopped

1: Not saved when powered off; saved when stopped

2: Saved when powered off; not saved when stopped

3: Saved when powered off or stopped

4: Not saved when powered off; memorized when stopped

E1: Input terminal parameters

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
E1.00	X1 input	0...52	35	–	Stop
E1.01	X2 input		36	–	Stop
E1.02	X3 input		0	–	Stop
E1.03	X4 input		0	–	Stop
E1.04	X5 input	0...52	0	–	Stop
E1.15	2-wire/3-wire control mode	0...4	0	–	Stop
E1.16	Digital input Up / Down change rate	0.10...100.00 Hz/s	1.00	0.01	Run
E1.17	Digital input Up / Down initial frequency	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	0.01	Run
E1.25	Pulse input maximum frequency	0.0...50.0 kHz	50.0	0.1	Run
E1.26	Pulse input filter time	0.000...2.000 s	0.100	0.001	Run
E1.35	AI1 input mode	0: 0...20 mA	2	–	Run
E1.40	AI2 input mode	1: 4...20 mA 2: 0...10 V 3: 0...5 V 4: 2...10 V	1	–	Run
E1.38	AI1 gain	0.00...10.00	1.00	0.01	Run
E1.43	AI2 gain	0.00...10.00	1.00	0.01	Run
E1.60	Motor temperature sensor channel	0: Inactive 1: AI1 analog input 2: AI2 analog input 3: EAI1 analog input 4: EAI2 analog input 5: TSI input (only for IO plus card)	0	–	Stop
E1.61	Broken wire protection	0: Inactive 1: Warning 2: Error	0	–	Stop
E1.62	Broken threshold for motor temperature sensor	0.0...10.0	2.0	0.1	Stop
E1.68	Analog input curve setting	0...7	0	–	Run
E1.69	Analog input filter time	0.000...2.000 s	0.100	0.001	Run
E1.70	Input curve 1 minimum	0.0 %...[E1.72]	0.0	0.1	Run
E1.71	Input curve 1 minimum frequency	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	0.01	Run

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
E1.72	Input curve 1 maximum	[E1.70]...100.0 %	100.0	0.1	Run
E1.73	Input curve 1 maximum frequency	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	50.00	0.01	Run
E1.75	Input curve 2 minimum	0.0 %...[E1.77]	0.0	0.1	Run
E1.76	Input curve 2 minimum frequency	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	0.01	Run
E1.77	Input curve 2 maximum	[E1.75]...100.0 %	100.0	0.1	Run
E1.78	Input curve 2 maximum frequency	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	50.00	0.01	Run

Setting range of E1.00...E1.04:

0: Inactive

1: Multi-speed control input 1

2: Multi-speed control input 2

3: Multi-speed control input 3

4: Multi-speed control input 4

10: Acceleration / deceleration time 1 activation

11: Acceleration / deceleration time 2 activation

12: Acceleration / deceleration time 3 activation

15: Freewheeling stop activation

16: Stop DC-braking activation

20: Frequency Up command

21: Frequency Down command

22: Up / Down command reset

23: Torque / speed control switch

25: 3-wire control

26: Simple PLC stop

27: Simple PLC pause

28: Simple PLC deactivation

30: Second frequency setting source activation

31: Second run command source activation

32: Error signal N.O. contact input

33: Error signal N.C. contact input

34: Error reset

35: Forward running (FWD)

36: Reverse running (REV)

37: Forward jog

38: Reverse jog

- 39: Counter input
- 40: Counter reset
- 41: PID deactivation
- 46: User parameter set selection
- 47: Pulse input mode activation
- 48: Motor overheating error N.O. contact input
- 49: Motor overheating error N.C. contact input
- 50: Motor overheating warning N.O. contact input
- 51: Motor overheating warning N.C. contact input
- 52: Jog with Run Command Direction

Setting range of E1.15:

- 0: 2-wire forward / stop, reverse / stop
- 1: 2-wire forward / reverse, run / stop
- 2: 3-wire control mode 1
- 3: 3-wire control mode 2
- 4: 1-wire control

Setting range of E1.68:

- 0: AI1: curve1, AI2: curve1, pulse input: curve1
- 1: AI1: curve2, AI2: curve1, pulse input: curve1
- 2: AI1: curve1, AI2: curve2, pulse input: curve1
- 3: AI1: curve2, AI2: curve2, pulse input: curve1
- 4: AI1: curve1, AI2: curve1, pulse input: curve2
- 5: AI1: curve2, AI2: curve1, pulse input: curve2
- 6: AI1: curve1, AI2: curve2, pulse input: curve2
- 7: AI1: curve2, AI2: curve2, pulse input: curve2

E2: Output terminal parameters

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
E2.01	DO1 output setting	0...25	1	–	Stop
E2.02	DO1 pulse output setting	0: Converter output frequency 1: Converter output voltage 2: Converter output current 3: Setting torque 4: Output torque	0	–	Stop
E2.03	Pulse output maximum frequency	0.1...32.0 kHz	32.0	0.1	Run
E2.15	Relay 1 output selection	0...25	1	–	Stop
E2.20	DO1/relay1 output values from extension card fieldbus communication	Bit0: 0 (open collector is opened); 1(open collector is closed) Bit8: 0 (Tb_Ta is opened); 1(Tb_Ta is closed)	0	–	Run
E2.25	AO1 output mode	0: 0...10 V 1: 0...20 mA 3: 2...10 V 4: 4...20 mA	0	–	Run
E2.26	AO1 output setting	0: Output frequency 1: Setting frequency 2: Output current 4: Output voltage 5: Output power 6: AI1 analog input 7: AI2 analog input 8: EAI1 analog input 9: EAI2 analog input 11: Motor temperature sensor power supply 12: Parameter setting from communication ^② 13: Setting torque 14: Output torque	0	–	Run
E2.27	AO1 gain	0.00...10.00	1.00	0.01	Run

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
E2.28	AO1 value in percentage from extension card fieldbus communication	0.00...100.00 %	0.00	0.01	Run
E2.40	Rated voltage	1P 200...240 VAC	220	1	Stop
		3P 380...480 VAC	380		
E2.50	Output curve 1 minimum	0.0 %...[E2.52]	0.0	0.1	Run
E2.51	Output curve 1 minimum value	0.00...100.00 %	0.00	0.01	Run
E2.52	Output curve 1 maximum	[E2.50]...100.0 %	100.0	0.1	Run
E2.53	Output curve 1 maximum value	0.00...100.00 %	100.00	0.01	Run
E2.70	Frequency detection width	0.00...400.00 Hz	2.50	0.01	Run
E2.71	Frequency detection level FDT1	0.01...400.00 Hz	50.00	0.01	Run
E2.72	Frequency detection level FDT1 width	0.01...[E2.71] Hz	1.00	0.01	Run
E2.73	Frequency detection level FDT2	0.01...400.00 Hz	25.00	0.01	Run
E2.74	Frequency detection level FDT2 width	0.01...[E2.73] Hz	1.00	0.01	Run
E2.80	Counter middle value	0...[E2.81]	0	1	Run
E2.81	Counter target value	[E2.80]...9,999	0	1	Run

Setting range of E2.01, E2.15:

- 0: Converter ready
- 1: Converter running
- 2: Converter DC-braking
- 3: Converter running at zero speed
- 4: Speed arrival
- 5: Frequency level detection signal (FDT1)
- 6: Frequency level detection signal (FDT2)
- 7: Simple PLC stage complete
- 8: Simple PLC cycle complete
- 10: Converter undervoltage
- 11: Converter overload pre-warning
- 12: Motor overload pre-warning
- 13: Converter stop by external error
- 14: Converter error
- 15: Converter OK
- 16: Counter target value arrival
- 17: Counter middle value arrival

- 18: PID reference engineering value arrival
 - 19: Pulse output mode enable (only available with DO1 output selection)
 - 20: Torque control mode
 - 21: Parameter setting from communication^①
 - 25: Converter error or warning
 - 26 : Frequency inverter forward operation
 - 27 : Frequency inverter reverse operation
-



^①:

- For parameter E2.01, the relationship between the output of '21: Parameter setting from communication' and the communication mode is as follow:
 - For modbus mode, when bit0 of register 0x7F08 is '0', open collector is opened; when bit0 is '1', open collector is closed.
 - For other fieldbus mode, the output is defined by bit0 of parameter E2.20.
- For parameter E2.15, the relationship between the output of '21: Parameter setting from communication' and the communication mode is as follow:
 - For modbus mode, when bit8 of register 0x7F08 is '0', Tb_Ta is opened; when bit8 is '1', Tb_Ta is closed.
 - For other fieldbus mode, the output is defined by bit8 of parameter E2.20.

^②:

- For parameter E2.26, the relationship between the output of '12: Parameter setting from communication' and the communication mode is as follow:
 - For modbus mode, the output is defined by register 0x7F06. The value range of register is 0.00 %...100.00 % (It means percentage of maximum analog output value).
 - For other fieldbus mode, the output is defined by parameter E2.28.
-

E3: Multi-speed and simple PLC parameters

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
E3.00	Simple PLC running mode	0: Inactive 1: Stop after selected cycle 2: Continuously cycling 3: Run last stage after selected cycle 4: Continuous cycling without decelerating to 0.00 Hz	0	–	Stop
E3.01	Simple PLC time multiplier	1...60	1	1	Stop
E3.02	Simple PLC cycle number	1...1,000	1	1	Stop
E3.10	Acceleration time 2	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	0.1	Run
E3.11	Deceleration time 2	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	0.1	Run
E3.12	Acceleration time 3	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	0.1	Run
E3.13	Deceleration time 3	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	0.1	Run
E3.14	Acceleration time 4	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	0.1	Run
E3.15	Deceleration time 4	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	0.1	Run
E3.16	Acceleration time 5	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	0.1	Run
E3.17	Deceleration time 5	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	0.1	Run
E3.18	Acceleration time 6	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	0.1	Run
E3.19	Deceleration time 6	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	0.1	Run
E3.20	Acceleration time 7	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	0.1	Run
E3.21	Deceleration time 7	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	0.1	Run
E3.22	Acceleration time 8	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	0.1	Run
E3.23	Deceleration time 8	0.1...6,000.0 s	10.0	0.1	Run
E3.40	Multi-speed frequency 1	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	0.01	Run
E3.41	Multi-speed frequency 2	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	0.01	Run
E3.42	Multi-speed frequency 3	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	0.01	Run
E3.43	Multi-speed frequency 4	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	0.01	Run
E3.44	Multi-speed frequency 5	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	0.01	Run
E3.45	Multi-speed frequency 6	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	0.01	Run
E3.46	Multi-speed frequency 7	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	0.01	Run
E3.47	Multi-speed frequency 8	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	0.01	Run
E3.48	Multi-speed frequency 9	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	0.01	Run
E3.49	Multi-speed frequency 10	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	0.01	Run
E3.50	Multi-speed frequency 11	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	0.01	Run
E3.51	Multi-speed frequency 12	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	0.01	Run

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
E3.52	Multi-speed frequency 13	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	0.01	Run
E3.53	Multi-speed frequency 14	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	0.01	Run
E3.54	Multi-speed frequency 15	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	0.01	Run
E3.59	Stage 0 frequency source	0: Digital setting frequency 1: AI1 analog input 2: AI2 analog input 3: EAI1 analog input 4: X5 pulse input 5: Communication 6: Panel potentiometer 7: Digital input up/down command 8: EAI2 analog input	0	–	Stop
E3.60	Stage 0 action		011	–	Stop
E3.62	Stage 1 action	011, 012, 013, 014, 015, 016, 017, 018, 021, 022, 023, 024, 025, 026, 027, 028, 031, 032, 033, 034, 035,	011	–	Stop
E3.64	Stage 2 action	036, 037, 038, 041, 042, 043, 044,	011	–	Stop
E3.66	Stage 3 action	045, 046, 047, 048, 051, 052, 053, 054, 055, 056, 057, 058, 061, 062, 063, 064, 065, 066, 067, 068, 071,	011	–	Stop
E3.68	Stage 4 action	072, 073, 074, 075, 076, 077, 078, 081, 082, 083, 084, 085, 086, 087, 088, 111, 112, 113, 114, 115, 116,	011	–	Stop
E3.70	Stage 5 action	117, 118, 121, 122, 123, 124, 125,	011	–	Stop
E3.72	Stage 6 action	126, 127, 128, 131, 132, 133, 134,	011	–	Stop
E3.74	Stage 7 action	135, 136, 137, 138, 141, 142, 143, 144, 145, 146, 147, 148, 151, 152,	011	–	Stop
E3.76	Stage 8 action	153, 154, 155, 156, 157, 158, 161,	011	–	Stop
E3.78	Stage 9 action	162, 163, 164, 165, 166, 167, 168,	011	–	Stop
E3.80	Stage 10 action	171, 172, 173, 174, 175, 176, 177,	011	–	Stop
E3.82	Stage 11 action	178, 181, 182, 183, 184, 185, 186, 187, 188	011	–	Stop
E3.84	Stage 12 action		011	–	Stop
E3.86	Stage 13 action		011	–	Stop
E3.88	Stage 14 action		011	–	Stop
E3.90	Stage 15 action		011	–	Stop
E3.61	Stage 0 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	0.1	Stop
E3.63	Stage 1 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	0.1	Stop
E3.65	Stage 2 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	0.1	Stop
E3.67	Stage 3 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	0.1	Stop
E3.69	Stage 4 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	0.1	Stop
E3.71	Stage 5 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	0.1	Stop
E3.73	Stage 6 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	0.1	Stop
E3.75	Stage 7 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	0.1	Stop

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
E3.77	Stage 8 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	0.1	Stop
E3.79	Stage 9 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	0.1	Stop
E3.81	Stage 10 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	0.1	Stop
E3.83	Stage 11 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	0.1	Stop
E3.85	Stage 12 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	0.1	Stop
E3.87	Stage 13 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	0.1	Stop
E3.89	Stage 14 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	0.1	Stop
E3.91	Stage 15 running time	0.0...6,000.0 s	20.0	0.1	Stop

E4: PID control parameters

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
E4.00	PID reference channel	0...10	0	–	Stop
E4.01	PID feedback channel	0: AI1 analog input 1: AI2 analog input 2: X5 pulse input 3: EAI1 analog input 4: Encoder card speed 5: EAI2 analog input	0	–	Stop
E4.02	PID reference / feedback factor	0.01...100.00	1.00	0.01	Run
E4.03	PID engineering analog reference	0.00...10.00	0.00	0.01	Run
E4.04	PID engineering speed reference	0...30,000 rpm	0	1	Run
E4.05	PID feedback polarity	0: Positive 1: Negative	0	–	Stop
E4.15	Proportional gain - P	0.000...60.000	1.500	0.001	Run
E4.16	Integral time - Ti	0.00...100.00 s (0.00: no integral)	1.50	0.01	Run
E4.17	Derivative time - Td	0.00...100.00 s (0.00: no derivative)	0.00	0.01	Run
E4.18	Sampling period - T	0.01...100.00 s	0.50	0.01	Run
E4.19	PID feed forward dynamic limit	0.00...100.00 %	10.00	0.01	Run
E4.20	PID feed forward limit offset	0.00...100.00 %	0.00	0.01	Run
E4.30	PID deadband	0.0...20.0 %	2.0	0.1	Run
E4.31	PID regulation mode	0, 1	0	–	Run
E4.32	PID engineering value detection width	0.01...100.00	1.00	0.01	Run
E4.33	PID feed forward settings	0: Inactive 1: Active	0	–	Stop

Setting range of E4.00:

0: Inactive

1: Panel potentiometer

2: Panel button

3: AI1 analog input

4: AI2 analog input

5: X5 pulse input

6: EAI1 analog input

7: Communication

8: Analog reference E4.03

9: Speed reference E4.04

10: EAI2 analog input

Setting range of E4.31:

0: Stop integral regulation when frequency arrives at upper / lower limit

1: Continue integral regulation when frequency arrives at upper / lower limit

E5: Extended function parameters

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
E5.01	High resolution output current filter time	5...500 ms	40	1	Run
E5.02	User-defined speed scaling factor	0.01...100.00	1.00	0.01	Run
E5.05	Pump dry protection threshold	0.0 %...[E5.08]	30.0	0.1	Run
E5.06	Pump dry protection delay	0.0...300.0 s (0.0: Inactive)	0.0	0.1	Run
E5.07	Pump dry protection delay at start-up	0.0...300.0 s	30.0	0.1	Run
E5.08	Pump leakage protection threshold	0.0...100.0 %	50.0	0.1	Run
E5.09	Pump leakage protection delay	0.0...600.0 s (0.0: Inactive)	0.0	0.1	Run
E5.10	Pump leakage protection delay at start-up	0.0...600.0 s	60.0	0.1	Run
E5.15	Sleep level	0.00...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	0.01	Run
E5.16	Sleep delay	0.0...3,600.0 s	60.0	0.1	Run
E5.17	Sleep boost time	0.0...3,600.0 s	0.0	0.1	Run
E5.18	Sleep boost amplitude	0.0...100.0 %	0.0	0.1	Run
E5.19	Wake up level	0.0...100.0 %	0.0	0.1	Run
E5.20	Wake up delay	0.0...60.0 s	0.5	0.1	Run

E8: Standard communication parameters

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
E8.00	Communication protocol	0: Modbus 1: Extension card	0	–	Stop
E8.01	Communication error detection time	0.0...60.0 s (0.0: Inactive)	0.0	0.1	Stop
E8.02	Communication error protection mode	0: Freewheeling stop 1: Keep running 2: Emergency stop	1	–	Stop
E8.03	Communication process data loss behavior	0: Decelerating stop 1: Freewheeling stop 2: Keep running 3: Keep running without warning	0	–	Stop
E8.04	Process data loss detection time	0.000 - 10.000s	0.000	-	Stop
E8.10	Modbus baud rate	0: 1,200 bps; 1: 2,400 bps 2: 4,800 bps; 3: 9,600 bps 4: 19,200 bps; 5: 38,400 bps	3	–	Stop
E8.11	Modbus data format	0...3	0	–	Stop
E8.12	Modbus local address	1...247	1	1	Stop
E8.13	Modbus level / edge sensitivity selection	0: Level sensitive 1: Edge sensitive	1	–	Stop

Setting range of E8.11:

- 0: N, 8, 1 (1 start bit, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, no parity)
- 1: E, 8, 1 (1 start bit, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, even parity)
- 2: O, 8, 1 (1 start bit, 8 data bits, 1 stop bit, odd parity)
- 3: N, 8, 2 (1 start bit, 8 data bits, 2 stop bits, no parity)

E9: Protection and error parameters

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
E9.00	Automatic error reset attempts	0...3 (0: Inactive)	0	–	Stop
E9.01	Automatic error reset interval	0.1...60.0 s	10.0	0.1	Stop
E9.02	Automatic error reset attempts restart time	0...65,535	0	1	Stop
E9.04	Diagnosis setting	0...FFFF	0	1	Stop
E9.05	Last error type	–	–	–	Read
E9.06	Second last error type	–	–	–	Read
E9.07	Third last error type	–	–	–	Read
E9.10	Output frequency at last error	–	–	0.01	Read
E9.11	Setting frequency at last error	–	–	0.01	Read
E9.12	Output current at last error	–	–	0.1	Read
E9.13	Output voltage at last error	–	–	1	Read
E9.14	DC-bus voltage at last error	–	–	1	Read
E9.15	Power module temperature at last error	–	–	1	Read
E9.50	Last warning type	-	0	-	Read
E9.51	Second last warning type	-	0	-	Read
E9.52	Third last warning type	-	0	-	Read
E9.97	Last error detail	00000...FFFFF	0	–	Read
E9.98	Second last error detail	00000...FFFFF	0	–	Read
E9.99	Third last error detail	00000...FFFFF	0	–	Read

E9.04 Diagnosis setting:

- 0000: UE-1 (by default)
- 0001: no error

Value range of E9.05...E9.07:

0: No error

1: OC-1, overcurrent at constant speed

2: OC-2, overcurrent during acceleration

3: OC-3, overcurrent during deceleration

4: OE-1, overvoltage at constant speed

5: OE-2, overvoltage during acceleration

6: OE-3, overvoltage during deceleration

7: OE-4, overvoltage during stop

8: UE-1, undervoltage during run

- 9: SC, surge current or short circuit
- 10: IPh.L, input phase loss
- 11: OPh.L, output phase loss
- 12: ESS-, soft start error
- 20: OL-1, converter overload
- 21: OH, converter over temperature
- 23: FF, fan failure
- 24: Pdr, pump dry
- 25: CoL-, command value lost
- 26: StO-r, STO request
- 27: StO-E, STO error
- 30: OL-2, motor overload
- 31: Ot, motor over temperature
- 32: t-Er, motor parameter tuning error
- 33: AdE-, motor angle detection error
- 35: SPE-, speed control loop error
- 38: AibE, analog input broken wire detection
- 39: EPS-, DC_IN power supply error
- 40: dir1, forward running lock error
- 41: dir2, reverse running lock error
- 42: E-St, terminal error signal
- 43: FFE-, firmware version mismatch
- 44: rS-, Modbus communication error
- 45: E.Par, parameter settings invalid
- 46: U.Par, unknown parameter restore error
- 48: idA-, internal communication error
- 49: idP-, internal parameter error
- 50: idE-, converter internal error
- 51: OCd-, extension card internal error
- 52: OCc, extension card PDOs configuration error
- 53: Fdi-, no valid process data
- 54: PcE-, remote control communication error
- 55: PbrE, parameter backup / restore error
- 56: PrEF, parameter restore error after firmware update
- 60: ASF-, application firmware error
- 61: APE1, application error 1

62: APE2, application error 2
63: APE3, application error 3
64: APE4, application error 4
65: APE5, application error 5
70: ElbE, Encoder input broken wire error
71: EPOE, Encoder phase order error
72: RDOS, Signal amplitude error
73: RLOT, Signal phase error
901: FCd-, Host communication timed out
902: FPC-, Fieldbus process data configuration erroneous
903: FtL, RPDO Telegram Loss
904: FIn-, Communication platform initialization failed
905: FnC-, Fieldbus network configuration invalid
906: FCE-, Communication platform critical error
907: FnF-, Communication platform firmware corrupted
908: Fdi-, Fieldbus data Invalid

Value range of E9.50...E9.52:

0: No warning
6: PLE, pump leakage
7: OE-4, overvoltage during stop
31: Ot, motor over temperature
403: C-dr, communication disconnection
408: Aib-, analog input broken wire detection
409: FLE, fan maintenance period expired
410: OCi, communication data exceeds value range
411: UH-A, under Temperature warning
420: APF1, ASF customer warning 1
421: APF2, ASF customer warning 2
422: APF3, ASF customer warning 3
423: APF4, ASF customer warning 4
424: APF5, ASF customer warning 5
430: USdc, UnSupported Device Configuration
440: Sli-, speed limited by maximum Voltage
900: iSt, invalid State Transition
903: FtL, RPDO Telegram Loss

908: Fdi, option card process data invalid

19.3.5 Group F0: ASF Parameters

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
F0.01	ASF version	–	–	–	Read
F0.02	ASF identifier	0x0001 ... 0x0FFF	–	–	Read
F0.03	ASF API required version	–	–	–	Read
F0.06	ASF trial time left	0...65,535 s	–	–	Read
F0.07	ASF API version	–	–	–	Read
F0.10	ASF status	0x0000H...0xFFFFH	–	1	Read
F0.20	ASF Command 1	–	0	–	Read
F0.21	ASF Command 2	–	0	–	Read
F0.22	ASF Command 3	–	0	–	Read
F0.23	ASF Command 4	–	0	–	Read
F0.24	ASF Command 5	–	0	–	Read
F0.25	ASF Command 6	–	0	–	Read
F0.26	ASF Command 7	–	0	–	Read
F0.27	ASF Command 8	–	0	–	Read

19.3.6 Group H0: Extension Card Parameters

H0: Extension card general parameters

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
H0.00	Control word	0x00000...0xFFFF	0x0000 0	1	Run
H0.01	Status word	–	0x0000 0	1	Read
H0.02	Extended status word	–	0x0000 0	1	Read
H0.10	Frequency command	0.00...655.35	0.00	0.01	Run
H0.12	Torque control reference from fieldbus	0.0...6553.5	0.0	0.1	Run
H0.14	FWD torque limitation reference from fieldbus	0.0...6553.5	0.0	0.1	Run
H0.15	REV torque limitation reference from fieldbus	0.0...6553.5	0.0	0.1	Run
H0.16	Speed limitation at torque control mode from fieldbus	0.00...655.35	0.00	0.01	Run
H0.18	Opt 1 active interface version	–	–	0.01	Read
H0.19	Opt 2 active interface version	–	–	0.01	Read

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
H0.20	Extension card 1 type	0: None	0	–	Read
H0.30	Extension card 2 type	1: PROFIBUS card 2: CANopen card 8: I/O card 9: Relay card 10: IO plus card	0	–	Read
H0.23	Extension card 1 firmware version	–	–	0.01	Read
H0.33	Extension card 2 firmware version	–	–	0.01	Read
H0.50	Fieldbus voltage command	0.00...100.00 %	0.00	0.01	Run

H1: PROFIBUS card parameters

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
H1.00	PROFIBUS local address	0...126	1	1	Stop
H1.01	Present baud rate	0: None 1: 9.6 kbps 2: 19.2 kbps 3: 45.45 kbps 4: 93.75 kbps 5: 187.5 kbps 6: 500 kbps 7: 1,500 kbps 8: 3,000 kbps 9: 6,000 kbps 10: 12,000 kbps	–	–	Read
H1.02	Present telegram type	1: PPO1 2: PPO2 3: PPO3 4: PPO4 5: PPO5 6: PPO6 7: PPO7 8: PPO8	–	–	Read

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
H1.10	Output PZD 1 ^①	0: Not used	1	–	Stop
H1.11	Output PZD 2	1: Control word	2	–	Stop
H1.12	Output PZD 3	2: Frequency command	0	–	Stop
H1.13	Output PZD 4	3: Empty PZD	0	–	Stop
H1.14	Output PZD 5	4: ASF command 1	0	–	Stop
H1.15	Output PZD 6	5: ASF command 2	0	–	Stop
H1.16	Output PZD 7	6: ASF command 3	0	–	Stop
H1.17	Output PZD 8	7: ASF command 4	0	–	Stop
H1.18	Output PZD 9	8: ASF command 5	0	–	Stop
H1.19	Output PZD 10	9: ASF command 6 10: ASF command 7 11: ASF command 8 12: Torque command 13: Forward torque limit 14: Reverse torque limit 15: Speed limit in torque mode 16: DO1/relay1 output values (see parameter E2.20) 17: AO1 value in percentage (see parameter E2.28) 18: EDO values (see parameter H8.23) 19: EAO value in percentage (see parameter H8.28) 20: Relay card output values (see parameter H9.10) 21: V/f separation voltage com- mand in percentage (see parame- ter H0.50) 22: Acceleration time 23: Deceleration time	0	–	Stop

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
H1.30	Input PZD 1 ^①	0: Not used 1: Status word 2: Extended status word 3: Empty PZD 100: d0.00 (Output frequency) 101...199: d0.01...d0.99 (Monitoring values)	1	–	Stop
H1.31	Input PZD 2		100	–	Stop
H1.32	Input PZD 3		0	–	Stop
H1.33	Input PZD 4		0	–	Stop
H1.34	Input PZD 5		0	–	Stop
H1.35	Input PZD 6		0	–	Stop
H1.36	Input PZD 7		0	–	Stop
H1.37	Input PZD 8		0	–	Stop
H1.38	Input PZD 9		0	–	Stop
H1.39	Input PZD 10		0	–	Stop



①: Output PZD 1...Output PZD 10 are the process data containers for data transferring from PROFIBUS master to slave.

②: Input PZD 1...Input PZD 10 are the process data containers for data transferring from PROFIBUS slave to master.

H2: CANopen card parameters

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
H2.00	CANopen address	1...127	1	-	Stop
H2.01	CAN baudrate	0: 10 kbits/s 1: 20 kbits/s 2: 50 kbits/s 3: 125 kbits/s 4: 250 kbits/s 5: 500 kbits/s 6: 1 Mbit/s	3	-	Stop
H2.02	CANopen device profile selection	0...1	0-> Rexroth Drive Profile 1-> CiA-402 Drive Profile	-	Stop
H2.98	CANopen termination resistor switch	0: Disabled 1: Enabled	0	-	Stop

H2.00 'CANopen address' is used to select the address for CANopen Node.

H2.01 'CAN baudrate' is used to set the speed of CANopen communication.

H2.02 'CANopen device profile selection' is used to switch between different drive profiles.

H2.98 'CANopen termination resistor switch' is used to select the state of the termination resistor.

H8: I/O card parameters

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
H8.00	EX1 input	0...52	0	–	Stop
H8.01	EX2 input		0	–	Stop
H8.02	EX3 input		0	–	Stop
H8.03	EX4 input		0	–	Stop
H8.04	EX5 input		0	–	Stop
H8.05	EAI input mode	0: 0...20 mA 1: 4...20 mA 2: 0...10 V 3: 0...5 V 4: 2...10 V 5: -10...10 V	0	–	Stop
H8.06	EAI1 input polarity setting	0...3	1	–	Stop
H8.07	EAI1 dead zone filter value	0.0...30.0 %	0.0	0.1	Run
H8.09	EAI1 filter time	0.000...2.000 s	0.100	0.001	Run
H8.10	EAI1 gain	0.00...10.00	1.00	0.01	Run
H8.15	EAI1 curve minimum	-120.0 %...[H8.17]	0.0	0.1	Run
H8.16	EAI1 curve minimum value	-[E0.09]...[E0.09] Hz	0.00	0.01	Run
H8.17	EAI1 curve maximum	[H8.15]...120.0 %	100.0	0.1	Run
H8.18	EAI1 curve maximum value	-[E0.09]...[E0.09] Hz	50.00	0.01	Run
H8.20	EDO1 output selection	0...25	1	–	Stop
H8.21	Extended relay output selection		1	–	Stop
H8.22	EDO2 output selection		1	–	Stop
H8.23	Extended digital output value from extension card fieldbus communication	Bit0: EDO1 (IO / IO plus card) Bit1: EDO2 (IO plus card) Bit8: Erelay (IO card)	0	–	Stop
H8.25	EAO output mode	0: 0...10 V 1: 0...20 mA 3: 2....10V 4: 4.....20mA	0	–	Run

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
H8.26	EA0 output selection	0: Output frequency 1: Set frequency 2: Output current 4: Output voltage 5: Output power 6: AI1 analog input 7: AI2 analog input 8: EAI1 analog input 9: EAI2 analog input 11: Motor temperature sensor power 12: Parameter setting from communication ^② 13: Setting torque 14: Output torque	0	–	Run
H8.27	EA0 gain	0.00...10.00	1.00	0.01	Run
H8.28	EA0 value in percentage from extension card fieldbus communication	0.00...100.00%	0.00	0.01	Stop
H8.30	EAI2 input mode	0: 0...20 mA 1: 4...20 mA 2: 0...10 V 3: 0...5 V 4: 2...10 V 5: -10...10 V	0	–	Stop
H8.31	EAI2 input polarity setting	0: Polarity inactive 1: Polarity active without direction control 2: Polarity active with direction control 3: Combination direction control	1	–	Stop
H8.32	EAI2 filter time	0.000...2.000 s	0.100	0.001	Run
H8.33	EAI2 gain	0.00...10.00	1.00	0.01	Run
H8.34	EAI2 curve minimum	-120.0 %...[H8.36]	0.0	0.1	Run
H8.35	EAI2 curve minimum value	-[E0.09]...[E0.09]	0.00	0.01	Run
H8.36	EAI2 curve maximum	[H8.34]...120.0 %	100.0	0.1	Run

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
H8.37	EAI2 curve maximum value	-[E0.09]...[E0.09]	50.00	0.01	Run
H8.38	EAI2 dead zone filter value	0.0...30.0 %	0.0	0.1	Run
H8.39	EAO curve minimum	-100.0 %...[H8.41]	0.0	0.1	Run
H8.40	EAO curve minimum value	-100.0...100.0 %	0.00	0.01	Run
H8.41	EAO curve maximum	[H8.39]...100.0 %	100.0	0.1	Run
H8.42	EAO curve maximum value	-100.0...100.0 %	100.0	0.1	Run
H8.87	I/O card output channel diagnosis	0: Inactive 1: EAO diagnosis 2: EDO diagnosis 3: ERO diagnosis/EDO2 diagnosis 4: All output diagnosis	1	–	Stop

Setting range of H8.00...H8.04:

- 0: No function assigned
- 1: Multi-speed control input 1
- 2: Multi-speed control input 2
- 3: Multi-speed control input 3
- 4: Multi-speed control input 4
- 10: Acceleration/deceleration time 1 activation
- 11: Acceleration/deceleration time 2 activation
- 12: Acceleration/deceleration time 3 activation
- 15: Freewheeling stop activation
- 16: Stop DC-braking activation
- 20: Frequency Up command
- 21: Frequency Down command
- 22: Up/Down command reset
- 23: Torque/Speed control switch
- 25: 3-wire control
- 26: Simple PLC stop
- 27: Simple PLC pause
- 30: Second frequency setting source activation
- 31: Second run command source activation
- 32: Error signal N.O. contact input
- 33: Error signal N.C. contact input
- 34: Error reset

- 35: Forward running (FWD)
- 36: Reverse running (REV)
- 37: Forward jog
- 38: Reverse jog
- 39: Counter input
- 40: Counter reset
- 41: PID deactivation
- 46: User parameter set selection
- 48: Motor overheating error N.O. contact input
- 49: Motor overheating error N.C. contact input
- 50: Motor overheating warning N.O. contact input
- 51: Motor overheating warning N.C. contact input
- 52: Jog with Run Command Direction

Setting range of H8.06:

- 0: Polarity inactive
- 1: Polarity active without direction control
- 2: Polarity active with direction control
- 3: Combination direction control

Setting range of H8.20, H8.21:

- 0: Converter ready
- 1: Converter running
- 2: Converter DC-braking
- 3: Converter running at zero speed
- 4: Speed arrival
- 5: Frequency level detection signal (FDT1)
- 6: Frequency level detection signal (FDT2)
- 7: Simple PLC stage complete
- 8: Simple PLC cycle complete
- 10: Converter undervoltage
- 11: Converter overload pre-warning
- 12: Motor overload pre-warning
- 13: Converter stop by external error
- 14: Converter error
- 15: Converter OK
- 16: Counter target value arrival
- 17: Counter middle value arrival

- 18: PID reference engineering value arrival
 19: Pulse output mode enable (only available with DO1 output selection)
 20: Torque control mode
 21: Parameter setting from communication^①
 25: Converter error or warning



①:

The relationship between the output of '21: Parameter setting from communication' and communication mode is as follow:

- For modbus mode,
 - The output of parameter H8.20 is defined by bit0 of register 0x7F09. When bit0 is '0', open collector is opened; when bit0 is '1', open collector is closed.
 - The output of parameter H8.21 is defined by bit8 of register 0x7F09. When bit8 is '0', ETb_ETa is opened; when bit8 is '1', ETb_ETa is closed.
 - The output of parameter H8.22 is defined by bit1 of register 0x7F09. When bit1 is '0', open collector is opened; when bit1 is '1', open collector is closed.
- For other fieldbus mode, the output is defined by parameter H8.23.

②:

The relationship between the output of '12: Parameter setting from communication' and communication mode is as follow:

- For modbus mode, the output is defined by register 0x7F07, the value range of register is 0.00 %...100.00 % (It means percentage of maximum analog output value).
- For other fieldbus mode, the output is defined by parameter H8.28.

H9: Relay card parameters

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
H9.00	Extended relay 1 output selection	0...25	0	–	Stop
H9.01	Extended relay 2 output selection		0	–	Stop
H9.02	Extended relay 3 output selection		0	–	Stop
H9.03	Extended relay 4 output selection		0	–	Stop

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
H9.10	Relay output setting value	Relay1 is defined by bit0, when bit0 is '0', R1b_R1a is opened; when bit0 is '1', R1b_R1a is closed Relay2 is defined by bit1, when bit1 is '0', R2b_R2a is opened; when bit1 is '1', R2b_R2a is closed Relay3 is defined by bit2, when bit2 is '0', R3b_R3a is opened; when bit2 is '1', R3b_R3a is closed Relay4 is defined by bit3, when bit3 is '0', R4b_R4a is opened; when bit3 is '1', R4b_R4a is closed	0	–	Run
H9.97	Relay card output channel diagnosis	0: Inactive 1: Relay1 diagnosis 2: Relay2 diagnosis 3: Relay3 diagnosis 4: Relay4 diagnosis 5: All output diagnosis	0	–	Stop

Setting range of H9.00...H9.03:

- 0: Converter ready
- 1: Converter running
- 2: Converter DC-braking
- 3: Converter running at zero speed
- 4: Speed arrival
- 5: Frequency level detection signal (FDT1)
- 6: Frequency level detection signal (FDT2)
- 7: Simple PLC stage complete
- 8: Simple PLC cycle complete
- 10: Converter undervoltage
- 11: Converter overload pre-warning
- 12: Motor overload pre-warning
- 13: Converter stop by external error
- 14: Converter error
- 15: Converter OK

- 16: Counter target value arrival
 - 17: Counter middle value arrival
 - 18: PID reference engineering value arrival
 - 20: Torque control mode
 - 21: Parameter setting from communication^①
 - 25: Converter error or warning
-



①:

The relationship between output of '21: Parameter setting from communication' and communication mode is as follow:

- For modbus mode,
 - The output of parameter H9.00 is defined by bit0 of register 0x7F0A. When bit0 is '0', R1b_R1a is opened; when bit0 is '1', R1b_R1a is closed.
 - The output of parameter H9.01 is defined by bit1 of register 0x7F0A. When bit1 is '0', R2b_R2a is opened; when bit1 is '1', R2b_R2a is closed.
 - The output of parameter H9.02 is defined by bit2 of register 0x7F0A. When bit2 is '0', R3b_R3a is opened; when bit2 is '1', R3b_R3a is closed.
 - The output of parameter H9.03 is defined by bit3 of register 0x7F0A. When bit3 is '0', R4b_R4a is opened; when bit3 is '1', R4b_R4a is closed.
 - For other fieldbus mode, the output is defined by parameter H9.10.
-

19.3.7 Group U: Panel Parameters

U0: General panel parameters

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
U0.00	Direction control by panel	0: Forward; 1: Reverse	0	–	Run
U0.01	Stop button control	0: Active only for panel control 1: Valid for all control methods	1	–	Run
U0.99	Panel firmware version	00.00...99.99	–	0.01	Read

U1: LED panel parameters

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
U1.00	Run monitoring display	0...99	0	–	Run
U1.10	Stop monitoring display		2	–	Run

0: Output frequency; 1: Actual speed

2: Setting frequency; 3: Setting speed

4: User-defined setting speed; 5: User-defined actual speed

6: Encoder frequency

7: Encoder speed

9: V/f separation setting voltage; 10: Output voltage; 11: Output current

12: Output power; 13: DC-bus voltage

14: Energy saving counter kWh; 15: Energy saving counter MWh

16: Output torque; 17: Setting torque

20: Power module temperature; 21: Actual carrier frequency

23: Power stage running time; 30: AI1 input

31: AI2 input; 33: I/O card EAI1 input; 34: I/O card EAI2 input

35: AO1 output; 37: I/O card EAO output

38: I/O plus card TSI input signal value

40: Digital input 1; 43: I/O card digital input

45: DO1 output; 47: I/O card EDO1 output; 48: I/O card EDO2 output

50: Pulse input frequency; 55: Pulse output frequency

60: Relay output; 62: I/O card relay output

63: Relay card output; 70: PID reference engineering value

71: PID feedback engineering value; 80: ASF Display00

81: ASF Display01; 82: ASF Display02

83: ASF Display03; 84: ASF Display04

85: ASF Display05; 86: ASF Display06

87: ASF Display07; 88: ASF Display08; 89: ASF Display09

98: High resolution output current; 99: Firmware version

U2: LCD panel parameters

Code	Name	Setting range	Default	Min.	Attri.
U2.01	Backlight mode setting	0: Energy saving 1: Always on	1	–	Run
U2.02	Panel lock setting	0: Unlock 1: Lock	0	–	Run
U2.03	Remote / Local setting	0: Remote 1: Local	0	–	Stop
U2.04	Language selection	0: English 1: Chinese 2: Germany 3: French 4: Russian 5: Spanish 6: Portugal 7: Italian 8: Korean	0	–	Stop
U2.09	Permanent monitoring	0...99	0	–	Run
U2.10	Run monitoring items 1		0	–	Run
U2.20	Stop monitoring items 1		0	–	Run
U2.11	Run monitoring items 2	0...100	2	–	Run
U2.12	Run monitoring items 3		11	–	Run
U2.13	Run monitoring items 4		13	–	Run
U2.14	Run monitoring items 5		16	–	Run
U2.15	Run monitoring items 6		17	–	Run
U2.21	Stop monitoring items 2		2	–	Run
U2.22	Stop monitoring items 3		11	–	Run
U2.23	Stop monitoring items 4		13	–	Run
U2.24	Stop monitoring items 5		16	–	Run
U2.25	Stop monitoring items 6		17	–	Run

Setting range of U2.09...U2.25:

0: Actual output frequency; 1: Actual speed

2: Setting frequency; 3: Setting speed

4: User-defined setting speed; 5: User-defined output speed
9: V/f separation setting voltage; 10: Output voltage; 11: Output current
12: Output power; 13: DC-bus voltage
14: Energy saving counter kWh; 15: Energy saving counter MWh
16: Output torque; 17: Setting torque
20: Power module temperature; 21: Actual carrier frequency
23: Power stage running time; 30: AI1 input
31: AI2 input; 33: I/O card EAI1 input; 34: I/O card EAI2 input
35: AO1 output; 37: I/O card EAO output
38: I/O plus card TSI input signal value
40: Digital input 1; 43: I/O card digital input
45: DO1 output; 47: I/O card EDO1 output; 48: I/O card EDO2 output
50: Pulse input frequency; 55: Pulse output frequency
60: Relay output; 62: I/O card relay output
63: Relay card output; 70: PID reference engineering value
71: PID feedback engineering value; 80: ASF Display00
81: ASF Display01; 82: ASF Display02
83: ASF Display03; 84: ASF Display04
85: ASF Display05; 86: ASF Display06
87: ASF Display07; 88: ASF Display08
89: ASF Display09; 98: High resolution output current
99: Firmware version; 100: Inactive

19.3.8 Group d0: Monitoring Parameters

Code	Name	Minimum unit
d0.00	Output frequency	0.01 Hz
d0.01	Actual speed	1 rpm
d0.02	Setting frequency	0.01 Hz
d0.03	Setting speed	1 rpm
d0.04	User-defined setting speed	0.1
d0.05	User-defined output speed	0.1
d0.06	Encoder frequency	0.01
d0.07	Encoder speed	1
d0.09	V/f separation setting voltage	0.01 V
d0.10	Output voltage	1 V
d0.11	Output current	0.1 A
d0.12	Output power	0.1 kW
d0.13	DC-bus voltage	1 V
d0.14	Energy saving counter kWh	0.1 kWh
d0.15	Energy saving counter MWh	1 MWh
d0.16	Output torque	0.1 %
d0.17	Setting torque	0.1 %
d0.18	FWD speed limitation setting	0.01 rpm
d0.19	REV speed limitation setting	0.01 rpm
d0.20	Power module temperature	1 °C
d0.21	Actual carrier frequency	1 kHz
d0.23	Power stage running time	1 h
d0.30	AI1 input	0.01 V / 0.01 mA
d0.31	AI2 input	0.01 V / 0.01 mA
d0.33	I/O card EAI1 input	0.01 V / 0.01 mA
d0.34	I/O card EAI2 input	0.01 V / 0.01 mA
d0.35	AO1 output	0.01 V / 0.01 mA
d0.37	I/O card EAO output	0.01 V / 0.01 mA
d0.38	I/O plus card TSI input signal value	0.001 V
d0.40	Digital input 1	–
d0.43	I/O card digital input	–
d0.45	DO1 output	–
d0.47	I/O card EDO1 output	–
d0.48	I/O card EDO2 output	–
d0.50	Pulse input frequency	0.01 kHz
d0.55	Pulse output frequency	0.1 kHz

Code	Name	Minimum unit
d0.60	Relay output	–
d0.62	I/O card relay output	–
d0.63	Relay card output	–
d0.64	Motor thermal sensor temperature	–
d0.70	PID reference engineering value	0.1
d0.71	PID feedback engineering value	0.1
d0.80	ASF Display00	–
d0.81	ASF Display01	–
d0.82	ASF display02	–
d0.83	ASF display03	–
d0.84	ASF display04	–
d0.85	ASF display05	–
d0.86	ASF display06	–
d0.87	ASF display07	–
d0.88	ASF display08	–
d0.89	ASF display09	–
d0.98	High resolution output current	0.01 A
d0.99	Firmware version	0.01



Parameters d0.16...d0.19 are only applicable to Vector Control mode.

19.3.9 Group d1: Enhanced Monitoring

This part is about enhanced monitoring parameters, which are not visible via Panel, but can be scoped in IndraWorks.

Code	Name	Minimum Unit	Attri.
d1.00	Phase current U [A]	0.1A	Read
d1.01	Phase current V [A]	0.1A	Read
d1.02	Phase current W [A]	0.1A	Read
d1.05	Current Id filtered Display	0.01A	Read
d1.06	Current Iq filtered Display	0.01A	Read
d1.10	Signed rotor frequency	0.1Hz	Read
d1.11	Rotor speed	1rpm	Read
d1.12	Signed encoder frequency	0.1Hz	Read
d1.15	High resolution output power	0.01kW	Read
d1.20	Encoder angle	0.01°	Read

19.4 Appendix IV: Certification

19.4.1 CE

Declaration of conformity

For Frequency Converters VFC x615 (0K40~400K), there are declarations of conformity which confirm that the devices comply with the applicable EN Standards and EC Directives. If required, you may ask our sales representative for the declarations of conformity.

EU directives	Standard
Low-Voltage Directive 2014/35/EU	EN 61800-5-1 (IEC 61800-5-1: 2007)
EMC Directive 2014/30/EU	EN 61800-3 (IEC 61800-3: 2004+A1: 2012)

Tab. 19-1: EU directives and standards

CE label



Fig. 19-12: CE label

High-voltage test

According to standard EN 61800-5-1, VFC x615 (0K40~400K) components are tested with high voltage.

Index

A

Abbreviations.....	516
About this Documentation.....	12
Accessories.....	459
Accumulators.....	516
Additional status register....	294, 440
Analog Input Terminals Wiring.....	75
Analog Inputs.....	71
Analog Outputs.....	72
Analog Signal Lines.....	88
Appendix.....	516
Appendix I: Abbreviations.....	516
Appendix II: Parameter List.....	525
Appendix IV: Certification.....	576
Applicability for End Product.....	85
Application Conditions.....	24
Appropriate Use.....	12
Area A.....	89
Area B.....	89
Area C.....	89
Arrangement of the Components in the Control Cabinet.....	91
ASF Diagnosis.....	315
ASF Management.....	314
ASF Parameter.....	313
ASF Parameters.....	559
ASF system error.....	315
ASF warning and error.....	316
Auto-Tuning.....	109
Automatic Error Reset.....	421
Auxiliary Power Supply.....	72

B

Basic system parameters.....	526
Batteries.....	516
Block Diagram.....	52
Brake Resistor.....	490
Brake Resistor Dimensions.....	497
Braking Ratio.....	490

C

Cable Routing of the Interference-free Lines to the Mains Connection.....	91
Cable Specifications.....	54
CANopen Card Parameters.....	562

Cases to Distinguish for Declaration of EMC Conformity.....	85
Causes of Noise Emission.....	81
CE.....	576
CE Certification.....	576
CE Label.....	576
Certification.....	576
Certify ASF.....	315
Check application conditions.....	106
Check mounting conditions.....	106
Check the wiring.....	106
Checklist before Quick Start.....	106
Communication.....	422
Communication Cable.....	464
Communication Cable for Control Cabinet Type Coding.....	520
Communication Control Register.....	292, 438
Communication frequency setting register.....	298, 442
Communication Mapping Register Address Distribution.....	290, 436
Communication Module.....	473
Communication Networking.....	301, 446
Communication Protocol.....	422
Communication Settings.....	422
Communication State Register.....	293, 439
Communication Terminals.....	72
Compliance.....	576
Conditions.....	24
Construction Overview.....	511
Contained substances see "Significant components".....	515
Control Cabinet Grounding.....	87
Control Cabinet Mounting according to Interference Areas – Exemplary Arrangements.....	90
Control Cables.....	61
Control Circuit Cables.....	61
Control Circuit Terminals.....	70
Control Circuit Terminals Description.....	71
Control Terminals.....	70
Control Terminals Description.....	71

Control the Motor..... 108

D

Daily inspection..... 508
 Data Format..... 424
 Data Transmission Rate..... 423
 Declaration of conformity..... 576
 Derating..... 28
 Derating and Ambient Temperature..... 28
 Derating and Carrier Frequency.... 30
 Derating and Mains Voltage..... 29
 Derating of Electric Data..... 28
 Design and Installation in Area A – Interference-free Area of Control Cabinet..... 91
 Design and Installation in Area B – Interference-susceptible Area of Control Cabinet..... 93
 Design and Installation in Area C – Strongly Interference-susceptible Area of Control Cabinet..... 94
 Diagnosis..... 405
 Digital Inputs..... 71
 Digital Outputs..... 72
 Digital Signal Lines..... 88
 Disassembly of Fans..... 513
 Disassembly of the Operating Panel..... 512
 Display of LED Characters..... 405
 Disposal..... 515
 Disruption and Response..... 425
 Division into Areas (zones)..... 89
 Documentation..... 12
 Documentation Overview..... 14
 Documentation Reference..... 14
 Download ASF..... 314
 Drive system..... 1
 Drive System..... 19
 Drive System Overview..... 19
 Dust Cover..... 99

E

Electric Data..... 25
 Electric drive system..... 1
 Electrical Data..... 25
 Electromagnetic Compatibility.... 78
 EMC..... 78

EMC Filter..... 477
 EMC Filter Dimensions..... 479
 EMC Filter Electric Data..... 487
 EMC Filter Technical Data..... 479
 EMC Measures for Design and Installation..... 87
 EMC Properties of Components..... 85
 EMC Requirements..... 78
 EMC Standards and Laws..... 85
 EMC-optimal Installation in Facility and Control Cabinet..... 89
 Enhanced Monitoring..... 575
 Ensuring the EMC Requirements..... 85
 Environmental protection..... 515
 Erase ASF..... 315
 Error Code..... 408
 Error Code and Exception Code..... 289, 435
 Error Handling..... 420
 Error message after execution failure in PKW area..... 335, 452
 Error Reset by Digital Input..... 422
 Evaluation Criterion..... 80
 Example of parameter operation in PKW area..... 335, 452
 Examples for operation of PZD process data area..... 339, 456
 Expired replacement..... 510
 Extended Function Parameters..... 553
 Extension Accessories Type Coding..... 520
 Extension card general parameters..... 559
 Extension Card Module..... 464
 Extension Card Module Mounting..... 464
 Extension Card Parameters..... 559
 Extension Module Mounting..... 465
 External Brake Resistor Type Coding..... 523
 External Mains EMC Filter..... 477
 External Mains EMC Filter Type..... 477
 External Power Supply..... 72

F

Fault status register..... 295, 441

Features.....	20
Figures and Dimensions.....	41
Filter.....	477
First Environment.....	84
Frequency Converter Output.....	20
Frequency Converter Overview.....	20
Frequency Converter Overview Introduction.....	20
Frequency Converter Type Coding.....	518
Frequency Converter Wiring.....	52
Function Control Parameters.....	539
Functions.....	22

G

General Measures of Radio Interference Suppression for Relays, Contactors, Switches, Chokes and Inductive Loads.....	97
General Panel Parameters.....	571
Ground Connections.....	95
Grounding Terminals.....	63
Group b: System Parameters.....	526
Group C: Power Parameters.....	527
Group d0: Monitoring Parameters.....	574
Group d1: Enhanced Monitoring.....	575
Group E: Function Control Parameters.....	539
Group F0: ASF Parameters.....	559
Group H: Extension Card Parameters.....	559
Group U: Panel Parameters.....	571
GSD File.....	341, 459

H

H0: Extension card general parameters.....	559
H1: PROFIBUS Card Parameters.....	560
H2: CANopen Card Parameters.....	562
H8: I/O Card Parameters.....	564
H9: Relay Card Parameters.....	568
Hazardous substances.....	515
Heat Dissipation.....	37
Helpdesk.....	514
High-voltage Test.....	576

Hotline.....	514
--------------	-----

I

I/O Card.....	468
I/O Card Parameters.....	564
I/O Card Terminals Descriptions.....	468
I/O Card Terminals Label.....	468
I/O Card Terminals Wiring.....	469
I/O Module.....	468
Important Directions for Use.....	12
Inappropriate Use.....	12
Influence of the Motor Power Cable.....	94
Input Supply.....	20
Input Terminal Parameters.....	542
Installation Conditions.....	35
Installation of Brake Resistor.....	500
Installation of Motor Power Cable.....	88
Installing Signal Lines and Signal Cables.....	96
Interference Suppression Elements.....	87

L

LCD Panel.....	104
LCD panel parameters.....	572
LED Display.....	98
LED Indicator.....	100
LED Panel.....	97
LED panel parameters.....	571
Limit Values for Line-based Disturbances.....	81
Line Routing.....	87
Lines of Measuring Systems.....	88
Load Pull-up / Pull-down Wiring... Loads at Mains Filter of frequency converter.....	74
Local Address.....	424

M

Main Circuit Cables.....	54
Main Circuit Terminals.....	62
Main Circuit Terminals Description.....	63
Main Functions.....	22

Mains Filter for Radio Interference Suppression.....	87
Mains Filters for AC Drives.....	92
Mains Input.....	20
Maintenance.....	507
Maximum Length of Motor Cables.....	35
Menu Level.....	101
Minimum Immunity Requirements for PDSs Intended for Use in the Second Environment....	80
Minimum Inductance Between Two Motor Terminals.....	35
Modbus Communication.....	72
Modbus Communication Example.....	299, 444
Modbus Function and Message Format.....	282, 428
Modbus Function Example.....	284, 430
Modbus Interface.....	282, 428
Modbus Protocol.....	426
Monitoring Parameters.....	574
Motor Blower at Mains Filter.....	92
Motor Parameters Auto-Tuning...	109
Mounting.....	35
Mounting Conditions.....	35
Mounting Plate.....	461
Multi-speed and Simple PLC Parameters.....	548

N

Noise Emission of the Drive System.....	81
Noise Immunity in the Drive System.....	78
Notes on DC_IN Terminal.....	77
Notes on DC-bus Terminals.....	64
NPN / PNP wiring.....	73

O

Opening Dimensions.....	461
Operating Descriptions.....	101
Operating Panel.....	97, 461
Operating Panel Functions.....	23
Operating Panel Type Coding....	519
Optional Accessories.....	459
Output.....	20
Output Terminal Parameters.....	545

P

Packaging.....	515
Packing List.....	17
Packing Nameplate.....	14
Panel Mounting Plate Type Coding.....	519
Panel Parameters.....	571
Parameter Address.....	290, 436
Parameter List.....	525
Parameter Setting Example.....	101
Parameter Setting Mode.....	101
PE Terminals.....	63
PELV.....	8
Periodic inspection.....	509
Periodical Data Communication.....	332, 449
PID Control Parameters.....	551
Pin definition of PROFIBUS DB9 interface.....	473
PKW parameter area.....	333, 450
Plug-in Connector for Control Section.....	477
Point of Connection for Environment Grounding Conductor at Machine, Installation, Control Cabinet.....	93
Possible Errors during Quick Start and Respective Solutions.....	110
Power Cables.....	54
Power Control Parameters.....	527
Power Parameters.....	527
Power Terminals.....	62
Power Terminals Description.....	63
PPO telegram type.....	332, 449
Product Features.....	20
Product Identification.....	14
Product Nameplate.....	16
Product Type.....	14
Production processes.....	515
PROFIBUS Card LED.....	325, 474
PROFIBUS Card Parameters.....	560
PROFIBUS DB9 interface.....	473
PROFIBUS frame format.....	330, 447
PROFIBUS Function.....	330, 447
PROFIBUS Interface.....	473
PROFIBUS Protocol.....	447
PROFIBUS-DP communication parameters.....	341, 458

Protection and Error Parameters.....	555
Protection Functions.....	23
Protective extra-low voltage.....	8
PZD process data area.....	337, 453

Q

Quick Start.....	106
Quick Start Parameters.....	107

R

Recommendation for design of the fuses.....	59
Recommendations on Networking.....	301, 446
Recycling.....	516
Reference.....	14
Reference Documentation.....	14
Register Address.....	291, 437
Relay Card.....	470
Relay Card Parameters.....	568
Relay Card Terminals Descriptions.....	470
Relay Card Terminals Label.....	470
Relay Card Terminals Wiring.....	470
Relay output terminals.....	75
Relevant Software.....	13
Removable Components Maintenance.....	511
Request data frame in PKW area.....	334, 451
Requirements for PROFIBUS Link.....	448
Requirements for PROFIBUS Link Cable.....	331
Response data frame in PKW area.....	334, 451
Restarting after Power Loss.....	420
Restoring Parameters to Factory Defaults During Quick Start Process.....	110
Return of products.....	515
Routing and Connecting a Neutral Conductor (N).....	92
Routing the Motor Power Cables and Mains Connection Lines.....	94
Routing the Motor Power Cables and Motor Encoder Cables....	94

Rules for Design of Installations with Drive Controllers in Compliance with EMC.....	87
--	----

S

Safety instructions for electric drives and controls.....	1
Scope of Supply.....	17
Second Environment, Industrial Area.....	84
Service hotline.....	514
Set Point and Control Parameters.....	539
Setting Command Signal Type....	424
Shielding Connector.....	501
Shielding Connector Type Coding.....	524
Shielding Mains Supply Lines in Control Cabinet.....	92
Signal Connection.....	61
Significant components.....	515
Special Notes on Communication.....	300, 445
Speed limitation register....	298, 443
Standard Communication Parameters.....	554
Status Code.....	405
Storage Conditions.....	18
Supply List.....	17
Support.....	514
SVC Control Performance.....	21
System Parameters.....	526

T

Technical Data.....	25
Terminal Labels of Extension Cards.....	467
Terminal protection of power cables.....	59
Terminals.....	62
Terminology and Abbreviation in Parameter List.....	525
Through-wall models provide DC-bus power wiring.....	67
Torque FWD limitation register.....	298, 442
Torque REV limitation register...	298, 443
Torque setting register.....	298, 442

Transmission.....	281, 427
Transport Conditions.....	18
Twisted Wires.....	88
Type code.....	518
Type Coding.....	518
Type Coding of External EMC Filter.....	522
Type of PROFIBUS cable.....	331, 448
Typecode.....	518

V

V/f control parameters.....	533
V/f Control Performance.....	21
Vector control parameters.....	535
Visual Checking.....	17
Visual Inspection.....	17

W

Warning Code.....	407
Wiring.....	52
Wiring Diagram.....	52

Notes

Bosch Rexroth AG

P.O. Box 13 57

97803 Lohr a.Main, Germany

Bgm.-Dr.-Nebel-Str. 2

97816 Lohr a.Main, Germany

Phone +49 9352 18 0

Fax +49 9352 18 8400

www.boschrexroth.com/electrics



R912009377

Other ManualsLib Projects

 www.manualslib.com

 www.manualslib.de

 www.manualslib.es

 www.manualslib.fr

 www.manualslib.nl

 www.manualslib.mx

 www.manualslib.tech 30+ Languages